ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

World Journal of *Hepatology*

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 969-1202

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Hepatology

Contents

Monthly Volume 13 Number 9 September 27, 2021

OPINION REVIEW

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

World Journal of Hepatology

Monthly Volume 13 Number 9 September 27, 2021

Contents

World Journal of Hepatology

Monthly Volume 13 Number 9 September 27, 2021

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Hepatology*, Marcello Maida, MD, Doctor, Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Unit, S.Elia - Raimondi Hospital, Caltanissetta, Caltanissetta 93100, Italy. marcello.maida@hotmail.it

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Hepatology* (*WJH*, *World J Hepatol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online.

WJH mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including chronic cholestatic liver diseases, cirrhosis and its complications, clinical alcoholic liver disease, drug induced liver disease autoimmune, fatty liver disease, genetic and pediatric liver diseases, hepatocellular carcinoma, hepatic stellate cells and fibrosis, liver immunology, liver regeneration, hepatic surgery, liver transplantation, biliary tract pathophysiology, non-invasive markers of liver fibrosis, viral hepatitis.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJH* is now abstracted and indexed in PubMed, PubMed Central, Emerging Sources Citation Index (Web of Science), Scopus, China National Knowledge Infrastructure (CNKI), China Science and Technology Journal Database (CSTJ), and Superstar Journals Database. The 2021 edition of Journal Citation Reports® cites the 2020 Journal Citation Indicator (JCI) for *WJH* as 0.61. The *WJH*'s CiteScore for 2020 is 5.6 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2020: Hepatology is 24/62.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Hepatology

ISSN
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 31, 2009

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Nikolaos Pyrsopoulos, Ke-Qin Hu, Koo Jeong Kang

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
September 27, 2021

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com https://www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 969-978

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.969

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

OPINION REVIEW

Coronavirus disease 2019 and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

Francesco Bellanti, Gianluigi Vendemiale

ORCID number: Francesco Bellanti 0000-0002-8196-7373; Gianluigi Vendemiale 0000-0002-7951-0219.

Author contributions: All authors wrote, revised and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Italy

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0

Grade B (Very good): B

Francesco Bellanti, Gianluigi Vendemiale, Department of Medical and Surgical Sciences, University of Foggia, Foggia 71122, Italy

Corresponding author: Francesco Bellanti, MD, PhD, Doctor, Associate Professor, Department of Medical and Surgical Sciences, University of Foggia, Viale Pinto, 1, Foggia 71122, Italy. francesco.bellanti@unifg.it

Abstract

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic may present with a broad range of clinical manifestations, from no or mild symptoms to severe disease. Patients with specific pre-existing comorbidities, such as obesity and type 2 diabetes, are at high risk of coming out with a critical form of COVID-19. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is the most common chronic liver disease, and, because of its frequent association with metabolic alterations including obesity and type 2 diabetes, it has recently been re-named as metabolic-associated fatty liver disease (MAFLD). Several studies and systematic reviews pointed out the increased risk of severe COVID-19 in NAFLD/MAFLD patients. Even though dedicated mechanistic studies are missing, this higher probability may be justified by systemic low-grade chronic inflammation associated with immune dysregulation in NAFLD/MAFLD, which could trigger cytokine storm and hypercoagulable state after severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection. This review focuses on the predisposing role of NAFLD/MAFLD in favoring severe COVID-19, discussing the available information on specific risk factors, clinical features, outcomes, and pathogenetic mechanisms.

Key Words: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Metabolic-associated fatty liver disease; COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2; Liver injury; Immune dysregulation

Core Tip: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is the most widespread hepatic disorder. Recently re-named as metabolic-associated fatty liver disease, it has been lately pointed out as a predisposing factor for severe coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). We herein discuss the epidemiology and possible underlying pathways predisposing severe COVID-19 in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease/metabolic-associated fatty liver disease patients.

Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: May 28, 2021
Peer-review started: May 28, 2021
First decision: July 6, 2021
Revised: July 15, 2021
Accepted: August 11, 2021
Article in press: August 11, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Pham TTT
S-Editor: Yan JP
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Guo X

Citation: Bellanti F, Vendemiale G. Coronavirus disease 2019 and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 969-978
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/969.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.969

INTRODUCTION

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) was declared as a global pandemic by the World Health Organization (WHO) on March 11, 2020[1]. Indeed, after the first diagnosis of COVID-19 case in Wuhan (China) in December 2019, the virus spread quickly, affecting 220 countries and territories[2]. Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) is the causative virus of COVID-19, whose most likely origin is natural selection in an animal host followed by zoonotic transfer[3]. Features of SARS-CoV-2 infectivity and transmissibility, as well as multiple clinical presentations of COVID-19, represent burning research topics, especially with the alarming rise of new variants. Severe COVID-19 most frequently presents with acute respiratory failure, even though several non-respiratory manifestations may characterize both the acute phase of the disease and the post-COVID syndrome (or long COVID)[4].

COVID-19 patients may show hepatic injury – largely characterized by a mild increase in serum aminotransferase levels – or may experience worsening of a pre-existing liver disease[5]. Most patients presenting with moderate-severe COVID-19 are old and/or affected by metabolic comorbidities, such as diabetes mellitus and obesity [6]. These conditions are also strongly associated with unrecognized underlying liver disease, mostly non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)[7,8]. Affecting almost 1 billion people, NAFLD is considered as the most common chronic liver disease all over the world, and its prevalence is estimated to become higher together with the epidemics of type 2 diabetes and obesity[9]. Recent international consensus panel proposed to rename NAFLD to metabolic-associated fatty liver disease (MAFLD), giving importance to the underlying systemic metabolic dysfunction rather than alcohol abstinence[10]. Of interest, NAFLD/MAFLD patients are more likely to develop liver damage when infected by SARS-CoV-2[11].

To date, the available reviews on this topic focused on the impact of COVID-19 infection on NAFLD/MAFLD worsening and progression. The present review aims to consider the ongoing relationship between COVID-19 and NAFLD/MAFLD, targeting the predisposing role of NAFLD/MAFLD in favoring severe COVID-19. The available information since the beginning of pandemic, specific risk factors, clinical features, outcomes, and pathogenetic mechanisms will be analyzed and discussed.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Epidemiology of NAFLD/MAFLD

NAFLD/MAFLD is characterized by steatosis in > 5% of liver parenchyma, in association with metabolic alterations (mostly type 2 diabetes and obesity), without any chronic liver disease, and with ethanol intake not exceeding 30 g/d for men and 20 g/d for women[12]. In the histological spectrum of NAFLD/MAFLD, steatosis may be accompanied by mild inflammation (non-alcoholic fatty liver) or necro-inflammation with hepatocyte ballooning (non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, NASH)[13].

Being the most widespread chronic liver disease worldwide, NAFLD/MAFLD prevalence ranges from 13.5% in Africa to 31.8% in the Middle East, consistent with differences in genetic predisposition, caloric intake, physical activity, body fat distribution, and socio-economic status[14]. In the general population, NAFLD/MAFLD prevalence increases with age, and it is higher in men than women (particularly in the pre-menopausal period)[15,16]. NAFLD/MAFLD is diagnosed in 47.3%-63.7% of type 2 diabetes patients and up to 80% of obese people[17,18]. Type 2 diabetes is rising worldwide, affecting more than 400 million people and representing the ninth main cause of death[19]. Even though type 2 diabetes is closely related to obesity, its significance in NAFLD is two-fold. Indeed, other than a high prevalence of NAFLD in these patients, type 2 diabetes accelerates NAFLD progression and is a predictor of advanced fibrosis and mortality[20]. Similar to type 2 diabetes, obesity prevalence has doubled in the last 40 years, so that approximately a third of the population can be classified as overweight or obese[21]. Even though its prevalence is higher in older

people, obesity rates increased in all ages and both sexes, regardless of country, ethnicity, or socioeconomic status[21].

Epidemiology of COVID-19

COVID-19 has been declared as a global pandemic by the WHO in March 2020, since cases are reported in all continents[1]. To date, there have been 168509636 confirmed cases of COVID-19, including 3505534 deaths, reported to WHO[22]. Nevertheless, the reported case counts undervalue the global burden of COVID-19, since only a small percentage of acute infections is diagnosed[23]. COVID-19 severity is related with increasing age, male sex, and pre-existing medical diseases[24,25]. Severe COVID-19, defined as intensive care unit or hospital admission, mechanical ventilation, or death, is associated with underlying conditions as diabetes mellitus and obesity[26,27]. Indeed, prevalence studies are not conclusive on increased risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection in patients affected by diabetes mellitus, but this condition may worsen the outcome of COVID-19[28]. Similarly, investigations do not show that obesity increases the risk of contracting COVID-19, but that it may exacerbate the disease severity[27].

NAFLD/MAFLD in COVID-19 patients

The diagnosis of NAFLD/MAFLD requires: (1) the presence of hepatic steatosis detected by liver imaging or histology; and (2) exclusion of significant alcohol intake, other causes of steatosis, or chronic liver disease[29]. Even though liver histology is the gold standard for the diagnosis of NAFLD/MAFLD, to differentiate NASH from simple steatosis and to assess fibrosis, liver biopsy is limited to selected patients due to its invasiveness and costs[29]. Thus, available data on NAFLD/MAFLD prevalence in COVID-19 patients are limited to non-invasive diagnosis.

The frequency of hepatic steatosis fortuitously detected by chest computed tomography in COVID-19 patients was 4.7 times higher than that in age- and sex-matched non-infected patients (31.9% *vs* 7.1%)[30]. This result is confirmed by further studies in which NAFLD/MAFLD was diagnosed by the hepatic steatosis index in 30.7%-37.6% COVID-19 patients from China, even though (differently from the previous investigation) associated with higher risk of disease progression[11,31]. Other studies from China demonstrated that the presence of NAFLD/MAFLD is independently associated with severe COVID-19[32,33]. These latter observations suggest that a huge percentage of patients is at risk of developing the severe form of COVID-19 due to the increasing worldwide occurrence of NAFLD/MAFLD. Nevertheless, results from a study performed in Qatar could not demonstrate that NAFLD/MAFLD was an independent predictor of mortality or COVID-19 severity [34]. A further study conducted at the Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust in London assessed that NAFLD/MAFLD *per se* was not associated with adverse outcomes in COVID-19 patients[35]. Two systematic reviews with meta-analysis considered several studies to conclude that NAFLD/MAFLD was associated with increased risk of severe COVID-19[36,37].

To answer the question whether NAFLD/MAFLD could increase the risk of contracting COVID-19, the impact of genetic risk score was analyzed in hospitalized participants of the UK Biobank cohort, resulting in no evident association between genetic predisposition of NAFLD/MAFLD and severe COVID-19[38]. A review on data from a huge commercial database including electronic records from 26 national healthcare systems demonstrated that the diagnosis of NASH increases 4.93 times the risk of COVID-19[6].

Several studies tried to point out if there are any risk factors predictive of severe COVID-19 in NAFLD/MAFLD patients (summarized in Table 1). According to the results of a pooled analysis, the risk of severe disease in COVID-19 patients affected by NAFLD/MAFLD seems independent of obesity[39]. Nevertheless, a systematic review showed that obesity, together with hepatic fibrosis and younger age, are associated with increased risk of severe COVID-19[40]. A subsequent study performed in a tertiary care center from Mexico showed that the presence of liver fibrosis in NAFLD/MAFLD patients is associated with severe COVID-19[41]. A further study from three Chinese hospitals suggested that high serum interleukin-6 (IL-6) levels at admission represents an independent risk factor for severe COVID-19 in NAFLD/MAFLD patients[42]. In NAFLD/MAFLD patients, male sex and a noticeable inflammatory response were associated with high COVID-19-related mortality[35]. A retrospective study showed that NAFLD/MAFLD rose the risk of hospitalization in all racial subgroups, even though the highest increase was observed among black people [43].

Table 1 Risk factors associated with severe coronavirus disease 2019 in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease/metabolic-associated fatty liver disease

Risk factors	Ref.
Obesity	[40]
Younger age	[40]
Black race	[43]
Liver fibrosis	[40,41]
High serum IL-6 at admission	[42]
Male sex	[35]
High ferritin at admission	[35]
High EWS at admission	[35]

EWS: Early warning score; IL-6: Interleukin-6.

COVID-19 AND NAFLD/MAFLD: PATHOGENETIC LINKS

As the risk of severe COVID-19 increases in patients affected by NAFLD/MAFLD, it is conceivable that specific joint pathogenic mechanisms could be involved (Figure 1).

SARS-CoV-2 virus entry and cleavage

During the initial phase of COVID-19 infection, pathogenesis of the disease relies on binding of spike SARS-CoV-2 protein to angiotensin I converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) receptors, through which the virus enters target cells[44-46]. Even though ACE2 receptors are mainly expressed in epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract, in type 2 alveolar epithelial cells, and in ciliated cells, they can also be found on the brush border of enterocytes and in cholangiocytes[45]. Following the binding with ACE2 receptor, the SARS-CoV-2 spike protein undergoes a cleavage by the host's *FURIN* serine protease, a critical process in promoting spike-mediated entry of the virus[47]. Likewise, cleavage of SARS-CoV-2 spike protein by the serine protease two key host factors of SARS-CoV-2 (transmembrane serine protease 2, TMPRSS2) is determinant for its fusogenic activity[46]. Of great interest, it has been evidenced that patients with NAFLD/MAFLD present with an increased expression of *ACE2*, *FURIN*, and *TMPRSS2* genes[48]. The enhanced expression of receptors that mediate SARS-CoV-2 cellular entry can explain the increased susceptibility of NAFLD/MAFLD to COVID-19. Moreover, increased levels of *FURIN* and *TMPRSS2* may boost the processing of SARS-CoV-2 spike, further improving its cellular entry. It is worth to note that analysis of data from rodent models and NAFLD/MAFLD patients could not show any increased hepatic expression of *ACE2*, *FURIN*, and *TMPRSS2* genes[49]. On the contrary, the upregulation of these genes in multiple tissues probably represents an additional mechanism of increased susceptibility to severe COVID-19 in NAFLD/MAFLD patients[50].

Immune cell response

Several authors suggested that individuals with NAFLD/MAFLD may present with a dysregulation of both innate and adaptive immune response, which could predispose to worse outcomes in COVID-19. Innate immune response is particularly mediated by Kupffer cells in the liver, which represent the major number of resident macrophages in a single organ[51,52]. Kupffer cells are located within the hepatic sinusoids as part of the reticuloendothelial system, constituting the first line of defense against microorganisms, and regulating immune homeostasis in the liver with the involvement of other immune cells such as neutrophils[53]. In NAFLD/MAFLD, macrophages are polarized towards a pro-inflammatory (M1, or classically activated) rather than anti-inflammatory (M2, or alternatively activated) phenotype[54]. Activation and hyperplasia of Kupffer cells was documented in patients with COVID-19 by several histopathological findings[55,56]. Nevertheless, the impact of COVID-19 on Kupffer cell polarization has not been fully characterized. Of note, ACE2 receptor is detected on the surface of Kupffer cells, leading to hypothesize that hepatic macrophages could be infected by SARS-CoV-2, triggering the primary defense response to the host[57]. This response is mostly mediated by type-I and type-III interferons, leading to the

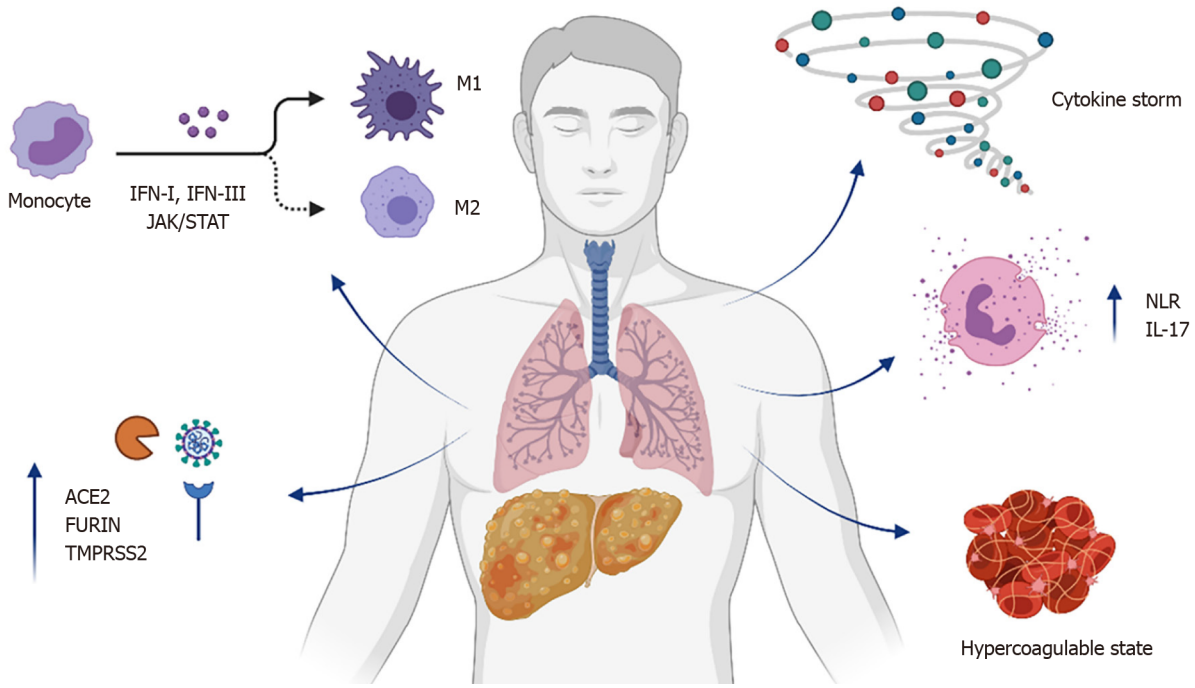


Figure 1 Mechanisms supporting severe coronavirus disease 2019 in non-alcoholic (or metabolic-associated) fatty liver disease. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease/metabolic-associated fatty liver disease may present with systemic overexpression of genes involved in severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 entry and cleavage (such as angiotensin I converting enzyme 2, FURIN, and transmembrane serine protease 2), interferon-mediated polarization of macrophages toward a pro-inflammatory M1 phenotype, elevated circulating levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines, increased neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio with activation of the pro- interleukin-17 axis, and enhanced production of pro-coagulant molecules. Taken together, these pathways increase susceptibility of severe coronavirus disease 2019 in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease/metabolic-associated fatty liver disease patients. ACE2: Angiotensin I converting enzyme 2; IFN: Interferon; IL-17: Interleukin-17; JAK/STAT: Janus kinase/signal transducer and activator of transcription; NLR: Neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio; TMPRSS2: Transmembrane serine protease 2.

activation of janus kinase (JAK)-signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)-driven transcription of cytokines[58,59]. The expression of both *JAK1* and *STAT1*, as well as interferon-encoding genes, are increased in NAFLD/MAFLD patients[48]. Of interest, a significant relationship between ACE2 and JAK-STAT signaling was described, suggesting that this pathway may be involved in the downstream action of ACE2 overexpression[60].

Cytokine storm

The progression from a mild to a severe form of COVID-19 is associated with a cytokine storm, characterized by elevated IL-6, IL-8, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF) levels[61]. Several cytokines are involved in NAFLD/MAFLD, determining a low-grade systemic inflammation that favors disease progression and comorbidities[62]. Circulating IL-6 is high in several chronic conditions, including metabolic syndrome, cardiovascular diseases, and chronic inflammatory airways diseases[63]. Furthermore, fatty liver is independently associated with elevated IL-6 levels[64]. Serum IL-6 is strongly and independently associated with COVID-19 severity, and treatment with a monoclonal antibody directed against IL-6 receptor (tocilizumab) improves clinical outcomes in patients affected by serious disease[65]. Indeed, while in physiological conditions the hepatic production of cytokines is nonexistent or mild, lipid accumulation leads to the release of pro-inflammatory molecules as TNF and IL-6 by hepatocytes, Kupffer cells, and adipose tissue, with reduced levels of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10[66]. It is worth to note that adipose tissue is mainly characterized by dysfunctional and inflammatory immune response in patients affected by morbid obesity. In particular, both adipose and mesenchymal stem cells from obese patients are characterized by increased secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, including IL-6, IL-8, and TNF[67]. This may contribute to explain the increased probability of severe SARS-CoV-2 infections in NAFLD/MAFLD patients, but further studies are required to improve knowledge about the pathogenetic link between the altered innate liver immunity and COVID-19.

Neutrophils and IL-17

The neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio (NLR) is a biomarker of cellular immune imbalance in NAFLD/MAFLD[68]. A high NLR is associated with severity of disease, worse outcomes, and mortality in NAFLD/MAFLD patients[69,70]. Of interest, the presence of NAFLD/MAFLD and a NLR > 2.8 is associated with higher risk of severe COVID-19 with respect to patients not affected by NAFLD/MAFLD and normal NLR [33]. It is worth to note that NLR is also an easy-to-use prognostic biomarker in the early stage of SARS-CoV-2 infection[71]. Neutrophils are a crucial source of IL-17, especially in the liver but also in the airway[72,73]. The pro-inflammatory IL-17 axis may drive the progression of NAFLD/MAFLD, and also COVID-19 severity[74,75]. Activation of the IL-17 axis in NAFLD/MAFLD, other than complemented with the increase of additional pro-inflammatory cytokines as IL-6 and TNF, occurs with the imbalance of T helper lymphocyte subsets[76]. Hospitalized COVID-19 patients show a dysregulation in the balance of T lymphocytes, characterized by a reduced proportion of Treg cells as compared to non-hospitalized individuals[77]. Taken together, these observations suggest that the cellular immune imbalances described in NAFLD/MAFLD could predispose to severe COVID-19, even though further research is needed to clarify this aspect.

Hypercoagulable state

Cytokine release by pro-inflammatory cells may lead to enhanced production of pro-coagulant molecules such as the tissue factor and the von Willebrand factor, with consequent hypercoagulable state and resulting widespread micro-/macrovascular thrombosis[78,79]. NAFLD/MAFLD patients exhibit coagulation disorders, including elevated circulating levels of both tissue factor and von Willebrand factor, as well as increased platelet activation and plasmatic concentration of plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1[80-82]. COVID-19 patients affected by NAFLD/MAFLD present with higher level of circulating D-dimer with respect to those without NAFLD/MAFLD, suggesting that the NAFLD/MAFLD-associated pro-coagulant state may contribute to COVID-19 severity[83]. Results from a retrospective study on a cohort of COVID-19 patients revealed that the prevalence of NAFLD/MAFLD was higher in individuals presenting with Doppler ultrasound documented deep vein thrombosis[84]. Furthermore, mean admission and peak serum D-dimer concentration was more elevated in COVID-19 patients with NAFLD/MAFLD with respect to those without NAFLD/MAFLD[84]. It is conceivable that COVID-19 may further increase production of pro-inflammatory cytokines in NAFLD/MAFLD subjects, with consequent activation of the coagulation cascade and thrombosis. Indeed, histologic study of pulmonary vessels described widespread thrombosis with microangiopathy in COVID-19 patients, who also presented with hepatic steatosis involving 50%-60% of liver parenchyma[85]. To confirm this report, an Italian post-mortem analysis found hepatic steatosis and pulmonary thrombi in 55% and 73% COVID-19 patients, respectively[86]. These observations strongly suggest that these diseases are interlinked; the proinflammatory hypercoagulable state representing a mutual pathogenetic pathway to severe COVID-19, contributing to thrombosis and disease progression.

CONCLUSION

Since COVID-19 may present with severe disease and high mortality rate, several studies addressed predisposing factors and underlying pathways to identify patients at high risk. The severe form of SARS-CoV-2 infection occurs in individuals preliminary affected by metabolic diseases, including NAFLD/MAFLD. Chronic low-grade inflammation is suggested as the main leading process to trigger immune dysregulation, cytokine storm, and hypercoagulability in NAFLD/MAFLD patients with COVID-19. Other than being considered for specific therapeutic approaches against COVID-19, subjects affected by NAFLD/MAFLD should be acknowledged among groups with high-risk medical conditions in SARS-CoV-2 vaccination programs. Even though several concerns were raised about SARS-CoV-2 vaccine responses, vaccination with the alum-adjuvanted inactivated COVID-19 vaccine (Beijing Institute) resulted as effective and safe in NAFLD/MAFLD patients[87]. Nevertheless, further investigations are necessary to clarify whether NAFLD/MAFLD patients should be prioritized for SARS-CoV-2 vaccination.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization**. WHO Director-General's opening remarks at the media briefing on COVID-19. 11 March 2020. [cited 10 May 2021]. Available from: https://www.who.int/director-general/speeches/detail/who-director-general-s-opening-remarks-at-the-media-briefing-on-covid-19---11-march-2020

2 **Worldometer**. COVID-19 coronavirus pandemic. [cited 7 May 2021]. Available from: https://www.worldometers.info/coronavirus/

3 **Andersen KG**, Rambaut A, Lipkin WI, Holmes EC, Garry RF. The proximal origin of SARS-CoV-2. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 450-452 [PMID: 32284615 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0820-9]

4 **Carfì A**, Bernabei R, Landi F; Gemelli Against COVID-19 Post-Acute Care Study Group. Persistent Symptoms in Patients After Acute COVID-19. *JAMA* 2020; **324**: 603-605 [PMID: 32644129 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.12603]

5 **Amin M**. COVID-19 and the liver: overview. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **33**: 309-311 [PMID: 32558697 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001808]

6 **Ghoneim S**, Butt MU, Hamid O, Shah A, Asaad I. The incidence of COVID-19 in patients with metabolic syndrome and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: A population-based study. *Metabol Open* 2020; **8**: 100057 [PMID: 32924000 DOI: 10.1016/j.metop.2020.100057]

7 **Yki-Järvinen H**. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease as a cause and a consequence of metabolic syndrome. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2014; **2**: 901-910 [PMID: 24731669 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-8587(14)70032-4]

8 **Tilg H**, Moschen AR, Roden M. NAFLD and diabetes mellitus. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **14**: 32-42 [PMID: 27729660 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2016.147]

9 **Makri E**, Goulas A, Polyzos SA. Epidemiology, Pathogenesis, Diagnosis and Emerging Treatment of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Arch Med Res* 2021; **52**: 25-37 [PMID: 33334622 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2020.11.010]

10 **Eslam M**, Sanyal AJ, George J; International Consensus Panel. MAFLD: A Consensus-Driven Proposed Nomenclature for Metabolic Associated Fatty Liver Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1999-2014.e1 [PMID: 32044314 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.11.312]

11 **Huang R**, Zhu L, Wang J, Xue L, Liu L, Yan X, Huang S, Li Y, Zhang B, Xu T, Li C, Ji F, Ming F, Zhao Y, Cheng J, Wang Y, Zhao H, Hong S, Chen K, Zhao XA, Zou L, Sang D, Shao H, Guan X, Chen X, Chen Y, Wei J, Zhu C, Wu C. Clinical features of COVID-19 patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Hepatol Commun* 2020 [PMID: 32838108 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1592]

12 **European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL)**; European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD); European Association for the Study of Obesity (EASO). EASL-EASD-EASO Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: 1388-1402 [PMID: 27062661 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.11.004]

13 **Sheka AC**, Adeyi O, Thompson J, Hameed B, Crawford PA, Ikramuddin S. Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis: A Review. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1175-1183 [PMID: 32207804 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.2298]

14 **Younossi ZM**, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D, Fazel Y, Henry L, Wymer M. Global epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-Meta-analytic assessment of prevalence, incidence, and outcomes. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 73-84 [PMID: 26707365 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28431]

15 **Mitra S**, De A, Chowdhury A. Epidemiology of non-alcoholic and alcoholic fatty liver diseases. *Transl Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 16 [PMID: 32258520 DOI: 10.21037/tgh.2019.09.08]

16 **Salvoza NC**, Giraudi PJ, Tiribelli C, Rosso N. Sex differences in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: hints for future management of disease. *Explor Med* 2020; **1**: 51-74 [DOI: 10.37349/emed.2020.00005]

17 **Polyzos SA**, Kountouras J, Mantzoros CS. Obesity and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: From pathophysiology to therapeutics. *Metabolism* 2019; **92**: 82-97 [PMID: 30502373 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2018.11.014]

18 **Younossi ZM**, Henry L. The Impact of Obesity and Type 2 Diabetes on Chronic Liver Disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2019; **114**: 1714-1715 [PMID: 31599742 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000433]

19 **Zheng Y**, Ley SH, Hu FB. Global aetiology and epidemiology of type 2 diabetes mellitus and its complications. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2018; **14**: 88-98 [PMID: 29219149 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2017.151]

20 **Younossi ZM**. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease - A global public health perspective. *J Hepatol* 2019; **70**: 531-544 [PMID: 30414863 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.10.033]

21 **Chooi YC**, Ding C, Magkos F. The epidemiology of obesity. *Metabolism* 2019; **92**: 6-10 [PMID: 30253139 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2018.09.005]

22 **World Health Organization**. WHO coronavirus disease (COVID-19) dashboard. [cited 28 May 2021]. Available from: https://covid19.who.int/?gclid=CjwKCAjwx9_4BRAHEiwApAt0zv9_o-gc4Y31g9Mmx4jJ56WBZ8jwC1NhTcUar5dVc58mih0NGT3VRoC_XEQAvD_BwE

23 **Havers FP**, Reed C, Lim T, Montgomery JM, Klena JD, Hall AJ, Fry AM, Cannon DL, Chiang CF, Gibbons A, Krapiunaya I, Morales-Betoulle M, Roguski K, Rasheed MAU, Freeman B, Lester S, Mills L, Carroll DS, Owen SM, Johnson JA, Semenova V, Blackmore C, Blog D, Chai SJ, Dunn A, Hand J, Jain S, Lindquist S, Lynfield R, Pritchard S, Sokol T, Sosa L, Turabelidze G, Watkins SM, Wiesman J, Williams RW, Yendell S, Schiffer J, Thornburg NJ. Seroprevalence of Antibodies to SARS-CoV-2 in 10 Sites in the United States, March 23-May 12, 2020. *JAMA Intern Med* 2020

[PMID: 32692365 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2020.4130]
24 **Zheng Z**, Peng F, Xu B, Zhao J, Liu H, Peng J, Li Q, Jiang C, Zhou Y, Liu S, Ye C, Zhang P, Xing Y, Guo H, Tang W. Risk factors of critical & amp; mortal COVID-19 cases: A systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *J Infect* 2020; **81**: e16-e25 [PMID: 32335169 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2020.04.021]
25 **Figliozzi S**, Masci PG, Ahmadi N, Tondi L, Koutli E, Aimo A, Stamatelopoulos K, Dimopoulos MA, Caforio ALP, Georgiopoulos G. Predictors of adverse prognosis in COVID-19: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2020; **50**: e13362 [PMID: 32726868 DOI: 10.1111/eci.13362]
26 **Fadini GP**, Morieri ML, Longato E, Avogaro A. Prevalence and impact of diabetes among people infected with SARS-CoV-2. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2020; **43**: 867-869 [PMID: 32222956 DOI: 10.1007/s40618-020-01236-2]
27 **Yang J**, Hu J, Zhu C. Obesity aggravates COVID-19: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 257-261 [PMID: 32603481 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26237]
28 **Fadini GP**, Morieri ML, Boscari F, Fioretto P, Maran A, Busetto L, Bonora BM, Selmin E, Arcidiacono G, Pinelli S, Farnia F, Falaguasta D, Russo L, Voltan G, Mazzocut S, Costantini G, Ghirardini F, Tresso S, Cattelan AM, Vianello A, Avogaro A, Vettor R. Newly-diagnosed diabetes and admission hyperglycemia predict COVID-19 severity by aggravating respiratory deterioration. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2020; **168**: 108374 [PMID: 32805345 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2020.108374]
29 **Ando Y**, Jou JH. Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease and Recent Guideline Updates. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2021; **17**: 23-28 [PMID: 33552482 DOI: 10.1002/cld.1045]
30 **Medeiros AK**, Barbisan CC, Cruz IR, de Araújo EM, Libânio BB, Albuquerque KS, Torres US. Higher frequency of hepatic steatosis at CT among COVID-19-positive patients. *Abdom Radiol (NY)* 2020; **45**: 2748-2754 [PMID: 32683613 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-020-02648-7]
31 **Ji D**, Qin E, Xu J, Zhang D, Cheng G, Wang Y, Lau G. Non-alcoholic fatty liver diseases in patients with COVID-19: A retrospective study. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 451-453 [PMID: 32278005 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.03.044]
32 **Zhou YJ**, Zheng KI, Wang XB, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Ma HL, Chen YP, George J, Zheng MH. Metabolic-associated fatty liver disease is associated with severity of COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2160-2163 [PMID: 32573883 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14575]
33 **Targher G**, Mantovani A, Byrne CD, Wang XB, Yan HD, Sun QF, Pan KH, Zheng KI, Chen YP, Eslam M, George J, Zheng MH. Risk of severe illness from COVID-19 in patients with metabolic dysfunction-associated fatty liver disease and increased fibrosis scores. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 1545-1547 [PMID: 32414813 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321611]
34 **Mushtaq K**, Khan MU, Iqbal F, Alsoub DH, Chaudhry HS, Ata F, Iqbal P, Elfert K, Balaraju G, Almaslamani M, Al-Ejji K, AlKaabi S, Kamel YM. NAFLD is a predictor of liver injury in COVID-19 hospitalized patients but not of mortality, disease severity on the presentation or progression - The debate continues. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 482-484 [PMID: 33223215 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.09.006]
35 **Forlano R**, Mullish BH, Mukherjee SK, Nathwani R, Harlow C, Crook P, Judge R, Soubieres A, Middleton P, Daunt A, Perez-Guzman P, Selvapatt N, Lemoine M, Dhar A, Thursz MR, Nayagam S, Manousou P. In-hospital mortality is associated with inflammatory response in NAFLD patients admitted for COVID-19. *PLoS One* 2020; **15**: e0240400 [PMID: 33031439 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0240400]
36 **Hegyi PJ**, Váncsa S, Ocskay K, Dembrovszky F, Kiss S, Farkas N, Erőss B, Szakács Z, Hegyi P, Pár G. Metabolic Associated Fatty Liver Disease Is Associated With an Increased Risk of Severe COVID-19: A Systematic Review With Meta-Analysis. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2021; **8**: 626425 [PMID: 33777974 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2021.626425]
37 **Singh A**, Hussain S, Antony B. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and clinical outcomes in patients with COVID-19: A comprehensive systematic review and meta-analysis. *Diabetes Metab Syndr* 2021; **15**: 813-822 [PMID: 33862417 DOI: 10.1016/j.dsx.2021.03.019]
38 **Valenti L**, Jamialahmadi O, Romeo S. Lack of genetic evidence that fatty liver disease predisposes to COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 709-711 [PMID: 32445883 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.015]
39 **Sachdeva S**, Khandait H, Kopel J, Aloysius MM, Desai R, Goyal H. NAFLD and COVID-19: a Pooled Analysis. *SN Compr Clin Med* 2020; 1-4 [PMID: 33173850 DOI: 10.1007/s42399-020-00631-3]
40 **Sy-Janairo ML**, Y Cua IH. Association of metabolic-associated fatty liver disease and risk of severe coronavirus disease 2019 illness. *JGH Open* 2020 [PMID: 33363258 DOI: 10.1002/jgh3.12465]
41 **Campos-Murguía A**, Román-Calleja BM, Toledo-Coronado IV, González-Regueiro JA, Solís-Ortega AA, Kúsulas-Delint D, Cruz-Contreras M, Cruz-Yedra N, Cubero FJ, Nevzorova YA, Martínez-Cabrera CF, Moreno-Guillén P, Lozano-Cruz OA, Chapa-Ibargüengoitia M, Gulías-Herrero A, Aguilar-Salinas CA, Ruiz-Margáin A, Macías-Rodríguez RU. Liver fibrosis in patients with metabolic associated fatty liver disease is a risk factor for adverse outcomes in COVID-19. *Dig Liver Dis* 2021; **53**: 525-533 [PMID: 33551355 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2021.01.019]
42 **Gao F**, Zheng KI, Yan HD, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Chen YP, Targher G, Byrne CD, George J, Zheng MH. Association and Interaction Between Serum Interleukin-6 Levels and Metabolic Dysfunction-Associated Fatty Liver Disease in Patients With Severe Coronavirus Disease 2019. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2021; **12**: 604100 [PMID: 33763027 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2021.604100]
43 **Bramante C**, Tignanelli CJ, Dutta N, Jones E, Tamariz L, Clark JM, Usher M, Metlon-Meaux G, Ikramuddin S. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and risk of hospitalization for Covid-19. *medRxiv* 2020 [PMID: 32909011 DOI: 10.1101/2020.09.01.20185850]

44 **Zou X**, Chen K, Zou J, Han P, Hao J, Han Z. Single-cell RNA-seq data analysis on the receptor ACE2 expression reveals the potential risk of different human organs vulnerable to 2019-nCoV infection. *Front Med* 2020; **14**: 185-192 [PMID: 32170560 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-020-0754-0]

45 **Qi F**, Qian S, Zhang S, Zhang Z. Single cell RNA sequencing of 13 human tissues identify cell types and receptors of human coronaviruses. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2020; **526**: 135-140 [PMID: 32199615 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2020.03.044]

46 **Hoffmann M**, Kleine-Weber H, Schroeder S, Krüger N, Herrler T, Erichsen S, Schiergens TS, Herrler G, Wu NH, Nitsche A, Müller MA, Drosten C, Pöhlmann S. SARS-CoV-2 Cell Entry Depends on ACE2 and TMPRSS2 and Is Blocked by a Clinically Proven Protease Inhibitor. *Cell* 2020; **181**: 271-280.e8 [PMID: 32142651 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.02.052]

47 **Braun E**, Sauter D. Furin-mediated protein processing in infectious diseases and cancer. *Clin Transl Immunology* 2019; **8**: e1073 [PMID: 31406574 DOI: 10.1002/cti2.1073]

48 **Singh MK**, Mobeen A, Chandra A, Joshi S, Ramachandran S. A meta-analysis of comorbidities in COVID-19: Which diseases increase the susceptibility of SARS-CoV-2 infection? *Comput Biol Med* 2021; **130**: 104219 [PMID: 33486379 DOI: 10.1016/j.compbiomed.2021.104219]

49 **Biquard L**, Valla D, Rautou PE. No evidence for an increased liver uptake of SARS-CoV-2 in metabolic-associated fatty liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 717-718 [PMID: 32360995 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.035]

50 **Meijnikman AS**, Bruin S, Groen AK, Nieuwdorp M, Herrema H. Increased expression of key SARS-CoV-2 entry points in multiple tissues in individuals with NAFLD. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 748-749 [PMID: 33338513 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.12.007]

51 **Blériot C**, Ginhoux F. Understanding the Heterogeneity of Resident Liver Macrophages. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 2694 [PMID: 31803196 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02694]

52 **Wen Y**, Lambrecht J, Ju C, Tacke F. Hepatic macrophages in liver homeostasis and diseases-diversity, plasticity and therapeutic opportunities. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2021; **18**: 45-56 [PMID: 33041338 DOI: 10.1038/s41423-020-00558-8]

53 **Krenkel O**, Tacke F. Liver macrophages in tissue homeostasis and disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2017; **17**: 306-321 [PMID: 28317925 DOI: 10.1038/nri.2017.11]

54 **Kazankov K**, Jørgensen SMD, Thomsen KL, Møller HJ, Vilstrup H, George J, Schuppan D, Grønbæk H. The role of macrophages in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 145-159 [PMID: 30482910 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-018-0082-x]

55 **Díaz LA**, Idalsoaga F, Cannistra M, Candia R, Cabrera D, Barrera F, Soza A, Graham R, Riquelme A, Arrese M, Leise MD, Arab JP. High prevalence of hepatic steatosis and vascular thrombosis in COVID-19: A systematic review and meta-analysis of autopsy data. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 7693-7706 [PMID: 33505145 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i48.7693]

56 **Fassan M**, Mescoli C, Sbaraglia M, Guzzardo V, Russo FP, Fabris R, Trevenzoli M, Pelizzaro F, Cattelan AM, Basso C, Navalesi P, Farinati F, Vettor R, Dei Tos AP. Liver histopathology in COVID-19 patients: A mono-Institutional series of liver biopsies and autopsy specimens. *Pathol Res Pract* 2021; **221**: 153451 [PMID: 33932720 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2021.153451]

57 **Song X**, Hu W, Yu H, Zhao L, Zhao Y, Zhao X, Xue HH. Little to no expression of angiotensin-converting enzyme-2 on most human peripheral blood immune cells but highly expressed on tissue macrophages. *Cytometry A* 2020 [PMID: 33280254 DOI: 10.1002/cyto.a.24285]

58 **Majoros A**, Platanitis E, Kernbauer-Hölzl E, Rosebrock F, Müller M, Decker T. Canonical and Non-Canonical Aspects of JAK-STAT Signaling: Lessons from Interferons for Cytokine Responses. *Front Immunol* 2017; **8**: 29 [PMID: 28184222 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00029]

59 **Lei X**, Dong X, Ma R, Wang W, Xiao X, Tian Z, Wang C, Wang Y, Li L, Ren L, Guo F, Zhao Z, Zhou Z, Xiang Z, Wang J. Activation and evasion of type I interferon responses by SARS-CoV-2. *Nat Commun* 2020; **11**: 3810 [PMID: 32733001 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-020-17665-9]

60 **Luo J**, Lu S, Yu M, Zhu L, Zhu C, Li C, Fang J, Zhu X, Wang X. The potential involvement of JAK-STAT signaling pathway in the COVID-19 infection assisted by ACE2. *Gene* 2021; **768**: 145325 [PMID: 33253796 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2020.145325]

61 **Yuki K**, Fujiogi M, Koutsogiannaki S. COVID-19 pathophysiology: A review. *Clin Immunol* 2020; **215**: 108427 [PMID: 32325252 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2020.108427]

62 **Lamadrid P**, Alonso-Peña M, San Segundo D, Arias-Loste M, Crespo J, Lopez-Hoyos M. Innate and Adaptive Immunity Alterations in Metabolic Associated Fatty Liver Disease and Its Implication in COVID-19 Severity. *Front Immunol* 2021; **12**: 651728 [PMID: 33859644 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.651728]

63 **Wannamethee SG**, Whincup PH, Rumley A, Lowe GD. Inter-relationships of interleukin-6, cardiovascular risk factors and the metabolic syndrome among older men. *J Thromb Haemost* 2007; **5**: 1637-1643 [PMID: 17596140 DOI: 10.1111/j.1538-7836.2007.02643.x]

64 **Wang PW**, Hsieh CJ, Psang LC, Cheng YF, Liou CW, Weng SW, Chen JF, Chen IY, Li RH, Eng HL. Fatty liver and chronic inflammation in Chinese adults. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2008; **81**: 202-208 [PMID: 18534708 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2008.04.014]

65 **Mojtabavi H**, Saghazadeh A, Rezaei N. Interleukin-6 and severe COVID-19: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Cytokine Netw* 2020; **31**: 44-49 [PMID: 32933891 DOI: 10.1684/ecn.2020.0448]

66 **Braunersreuther V**, Viviani GL, Mach F, Montecucco F. Role of cytokines and chemokines in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 727-735 [PMID: 22371632 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i8.727]

67 **Ritter A**, Kreis NN, Louwen F, Yuan J. Obesity and COVID-19: Molecular Mechanisms Linking Both Pandemics. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32806722 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21165793]

68 **Paquissi FC**. Immune Imbalances in Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: From General Biomarkers and Neutrophils to Interleukin-17 Axis Activation and New Therapeutic Targets. *Front Immunol* 2016; **7**: 490 [PMID: 27891128 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00490]

69 **Alkhouri N**, Morris-Stiff G, Campbell C, Lopez R, Tamimi TA, Yerian L, Zein NN, Feldstein AE. Neutrophil to lymphocyte ratio: a new marker for predicting steatohepatitis and fibrosis in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Liver Int* 2012; **32**: 297-302 [PMID: 22097893 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2011.02639.x]

70 **Leithead JA**, Rajoriya N, Gunson BK, Ferguson JW. Neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio predicts mortality in patients listed for liver transplantation. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 502-509 [PMID: 25234369 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12688]

71 **Ciccullo A**, Borghetti A, Zileri Dal Verme L, Tosoni A, Lombardi F, Garcovich M, Biscetti F, Montalto M, Cauda R, Di Giambenedetto S; GEMELLI AGAINST COVID Group. Neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio and clinical outcome in COVID-19: a report from the Italian front line. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2020; **56**: 106017 [PMID: 32437920 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2020.106017]

72 **Macek Jilkova Z**, Afzal S, Marche H, Decaens T, Sturm N, Jouvin-Marche E, Huard B, Marche PN. Progression of fibrosis in patients with chronic viral hepatitis is associated with IL-17(+) neutrophils. *Liver Int* 2016; **36**: 1116-1124 [PMID: 26749555 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13060]

73 **Taylor PR**, Pearlman E. IL-17A production by neutrophils. *Immunol Lett* 2016; **169**: 104-105 [PMID: 26582721 DOI: 10.1016/j.imlet.2015.11.006]

74 **Giles DA**, Moreno-Fernandez ME, Divanovic S. IL-17 Axis Driven Inflammation in Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease Progression. *Curr Drug Targets* 2015; **16**: 1315-1323 [PMID: 26028039 DOI: 10.2174/1389450116666150531153627]

75 **Pacha O**, Sallman MA, Evans SE. COVID-19: a case for inhibiting IL-17? *Nat Rev Immunol* 2020; **20**: 345-346 [PMID: 32358580 DOI: 10.1038/s41577-020-0328-z]

76 **Hammerich L**, Heymann F, Tacke F. Role of IL-17 and Th17 cells in liver diseases. *Clin Dev Immunol* 2011; **2011**: 345803 [PMID: 21197451 DOI: 10.1155/2011/345803]

77 **Meckiff BJ**, Ramírez-Suástegui C, Fajardo V, Chee SJ, Kusnadi A, Simon H, Eschweiler S, Grifoni A, Pelosi E, Weiskopf D, Sette A, Ay F, Seumois G, Ottensmeier CH, Vijayanand P. Imbalance of Regulatory and Cytotoxic SARS-CoV-2-Reactive $CD4^+$ T Cells in COVID-19. *Cell* 2020; **183**: 1340-1353.e16 [PMID: 33096020 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.10.001]

78 **Tang N**, Li D, Wang X, Sun Z. Abnormal coagulation parameters are associated with poor prognosis in patients with novel coronavirus pneumonia. *J Thromb Haemost* 2020; **18**: 844-847 [PMID: 32073213 DOI: 10.1111/jth.14768]

79 **Jose RJ**, Manuel A. COVID-19 cytokine storm: the interplay between inflammation and coagulation. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; **8**: e46-e47 [PMID: 32353251 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30216-2]

80 **Tripodi A**, Fracanzani AL, Primignani M, Chantarangkul V, Clerici M, Mannucci PM, Peyvandi F, Bertelli C, Valenti L, Fargion S. Procoagulant imbalance in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 148-154 [PMID: 24657400 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.03.013]

81 **Verrijken A**, Francque S, Mertens I, Prawitt J, Caron S, Hubens G, Van Marck E, Staels B, Michielsen P, Van Gaal L. Prothrombotic factors in histologically proven nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 121-129 [PMID: 24375485 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26510]

82 **Virović-Jukić L**, Stojsavljević-Shapeski S, Forgač J, Kukla M, Mikolašević I. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease - a procoagulant condition? *Croat Med J* 2021; **62**: 25-33 [PMID: 33660958 DOI: 10.3325/cmj.2021.62.25]

83 **Ji D**, Cheng G, Lau G. Reply to: "NAFLD is a predictor of liver injury in COVID-19 hospitalized patients but not of mortality, disease severity on the presentation or progression - The debate continues". *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 484-485 [PMID: 33130185 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.10.020]

84 **Ji D**, Zhang M, Qin E, Zhang L, Xu J, Wang Y, Cheng G, Wang F, Lau G. Letter to the Editor: Obesity, diabetes, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and metabolic dysfunction associated fatty liver disease are proinflammatory hypercoagulable states associated with severe disease and thrombosis in Covid-19. *Metabolism* 2021; **115**: 154437 [PMID: 33220249 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2020.154437]

85 **Lax SF**, Skok K, Zechner P, Kessler HH, Kaufmann N, Koelblinger C, Vander K, Bargfrieder U, Trauner M. Pulmonary Arterial Thrombosis in COVID-19 With Fatal Outcome : Results From a Prospective, Single-Center, Clinicopathologic Case Series. *Ann Intern Med* 2020; **173**: 350-361 [PMID: 32422076 DOI: 10.7326/M20-2566]

86 **Falasca L**, Nardacci R, Colombo D, Lalle E, Di Caro A, Nicastri E, Antinori A, Petrosillo N, Marchioni L, Biava G, D'Offizi G, Palmieri F, Goletti D, Zumla A, Ippolito G, Piacentini M, Del Nonno F. Postmortem Findings in Italian Patients With COVID-19: A Descriptive Full Autopsy Study of Cases With and Without Comorbidities. *J Infect Dis* 2020; **222**: 1807-1815 [PMID: 32914853 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiaa578]

87 **Wang J**, Hou Z, Liu J, Gu Y, Wu Y, Chen Z, Ji J, Diao S, Qiu Y, Zou S, Zhang A, Zhang N, Wang F, Li X, Wang Y, Liu X, Lv C, Chen S, Liu D, Ji X, Liu C, Ren T, Sun J, Zhao Z, Wu F, Li F, Wang R, Yan Y, Zhang S, Ge G, Shao J, Yang S, Huang Y, Xu D, Ai J, He Q, Zheng MH, Zhang L, Xie Q, Rockey DC, Fallowfield JA, Zhang W, Qi X. Safety and immunogenicity of COVID-19 vaccination in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (CHESS2101): A multicenter study. *J Hepatol* 2021; **75**: 439-441 [PMID: 33905793 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2021.04.026]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 979-1002

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.979

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Epigenetic mechanisms of liver tumor resistance to immunotherapy

Julie Sanceau, Angélique Gougelet

ORCID number: Julie Sanceau 0000-0002-6621-2730; Angélique Gougelet 0000-0001-7464-9804.

Author contributions: Gougelet A constructed and wrote the manuscript; Sanceau J wrote the manuscript.

Supported by Ligue Nationale Contre le Cancer and the Agence Nationale de la Recherche, No. DLK1-EPILIV 2018-2021 (to Gougelet A); and Université de Paris (to Sanceau J).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflicts of interest for this article.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology

Julie Sanceau, Angélique Gougelet, Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, Sorbonne Université, Inserm, Université de Paris, Paris 75006, France

Corresponding author: Angélique Gougelet, PhD, Research Scientist, Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, Sorbonne Université, Inserm, Université de Paris, 15 Rue de L'école de Médecine, Paris 75006, France. angelique.gougelet@inserm.fr

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common primary liver tumor, which stands fourth in rank of cancer-related deaths worldwide. The incidence of HCC is constantly increasing in correlation with the epidemic in diabetes and obesity, arguing for an urgent need for new treatments for this lethal cancer refractory to conventional treatments. HCC is the paradigm of inflammation-associated cancer, since more than 80% of HCC emerge consecutively to cirrhosis associated with a vast remodeling of liver microenvironment. In the recent decade, immunomodulatory drugs have been developed and have given impressive results in melanoma and later in several other cancers. In the present review, we will discuss the recent advancements concerning the use of immunotherapies in HCC, in particular those targeting immune checkpoints, used alone or in combination with other anti-cancers agents. We will address why these drugs demonstrate unsatisfactory results in a high proportion of liver cancers and the mechanisms of resistance developed by HCC to evade immune response with a focus on the epigenetic-related mechanisms.

Key Words: Liver cancer; Immunotherapies; Epigenetics; Resistance; Hepatocellular carcinoma

Core Tip: Although our understanding of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) pathogenesis has improved, this aggressive tumor is still devoid of effective treatments and remains a major health problem. Despite the justified hopes on immunotherapies, only a limited number of HCC patients respond to treatments. The characterization of the molecular mechanisms displayed by tumor cells to evade immune response will help to consider new combinations of therapies. In recent years, a growing body of evidence argues for a modulation of tumor immune privilege by several epigenetic events and renders drugs targeting these regulators as a partner of choice for immunotherapy combination

and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: France

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 23, 2021
Peer-review started: February 23, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: May 4, 2021
Accepted: August 5, 2021
Article in press: August 5, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Shuang WB
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Li JH

strategies.

Citation: Sanceau J, Gougelet A. Epigenetic mechanisms of liver tumor resistance to immunotherapy. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 979-1002
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/979.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.979

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common primary liver tumor with 800000 newly diagnosed people per year in the world[1]. HCC also stands fourth in rank of deaths related to cancer worldwide, accounting for more than 700000 deaths per year. Liver cancer incidence has tripled since the 80s and reaches a high incidence in western countries consequently to obesity and diabetes epidemic, supporting the need of novel effective strategies for this cancer refractory to the majority of conventional anticancer treatments. HCC is a complex disease but its mutational landscape has been extensively uncovered these two last decades with advances in deep-sequencing technologies. The most recurrent mutations identified in HCC are mutations in *TERT*, *CTNNB1* and *TP53*[2], but other frequent mutations in epigenetic modifiers and chromatin remodelers are also encountered (*e.g.*, *ARID1A, ARID2, MLL2*)[3,4]. Other crucial epigenetic modulators, the non-coding RNAs (ncRNAs), are also largely deregulated during hepatocarcinogenesis, reprogramming tumor cells but also modifying the surrounding cells and secondary sites of metastasis *via* their secretion [5].

Integrating outside and inside signals in time and space, the epigenetic regulations of gene expression is a crucial determinant of tumor cell fate regarding differentiation, proliferation, metabolism, migration and immunosurveillance. Epigenetic modifications are categorized into three main mechanisms: DNA methylation, histone modifications mainly on H3 and H4 histones (acetylation, methylation, *etc.*) and control by ncRNAs. There is a growing body of evidence that epigenetic modifiers play key roles during cancer, including in HCC. Therefore, they constitute attractive therapeutic options, alone or in combination with other anti-cancer agents, such as drugs targeting DNA methylation and histone acetylation, which have already been approved for hematological cancers[6]. These recent years, it has been extensively documented that the immune response is epigenetically controlled and plays critical roles in tumor immunosurveillance. Among others, epigenetic changes impact macrophage polarization, myeloid-derived suppressor cell (MDSC) function, genesis of cancer-associated fibroblasts and function of T cell populations, either CD4+, CD8+ and T regulators (Tregs). Of note, subsets of inflammatory gene promoters have been found epigenetically deregulated in cancer. In particular, aberrant DNA methylation of interferon-γ (IFNγ) is associated with exhausted phenotype of T cells[7]. The cytokines involved in T_H response have been found epigenetically inhibited by EZH2 (Enhancer of zeste homolog 2) and DNMT1 (DNA methyltransferase 1)[8]-infiltration of CD8+ cells being inversely associated with the high expression of EZH2. In addition to cytokines, the expression of immune checkpoints such as the program cell death 1 (PD-1)/program cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1) axis is also regulated by epigenetic modifications. DNA methylation in the promoter region of *CD274* encoding PD-L1 predicts patient survival in multiple cancers. EZH2 modifies its H3K27 trimethylation status in hepatoma cells[9], while the BET protein BRD4 (bromodomain-containing protein 4), found overexpressed in HCC and enriched on super-enhancers driving oncogene expression[10], suppressed PD-L1 expression[11].

HCC is the paradigm of inflammation-associated cancer, since more than 80% of HCC emerge consecutively to cirrhosis associated with a vast remodeling of liver microenvironment. Immune cell remodeling is a consequence of chronic hepatitis or liver disease associated with alcohol consumption, genotoxic exposure or metabolic disorders[12]. Even if liver parenchyma harbors a specialized and protective immune system to manage its constant exposure to toxins and bacteria susceptible to trigger deleterious inflammation, the chronicity of hepatic injuries sensitizes to HCC. In liver cancers, as in a number of other cancers, tumor microenvironment differs accordingly to the driven oncogenic mutations and thus impacts response to treatments, notably to immunomodulatory drugs[13]. Cancers with *CTNNB1* mutations have been defined as

cold tumors with lower immune cell infiltration and refractoriness to immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs)[14,15]. Indeed, the Wnt/β-catenin pathway plays a major role in the specification of a multitude of immune cells including macrophages, dendritic cells (DC) and lymphocytes[16].

In the present review, we will discuss the recent advances on immunotherapies in clinical practice, successfully used alone or in combination with other anti-cancers agents in several cancers. We will also address why these drugs demonstrate unsatisfactory results in a high proportion of liver cancers, which shown innate or acquired resistance to immunomodulatory agents. We will thus detail the mechanisms of resistance developed by HCC and particularly the epigenetic-related mechanisms.

MECHANISMS OF T CELL ACTIVATION AND ATTENUATION

T cell activation needs two signals from antigen presenting cells (APC). The initial signal is based on antigen recognition through interaction between T cell receptor (TCR) complexed to CD3 subunits on T lymphocytes and its cognate antigen/MHC (major histocompatibility complex) on APC (Figure 1). This interaction promotes CD3 phosphorylation on ITAM motifs (immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs) which serve as docking sites for the recruitment of ZAP-70 (TCR-ζ chain-associated 70-kDa tyrosine phosphoprotein) and subsequent phosphorylation by Lck (lymphocyte-specific protein tyrosine kinase) and autophosphorylation. Once fully activated ZAP-70 phosphorylates LAT (linker of activated T cells) and SLP-76 (SH2 domain-containing leukocyte protein of 76 kDa), two adaptors for the assembly of the complete TCR signalosome. Secondary signals are required to fully activate LAT. The costimulatory signals are mostly provided by members of the immunoglobulin superfamily such as CD80(B7-1)-CD86(B7-2) bound to CD28, ICOSL to ICOS (inducible T-cell costimulator) (respectively on APC and T cell), or those of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor superfamily (*e.g.*, OX40L-OX40, CD40/CD40L).

To avoid excessive immune response, co-inhibitory molecules, including CTLA-4 (cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4), PD-1 and LAG-3 (lymphocyte-activation gene 3), act as negative immune counterweights (Figure 1). Inhibitory receptors mediate their negative regulation through inhibitory motifs located in their cytoplasmic tails such as immunoreceptor-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) to recruit phosphatases containing Src homology-2 domains, such as SHP-1 and SHP-2 (small heterodimer partner). The recruited phosphatases dephosphorylate several molecules involved in the TCR signaling such as the TCR itself or ZAP-70. This interrupts downstream cascades such as the PI3K (phosphoinositide-3-kinase)/AKT and the rat sarcoma virus (Ras)/rapidly accelerated fibrosarcoma (Raf)/mitogen activated protein kinase kinase (MEK)/extracellular signal regulated kinase (ERK) and leads to reduction in T cell activation, proliferation, metabolism, differentiation, survival, and cytokine production. In addition, PD-1 as well as CTLA-4 are also able to directly regulate signaling pathways in lymphocytes such as the PI3K and MAP kinase pathways[17-19]. While CTLA-4 is the leading player of the ICIs limiting priming of naive T cells notably in lymph nodes, PD-1/PD-L1 interaction results in exhaustion of activated T cells in peripheral tissues and within the tumor microenvironment.

PD-1/PD-L1 axis

PD-1, also known as CD279, is low or undetectable in naive T cells and rapidly induced following TCR activation, in a process partially regulated by transforming growth factors β (TGF-β)[20]. PD-1 is also expressed on other several cells such as B lymphocytes, natural killer (NK), macrophages, DC and monocytes and tumor-specific T cells. At the transcriptional level, PD-1 expression is regulated by nuclear factor of activated T-cells (NFAT)[21], forkhead box O (FOXO)[22] and interferon regulatory factor 9 (IRF9)[23], STAT3/4 (signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 and 4) and CTCF (CCCTC- binding factor)[24] (Figure 2). PD-1 content is also dependent on microRNAs (miRNAs) such as miR-28[25], miR-138 and miR-4717 in glioma[26] and HCC respectively[27]. Differential level of the repressive H3K9me3 mark has been observed in the promoter region of PD-1 in colorectal cancer[28].

PD-1 triggers immunosuppressive signals upon binding to its ligands, PD-L1 (CD274 or B7-H1) and PD-L2 (CD273). A soluble form of PD-L1 (sPD-L1) is secreted in the blood and could compete for PD-1 binding with membranous PD-L1. PD-L2 is restricted to APCs and B lymphocytes, while PD-L1 is usually expressed by macrophages, DC, epithelial cells, activated T cells and B cells. To escape anti-tumor response, PD-L1 expression is highly induced in tumor cells. This could result from

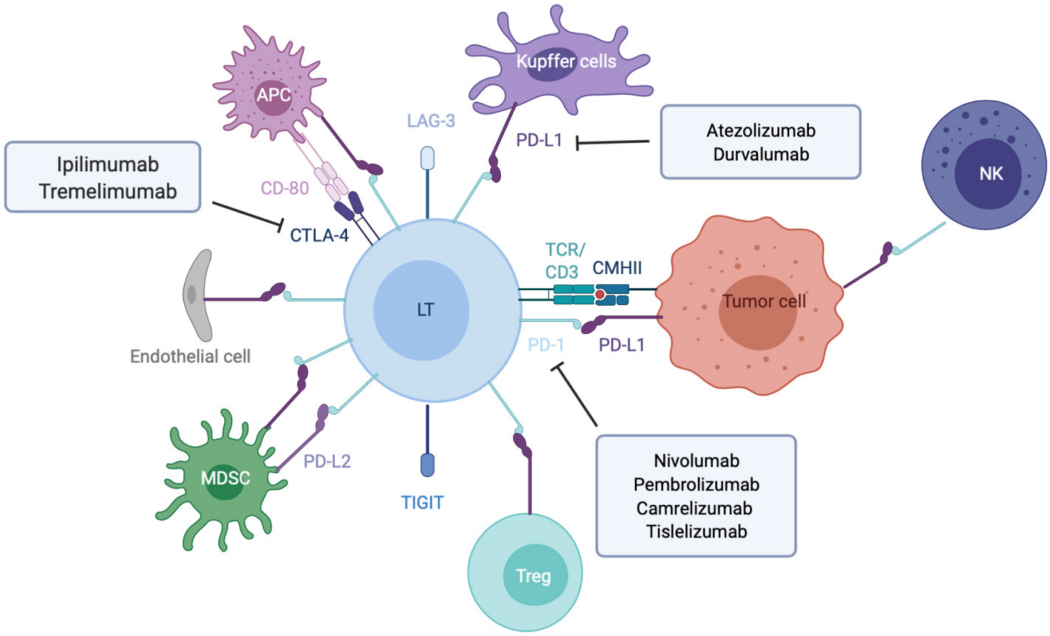


Figure 1 Overview of the main immune checkpoint and their respective targeted therapies. Made with biorender.com. APC: Antigen presenting cell; LT: T lymphocyte; MDSC: Myeloid derived suppressive cell; NK: Natural killer; Treg: Lymphocyte T regulator; LAG-3: Lymphocyte-activation gene 3; PD-L1: Program cell death ligand 1; TCR: T cell receptor.

genomic alterations such as amplification of translocation including in HCC[29]. Gain in PD-L1 copy number is also a frequent alteration across many cancers, which influences PD-L1 expression levels and correlates with higher number of mutated genes[30]. Nevertheless, such a correlation is not observed in HCC. *CD274* expression is controlled by DNA methylation and could constitute a prognosis factor in colon[31] or prostate cancers[32]. Several signaling pathways are also well documented to induce PD-L1 expression in tumor microenvironment such as interferon signaling, PI3K-AKT, MEK-ERK, JAK-STAT, c-MYC and NF-kB (nuclear factor-kappa B)[33]. This transcriptional regulation is regulated by a plethora of cytokines and growth factors such as IFN-γ, interleukin (IL)-6, IL-17, IL-25, TNF-α or epidermal growth factor (EGF)[34]. PD-L1 expression is also regulated by several miRNAs found implicated in cancers: miR-15/miR-16/miR-193a[35], miR-17[36], miR-34[37], the miR-25/miR-93/miR-106b cluster[38], miR-138-5p[39], miR-140[40], miR-142-5p[41], miR-152[42], miR-197[43], miR-200[44], miR-217[45], miR-324-5p/miR-338-5p[46], miR-424 [47], miR-513[48], and miR-570 in HCC[49].

CTLA4/CD80-CD86 axis

CTLA-4 is a CD28 homolog which interacts with CD80 and CD86 with higher affinity and avidity than CD28. Therefore, CTLA-4 enters in competition and prevents the stimulatory signals induced by CD28:CD80/CD86 complexes. Membranous CTLA-4 expression is very low in resting T cells, consequently to clathrin-dependent recycling, and increases following T-cell activation[50]. CTLA-4 is thus mostly localized in intracellular compartments such as lysosomal and endosomal vesicles and the trans Golgi network. CTLA-4 expression is also regulated at the transcriptional level by NFAT[51]. Importantly, CTLA-4 expression has also been detected on tumor cells, including melanoma, colon and renal cancers[52]. In cancer cells, notably in melanoma, CTLA-4 expression is regulated by IFN-γ signaling pathway and DNA methylation[53] but also induced by β-catenin binding on a lymphoid enhancer factor-1 (LEF-1) binding site in its promoter region[54]. In line with these regulations, the *CTLA4* gene displays several SNPs (single-nucleotide polymorphism) associated with disease and cancer in its promoter as well as in its first exon. In particular, the *CTLA-4 318C > T* SNP creates a LEF-1 binding site in its promoter and increase CTLA-4 expression and antitumor activity[55]. CTLA-4 expression is also epigenetically regulated with lower level of repressive H3K27me3 mark detected in CTLA-4 promoter in colorectal cancers[28]. CTLA-4 expression is also post-transcriptionally regulated by miR-9/miR-155[56], miR-138[26] and miR-487a-3p[57].

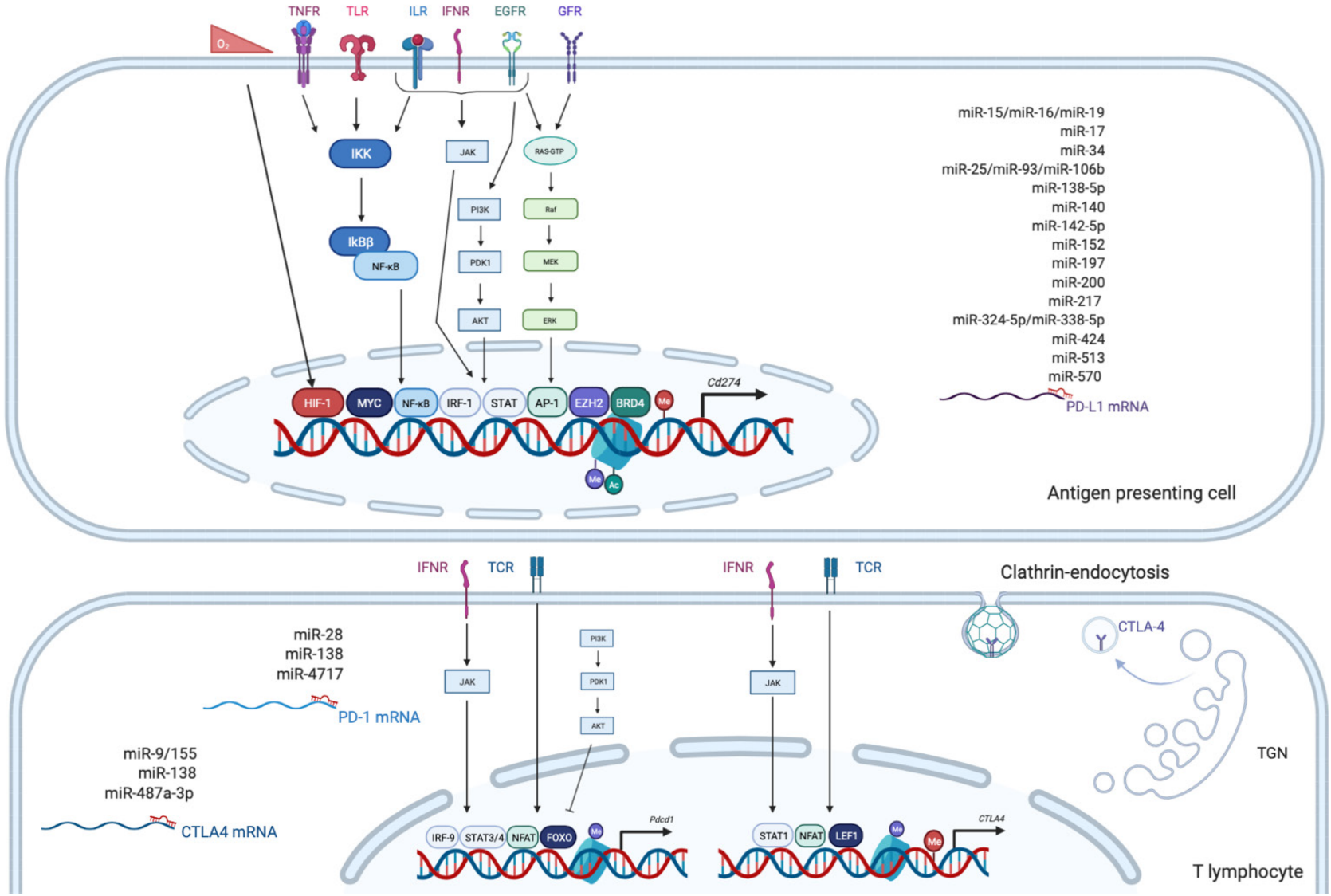


Figure 2 Overview of the main epigenetic and transcriptional regulations of program cell death 1, program cell death ligand 1 and cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4. Made with biorender.com. Ac: Acetylation; Me: Methylation of DNA or histone; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; GFR: Growth factor receptor; ILR: Interleukin receptor; IFNR: Interferon receptor; TCR: T cell receptor; TGN: Trans-Golgi Network; TLR: Toll like receptor; TNFR: Tumor necrosis factor receptor.

Regarding CTLA-4 ligands, contrary to PD-L1, CD80 and CD86 are restricted to lymphoid cells. While CD80 is generally poorly detected on resting cells and upregulated after activating signals, CD86 is ubiquitously expressed on DCs, monocytes and activated B cells and induced at high levels upon activation. The regulation of these molecules is less detailed. In DCs, CD80 expression is reduced in response to miR-424[47]. Low levels of CD80 and CD86 have been detected on melanoma and colon cancer cells, where low level of CD80 expression favors tumor growth[58] but also on HCC cells, as shown by a pioneer study supporting the potential of CTLA-4 axis targeting as anticancer therapy[59].

MECHANISMS OF IMMUNE ESCAPE AND IMMUNOTHERAPY

The goal of immunotherapies is to boost ability of the immune system to detect tumors and limit their progression. They might counteract the evasion mechanisms mediated by the suppressive molecules rolled out by tumor cells. Different therapeutic strategies have been developed but ICIs, designed to block the co-inhibitory signals of T-cell activation (*e.g.*, CTLA-4, PD-1 and PD-L1), are the preferred methods in clinical practice. These drugs have given very impressive results with cancers of bad prognosis and with few therapeutic options, such as melanoma, and have been rapidly tested in several other tumors with high clinical efficacy in most cases.

Mechanisms of tumor immune evasion

Tumor development and progression is a complex process resulting from the interplay between cancer cells and its surrounding environment including endothelial cells, fibroblasts, and a plethora of immune cells with suppressive, regulatory, killing and either anti or pro-inflammatory functions. All types of immune cells are present in the tumor or in the invasive margin, including macrophages, DCs, mast cells, NK cells, naive and memory lymphocytes, B cells, and effector T cells (*e.g.*, Th1, Th2, Th17, Treg and cytotoxic T cells). Therefore, the strength of anti-tumor immune response is governed by the level and the composition of immune cell infiltrated in the tumors and the degree of T cell activation.

As previously mentioned, tumor cells are able to express co-inhibitory ligands such as PD-L1 or PD-L2, and sometimes inhibitory receptors such as PD-1 including in HCC[60,61]. This prevents T cell activation and modulates the activity of recruited immune cells, which express the cognate molecules and play suppressive activities such as tumor-associated macrophages (TAM), myeloid-derived suppressive cells or Tregs[62] (Figure 3). Accumulation of suppressive cells and T dysfunction are also sustained by several molecules secreted by tumor cells such as PGE2 (prostaglandin E2), COX2 (cyclooxygenase 2), nitric oxide, TGF-β and IL-10[63]. Additionally, multiple cancers are associated with chronic inflammation, particularly HCC related to hepatitis infection. Chronic disease results in an ineffective T response and T cell exhaustion mostly due to persistent inflammatory signals, antigen exposure and suppressive cytokines such as IL-10 and TGF-β. It has also been described that chronic disease modifies PD-1 promoter status in exhausted T cells that remains demethylated and poised to facilitate its rapid expression[64,65]. Progressively, exhausted T cells lose their proliferative capacity and effector function related to decrease in IL-2, TNF-α and IFN-γ.

Tumor cells are also able to modify T cell expansion through metabolic alterations. In particular, an overexpression of IDO (indoleamine-2,3-dioxygenase), an enzyme involved in tryptophan conversion, is frequently observed in tumors[66] as well as overexpression in arginase, particularly in MDSC[67]. The depletion of tryptophan and arginine in tumor microenvironment reduces T cell proliferation[68,69].

Tumor immune privilege is also the consequence of decrease in the expression of recognition molecules including MHC, tumor-associated antigens (TAA) and tumor-specific antigens. It is well described that changes in antigens expressed by tumor cells are detected by the immune system, which further develop autoantibodies against TAAs as reporters to control the transformation process. The typical antigen with autoantibodies identified in cancer is p53[70]. Antigens in HCC could be categorized from cancer testis origin such as SSX-2 (synovial sarcoma, X breakpoint 2) and MAGE (melanoma antigen gene), or oncofetal antigens such as α-fetoprotein and glypican 3 or overexpressed tumor antigens such as annexin A2 and epithelial cell adhesion molecule. They constitute promising targets for adoptive cell therapies such as chimeric antigen receptor T cells or tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs)[71]. A higher expression of TAAs in HCC patients is correlated with higher immune infilt-

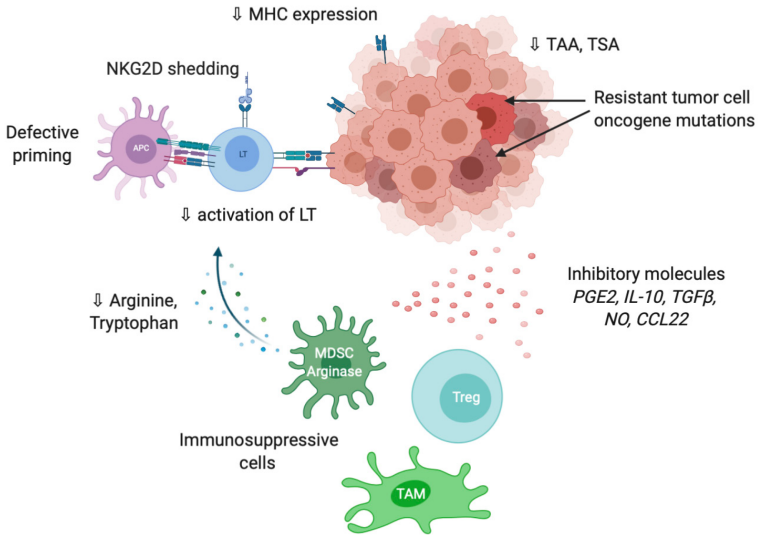


Figure 3 Overview of the main mechanisms involved in tumor evasion to immune response. Made with biorender.com. APC: Antigen presenting cell; ICI: Immune checkpoint inhibitors; LT: T lymphocyte; MHC: Major histocompatibility complex; MDSC: Myeloid derived suppressive cell; NK: Natural killer; NKG2D: Natural killer group 2D; NO: Nitric oxide; TAA: Tumor-associated antigens; TAM: Tumor-associated macrophage; TSA: Tumor-specific antigen; Treg: Lymphocyte T regulator.

ration and better prognosis[72]. The loss or modification of antigens promote immune evasion *via* a defect of tumor recognition. Shedding of natural killer group 2D (NKG2D) ligands into the tumor microenvironment is another way to evade immune recognition. Following proteolysis by matrix metalloproteinases, tumor cell death or exosome secretion, the soluble form of NKG2D ligand induces internalization and degradation of NKG2D and decrease the subsequent cytotoxic effects of T cells[73].

Independently from tumor microenvironment, tumor cells resist to destruction through additional mutations in oncogenes (*BRAF, EGFR, HER2*, *etc.*) that give proliferative advantage. Inversely, mutations in tumor suppressive molecules in particular in damage sensors and pro-apoptotic actors (*TP53, BCL2*, *etc.*) also limits the cytotoxic activity of the immune system[74].

Tumor-infiltrating immune cells

Tumor immune response and subsequent efficacy of ICI treatment is also highly dependent on the immune cell spectrum and its localization within or around the tumors. Indeed, pathological characterization of various solid tumors has shown a great diversity in immune cell types and density between tumors, which could be dependent on driver oncogenes. Three groups have been characterized either as immune desert, immune excluded or inflamed tumors – each group being associated with differential response to ICIs[75].

The inflamed tumors are characterized by the presence of CD8+ and CD4+ T cells with suppressive cells including macrophages, MDSC and Treg that promote T cell dysfunction and exhaustion[76]. In immune-excluded tumors, aggregates of immune cells are at the tumor boundaries. Immune cells are not recruited in the vicinity of tumors consequently to physical hindrance associated with dense and stiff extracellular matrix fibers, defect in neo-vasculature, hypoxia, low level of chemoattractive molecules for T cells such as C-X-C motif chemokine ligand 9 (CXCL9) and CXCL10, insufficient level of antigens or exposure to microbes or virus. In immune desert or cold tumors, there is a low density of immune cells inside and outside the tumors. Tregs, MDSCs and macrophages interplay to inhibit DC maturation and impair T cell expansion and activation. Growing body of data have shown that EMT (epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition) and mesenchymal traits of tumor cells favor immune exclusion and resistance to ICIs[77].

In 2017, a new molecular HCC classification has been proposed on the basis of immune traits, with approximately 30% of HCCs enriched in TILs and defined as HCC immune class[15]. Thirty percent of patients inversely showed exclusion of TILs and frequent mutations in *CTNNB1* gene. This subgroup of tumors are resistant in first-intention to ICIs[13], as it was previously observed in melanoma[78]. This was confirmed with a hydrodynamic mouse model of HCC in which β-catenin activation promotes immune evasion and resistance to anti-PD-1 therapy[79].

In addition to CD8 T cells, the distribution pattern of myeloid cells has also been associated with HCC prognosis. A recent work of Wu and collaborators proposed a myeloid response score (MRS) associated with T cell activity and which could serve as a prognosis signature[80]. HCC were classified as HCCs with low, intermediate, and high MRS, which displayed patterns of immunocompetent, immunodeficient, and immunosuppressive microenvironment. MRS^{low} tumors present an intratumor contexture equivalent to the peritumor tissue containing CD169+CD163+CD14+$CD11b^{low/-}$ macrophages with antitumor activity and CD8+ T cells. Inversely, as compared to non-tumor tissue MRS^{high} tumors are enriched in CD11b+CD15+ polymorphonuclear leukocytes and CD169-CD11b+CD163+ myeloid cells associated with pro-tumoral activation of TAM. These tumors are also characterized by gene signatures related to immunosuppression.

The expression of co-inhibitory molecules within the tumor is an important prognosis factor. HCC with high expression of PD-L1 on tumor/immune cells in immunohistochemistry together with high expression of PD-1 on lymphocytes also exhibit markers of aggressiveness such as poor differentiation and vascular invasion [81]. In addition, if PD-L1 is overexpressed by HCC cells, this predicts early recurrence. Importantly, in this study, no correlation between glutamine synthetase, a direct positive target of the β-catenin, and PD-L1 labeling was observed meaning that the immunosuppressive activity of the Wnt/β-catenin could thus be linked to an immune checkpoint other than PD-L1/PD-1 axis. Another study performing cytometry analysis on HCC tumors confirmed that PD-L1 was both expressed by tumor cells and immune cells and mostly on CD68+ myeloid cells[82]. The presence of PD-L1 on tumor cells correlates with tumor progression, while PD-L1+ macrophages play a protective role in HCC associated with immune response and T activation signature. Recently, a TCGA analysis showed that a high correlation between all negative checkpoints such as PD-L1, PD-1, CTLA-4, LAG-3 and T infiltration in tumors is associated with an immunosuppressive and exhausted tumor microenvironment [83]. Nevertheless, the application of ICIs would be of survival benefit for these patients.

IMMUNOTHERAPY SUCCESSES AND LIMITATIONS IN HCC

Development of immune checkpoints inhibitors constitutes a major breakthrough in oncology that leads to revisit therapeutic strategies and clinical practice for various cancers particularly those of poor prognosis with few therapeutic options, following impressive results obtained in melanoma. ICIs have resulted in increased patient survival in melanoma, kidney and non-small cell lung cancer as well as Hodgkin's lymphoma in comparison with conventional chemotherapies. Other cancers present a more heterogenous response to ICIs such as ovarian, breast, pancreatic and liver cancers. More promising data have been obtained with combination of treatments including ICIs. Microsatellite instability has been evidenced as a biomarker for ICI response[84]-tumors with a low mutation rate having less neoantigens and thus being less immunogenic. Another biomarker is TMB (Tumor mutational burden) has been recently found correlated with ICI sensitivity[85].

Anti-CTLA-4 therapy is the first generation of ICI since antitumor regression after blocking co-inhibitory molecules was firstly evidenced with the anti-CTLA-4 antibody ipilimumab in melanoma[86]. It was the first ICI approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of advanced melanoma. Therapeutic strategies against PD-1 are the second generation of ICI with nivolumab and pembrolizumab lately approved by FDA for advanced melanoma[87]. Since then, the impacts of both therapies have been explored in various cancers and several others surface molecules have been targeted: Inhibitory co-receptors such as VISTA (V-domain Ig suppressor of T cell activation)[88], TIGIT (T Cell Immunoreceptor With Ig And ITIM Domains)[89], TIM-3 (T cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain-containing protein 3)[90] and LAG-3[91] or costimulatory receptors like CD28, OX40[92] or GITR (glucocorticoid-induced TNFR-related protein)[93].

Ipilimumab was the first blocking antibody to significantly promote a regression of lesions in metastatic melanoma with a complete remission in some patients[94]. A 3-year overall survival (OS) rate of around 20% was observed[95]. In HCC, the first anti-CTLA-4 tested was tremelimumab, a fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody. Response rates were more modest in advanced hepatitis C virus-related HCC, with a median OS of 8.2 mo and survival rate of 43% at 1 year[96]. Another study conducted on hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus-associated HCC combined tremelimumab

with tumor ablation at day 36[97]. Twenty-six percent of patients achieved a partial response with an OS of 12.3 mo. Inversely to melanoma, extensive studies were not conducted in HCC with anti-CTLA-4 antibodies as monotherapies. Ipilimumab is now approved, in combination with the anti-PD-1 nivolumab for previously treated advanced HCC, as detailed below.

The significant results obtained with anti-CTLA-4 therapies are also accompanied with severe adverse events. Dogmas that patients with immune-related adverse events have higher response rates have not been confirmed. Adverse events are mainly immune-related such as rash, thyroiditis and frequent complications of the gastrointestinal tract, including aphthous ulcers, esophagitis, gastritis, diarrhea and colitis in around 20% of patients[98]. These adverse effects could be linked to high expression of CTLA-4 on mucosal Tregs[99]. Liver toxicity with ICI-related hepatitis is also a severe adverse effect of anti-CTLA-4 treatment that could be life-threatening in case of delayed management[100]. Oral glucocorticoids or additional immunosuppressants are usually administered to those patients. After adverse effects, an important question is to restart treatment or not. The decision depends on the severity of the complications and the cancer status[101]. Importantly, retreated patients could develop the same adverse event and others new complications. However, an alternative ICI could be administered to patients with adverse effects, *i.e.* anti-PD-1 is safety after deleterious ipilimumab treatment in melanoma patients[102].

To limit those toxicities, targeting TILs rather than peripheral populations will be preferred with antibodies against the PD-1/PD-L1 axis, which exhibit less severe adverse events[103]. In addition to fewer immune related adverse events, PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors also produced greater anticancer activity. Since PD-1 is more broadly expressed than CTLA-4, on tumor cells in particular, and its expression is also induced by chronic antigen exposure, anti-PD-1 antibodies may exert additional anti-tumor effects and exhibits superior clinical activity and safety when compared to anti-CTLA4 [104]. The rationale of combining anti-CTLA-4 with anti-PD-1 therapies is also supported by the differential immune patterns observed in individual monotherapies [105].

Another important decision is the selection of anti-PD-1 or anti-PD-L1 therapies. Indeed, PD-L1 inhibition preserves the interaction between PD-1 and its other ligand PD-L2, while it blocks its interactions with CD80, an alternative interaction that has been recently reported to promote T-cell responses[106]. Conversely, PD-1 inhibition blocks the interaction of PD-1 with its two ligands but preserves anti-tumor PD-L1/CD80 complexes. Therefore, these antibodies may drive differential anti-tumor immune response. For instance, in non-small-cell lung carcinoma, anti-PD-1 therapies exert better anti-tumor response, while anti-PD-L1 antibodies demonstrate less severe adverse effects[107]. In HCC, three drugs are currently authorized in the United States: The two anti-PD1 nivolumab and pembrolizumab for advanced HCC and one anti-PD-L1, atezolizumab approved in combination with the anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (anti-VEGF) bevacizumab. Nivolumab and pembrolizumab approval has been accelerated by FDA after promising results obtained in preclinical studies on sorafenib refractory HCCs, respectively in Checkmate 040[108] and KEYNOTE-224 [109] (20% of overall response rate and 60% of disease control rate). However, in phase 3 trials both agents did not achieve statistical significancy according to the registered statistical plan (CheckMate-459[110] and KEYNOTE-240[111]). New phase 3 trials are conducted for these two drugs as an adjuvant in CheckMate-9DX for nivolumab (NCT03383458), and for pembrolizumab KEYNOTE-937 (NCT03867084) or in second-line with pembrolizumab KEYNOTE-394 (NCT03062358). New anti-PD-1 antibodies are also currently under investigation. The anti-PD-1 tislelizumab, an antibody designed to limit FcγR-mediated phagocytosis, demonstrated a good antitumor activity in a phase 1 trial — a phase 3 trial is ongoing in various solid cancers including non-small cell lung cancer, esophageal squamous cell carcinoma and HCC (RATIONALE 301)[112]. Camrelizumab is also an alternative, which has been tested in China on 220 patients from multiple centers. At a median follow-up at 12.5 mo, the objective response rate (ORR) was 14.7% and 6-mo OS rate was 74.4%. No complete response was observed, 17.6% of patients present partial response and 23.1% a stable disease. The median progression free survival (PFS) was only of 2.6 mo, shorter than other ICIs. Grade 3 and 4 adverse events occurred in 22% of patients[113].

Strategies combining anti-PD-1/PD-L1 with anti-CTLA-4 antibodies have been evaluated in various cancers and in March 2020 FDA have granted approval for nivolumab/ipilimumab (1 and 3 mg/kg) in advanced HCC patients who have priorly received sorafenib. In Checkmate-040, at a median follow-up of 30.7 mo, the combination arm demonstrated 29% ORR. The median duration of response was 21.7 mo. No adverse effects were observed for 79% of patients. An ORR of 31% with 7

complete responses was provided by Blinded independent central review per RECIST [114]. Nonetheless, it has been shown that a combination of ipilimumab and nivolumab leads to higher incidence of ICI-related hepatitis in different cancers including melanoma with 6% to 9% as compared to 1% in single therapies[115]. Rapid diagnosis and management are thus crucial for better outcomes. Another PD-1/CTLA-4 blocking strategy combining durvalumab with tremelimumab is currently under investigation in a randomized, multi-center phase 3 study called HIMALAYA (NCT03298451) to compare combination against durvalumab or sorafenib alone as a first-line therapy for advanced HCC.

Another combination of ICI successfully tested in HCC is atezolizumab plus bevacizumab (anti-VEGF) in first-line in patients with unresectable HCC. A phase III trial (IMbrave150) showed improved progression-free survival of 6.8 mo *vs* 4.3 mo for sorafenib with an OS at 12 mo of 67.2% *vs* 54.6%[116]. Hypertension, a typical adverse effect of bevacizumab, occurred in 15.2% of patients receiving the combination therapy.

Another intensively tested strategy is to combine ICIs with locoregional treatment, which have demonstrated synergistic activities. Tumor destruction by locoregional treatments releases TAAs promoting immune cell priming, which could be even more enhanced by ICIs. Phase 1, 2 and 3 clinical trials are now conducted with anti-PD-1 or anti-PD-L1, alone or combined with anti-CTLA-4 or anti-angiogenic agents, together with transarterial chemoembolization, hepatic artery infusion chemotherapy or external beam radiation therapy[117] (Table 1). Until now, the combination of ICIs with tyrosine kinase inhibitors such as sorafenib was not concluding. Three phase 3 clinical trials are now conducted to evaluate the benefit of such combinations (NCT04194775, NCT04344158, NCT03755791). However, these recent years, combination of epigenetic drugs with ICIs have emerged as potent therapeutic avenues in hematologic and solid tumors, a point that we will develop in the next paragraph.

EPIGENETICS AND HCC

These recent decades, epigenetic mechanisms have emerged as crucial decision-makers of cell fate determination and deregulations of epigenetic mechanisms could lead to modifications of gene transcription in the cell, which could favor the initiation and progression of cancers. Conventionally, the epigenetic code is divided into three major mechanisms: ncRNA driven-regulations, DNA methylation and histone modifications mainly occurring on H3 and H4 histones. Many studies have been focusing on miRNA implications in HCC but few data are currently available concerning the clinical used of ncRNA-based therapies in combination with ICIs. We will thus develop the promising results obtained regarding approaches targeting DNA methylation and histone modifiers in HCC, alone or in combination with ICIs (Figure 4).

DNA methylation and DNMT inhibitors

DNA methylation in somatic cells is regulated by DNA methyltransferases that add, in CpG dinucleotide, a CH_3 group on the 5′ position of the pyrimidine ring in cytosine residue. This modification in methylation will monitor the binding of transcription factors and DNA accessibility in the DNA regulatory region, inevitably leading to modulate gene transcription[118]. The DNMT family is composed of DNMT1, DNMT2, DNMT3A, DNMT3B and DNMT3L. DNMT1 is known to act mainly as a "maintenance" methyltransferase during DNA synthesis and DNMT3A and DNMT3B act as "*de novo*" methyltransferase during development. But DNMT1 can also act as a "*de novo*" methyltransferase for genomic DNA and DNMT3A and DNMT3B can also act as "maintenance" methyltransferase during replication[119,120]. The catalytically inactive DNMT3L stimulates the activity of the DNMT3A and DNMT3B enzymes by a direct binding to their respective catalytic domains. Overexpression of DNMTs and their mutations in a variety of tumors, including HCC, modify DNA methylation profiles[121]. Inversely, modification of enzymes involved in DNA demethylation such as TETs (Ten-eleven translocation) is also frequently observed[122]. DNA hypomethylation associated with genome instability and locus-specific hypermethylation of CpG islands are an epigenetic hallmark of cancer, associated with uncontrolled cell proliferation and survival leading to tumor growth. In HCC, DNA methylation is increasingly altered from cirrhosis to preneoplastic lesions and to HCC, without etiology differences, and could be associated with tumor recurrence and

Table 1 Main clinical trials on immunotherapies and epigenetic agents in monotherapies or in combination

Clinical trial	Phase	Drugs	Line/setting	Cancer type
NCT03383458[1]	3	Nivolumab *vs* placebo	ADJ	HCC
NCT03867084[1]	3	Pembrolizumab *vs* placebo	ADJ	HCC
NCT03062358[1]	3	Pembrolizumab + BSC *vs* placebo + BSC	ADJ	HCC
NCT03412773[1]	3	Tislelizumab *vs* sorafenib	1	HCC
NCT03755791[2]	3	Cabozantinib + atezolizumab *vs* sorafenib	1	HCC
NCT04487067[2]	3	Atezolizumab + bevacizumab	1	HCC
NCT04310709[2]	2	Regorafenib + nivolumab	1	HCC
NCT04443309[2]	1-2	Lenvatinib + camrelizumab	1	HCC
NCT04393220[2]	2	Nivolumab + bevacizumab	1	HCC
NCT03778957[3]	3	TACE + durvalumab + bevacizumab	1	HCC
NCT04246177[3]	3	Lenvatinib + pembrolizumab + TACE	1	HCC
NCT04340193[3]	3	Nivolumab + ipilimumab + TACE	1	HCC
NCT04268888[3]	2-3	Nivolumab + TACE/TAE	1	HCC
NCT03482102[3]	2	Durvalumab + tremelimumab + radiation	1	HCC
NCT03298451[4]	3	Durvalumab + tremelimumab and durvalumab *vs* sorafenib	1	HCC
NCT04039607[4]	3	Nivolumab + ipilimumab *vs* SOC	1	HCC
NCT03605706[5]	3	Camrelizumab + FOLFOX4	1	HCC
NCT03439891[5]	2	Sorafenib + nivolumab	1	HCC
NCT03257761[6]	1	Guadecitabine + durvalumab	2	Liver, pancreatic, bile duct or gallbladder cancer
NCT02816021[6]	2	Azacitidine + pembrolizumab	1	Melanoma
NCT04541277[6]	2	Tislelizumab + DNMTi +/- chemotherapy	1	AML
NCT02530463[6]	2	Nivolumab and/or ipilimumab +/- azacitidine	1/2	Myelodysplastic Syndrome
NCT03552380[6]	2	Entinostat + nivolumab + ipilimumab	2	Kidney
NCT03179930[6]	2	Entinostat + pembrolizumab	2	Lymphoma
NCT02697630[6]	2	Pembrolizumab + entinostat	1	Metastatic uveal melanoma
NCT03250273[6]	2	Entinostat + nivolumab	2	Cholangiocarcinoma and pancreatic adenocarcinoma
NCT02915523[6]	1/2	Avelumab +/- entinostat	1/2	Ovarian cancer
NCT03838042[6]	1/2	Nivolumab + entinostat	1/2	CNS, solid tumors
NCT03024437[6]	1/2	Atezolizumab with entinostat and bevacizumab	1/2	Kidney
NCT01928576[6]	2	Nivolumab +/- entinostat + azacitidine	2	NSCLC
NCT02901899[6]	2	Guadecitabine and pembrolizumab	2	Ovarian, primary peritoneal, or fallopian tube cancer
NCT03179943[6]	2	Atezolizumab + guadecitabine	2	Urothelial carcinoma
NCT03576963[6]	1/2	Guadecitabine + nivolumab	2	Metastatic colorectal cancer
NCT03308396[6]	1/2	Durvalumab + guadecitabine	1/2	Kidney
NCT02935361[6]	1/2	Guadecitabine + atezolizumab	2	Myelodysplastic syndrome or chronic myelomonocytic leukemia

[1]Immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI) monotherapy.

[2]Combination ICI with anti-angiogenic agents.
[3]Combination ICI with locoregional treatment.
[4]ICI combination.
[5]Other ICI combinations.
[6]ICI + epigenetic drugs.
AML: Acute myeloid leukemia; BSC: Best supportive care; CNS: Central nervous system; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; NSCLC: Non-small-cell lung carcinoma; SOC: Standard of care; TACE: Transarterial chemoembolization; TAE: Transarterial embolization.

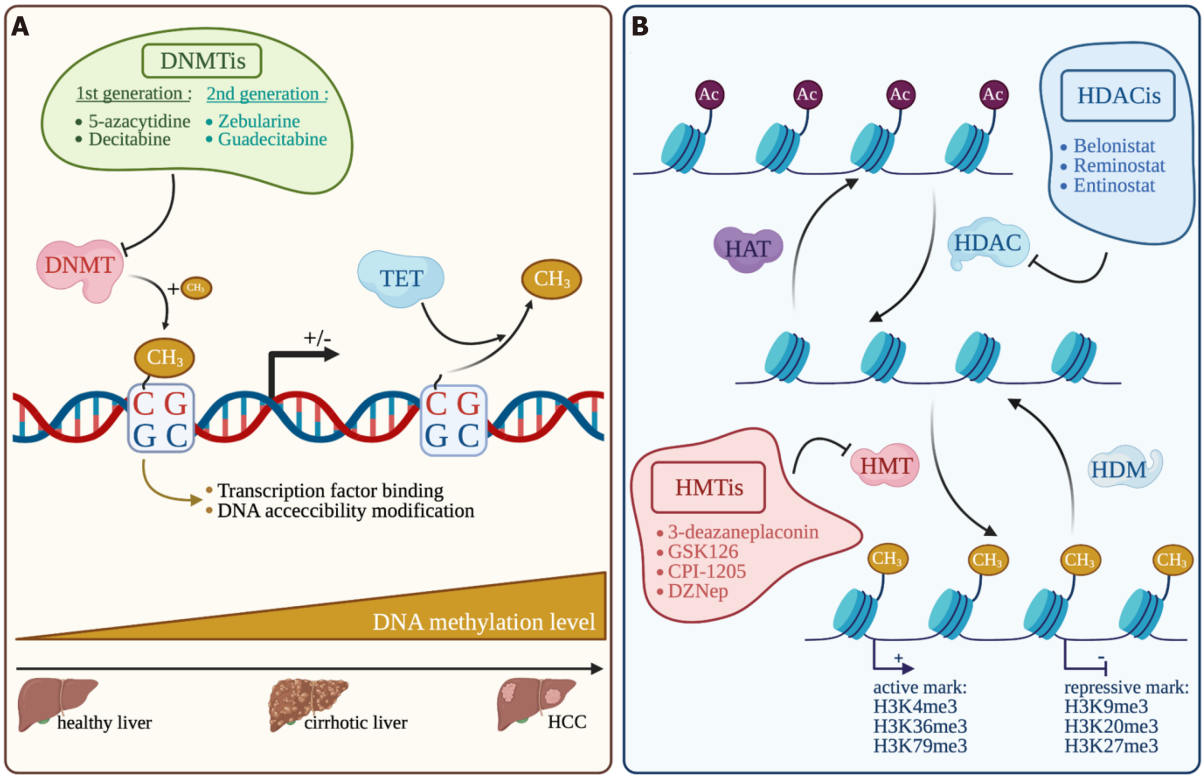


Figure 4 Overview of the main epigenetic mechanisms in hepatocellular carcinoma and their inhibitors. Made with biorender.com. A: DNA methylation; B: Histone modification. DNMT: DNA methyltransferase; TET: Ten-eleven translocation; DNMTis: DNA methyltransferase inhibitors; HAT: Histone acetyl transferase; HDAC: Histone deacetylase; HDACis: Histone deacetylase inhibitors; HMT: Histone methyl transferase; HDM: Histone demethylase; HMTis: Histone methyl transferase inhibitors; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

survival[123-125]. Promoter hypermethylation related to gene silencing is also often observed on tumor-suppressor genes and regulators of cell proliferation and survival such as *APC, CDH1, CDKN1A* and *CDKN2A*[126].

To counteract the tumoral effect of DNA methylation, several DNMT inhibitors (DNMTi) have been extensively studied and under clinical trials for hematologic cancers and increasingly tested in solid tumors. First generation DNMTis like 5-azacytidine (5-aza) and decitabine, can be incorporated into DNA and favor DNMT1 degradation by irreversible binding leading to DNA demethylations. Patients with advanced HCC treated with decitabine show significant clinical benefit from this treatment and a favorable toxicity profile[127]. Second generation DNMTis that are more stable *in vivo*, have shown interesting results. Zebularine treatment is potentially less toxic, since it does not incorporate into DNA, and gives promising results on an HCC mouse model with high degree of CpG methylation[128]. Guadecitabine was also successfully tested under the clinical trial NCT01752933 on patients which were not responsive to sorafenib with an average PFS of 2.7 mo and an OS of 8 mo[129]. Interestingly, guadecitabine promotes an innate immune response through reactivation of epigenetically silenced endogenous retroviruses and thus could improve ICI sensitivity[130].

HISTONE MODIFICATIONS AND TARGETING DRUGS

Another central epigenetic mechanism is the posttranslational modifications of histones, which control gene expression by modulating chromatin accessibility. Histone-modifying enzymes target specific residues on histone tails by acetylation, phosphorylation or methylation. Other modifications of histone residue exist but are less common, such as ubiquitination, citrullination, ADP-ribosylation, butylation[131]. First, histone acetylation is based on a reversible addition of an acetyl group on histone lysine residues that are added by histone acetyltransferases (HATs) and removed by histone deacetylases (HDACs) (Figure 4). Histone acetylation is often associated with a positive gene transcription. Secondly, like DNA methylation, histone methylation is based on the addition of a methyl group on a lysine or an arginine residue in the histone tails by histone methyl transferases (HMTs). Histone demethylases (HDMs) are responsible for methyl removing. Some histone methylation marks are associated with an active gene transcription, like H3K4me3[132], H3K36me3[133] and H3K79me3 [134] and others are rather repressive marks, like H3K27me3[135], H3K20me3[136] and H3K9me3[137]. The expression of several histone modifiers is deregulated in HCC and associated with tumor progression and prognosis, such as HAT with hMOF[138], a plethora of HDAC (HDAC1, 2, 4 and 5, and SIRT1, 2 and 7)[139]. HMT are also concerned with the best characterized EZH2 promoting gene repression through H3K27 trimethylation, G9a[140] and SUV39H1[141] mainly associated with gene repression through H3K9 modifications. Regarding histone modifications, another key actor is BRD4, which reads H3K27ac marks highly enriched in large clusters of enhancers. BRD4 was found overexpressed in HCC and required for super-enhancer-mediated expression of oncogenes[10].

As DNMTi, HDAC inhibitors (HDACi) have also been evaluated in clinical trials for hematological malignancies but also in solid cancers such as HCC. HDACis bind the zinc-containing catalytic domain of HDACs and thus modify histone acetylation status and gene transcription through HDAC inhibition. An interesting phase 2 clinical study of Yeo *et al*[142] (NCT00321594) shows the beneficial effect of belinostat in unresectable HCCs. Belinostat, a pan-HAC inhibitor against zinc-dependent HDACs, could increase PFS to 2.6 mo and OS to 6.6 mo with tumor stabilization. The SHELTER study (NCT00943449) combining sorafenib with resminostat, another pan-HDACi targeting HDAC 1, 2 and 3, doubles the OS of advanced HCC patients (8 mo instead of 4.1 mo) [143]. Interestingly, some epigenetics drugs have shown interesting results in HCC experimental studies regarding their impact on tumor microenvironment and tumor response to ICIs. The BET bromodomain inhibitor i-BET762 significantly reduces the level of Monocytic-MDSCs and enhances TILs, alone or in combination with anti-PD-L1, and consequently decreases tumor growth in two fibrotic HCC mouse models [144]. In the same way, the co-inhibitor of G9a and DNMT1 called CM-272 favors differentiated HCC and impairs the pro-tumorigenic effects of the surrounding fibrotic stroma[145]. Together, these data support the potent therapeutic benefit of targeting microenvironment remodeling together with epigenetic reprogramming during HCC, in a context of fibrogenesis in particular.

THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES COMBINING ICI WITH EPIGENETIC DRUGS

Most immunotherapies are based on the targeting of immune checkpoints and the enhancement of immune system reaction to eradicate cancer cells but not all the patients are good responders to those cures. As mentioned previously, several treatments targeting epigenetic mechanisms allow to modify tumor progression and response to treatment. Epigenetic drugs that target DNMTs and HDACs, can in particular upregulate the expression of several immune signaling components in cancer cells such as TAAs[146], stress- and death-induced ligands and receptors, expression of co-stimulatory molecules at the cell surface but also expression of checkpoint ligands[147,148]. Therefore, epigenetic drugs have been used as neoadjuvant agent or in combination with immunotherapies to prime the immune system and create a better response to ICIs.

As previously detailed, cancer cells can evade immune surveillance by a lack of expression of TAAs. Cancer testis antigens (CTAs) are the best characterized TAAs that are regulated by epigenetic events. They are expressed in embryonic and germ cells but silenced by methylation of their promoter in mature somatic and cancer cells. The use of DNA methylation inhibitors such as DNMTis have proved CTAs re-expression in several solid tumors[146,147,149]. HDACis can also induce the re-

expression of CTAs but in a less extent than DNMTis, in human cancer cell lines[150]. Several clinical trials are already ongoing (Table 1). Other TAAs are sensitive to several DNMTis or HDACis depending on cancer type and once again DNMTis are more efficient than HDACis[151]. Those drugs can also be used to compensate the methylation deregulation of the promoter region of the APM (antigen processing machinery) component, like TAP-1, TAP-2, LMP-2, LMP-7 and MHC molecule in various tumors[152-154]. Epigenetics drugs can also facilitate tumor cells death by inducing the expression of death receptors, stress induced ligands and co-stimulatory molecules that will sensitize tumor cells to immune-mediated cells lysis[155-161]. Those drugs can also sensitize cancer cells to immune checkpoint therapies targeting PDL-1 and PDL-2, PD-1 and CTLA-4 by increasing their expression on both cancer cells and TILs favorizing their response to ICI[153,154]. Woods and collaborators show on a mouse model of melanoma that a pretreatment with HDACis upregulates PD-L1 and PD-L2 expression and favor the effect of the anti-PD1 treatment, slowing tumor progression and increasing mouse survival[162]. The co-inhibition of H3K27me3 and CTLA-4 reduces the number of Tregs in a mouse model of melanoma and limits tumor size[163]. An interesting work of Goswami and collaborators also shows that the pharmacologic inhibition of EZH2 with CPI-1205 on human T cells altered their Treg phenotype and function and enhanced T cytotoxic activity[164]. They also observe in patients with melanoma or prostate cancer that the anti-CTLA-4 ipilimumab increases EZH2 expression in peripheral T cells. Finally, they could demonstrate in their murine models that EZH2 targeting in T cells could improve the antitumor response mediated by an anti-CTLA-4 therapy. EZH2 appears to be a target of choice since several others works have unveiled its implication in ICI response. Zhou *et al*[165] also show in an anti-PD1 resistant model of head and neck cancers that EZH2 targeting can restore response to anti-PD1 treatment by increasing antigen specific CD8+ T cell proliferation. Additionally, EZH2 and DNMT1 co-inhibition increases the expression of the Th1 chemokines CXCL9 and CXCL10 in the ID8 ovarian cancer mouse model. This leads to an increase in CD8+ T cell infiltration and improves response to anti-PD-L1 treatment[8]. As previously mentioned, DNMTis also constitute promising partners for ICI, and particularly 5-azacytidine. In a transplantable mammary carcinoma and mesothelioma murine models, the use of 5-azacytidine increases the anti-CTLA-4 anti-tumor efficiency[166]. A combination of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 together with the two epigenetic modulatory drugs 5-azacytidine and the HDACi entinostat could eradicate tumors in mice with colorectal or metastatic breast cancers. These combined strategies mainly inhibit the suppressive activity of Granulocytic-MDSCs against intratumor T cell killing[167]. Many phase 2 trials are currently testing the impact of entinostat with ICI in several cancers (Table 1).

HCC tumors arise in fibrotic livers enriched in MDSCs with less infiltrating lymphocytes inside the tumor[168]. MDSC enrichment is also correlated with an aggressive tumor phenotype and a poor survival rate. Liu *et al*[144] show on a fibrotic-HCC mouse model that inhibiting monocytic MDSCs with a combination of molibresib, a BET bromodomain inhibitor, with an anti-PD-L1 therapy could enhance TILs and extend mouse survival even with a complete tumor regression[144]. Inhibition of EZH2 and DNMT1 by DZNep and 5-azacytidine respectively, led to tumor regression after anti-PD-L1 treatment of a subcutaneous HCC cell mouse model (HepG2, G-Hep3B and Hepa1-6). This increases cytotoxic T lymphocyte trafficking and promotes cancer cell apoptosis[169]. A second generation of DNMTi molecule, guadecitabine, shows interesting optimization of immunotherapy treatment. Guadecitabine is actually under a clinical trial as a monotherapy in HCC patients and shows a better stability and performance than the first generation DNMTis[130]. Other clinical trials with this DNMTi are actually ongoing in combination with ICI including in HCC (Table 1). HDACi have also been tested in HCC. In a subcutaneous Hepa129 murine model, Llopiz *et al*[170] demonstrate that the HDACi belinostat increases the anti-tumor activity of anti-CTLA-4 therapy. This combination enhances IFN-γ production by T-cells and decreases the number of Tregs. It also induces an early upregulation of PD-L1 on tumor-specific APCs and delay PD-1 expression on TILs. Furthermore, belinostat combined to CTLA-4 and PD-1 blockade leads to a complete tumor rejection[170].

CONCLUSION

The liver is a highly complex organ which orchestrates fundamental metabolisms finely regulated at the transcriptional and epigenetic level. Liver parenchyma also

harbors a specialized immune system playing a central role in liver homeostasis with the constant management of toxins, diet or bacteria susceptible to trigger deleterious inflammation. However, when toxin and pathogenic insults get into chronicity, liver inflammation could sensitize to cancer development in part by immune suppression mechanisms. Thus, this peculiar tumor microenvironment constitutes an interesting opportunity to therapeutic avenues based on ICIs. Due to its high complexity, HCC response to conventional therapies is quite heterogeneous and frequently associated with poor outcome, rendering this cancer one of the deadliest cancers in the world. While several solid tumors are good responders to immunotherapy, ICIs in HCC show disappointing results, especially on β-catenin mutated HCCs, even if ICIs have given better results than tyrosine kinase inhibitors particularly in terms of prolonged response. Contrary to other solid tumors, personalized therapies for HCC are more complex to define, in particular because of tumor appearance in a context of cirrhotic livers with high level of inflammation and damages. Even if genomic analyses of the tumor mutational background have already classified HCCs, a translational approach taking into account the immune cell pattern, inside and outside the tumor, but also their respective epigenetic state, regarding DNA methylation level or histone marks, will be of therapeutic benefit to select the more efficient therapy for each patient. The bi-therapy combining immunotherapies either with anti-angiogenic agents or epigenetic drugs currently appears as the most promising to treat HCC patients. It is now well known that multiple epigenetic modulations can lead to the modification of tumor microenvironment by expressing TAAs, immune checkpoint ligands, costimulatory molecules and death-induced ligands or receptors at the cell surface. Therefore, using epigenetic agents to prime the microenvironment before immunotherapy may favor a better outcome for patients with a re-polarization of immune cells towards an efficient anti-cancer response. Several clinical studies have already shown that these bi-therapies are efficient in different solid tumors like pulmonary cancer, melanoma and colon cancers. Recently, results from clinical trials with epigenetic drugs and immunotherapy on advanced HCC patients showed interesting results with an extension of patient OS. These new combined therapies could be the new hope for HCC treatment. However, these clinical trials were only performed on advanced HCCs and it would be necessary to test these on HCC of lower grade because these treatments may be more efficient on these subgroups. The important point in close future is to identify predictive biomarkers, based on patient responses during clinical trials, to predict patient that will respond to treatment or not. Correlative studies are thus a prerequisite to create guidelines for personalized treatments and sequencing therapies to counteract immune dysfunction and overcome the current barriers to immunotherapies in HCC.

REFERENCES

1 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

2 **Boyault S**, Rickman DS, de Reyniès A, Balabaud C, Rebouissou S, Jeannot E, Hérault A, Saric J, Belghiti J, Franco D, Bioulac-Sage P, Laurent-Puig P, Zucman-Rossi J. Transcriptome classification of HCC is related to gene alterations and to new therapeutic targets. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 42-52 [PMID: 17187432 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21467]

3 **Guichard C**, Amaddeo G, Imbeaud S, Ladeiro Y, Pelletier L, Maad IB, Calderaro J, Bioulac-Sage P, Letexier M, Degos F, Clément B, Balabaud C, Chevet E, Laurent A, Couchy G, Letouzé E, Calvo F, Zucman-Rossi J. Integrated analysis of somatic mutations and focal copy-number changes identifies key genes and pathways in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Genet* 2012; **44**: 694-698 [PMID: 22561517 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2256]

4 **Schulze K**, Imbeaud S, Letouzé E, Alexandrov LB, Calderaro J, Rebouissou S, Couchy G, Meiller C, Shinde J, Soysouvanh F, Calatayud AL, Pinyol R, Pelletier L, Balabaud C, Laurent A, Blanc JF, Mazzaferro V, Calvo F, Villanueva A, Nault JC, Bioulac-Sage P, Stratton MR, Llovet JM, Zucman-Rossi J. Exome sequencing of hepatocellular carcinomas identifies new mutational signatures and potential therapeutic targets. *Nat Genet* 2015; **47**: 505-511 [PMID: 25822088 DOI: 10.1038/ng.3252]

5 **Gougelet A**, Desbois-Mouthon C. Non-coding RNAs open a new chapter in liver cancer treatment. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2019; **43**: 630-637 [PMID: 31401041 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2019.07.005]

6 **Cheng Y**, He C, Wang M, Ma X, Mo F, Yang S, Han J, Wei X. Targeting epigenetic regulators for cancer therapy: mechanisms and advances in clinical trials. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2019; **4**: 62 [PMID: 31871779 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-019-0095-0]

7 **Ghoneim HE**, Fan Y, Moustaki A, Abdelsamed HA, Dash P, Dogra P, Carter R, Awad W, Neale G, Thomas PG, Youngblood B. De Novo Epigenetic Programs Inhibit PD-1 Blockade-Mediated T Cell Rejuvenation. *Cell* 2017; **170**: 142-157.e19 [PMID: 28648661 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.007]

8 **Peng D**, Kryczek I, Nagarsheth N, Zhao L, Wei S, Wang W, Sun Y, Zhao E, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Kotarski J, Tarkowski R, Dou Y, Cho K, Hensley-Alford S, Munkarah A, Liu R, Zou W. Epigenetic silencing of TH1-type chemokines shapes tumour immunity and immunotherapy. *Nature* 2015; **527**: 249-253 [PMID: 26503055 DOI: 10.1038/nature15520]

9 **Xiao G**, Jin LL, Liu CQ, Wang YC, Meng YM, Zhou ZG, Chen J, Yu XJ, Zhang YJ, Xu J, Zheng L. EZH2 negatively regulates PD-L1 expression in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Immunother Cancer* 2019; **7**: 300 [PMID: 31727135 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-019-0784-9]

10 **Tsang FH**, Law CT, Tang TC, Cheng CL, Chin DW, Tam WV, Wei L, Wong CC, Ng IO, Wong CM. Aberrant Super-Enhancer Landscape in Human Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2019; **69**: 2502-2517 [PMID: 30723918 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30544]

11 **Zhu H**, Bengsch F, Svoronos N, Rutkowski MR, Bitler BG, Allegrezza MJ, Yokoyama Y, Kossenkov AV, Bradner JE, Conejo-Garcia JR, Zhang R. BET Bromodomain Inhibition Promotes Anti-tumor Immunity by Suppressing PD-L1 Expression. *Cell Rep* 2016; **16**: 2829-2837 [PMID: 27626654 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2016.08.032]

12 **El-Serag HB**, Rudolph KL. Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology and molecular carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2557-2576 [PMID: 17570226 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.061]

13 **Harding JJ**, Nandakumar S, Armenia J, Khalil DN, Albano M, Ly M, Shia J, Hechtman JF, Kundra R, El Dika I, Do RK, Sun Y, Kingham TP, D'Angelica MI, Berger MF, Hyman DM, Jarnagin W, Klimstra DS, Janjigian YY, Solit DB, Schultz N, Abou-Alfa GK. Prospective Genotyping of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Clinical Implications of Next-Generation Sequencing for Matching Patients to Targeted and Immune Therapies. *Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **25**: 2116-2126 [PMID: 30373752 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-2293]

14 **Pinyol R**, Sia D, Llovet JM. Immune Exclusion-Wnt/CTNNB1 Class Predicts Resistance to Immunotherapies in HCC. *Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **25**: 2021-2023 [PMID: 30617138 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-3778]

15 **Sia D**, Jiao Y, Martinez-Quetglas I, Kuchuk O, Villacorta-Martin C, Castro de Moura M, Putra J, Camprecios G, Bassaganyas L, Akers N, Losic B, Waxman S, Thung SN, Mazzaferro V, Esteller M, Friedman SL, Schwartz M, Villanueva A, Llovet JM. Identification of an Immune-specific Class of Hepatocellular Carcinoma, Based on Molecular Features. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **153**: 812-826 [PMID: 28624577 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.06.007]

16 **El-Sahli S**, Xie Y, Wang L, Liu S. Wnt Signaling in Cancer Metabolism and Immunity. *Cancers (Basel)* 2019; **11** [PMID: 31261718 DOI: 10.3390/cancers11070904]

17 **Schneider H**, Prasad KV, Shoelson SE, Rudd CE. CTLA-4 binding to the lipid kinase phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in T cells. *J Exp Med* 1995; **181**: 351-355 [PMID: 7807015 DOI: 10.1084/jem.181.1.351]

18 **Schneider H**, Mandelbrot DA, Greenwald RJ, Ng F, Lechler R, Sharpe AH, Rudd CE. Cutting edge: CTLA-4 (CD152) differentially regulates mitogen-activated protein kinases (extracellular signal-regulated kinase and c-Jun N-terminal kinase) in CD4+ T cells from receptor/Ligand-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 3475-3479 [PMID: 12244135 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.169.7.3475]

19 **Patsoukis N**, Bardhan K, Chatterjee P, Sari D, Liu B, Bell LN, Karoly ED, Freeman GJ, Petkova V, Seth P, Li L, Boussiotis VA. PD-1 alters T-cell metabolic reprogramming by inhibiting glycolysis and promoting lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation. *Nat Commun* 2015; **6**: 6692 [PMID: 25809635 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms7692]

20 **Rekik R**, Belhadj Hmida N, Ben Hmid A, Zamali I, Kammoun N, Ben Ahmed M. PD-1 induction through TCR activation is partially regulated by endogenous TGF-β. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2015; **12**: 648-649 [PMID: 25363526 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2014.104]

21 **Oestreich KJ**, Yoon H, Ahmed R, Boss JM. NFATc1 regulates PD-1 expression upon T cell activation. *J Immunol* 2008; **181**: 4832-4839 [PMID: 18802087 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.7.4832]

22 **Staron MM**, Gray SM, Marshall HD, Parish IA, Chen JH, Perry CJ, Cui G, Li MO, Kaech SM. The transcription factor FoxO1 sustains expression of the inhibitory receptor PD-1 and survival of antiviral CD8(+) T cells during chronic infection. *Immunity* 2014; **41**: 802-814 [PMID: 25464856 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.10.013]

23 **Terawaki S**, Chikuma S, Shibayama S, Hayashi T, Yoshida T, Okazaki T, Honjo T. IFN-α directly promotes programmed cell death-1 transcription and limits the duration of T cell-mediated immunity. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 2772-2779 [PMID: 21263073 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003208]

24 **Austin JW**, Lu P, Majumder P, Ahmed R, Boss JM. STAT3, STAT4, NFATc1, and CTCF regulate PD-1 through multiple novel regulatory regions in murine T cells. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 4876-4886 [PMID: 24711622 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1302750]

25 **Li Q**, Johnston N, Zheng X, Wang H, Zhang X, Gao D, Min W. miR-28 modulates exhaustive differentiation of T cells through silencing programmed cell death-1 and regulating cytokine secretion. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 53735-53750 [PMID: 27447564 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.10731]

26 **Wei J**, Nduom EK, Kong LY, Hashimoto Y, Xu S, Gabrusiewicz K, Ling X, Huang N, Qiao W, Zhou S, Ivan C, Fuller GN, Gilbert MR, Overwijk W, Calin GA, Heimberger AB. MiR-138 exerts anti-glioma efficacy by targeting immune checkpoints. *Neuro Oncol* 2016; **18**: 639-648 [PMID: 26658052 DOI: 10.1093/neuonc/nov292]

27 **Zhang G**, Li N, Li Z, Zhu Q, Li F, Yang C, Han Q, Lv Y, Zhou Z, Liu Z. microRNA-4717

differentially interacts with its polymorphic target in the PD1 3' untranslated region: A mechanism for regulating PD-1 expression and function in HBV-associated liver diseases. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 18933-18944 [PMID: 25895129 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.3662]

28 **Sasidharan Nair V**, Toor SM, Taha RZ, Shaath H, Elkord E. DNA methylation and repressive histones in the promoters of PD-1, CTLA-4, TIM-3, LAG-3, TIGIT, PD-L1, and galectin-9 genes in human colorectal cancer. *Clin Epigenetics* 2018; **10**: 104 [PMID: 30081950 DOI: 10.1186/s13148-018-0539-3]

29 **Goodman AM**, Piccioni D, Kato S, Boichard A, Wang HY, Frampton G, Lippman SM, Connelly C, Fabrizio D, Miller V, Sicklick JK, Kurzrock R. Prevalence of PDL1 Amplification and Preliminary Response to Immune Checkpoint Blockade in Solid Tumors. *JAMA Oncol* 2018; **4**: 1237-1244 [PMID: 29902298 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.1701]

30 **Budczies J**, Bockmayr M, Denkert C, Klauschen F, Gröschel S, Darb-Esfahani S, Pfarr N, Leichsenring J, Onozato ML, Lennerz JK, Dietel M, Fröhling S, Schirmacher P, Iafrate AJ, Weichert W, Stenzinger A. Pan-cancer analysis of copy number changes in programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1, CD274) - associations with gene expression, mutational load, and survival. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 2016; **55**: 626-639 [PMID: 27106868 DOI: 10.1002/gcc.22365]

31 **Goltz D**, Gevensleben H, Dietrich J, Dietrich D. *PD-L1* (*CD274*) promoter methylation predicts survival in colorectal cancer patients. *Oncoimmunology* 2017; **6**: e1257454 [PMID: 28197377 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2016.1257454]

32 **Gevensleben H**, Holmes EE, Goltz D, Dietrich J, Sailer V, Ellinger J, Dietrich D, Kristiansen G. PD-L1 promoter methylation is a prognostic biomarker for biochemical recurrence-free survival in prostate cancer patients following radical prostatectomy. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 79943-79955 [PMID: 27835597 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.13161]

33 **Sun C**, Mezzadra R, Schumacher TN. Regulation and Function of the PD-L1 Checkpoint. *Immunity* 2018; **48**: 434-452 [PMID: 29562194 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2018.03.014]

34 **Jiang X**, Wang J, Deng X, Xiong F, Ge J, Xiang B, Wu X, Ma J, Zhou M, Li X, Li Y, Li G, Xiong W, Guo C, Zeng Z. Role of the tumor microenvironment in PD-L1/PD-1-mediated tumor immune escape. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 10 [PMID: 30646912 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-018-0928-4]

35 **Kao SC**, Cheng YY, Williams M, Kirschner MB, Madore J, Lum T, Sarun KH, Linton A, McCaughan B, Klebe S, van Zandwijk N, Scolyer RA, Boyer MJ, Cooper WA, Reid G. Tumor Suppressor microRNAs Contribute to the Regulation of PD-L1 Expression in Malignant Pleural Mesothelioma. *J Thorac Oncol* 2017; **12**: 1421-1433 [PMID: 28629895 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtho.2017.05.024]

36 **Audrito V**, Serra S, Stingi A, Orso F, Gaudino F, Bologna C, Neri F, Garaffo G, Nassini R, Baroni G, Rulli E, Massi D, Oliviero S, Piva R, Taverna D, Mandalà M, Deaglio S. PD-L1 up-regulation in melanoma increases disease aggressiveness and is mediated through miR-17-5p. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 15894-15911 [PMID: 28199980 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.15213]

37 **Wang X**, Li J, Dong K, Lin F, Long M, Ouyang Y, Wei J, Chen X, Weng Y, He T, Zhang H. Tumor suppressor miR-34a targets PD-L1 and functions as a potential immunotherapeutic target in acute myeloid leukemia. *Cell Signal* 2015; **27**: 443-452 [PMID: 25499621 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2014.12.003]

38 **Cioffi M**, Trabulo SM, Vallespinos M, Raj D, Kheir TB, Lin ML, Begum J, Baker AM, Amgheib A, Saif J, Perez M, Soriano J, Desco M, Gomez-Gaviro MV, Cusso L, Megias D, Aicher A, Heeschen C. The miR-25-93-106b cluster regulates tumor metastasis and immune evasion *via* modulation of CXCL12 and PD-L1. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 21609-21625 [PMID: 28423491 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.15450]

39 **Zhao L**, Yu H, Yi S, Peng X, Su P, Xiao Z, Liu R, Tang A, Li X, Liu F, Shen S. The tumor suppressor miR-138-5p targets PD-L1 in colorectal cancer. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 45370-45384 [PMID: 27248318 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.9659]

40 **Xie WB**, Liang LH, Wu KG, Wang LX, He X, Song C, Wang YQ, Li YH. MiR-140 Expression Regulates Cell Proliferation and Targets PD-L1 in NSCLC. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2018; **46**: 654-663 [PMID: 29617683 DOI: 10.1159/000488634]

41 **Jia L**, Xi Q, Wang H, Zhang Z, Liu H, Cheng Y, Guo X, Zhang J, Zhang Q, Zhang L, Xue Z, Li Y, Da Y, Zhao P, Zhang R. miR-142-5p regulates tumor cell PD-L1 expression and enhances anti-tumor immunity. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2017; **488**: 425-431 [PMID: 28511795 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2017.05.074]

42 **Wang Y**, Wang D, Xie G, Yin Y, Zhao E, Tao K, Li R. MicroRNA-152 regulates immune response *via* targeting B7-H1 in gastric carcinoma. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 28125-28134 [PMID: 28427226 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.15924]

43 **Fujita Y**, Yagishita S, Hagiwara K, Yoshioka Y, Kosaka N, Takeshita F, Fujiwara T, Tsuta K, Nokihara H, Tamura T, Asamura H, Kawaishi M, Kuwano K, Ochiya T. The clinical relevance of the miR-197/CKS1B/STAT3-mediated PD-L1 network in chemoresistant non-small-cell lung cancer. *Mol Ther* 2015; **23**: 717-727 [PMID: 25597412 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2015.10]

44 **Chen L**, Gibbons DL, Goswami S, Cortez MA, Ahn YH, Byers LA, Zhang X, Yi X, Dwyer D, Lin W, Diao L, Wang J, Roybal J, Patel M, Ungewiss C, Peng D, Antonia S, Mediavilla-Varela M, Robertson G, Suraokar M, Welsh JW, Erez B, Wistuba II, Chen L, Wang S, Ullrich SE, Heymach JV, Kurie JM, Qin FX. Metastasis is regulated *via* microRNA-200/ZEB1 axis control of tumour cell PD-L1 expression and intratumoral immunosuppression. *Nat Commun* 2014; **5**: 5241 [PMID: 25348003 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms6241]

45 **Miao S**, Mao X, Zhao S, Song K, Xiang C, Lv Y, Jiang H, Wang L, Li B, Yang X, Yuan Z, Xiu C, Meng H, Sun J. miR-217 inhibits laryngeal cancer metastasis by repressing AEG-1 and PD-L1 expression. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 62143-62153 [PMID: 28977933 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.19121]

46 **Holla S**, Stephen-Victor E, Prakhar P, Sharma M, Saha C, Udupa V, Kaveri SV, Bayry J, Balaji KN. Mycobacteria-responsive sonic hedgehog signaling mediates programmed death-ligand 1- and prostaglandin E2-induced regulatory T cell expansion. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 24193 [PMID: 27080341 DOI: 10.1038/srep24193]

47 **Xu S**, Tao Z, Hai B, Liang H, Shi Y, Wang T, Song W, Chen Y, OuYang J, Chen J, Kong F, Dong Y, Jiang SW, Li W, Wang P, Yuan Z, Wan X, Wang C, Zhang X, Chen K. miR-424(322) reverses chemoresistance *via* T-cell immune response activation by blocking the PD-L1 immune checkpoint. *Nat Commun* 2016; **7**: 11406 [PMID: 27147225 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms11406]

48 **Gong AY**, Zhou R, Hu G, Liu J, Sosnowska D, Drescher KM, Dong H, Chen XM. Cryptosporidium parvum induces B7-H1 expression in cholangiocytes by down-regulating microRNA-513. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **201**: 160-169 [PMID: 19916867 DOI: 10.1086/648589]

49 **Guo W**, Tan W, Liu S, Huang X, Lin J, Liang R, Su L, Su Q, Wang C. MiR-570 inhibited the cell proliferation and invasion through directly targeting B7-H1 in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Tumour Biol* 2015; **36**: 9049-9057 [PMID: 26084609 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-015-3644-3]

50 **Chuang E**, Alegre ML, Duckett CS, Noel PJ, Vander Heiden MG, Thompson CB. Interaction of CTLA-4 with the clathrin-associated protein AP50 results in ligand-independent endocytosis that limits cell surface expression. *J Immunol* 1997; **159**: 144-151 [PMID: 9200449]

51 **Gibson HM**, Hedgcock CJ, Aufiero BM, Wilson AJ, Hafner MS, Tsokos GC, Wong HK. Induction of the CTLA-4 gene in human lymphocytes is dependent on NFAT binding the proximal promoter. *J Immunol* 2007; **179**: 3831-3840 [PMID: 17785820 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.6.3831]

52 **Contardi E**, Palmisano GL, Tazzari PL, Martelli AM, Falà F, Fabbi M, Kato T, Lucarelli E, Donati D, Polito L, Bolognesi A, Ricci F, Salvi S, Gargaglione V, Mantero S, Alberghini M, Ferrara GB, Pistillo MP. CTLA-4 is constitutively expressed on tumor cells and can trigger apoptosis upon ligand interaction. *Int J Cancer* 2005; **117**: 538-550 [PMID: 15912538 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.21155]

53 **Goltz D**, Gevensleben H, Vogt TJ, Dietrich J, Golletz C, Bootz F, Kristiansen G, Landsberg J, Dietrich D. CTLA4 methylation predicts response to anti-PD-1 and anti-CTLA-4 immunotherapy in melanoma patients. *JCI Insight* 2018; **3** [PMID: 29997292 DOI: 10.1172/jci.insight.96793]

54 **Shah KV**, Chien AJ, Yee C, Moon RT. CTLA-4 is a direct target of Wnt/beta-catenin signaling and is expressed in human melanoma tumors. *J Invest Dermatol* 2008; **128**: 2870-2879 [PMID: 18563180 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2008.170]

55 **Wang XB**, Zhao X, Giscombe R, Lefvert AK. A CTLA-4 gene polymorphism at position -318 in the promoter region affects the expression of protein. *Genes Immun* 2002; **3**: 233-234 [PMID: 12058260 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gene.6363869]

56 **Jebbawi F**, Fayyad-Kazan H, Merimi M, Lewalle P, Verougstraete JC, Leo O, Romero P, Burny A, Badran B, Martiat P, Rouas R. A microRNA profile of human CD8(+) regulatory T cells and characterization of the effects of microRNAs on Treg cell-associated genes. *J Transl Med* 2014; **12**: 218 [PMID: 25090912 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-014-0218-x]

57 **Zurawek M**, Dzikiewicz-Krawczyk A, Izykowska K, Ziolkowska-Suchanek I, Skowronska B, Czainska M, Podralska M, Fichna P, Przybylski G, Fichna M, Nowak J. miR-487a-3p upregulated in type 1 diabetes targets CTLA4 and FOXO3. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2018; **142**: 146-153 [PMID: 29859273 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2018.05.044]

58 **Tirapu I**, Huarte E, Guiducci C, Arina A, Zaratiegui M, Murillo O, Gonzalez A, Berasain C, Berraondo P, Fortes P, Prieto J, Colombo MP, Chen L, Melero I. Low surface expression of B7-1 (CD80) is an immunoescape mechanism of colon carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 2442-2450 [PMID: 16489051 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-1681]

59 **Tatsumi T**, Takehara T, Katayama K, Mochizuki K, Yamamoto M, Kanto T, Sasaki Y, Kasahara A, Hayashi N. Expression of costimulatory molecules B7-1 (CD80) and B7-2 (CD86) on human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 1108-1114 [PMID: 9141426 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510250511]

60 **Yao H**, Wang H, Li C, Fang JY, Xu J. Cancer Cell-Intrinsic PD-1 and Implications in Combinatorial Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2018; **9**: 1774 [PMID: 30105035 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01774]

61 **Li H**, Li X, Liu S, Guo L, Zhang B, Zhang J, Ye Q. Programmed cell death-1 (PD-1) checkpoint blockade in combination with a mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor restrains hepatocellular carcinoma growth induced by hepatoma cell-intrinsic PD-1. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 1920-1933 [PMID: 28732118 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29360]

62 **Tang H**, Liang Y, Anders RA, Taube JM, Qiu X, Mulgaonkar A, Liu X, Harrington SM, Guo J, Xin Y, Xiong Y, Nham K, Silvers W, Hao G, Sun X, Chen M, Hannan R, Qiao J, Dong H, Peng H, Fu YX. PD-L1 on host cells is essential for PD-L1 blockade-mediated tumor regression. *J Clin Invest* 2018; **128**: 580-588 [PMID: 29337303 DOI: 10.1172/JCI96061]

63 **Wu AA**, Drake V, Huang HS, Chiu S, Zheng L. Reprogramming the tumor microenvironment: tumor-induced immunosuppressive factors paralyze T cells. *Oncoimmunology* 2015; **4**: e1016700 [PMID: 26140242 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2015.1016700]

64 **Youngblood B**, Noto A, Porichis F, Akondy RS, Ndhlovu ZM, Austin JW, Bordi R, Procopio FA, Miura T, Allen TM, Sidney J, Sette A, Walker BD, Ahmed R, Boss JM, Sékaly RP, Kaufmann DE. Cutting edge: Prolonged exposure to HIV reinforces a poised epigenetic program for PD-1 expression in virus-specific CD8 T cells. *J Immunol* 2013; **191**: 540-544 [PMID: 23772031 DOI:

10.4049/jimmunol.1203161]

65 **Youngblood B**, Oestreich KJ, Ha SJ, Duraiswamy J, Akondy RS, West EE, Wei Z, Lu P, Austin JW, Riley JL, Boss JM, Ahmed R. Chronic virus infection enforces demethylation of the locus that encodes PD-1 in antigen-specific CD8(+) T cells. *Immunity* 2011; **35**: 400-412 [PMID: 21943489 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.06.015]

66 **Godin-Ethier J**, Hanafi LA, Piccirillo CA, Lapointe R. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression in human cancers: clinical and immunologic perspectives. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 6985-6991 [PMID: 22068654 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-1331]

67 **Rodriguez PC**, Quiceno DG, Zabaleta J, Ortiz B, Zea AH, Piazuelo MB, Delgado A, Correa P, Brayer J, Sotomayor EM, Antonia S, Ochoa JB, Ochoa AC. Arginase I production in the tumor microenvironment by mature myeloid cells inhibits T-cell receptor expression and antigen-specific T-cell responses. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 5839-5849 [PMID: 15313928 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-0465]

68 **Uyttenhove C**, Pilotte L, Théate I, Stroobant V, Colau D, Parmentier N, Boon T, Van den Eynde BJ. Evidence for a tumoral immune resistance mechanism based on tryptophan degradation by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. *Nat Med* 2003; **9**: 1269-1274 [PMID: 14502282 DOI: 10.1038/nm934]

69 **Rodriguez PC**, Quiceno DG, Ochoa AC. L-arginine availability regulates T-lymphocyte cell-cycle progression. *Blood* 2007; **109**: 1568-1573 [PMID: 17023580 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2006-06-031856]

70 **Liu J**, Ma Q, Zhang M, Wang X, Zhang D, Li W, Wang F, Wu E. Alterations of TP53 are associated with a poor outcome for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: evidence from a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Cancer* 2012; **48**: 2328-2338 [PMID: 22459764 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2012.03.001]

71 **Hendrickson PG**, Olson M, Luetkens T, Weston S, Han T, Atanackovic D, Fine GC. The promise of adoptive cellular immunotherapies in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncoimmunology* 2020; **9**: 1673129 [PMID: 32002284 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2019.1673129]

72 **Liang J**, Ding T, Guo ZW, Yu XJ, Hu YZ, Zheng L, Xu J. Expression pattern of tumour-associated antigens in hepatocellular carcinoma: association with immune infiltration and disease progression. *Br J Cancer* 2013; **109**: 1031-1039 [PMID: 23868000 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2013.390]

73 **Groh V**, Wu J, Yee C, Spies T. Tumour-derived soluble MIC ligands impair expression of NKG2D and T-cell activation. *Nature* 2002; **419**: 734-738 [PMID: 12384702 DOI: 10.1038/nature01112]

74 **Fernald K**, Kurokawa M. Evading apoptosis in cancer. *Trends Cell Biol* 2013; **23**: 620-633 [PMID: 23958396 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2013.07.006]

75 **Binnewies M**, Roberts EW, Kersten K, Chan V, Fearon DF, Merad M, Coussens LM, Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Hedrick CC, Vonderheide RH, Pittet MJ, Jain RK, Zou W, Howcroft TK, Woodhouse EC, Weinberg RA, Krummel MF. Understanding the tumor immune microenvironment (TIME) for effective therapy. *Nat Med* 2018; **24**: 541-550 [PMID: 29686425 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-018-0014-x]

76 **Jiang P**, Gu S, Pan D, Fu J, Sahu A, Hu X, Li Z, Traugh N, Bu X, Li B, Liu J, Freeman GJ, Brown MA, Wucherpfennig KW, Liu XS. Signatures of T cell dysfunction and exclusion predict cancer immunotherapy response. *Nat Med* 2018; **24**: 1550-1558 [PMID: 30127393 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-018-0136-1]

77 **Romeo E**, Caserta CA, Rumio C, Marcucci F. The Vicious Cross-Talk between Tumor Cells with an EMT Phenotype and Cells of the Immune System. *Cells* 2019; **8** [PMID: 31096701 DOI: 10.3390/cells8050460]

78 **Spranger S**, Bao R, Gajewski TF. Melanoma-intrinsic β-catenin signalling prevents anti-tumour immunity. *Nature* 2015; **523**: 231-235 [PMID: 25970248 DOI: 10.1038/nature14404]

79 **Ruiz de Galarreta M**, Bresnahan E, Molina-Sánchez P, Lindblad KE, Maier B, Sia D, Puigvehi M, Miguela V, Casanova-Acebes M, Dhainaut M, Villacorta-Martin C, Singhi AD, Moghe A, von Felden J, Tal Grinspan L, Wang S, Kamphorst AO, Monga SP, Brown BD, Villanueva A, Llovet JM, Merad M, Lujambio A. β-Catenin Activation Promotes Immune Escape and Resistance to Anti-PD-1 Therapy in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cancer Discov* 2019; **9**: 1124-1141 [PMID: 31186238 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0074]

80 **Wu C**, Lin J, Weng Y, Zeng DN, Xu J, Luo S, Xu L, Liu M, Hua Q, Liu CQ, Li JQ, Liao J, Sun C, Zhou J, Chen MS, Liu C, Guo Z, Zhuang SM, Huang JH, Zheng L. Myeloid signature reveals immune contexture and predicts the prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Invest* 2020; **130**: 4679-4693 [PMID: 32497024 DOI: 10.1172/JCI135048]

81 **Calderaro J**, Rousseau B, Amaddeo G, Mercey M, Charpy C, Costentin C, Luciani A, Zafrani ES, Laurent A, Azoulay D, Lafdil F, Pawlotsky JM. Programmed death ligand 1 expression in hepatocellular carcinoma: Relationship With clinical and pathological features. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 2038-2046 [PMID: 27359084 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28710]

82 **Liu CQ**, Xu J, Zhou ZG, Jin LL, Yu XJ, Xiao G, Lin J, Zhuang SM, Zhang YJ, Zheng L. Expression patterns of programmed death ligand 1 correlate with different microenvironments and patient prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br J Cancer* 2018; **119**: 80-88 [PMID: 29921949 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-018-0144-4]

83 **Yu S**, Wang Y, Hou J, Li W, Wang X, Xiang L, Tan D, Wang W, Jiang L, Claret FX, Jiao M, Guo H. Tumor-infiltrating immune cells in hepatocellular carcinoma: Tregs is correlated with poor overall survival. *PLoS One* 2020; **15**: e0231003 [PMID: 32240238 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0231003]

84 **Le DT**, Durham JN, Smith KN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Aulakh LK, Lu S, Kemberling H, Wilt C, Luber BS, Wong F, Azad NS, Rucki AA, Laheru D, Donehower R, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Greten TF, Duffy AG, Ciombor KK, Eyring AD, Lam BH, Joe A, Kang SP, Holdhoff M, Danilova L, Cope L, Meyer C, Zhou S, Goldberg RM, Armstrong DK, Bever KM, Fader AN, Taube J, Housseau F, Spetzler D, Xiao N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Anders RA, Diaz LA Jr. Mismatch repair deficiency predicts response of solid tumors to PD-1 blockade. *Science* 2017; **357**: 409-413 [PMID: 28596308 DOI: 10.1126/science.aan6733]

85 **Marabelle A**, Fakih M, Lopez J, Shah M, Shapira-Frommer R, Nakagawa K, Chung HC, Kindler HL, Lopez-Martin JA, Miller WH Jr, Italiano A, Kao S, Piha-Paul SA, Delord JP, McWilliams RR, Fabrizio DA, Aurora-Garg D, Xu L, Jin F, Norwood K, Bang YJ. Association of tumour mutational burden with outcomes in patients with advanced solid tumours treated with pembrolizumab: prospective biomarker analysis of the multicohort, open-label, phase 2 KEYNOTE-158 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 1353-1365 [PMID: 32919526 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30445-9]

86 **Hodi FS**, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, Gonzalez R, Robert C, Schadendorf D, Hassel JC, Akerley W, van den Eertwegh AJ, Lutzky J, Lorigan P, Vaubel JM, Linette GP, Hogg D, Ottensmeier CH, Lebbé C, Peschel C, Quirt I, Clark JI, Wolchok JD, Weber JS, Tian J, Yellin MJ, Nichol GM, Hoos A, Urba WJ. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 711-723 [PMID: 20525992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1003466]

87 **Ribas A**, Hamid O, Daud A, Hodi FS, Wolchok JD, Kefford R, Joshua AM, Patnaik A, Hwu WJ, Weber JS, Gangadhar TC, Hersey P, Dronca R, Joseph RW, Zarour H, Chmielowski B, Lawrence DP, Algazi A, Rizvi NA, Hoffner B, Mateus C, Gergich K, Lindia JA, Giannotti M, Li XN, Ebbinghaus S, Kang SP, Robert C. Association of Pembrolizumab With Tumor Response and Survival Among Patients With Advanced Melanoma. *JAMA* 2016; **315**: 1600-1609 [PMID: 27092830 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2016.4059]

88 **Huang X**, Zhang X, Li E, Zhang G, Wang X, Tang T, Bai X, Liang T. VISTA: an immune regulatory protein checking tumor and immune cells in cancer immunotherapy. *J Hematol Oncol* 2020; **13**: 83 [PMID: 32600443 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-020-00917-y]

89 **Chauvin JM**, Zarour HM. TIGIT in cancer immunotherapy. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32900861 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000957]

90 **Acharya N**, Sabatos-Peyton C, Anderson AC. Tim-3 finds its place in the cancer immunotherapy landscape. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32601081 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000911]

91 **Maruhashi T**, Sugiura D, Okazaki IM, Okazaki T. LAG-3: from molecular functions to clinical applications. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32929051 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-001014]

92 **Alves Costa Silva C**, Facchinetti F, Routy B, Derosa L. New pathways in immune stimulation: targeting OX40. *ESMO Open* 2020; **5** [PMID: 32392177 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2019-000573]

93 **Buzzatti G**, Dellepiane C, Del Mastro L. New emerging targets in cancer immunotherapy: the role of GITR. *ESMO Open* 2020; **4**: e000738 [PMID: 32817129 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2020-000738]

94 **Addeo A**, Rinaldi CR. Treatment with ipilimumab: a case report of complete response in a metastatic malignant melanoma patient. *Case Rep Oncol* 2013; **6**: 285-288 [PMID: 23898270 DOI: 10.1159/000351834]

95 **Schadendorf D**, Hodi FS, Robert C, Weber JS, Margolin K, Hamid O, Patt D, Chen TT, Berman DM, Wolchok JD. Pooled Analysis of Long-Term Survival Data From Phase II and Phase III Trials of Ipilimumab in Unresectable or Metastatic Melanoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 1889-1894 [PMID: 25667295 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.56.2736]

96 **Sangro B**, Gomez-Martin C, de la Mata M, Iñarrairaegui M, Garralda E, Barrera P, Riezu-Boj JI, Larrea E, Alfaro C, Sarobe P, Lasarte JJ, Pérez-Gracia JL, Melero I, Prieto J. A clinical trial of CTLA-4 blockade with tremelimumab in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2013; **59**: 81-88 [PMID: 23466307 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.02.022]

97 **Duffy AG**, Ulahannan SV, Makorova-Rusher O, Rahma O, Wedemeyer H, Pratt D, Davis JL, Hughes MS, Heller T, ElGindi M, Uppala A, Korangy F, Kleiner DE, Figg WD, Venzon D, Steinberg SM, Venkatesan AM, Krishnasamy V, Abi-Jaoudeh N, Levy E, Wood BJ, Greten TF. Tremelimumab in combination with ablation in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2017; **66**: 545-551 [PMID: 27816492 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.10.029]

98 **Samaan MA**, Pavlidis P, Papa S, Powell N, Irving PM. Gastrointestinal toxicity of immune checkpoint inhibitors: from mechanisms to management. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **15**: 222-234 [PMID: 29512649 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2018.14]

99 **Barnes MJ**, Griseri T, Johnson AM, Young W, Powrie F, Izcue A. CTLA-4 promotes Foxp3 induction and regulatory T cell accumulation in the intestinal lamina propria. *Mucosal Immunol* 2013; **6**: 324-334 [PMID: 22910217 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2012.75]

100 **De Martin E**, Michot JM, Papouin B, Champiat S, Mateus C, Lambotte O, Roche B, Antonini TM, Coilly A, Laghouati S, Robert C, Marabelle A, Guettier C, Samuel D. Characterization of liver injury induced by cancer immunotherapy using immune checkpoint inhibitors. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 1181-1190 [PMID: 29427729 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.01.033]

101 **Haanen J**, Ernstoff M, Wang Y, Menzies A, Puzanov I, Grivas P, Larkin J, Peters S, Thompson J, Obeid M. Rechallenge patients with immune checkpoint inhibitors following severe immune-related adverse events: review of the literature and suggested prophylactic strategy. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32532839 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000604]

102 **Menzies AM**, Johnson DB, Ramanujam S, Atkinson VG, Wong ANM, Park JJ, McQuade JL,

Shoushtari AN, Tsai KK, Eroglu Z, Klein O, Hassel JC, Sosman JA, Guminski A, Sullivan RJ, Ribas A, Carlino MS, Davies MA, Sandhu SK, Long GV. Anti-PD-1 therapy in patients with advanced melanoma and preexisting autoimmune disorders or major toxicity with ipilimumab. *Ann Oncol* 2017; **28**: 368-376 [PMID: 27687304 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdw443]

103 **Khoja L**, Day D, Wei-Wu Chen T, Siu LL, Hansen AR. Tumour- and class-specific patterns of immune-related adverse events of immune checkpoint inhibitors: a systematic review. *Ann Oncol* 2017; **28**: 2377-2385 [PMID: 28945858 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdx286]

104 **Pardoll DM**. The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 252-264 [PMID: 22437870 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3239]

105 **Das R**, Verma R, Sznol M, Boddupalli CS, Gettinger SN, Kluger H, Callahan M, Wolchok JD, Halaban R, Dhodapkar MV, Dhodapkar KM. Combination therapy with anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 Leads to distinct immunologic changes in vivo. *J Immunol* 2015; **194**: 950-959 [PMID: 25539810 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1401686]

106 **Sugiura D**, Maruhashi T, Okazaki IM, Shimizu K, Maeda TK, Takemoto T, Okazaki T. Restriction of PD-1 function by *cis*-PD-L1/CD80 interactions is required for optimal T cell responses. *Science* 2019; **364**: 558-566 [PMID: 31000591 DOI: 10.1126/science.aav7062]

107 **Banna GL**, Cantale O, Bersanelli M, Del Re M, Friedlaender A, Cortellini A, Addeo A. Are anti-PD1 and anti-PD-L1 alike? *Oncol Rev* 2020; **14**: 490 [PMID: 32782728 DOI: 10.4081/oncol.2020.490]

108 **El-Khoueiry AB**, Sangro B, Yau T, Crocenzi TS, Kudo M, Hsu C, Kim TY, Choo SP, Trojan J, Welling TH Rd, Meyer T, Kang YK, Yeo W, Chopra A, Anderson J, Dela Cruz C, Lang L, Neely J, Tang H, Dastani HB, Melero I. Nivolumab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (CheckMate 040): an open-label, non-comparative, phase 1/2 dose escalation and expansion trial. *Lancet* 2017; **389**: 2492-2502 [PMID: 28434648 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(17)31046-2]

109 **Zhu AX**, Finn RS, Edeline J, Cattan S, Ogasawara S, Palmer D, Verslype C, Zagonel V, Fartoux L, Vogel A, Sarker D, Verset G, Chan SL, Knox J, Daniele B, Webber AL, Ebbinghaus SW, Ma J, Siegel AB, Cheng AL, Kudo M; KEYNOTE-224 investigators. Pembrolizumab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma previously treated with sorafenib (KEYNOTE-224): a non-randomised, open-label phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2018; **19**: 940-952 [PMID: 29875066 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30351-6]

110 **Yau T**, Hsu C, Kim TY, Choo SP, Kang YK, Hou MM, Numata K, Yeo W, Chopra A, Ikeda M, Kuromatsu R, Moriguchi M, Chao Y, Zhao H, Anderson J, Cruz CD, Kudo M. Nivolumab in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: Sorafenib-experienced Asian cohort analysis. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 543-552 [PMID: 31176752 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.05.014]

111 **Finn RS**, Ryoo BY, Merle P, Kudo M, Bouattour M, Lim HY, Breder V, Edeline J, Chao Y, Ogasawara S, Yau T, Garrido M, Chan SL, Knox J, Daniele B, Ebbinghaus SW, Chen E, Siegel AB, Zhu AX, Cheng AL; KEYNOTE-240 investigators. Pembrolizumab As Second-Line Therapy in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma in KEYNOTE-240: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Phase III Trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 193-202 [PMID: 31790344 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.19.01307]

112 **Qin S**, Finn RS, Kudo M, Meyer T, Vogel A, Ducreux M, Macarulla TM, Tomasello G, Boisserie F, Hou J, Li X, Song J, Zhu AX. RATIONALE 301 study: tislelizumab *vs* sorafenib as first-line treatment for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Future Oncol* 2019; **15**: 1811-1822 [PMID: 30969136 DOI: 10.2217/fon-2019-0097]

113 **Qin S**, Ren Z, Meng Z, Chen Z, Chai X, Xiong J, Bai Y, Yang L, Zhu H, Fang W, Lin X, Chen X, Li E, Wang L, Chen C, Zou J. Camrelizumab in patients with previously treated advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a multicentre, open-label, parallel-group, randomised, phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 571-580 [PMID: 32112738 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30011-5]

114 **Yau T**, Kang YK, Kim TY, El-Khoueiry AB, Santoro A, Sangro B, Melero I, Kudo M, Hou MM, Matilla A, Tovoli F, Knox JJ, Ruth He A, El-Rayes BF, Acosta-Rivera M, Lim HY, Neely J, Shen Y, Wisniewski T, Anderson J, Hsu C. Efficacy and Safety of Nivolumab Plus Ipilimumab in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma Previously Treated With Sorafenib: The CheckMate 040 Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: e204564 [PMID: 33001135 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2020.4564]

115 **Wolchok JD**, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Rutkowski P, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, Lao CD, Wagstaff J, Schadendorf D, Ferrucci PF, Smylie M, Dummer R, Hill A, Hogg D, Haanen J, Carlino MS, Bechter O, Maio M, Marquez-Rodas I, Guidoboni M, McArthur G, Lebbé C, Ascierto PA, Long GV, Cebon J, Sosman J, Postow MA, Callahan MK, Walker D, Rollin L, Bhore R, Hodi FS, Larkin J. Overall Survival with Combined Nivolumab and Ipilimumab in Advanced Melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2017; **377**: 1345-1356 [PMID: 28889792 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1709684]

116 **Finn RS**, Qin S, Ikeda M, Galle PR, Ducreux M, Kim TY, Kudo M, Breder V, Merle P, Kaseb AO, Li D, Verret W, Xu DZ, Hernandez S, Liu J, Huang C, Mulla S, Wang Y, Lim HY, Zhu AX, Cheng AL; IMbrave150 Investigators. Atezolizumab plus Bevacizumab in Unresectable Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 1894-1905 [PMID: 32402160 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1915745]

117 **Tovoli F**, De Lorenzo S, Trevisani F. Immunotherapy with Checkpoint Inhibitors for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Where Are We Now? *Vaccines (Basel)* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33023131 DOI: 10.3390/vaccines8040578]

118 **Lea AJ**, Vockley CM, Johnston RA, Del Carpio CA, Barreiro LB, Reddy TE, Tung J. Genome-wide

quantification of the effects of DNA methylation on human gene regulation. *Elife* 2018; **7** [PMID: 30575519 DOI: 10.7554/eLife.37513]

119 **Egger G**, Jeong S, Escobar SG, Cortez CC, Li TW, Saito Y, Yoo CB, Jones PA, Liang G. Identification of DNMT1 (DNA methyltransferase 1) hypomorphs in somatic knockouts suggests an essential role for DNMT1 in cell survival. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2006; **103**: 14080-14085 [PMID: 16963560 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0604602103]

120 **Riggs AD**, Xiong Z. Methylation and epigenetic fidelity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2004; **101**: 4-5 [PMID: 14695893 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0307781100]

121 **Subramaniam D**, Thombre R, Dhar A, Anant S. DNA methyltransferases: a novel target for prevention and therapy. *Front Oncol* 2014; **4**: 80 [PMID: 24822169 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2014.00080]

122 **Wang P**, Yan Y, Yu W, Zhang H. Role of ten-eleven translocation proteins and 5-hydroxymethylcytosine in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cell Prolif* 2019; **52**: e12626 [PMID: 31033072 DOI: 10.1111/cpr.12626]

123 **Nishida N**, Kudo M, Nagasaka T, Ikai I, Goel A. Characteristic patterns of altered DNA methylation predict emergence of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 994-1003 [PMID: 22407776 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25706]

124 **Um TH**, Kim H, Oh BK, Kim MS, Kim KS, Jung G, Park YN. Aberrant CpG island hypermethylation in dysplastic nodules and early HCC of hepatitis B virus-related human multistep hepatocarcinogenesis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 939-947 [PMID: 21145824 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.08.021]

125 **Villanueva A**, Portela A, Sayols S, Battiston C, Hoshida Y, Méndez-González J, Imbeaud S, Letouzé E, Hernandez-Gea V, Cornella H, Pinyol R, Solé M, Fuster J, Zucman-Rossi J, Mazzaferro V, Esteller M, Llovet JM; HEPTROMIC Consortium. DNA methylation-based prognosis and epidrivers in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1945-1956 [PMID: 25645722 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27732]

126 **Lokk K**, Modhukur V, Rajashekar B, Märtens K, Mägi R, Kolde R, Koltšina M, Nilsson TK, Vilo J, Salumets A, Tõnisson N. DNA methylome profiling of human tissues identifies global and tissue-specific methylation patterns. *Genome Biol* 2014; **15**: r54 [PMID: 24690455 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2014-15-4-r54]

127 **Mei Q**, Chen M, Lu X, Li X, Duan F, Wang M, Luo G, Han W. An open-label, single-arm, phase I/II study of lower-dose decitabine based therapy in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 16698-16711 [PMID: 25895027 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.3677]

128 **Andersen JB**, Factor VM, Marquardt JU, Raggi C, Lee YH, Seo D, Conner EA, Thorgeirsson SS. An integrated genomic and epigenomic approach predicts therapeutic response to zebularine in human liver cancer. *Sci Transl Med* 2010; **2**: 54ra77 [PMID: 20962331 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3001338]

129 **Kuang Y**, El-Khoueiry A, Taverna P, Ljungman M, Neamati N. Guadecitabine (SGI-110) priming sensitizes hepatocellular carcinoma cells to oxaliplatin. *Mol Oncol* 2015; **9**: 1799-1814 [PMID: 26160429 DOI: 10.1016/j.molonc.2015.06.002]

130 **Liu M**, Zhang L, Li H, Hinoue T, Zhou W, Ohtani H, El-Khoueiry A, Daniels J, O'Connell C, Dorff TB, Lu Q, Weisenberger DJ, Liang G. Integrative Epigenetic Analysis Reveals Therapeutic Targets to the DNA Methyltransferase Inhibitor Guadecitabine (SGI-110) in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2018; **68**: 1412-1428 [PMID: 29774579 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30091]

131 **Zhao Z**, Shilatifard A. Epigenetic modifications of histones in cancer. *Genome Biol* 2019; **20**: 245 [PMID: 31747960 DOI: 10.1186/s13059-019-1870-5]

132 **Santos-Rosa H**, Schneider R, Bannister AJ, Sherriff J, Bernstein BE, Emre NC, Schreiber SL, Mellor J, Kouzarides T. Active genes are tri-methylated at K4 of histone H3. *Nature* 2002; **419**: 407-411 [PMID: 12353038 DOI: 10.1038/nature01080]

133 **Wagner EJ**, Carpenter PB. Understanding the language of Lys36 methylation at histone H3. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2012; **13**: 115-126 [PMID: 22266761 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3274]

134 **Nguyen AT**, Zhang Y. The diverse functions of Dot1 and H3K79 methylation. *Genes Dev* 2011; **25**: 1345-1358 [PMID: 21724828 DOI: 10.1101/gad.2057811]

135 **Cao R**, Wang L, Wang H, Xia L, Erdjument-Bromage H, Tempst P, Jones RS, Zhang Y. Role of histone H3 Lysine 27 methylation in Polycomb-group silencing. *Science* 2002; **298**: 1039-1043 [PMID: 12351676 DOI: 10.1126/science.1076997]

136 **Jørgensen S**, Schotta G, Sørensen CS. Histone H4 Lysine 20 methylation: key player in epigenetic regulation of genomic integrity. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: 2797-2806 [PMID: 23345616 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkt012]

137 **Lehnertz B**, Ueda Y, Derijck AA, Braunschweig U, Perez-Burgos L, Kubicek S, Chen T, Li E, Jenuwein T, Peters AH. Suv39h-mediated histone H3 Lysine 9 methylation directs DNA methylation to major satellite repeats at pericentric heterochromatin. *Curr Biol* 2003; **13**: 1192-1200 [PMID: 12867029 DOI: 10.1016/s0960-9822(03)00432-9]

138 **Poté N**, Cros J, Laouirem S, Raffenne J, Negrão M, Albuquerque M, Bedossa P, Godinho Ferreira M, Ait Si Ali S, Fior R, Paradis V. The histone acetyltransferase hMOF promotes vascular invasion in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 956-967 [PMID: 31943753 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14381]

139 **Zhao J**, Gray SG, Greene CM, Lawless MW. Unmasking the pathological and therapeutic potential of histone deacetylases for liver cancer. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **13**: 247-256 [PMID: 30791763 DOI: 10.1080/17474124.2019.1568870]

140 **Wei L**, Chiu DK, Tsang FH, Law CT, Cheng CL, Au SL, Lee JM, Wong CC, Ng IO, Wong CM. Histone methyltransferase G9a promotes liver cancer development by epigenetic silencing of tumor suppressor gene RARRES3. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 758-769 [PMID: 28532996 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.05.015]

141 **Chiba T**, Saito T, Yuki K, Zen Y, Koide S, Kanogawa N, Motoyama T, Ogasawara S, Suzuki E, Ooka Y, Tawada A, Otsuka M, Miyazaki M, Iwama A, Yokosuka O. Histone lysine methyltransferase SUV39H1 is a potent target for epigenetic therapy of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **136**: 289-298 [PMID: 24844570 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28985]

142 **Yeo W**, Chung HC, Chan SL, Wang LZ, Lim R, Picus J, Boyer M, Mo FK, Koh J, Rha SY, Hui EP, Jeung HC, Roh JK, Yu SC, To KF, Tao Q, Ma BB, Chan AW, Tong JH, Erlichman C, Chan AT, Goh BC. Epigenetic therapy using belinostat for patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a multicenter phase I/II study with biomarker and pharmacokinetic analysis of tumors from patients in the Mayo Phase II Consortium and the Cancer Therapeutics Research Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 3361-3367 [PMID: 22915658 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.41.2395]

143 **Bitzer M**, Horger M, Giannini EG, Ganten TM, Wörns MA, Siveke JT, Dollinger MM, Gerken G, Scheulen ME, Wege H, Zagonel V, Cillo U, Trevisani F, Santoro A, Montesarchio V, Malek NP, Holzapfel J, Herz T, Ammendola AS, Pegoraro S, Hauns B, Mais A, Lauer UM, Henning SW, Hentsch B. Resminostat plus sorafenib as second-line therapy of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma - The SHELTER study. *J Hepatol* 2016; **65**: 280-288 [PMID: 26952006 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.02.043]

144 **Liu M**, Zhou J, Liu X, Feng Y, Yang W, Wu F, Cheung OK, Sun H, Zeng X, Tang W, Mok MTS, Wong J, Yeung PC, Lai PBS, Chen Z, Jin H, Chen J, Chan SL, Chan AWH, To KF, Sung JJY, Chen M, Cheng AS. Targeting monocyte-intrinsic enhancer reprogramming improves immunotherapy efficacy in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 365-379 [PMID: 31076403 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2018-317257]

145 **Bárcena-Varela M**, Caruso S, Llerena S, Álvarez-Sola G, Uriarte I, Latasa MU, Urtasun R, Rebouissou S, Alvarez L, Jimenez M, Santamaría E, Rodriguez-Ortigosa C, Mazza G, Rombouts K, San José-Eneriz E, Rabal O, Agirre X, Iraburu M, Santos-Laso A, Banales JM, Zucman-Rossi J, Prósper F, Oyarzabal J, Berasain C, Ávila MA, Fernández-Barrena MG. Dual Targeting of Histone Methyltransferase G9a and DNA-Methyltransferase 1 for the Treatment of Experimental Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2019; **69**: 587-603 [PMID: 30014490 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30168]

146 **Fratta E**, Coral S, Covre A, Parisi G, Colizzi F, Danielli R, Nicolay HJ, Sigalotti L, Maio M. The biology of cancer testis antigens: putative function, regulation and therapeutic potential. *Mol Oncol* 2011; **5**: 164-182 [PMID: 21376678 DOI: 10.1016/j.molonc.2011.02.001]

147 **Chiappinelli KB**, Zahnow CA, Ahuja N, Baylin SB. Combining Epigenetic and Immunotherapy to Combat Cancer. *Cancer Res* 2016; **76**: 1683-1689 [PMID: 26988985 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-15-2125]

148 **Sigalotti L**, Fratta E, Coral S, Maio M. Epigenetic drugs as immunomodulators for combination therapies in solid tumors. *Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **142**: 339-350 [PMID: 24384533 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2013.12.015]

149 **Weber J**, Salgaller M, Samid D, Johnson B, Herlyn M, Lassam N, Treisman J, Rosenberg SA. Expression of the MAGE-1 tumor antigen is up-regulated by the demethylating agent 5-aza-2'-deoxycytidine. *Cancer Res* 1994; **54**: 1766-1771 [PMID: 7511051]

150 **Wischnewski F**, Pantel K, Schwarzenbach H. Promoter demethylation and histone acetylation mediate gene expression of MAGE-A1, -A2, -A3, and -A12 in human cancer cells. *Mol Cancer Res* 2006; **4**: 339-349 [PMID: 16687489 DOI: 10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-05-0229]

151 **Dunn J**, Rao S. Epigenetics and immunotherapy: The current state of play. *Mol Immunol* 2017; **87**: 227-239 [PMID: 28511092 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2017.04.012]

152 **Khan AN**, Gregorie CJ, Tomasi TB. Histone deacetylase inhibitors induce TAP, LMP, Tapasin genes and MHC class I antigen presentation by melanoma cells. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2008; **57**: 647-654 [PMID: 18046553 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-007-0402-4]

153 **Setiadi AF**, Omilusik K, David MD, Seipp RP, Hartikainen J, Gopaul R, Choi KB, Jefferies WA. Epigenetic enhancement of antigen processing and presentation promotes immune recognition of tumors. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 9601-9607 [PMID: 19047136 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-5270]

154 **Wrangle J**, Wang W, Koch A, Easwaran H, Mohammad HP, Vendetti F, Vancriekinge W, Demeyer T, Du Z, Parsana P, Rodgers K, Yen RW, Zahnow CA, Taube JM, Brahmer JR, Tykodi SS, Easton K, Carvajal RD, Jones PA, Laird PW, Weisenberger DJ, Tsai S, Juergens RA, Topalian SL, Rudin CM, Brock MV, Pardoll D, Baylin SB. Alterations of immune response of Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer with Azacytidine. *Oncotarget* 2013; **4**: 2067-2079 [PMID: 24162015 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.1542]

155 **Armeanu S**, Bitzer M, Lauer UM, Venturelli S, Pathil A, Krusch M, Kaiser S, Jobst J, Smirnow I, Wagner A, Steinle A, Salih HR. Natural killer cell-mediated lysis of hepatoma cells *via* specific induction of NKG2D ligands by the histone deacetylase inhibitor sodium valproate. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 6321-6329 [PMID: 16024634 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-4252]

156 **Insinga A**, Monestiroli S, Ronzoni S, Gelmetti V, Marchesi F, Viale A, Altucci L, Nervi C, Minucci S, Pelicci PG. Inhibitors of histone deacetylases induce tumor-selective apoptosis through activation of the death receptor pathway. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 71-76 [PMID: 15619634 DOI: 10.1038/nm1160]

157 **López-Soto A**, Folgueras AR, Seto E, Gonzalez S. HDAC3 represses the expression of NKG2D ligands ULBPs in epithelial tumour cells: potential implications for the immunosurveillance of cancer. *Oncogene* 2009; **28**: 2370-2382 [PMID: 19430493 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2009.117]

158 **Maeda T**, Towatari M, Kosugi H, Saito H. Up-regulation of costimulatory/adhesion molecules by histone deacetylase inhibitors in acute myeloid leukemia cells. *Blood* 2000; **96**: 3847-3856 [PMID: 11090069]

159 **Magner WJ**, Kazim AL, Stewart C, Romano MA, Catalano G, Grande C, Keiser N, Santaniello F, Tomasi TB. Activation of MHC class I, II, and CD40 gene expression by histone deacetylase inhibitors. *J Immunol* 2000; **165**: 7017-7024 [PMID: 11120829 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.165.12.7017]

160 **Nakata S**, Yoshida T, Horinaka M, Shiraishi T, Wakada M, Sakai T. Histone deacetylase inhibitors upregulate death receptor 5/TRAIL-R2 and sensitize apoptosis induced by TRAIL/APO2-L in human malignant tumor cells. *Oncogene* 2004; **23**: 6261-6271 [PMID: 15208660 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1207830]

161 **Wang LX**, Mei ZY, Zhou JH, Yao YS, Li YH, Xu YH, Li JX, Gao XN, Zhou MH, Jiang MM, Gao L, Ding Y, Lu XC, Shi JL, Luo XF, Wang J, Wang LL, Qu C, Bai XF, Yu L. Low dose decitabine treatment induces CD80 expression in cancer cells and stimulates tumor specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e62924 [PMID: 23671644 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0062924]

162 **Woods DM**, Sodré AL, Villagra A, Sarnaik A, Sotomayor EM, Weber J. HDAC Inhibition Upregulates PD-1 Ligands in Melanoma and Augments Immunotherapy with PD-1 Blockade. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2015; **3**: 1375-1385 [PMID: 26297712 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-15-0077-T]

163 **Goswami SCJ**, Zhao H, Zhang X, Sharma P. Epigenetic changes in T cells in response to immune checkpoint blockade [abstract]. Proceedings of the 107th Annual Meeting of the American Association for Cancer Research; 2016 April 16-20; New Orleans, LA, USA. Cancer Res, 2016: 76

164 **Goswami S**, Apostolou I, Zhang J, Skepner J, Anandhan S, Zhang X, Xiong L, Trojer P, Aparicio A, Subudhi SK, Allison JP, Zhao H, Sharma P. Modulation of EZH2 expression in T cells improves efficacy of anti-CTLA-4 therapy. *J Clin Invest* 2018; **128**: 3813-3818 [PMID: 29905573 DOI: 10.1172/JCI99760]

165 **Zhou L**, Mudianto T, Ma X, Riley R, Uppaluri R. Targeting EZH2 Enhances Antigen Presentation, Antitumor Immunity, and Circumvents Anti-PD-1 Resistance in Head and Neck Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2020; **26**: 290-300 [PMID: 31562203 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-19-1351]

166 **Covre A**, Coral S, Nicolay H, Parisi G, Fazio C, Colizzi F, Fratta E, Di Giacomo AM, Sigalotti L, Natali PG, Maio M. Antitumor activity of epigenetic immunomodulation combined with CTLA-4 blockade in syngeneic mouse models. *Oncoimmunology* 2015; **4**: e1019978 [PMID: 26405573 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2015.1019978]

167 **Kim K**, Skora AD, Li Z, Liu Q, Tam AJ, Blosser RL, Diaz LA Jr, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Zhou S. Eradication of metastatic mouse cancers resistant to immune checkpoint blockade by suppression of myeloid-derived cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2014; **111**: 11774-11779 [PMID: 25071169 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1410626111]

168 **Zhang X**, Fu X, Li T, Yan H. The prognostic value of myeloid derived suppressor cell level in hepatocellular carcinoma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0225327 [PMID: 31790437 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0225327]

169 **Hong YK**, Li Y, Pandit H, Li S, Pulliam Z, Zheng Q, Yu Y, Martin RCG. Epigenetic modulation enhances immunotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cell Immunol* 2019; **336**: 66-74 [PMID: 30626493 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellimm.2018.12.010]

170 **Llopiz D**, Ruiz M, Villanueva L, Iglesias T, Silva L, Egea J, Lasarte JJ, Pivette P, Trochon-Joseph V, Vasseur B, Dixon G, Sangro B, Sarobe P. Enhanced anti-tumor efficacy of checkpoint inhibitors in combination with the histone deacetylase inhibitor Belinostat in a murine hepatocellular carcinoma model. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2019; **68**: 379-393 [PMID: 30547218 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-018-2283-0]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1003-1018

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1003

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Advances in the management of cholangiocarcinoma

Andreas G Zori, Dennis Yang, Peter V Draganov, Roniel Cabrera

ORCID number: Andreas G Zori 0000-0002-4262-2401; Dennis Yang 0000-0003-3038-4669; Peter V Draganov 0000-0002-3922-0882; Roniel Cabrera 0000-0002-1863-0073.

Author contributions: Zori AG, Yang D, Draganov PV, and Cabrera R contributed to conception and design of the paper; Draganov PV and Cabrera R revised paper critically for important intellectual content; Zori AG, Yang D wrote majority of the draft;

Conflict-of-interest statement: Zori AG, Draganov PV, and Cabrera R have no conflicts of interest; Yang D is a consultant for Lumendi and Boston Scientific.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Andreas G Zori, Dennis Yang, Peter V Draganov, Roniel Cabrera, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL 32608, United States

Corresponding author: Andreas G Zori, MD, Assistant Professor, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition, University of Florida, 1329 SW 16th St Suite 5251, Gainesville, FL 32608, United States. andreas.zori@medicine.ufl.edu

Abstract

Cholangiocarcinoma (CCA) is a primary malignancy of the bile ducts with three anatomically and molecularly distinct entities: Intrahepatic CCA (iCCA), perihilar CCA (pCCA), and distal CCA. As a result of phenotypic and anatomic differences they differ significantly with respect to management. For each type of CCA there have been significant changes in management over the last several years which will be discussed in this review. Although resection remains the standard of care for all types of CCA, liver transplantation has been established as curative treatment for selected patients with pCCA and is being evaluated for iCCA with early success. With respect to systemic therapy capecitabine is now first line adjuvant therapy for all biliary tract malignancies after curative intent resection. Progress in exploiting the pathologic mutations and molecular abnormalities has also yielded regulatory approval of targeted therapy for CCA in patients with acquired alterations in the fibroblast growth factor receptor. There is also increased consensus in managing malignant biliary obstruction associated with CCA where pre-operative biliary stenting is not beneficial while self-expanding metal stents have been shown to be superior to plastic stents in patients who are not surgical candidates.

Key Words: Cholangiocarcinoma; Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; Perihilar cholangiocarcinoma; Liver transplantation; Chemotherapy

Core Tip: This review presents recent advances in the management of cholangiocarcinoma with particular focus on the expanding role for liver transplantation, updated guidelines in the use of chemotherapy, novel applications of individualized therapy targeting the specific mutation profile of tumors, and management of malignant biliary obstruction.

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 26, 2021
Peer-review started: February 26, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: June 9, 2021
Accepted: August 6, 2021
Article in press: August 6, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Wang N
S-Editor: Liu M
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Liu JH

Citation: Zori AG, Yang D, Draganov PV, Cabrera R. Advances in the management of cholangiocarcinoma. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1003-1018
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1003.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1003

INTRODUCTION

Cholangiocarcinoma (CCA) is an epithelial cell malignancy of the biliary tree and is the second most common primary hepatic malignancy[1,2]. The management of CCA depends largely on anatomic location and stage of disease. Anatomic location is significant not only because it dictates if a tumor can be resected, but also because different anatomic locations are associated with distinct molecular and biological characteristics which are increasingly important in determining optimal systemic therapy[3]. Intrahepatic CCA (iCCA) arises from the second order bile ducts within the liver and account for 10%-20% of CCAs, perihilar CCA (pCCA) originates between first order bile ducts and the cystic duct accounting for 50%-60% of CCA, and distal CCA (dCCA) arises distal to the cystic duct and account for 20%-30% of CCA[4]. Resection remains the best curative option for all types of CCA but is only possible in about 35% because symptoms occur late, the tumor progresses rapidly, and CCA is difficult to definitively diagnose[1,5]. Despite a historically low 5 year survival of 7%-20% and median survival of unresectable CCA of less than a year there has been significant progress in the management of CCA primarily in the use of liver transplantation and systemic therapy including targeted molecular therapy show promise to improve outcomes in the future[4,6].

iCCA

iCCA generally presents at later stages than other types of CCA because tumor growth is often intrahepatic and causes obstructive jaundice less frequently. When iCCA is diagnosed at early stages, it is often as an incidental finding or in patients with cirrhosis found during routine screening for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[4]. Staging of iCCA should be done in accordance with the American Joint Committee on Cancer/International Union Against Cancer 7th edition staging manual as it has been validated and correlates with prognosis[7].

Surgical resection

Liver resection is the only widely accepted curative treatment for iCCA. Staging laparoscopy is recommended prior to resection in patients with high risk features such as multicentric disease, high CA19-9, questionable vascular invasion, or suspicion for peritoneal disease, because peritoneal or extrahepatic metastases are identified in 27-38% of patients[8]. However, because iCCA presents in advanced stages, only approximately 15% of patients with iCCA are candidates for liver resection[9]. The aim of surgical resection is complete removal of the tumor both grossly and microscopically, termed R0 resection. Resections which have microscopically positive margins are denoted R1 and if all gross tumor cannot be removed R2[10].

In planning liver resection, the location of the tumor in relation to biliary and vascular structure as well as the quality and size of the remaining liver parenchyma after resection are critically important[11]. In patients with inadequate future liver remnant, portal vein embolization can be attempted to allow for hypertrophy of the liver remnant[12]. However, this is associated with significant dropout of 20%-30% due to tumor progression and lack of adequate liver regeneration[13]. In smaller lesions and peripheral lesions anatomic resection is associated with lower recurrence and improved survival compared to non-anatomic resections[11]. Open and minimally invasive resection are associated with similar outcomes and both are endorsed by international consensus[14]. Hilar lymphadenectomy of at least 6 lymph nodes is recommended for accurate staging because imaging has low sensitivity for detecting nodal disease and because a recent multicenter retrospective review demonstrated removal of > 3 Lymph nodes is associated with improved survival compared to those where 1-2 lymph nodes were removed[1,15,16]. In patients with multifocal iCCA, the risk of recurrence is high and resection does not improve overall or recurrence free survival comparted to locoregional therapy (LRT)[17].

Although most patients are not candidates for surgical resection, the frequency of liver resection for iCCA is increasing[18]. The 5 year survival after curative intent liver resection is 25%-40% with a median survival of 40 mo[19-21]. However, recurrence remains high at 50%-70%[22]. Tumor recurs most frequently in the remnant liver and can be often be treated with repeat resection which is associated with improved survival of 26.1 mo compared to 9.6 in patients treated with chemotherapy and 18.6 in patients treated with LRT[23].

Liver transplantation

Liver transplantation for iCCA was initially associated with survival as low as 53% at 1 year[24]. As a result liver transplantation was not recommended for the treatment of iCCA and remains a contraindication for liver transplant except as part of research protocols[1]. Subsequently a multicenter series of patients who underwent liver transplantation for presumed HCC but explant pathology showed iCCA demonstrated 1-year, 3-year, and 5-year actuarial survival rates of 93%, 84%, and 65% respectively in patients with tumor < 2 cm[25]. More recently a retrospective series from France demonstrated lower recurrence (18% *vs* 46%, $P = 0.01$) and improved recurrence free survival (75% *vs* 36%, $P = 0.004$) in cirrhotic patients with iCCA who underwent liver transplantation compared to resection[26]. A trend toward reduced recurrence was maintained in patients with tumors 2-5 cm (21% *vs* 48%, $P = 0.06$). Data such as this as well as improved survival after liver transplantation for pCCA prompted a re-examination of the role of liver transplantation for iCCA.

There is currently very limited prospective data for liver transplantation in patients with iCCA. A prospective series of 6 patients with iCCA treated with gemcitabine based neoadjuvant chemotherapy demonstrated excellent post-transplant survival: 100% at 1 year, 83.3% at 3 years, and 83.3% at 5 years[27]. It should be noted that median time from diagnosis to transplantation was 26 mo, which speaks to the value of assessing response to chemotherapy and tumor biology during an initial waiting period before liver transplantation. There are currently ongoing clinical trials to more thoroughly define the role for liver transplantation for iCCA. However, because iCCA is not accepted as an indication for liver transplantation and patients do not receive MELD exception points, organ allocation remains an obstacle and relies largely on marginal donor grafts.

Systemic therapy

The performance status of the patient and disease distribution are the primary determinants of candidacy for systemic therapy. In patients where iCCA is resected with curative intent, neoadjuvant therapy is not recommended but 6 mo of capecitabine should be offered to patients with R0 or R1 resections as adjuvant chemotherapy[28]. This recommendation is based largely on the BILCAP study which included 447 patients with biliary tract cancer including iCCA (19%), pCCA (28%), dCCA (35%), and muscle invasive gallbladder cancer (18%) and compared capecitabine to observation[29]. This demonstrated improved overall survival of 51 mo in the capecitabine group compared to 36 in the observation group. Because this data was not available when the National Comprehensive Cancer Network guidelines were published in 2019, the American Society of Clinical Oncology convened an expert panel who recommended capcitabine for all biliary tract cancers after R0 or R1 resection[28].

In patients who have acceptable performance status but are not candidates for resection, gemcitabine-cisplatin based palliative chemotherapy is recommended as first line[1]. This recommendation is supported by trials such as ABC-02 which included 410 patients where gemcitabine-cisplatin demonstrated improved overall compared to gemcitabine alone (11.7 mo *vs* 8.1 mo)[30]. Recent data from the phase III ABC-06 trial has established FOLFOX (leucovorin, Fluorouracil, and Oxaliplatin) as the preferred second line chemotherapeutic regimen[31]. This trial included 162 patients with advanced biliary tract cancer who progressed on a gemcitabine-cisplatin regimen. The one-year survival of patients randomized to FOLFOX was 25% compared to 11% in patients treated with supportive care. The similar benefit was maintained in the iCCA subgroup but did not achieve statistical significance.

Improved understanding of the molecular pathogenesis of iCCA has allowed for development of targeted therapies. Targeted and immunotherapy is a rapidly developing field with multiple agents under investigation therefore agents which are furthest along in the development/approval process will be reviewed here. Early attempts to use targeted therapy aimed at epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) and vascular epidermal growth factor (VEGF) pathways were unsuccessful. Cediranib, bevacizumab, sunitinib and vandetanib which target VEGF and VEGF receptor and

the EGFR inhibitor erlotinib have not shown survival benefit[32,33].

Point Mutations in the isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH) 1 and 2 genes, present in 28% of iCCA and 7% of pCCA, result in increased production of the oncometabolite hydroxyglutarate[3,34]. Ivosidenib, a small molecule inhibitor of mutant IDH-1, was compared to placebo in patients with advanced IDH-1 positive CCA who progressed on first line therapy. Patients treated with ivosidenib had improved progression free survival compared to placebo (2.7 mo *vs* 1.4 mo $P \leq 0.0001$) and progression free survival at 6 mo was 32% in the ivosidenib group compared to 0 in the placebo group [35]. This provides strong evidence for targeted therapy and benefit of molecular profiling in CCA and led to approval of ivosidenib in the United States by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of IDH-1 positive CCA.

Acquired alterations in the fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGFR) gene are associated with tumorigenesis through a variety of mechanisms including angiogenesis and enhancing cellular proliferation, migration, survival and invasion[36]. FGFR2 fusions and rearrangements are present in up to 45% of patients with iCCA but are rarely seen in pCCA and dCCA[37,38]. Of the several agents under investigation targeting this pathway pemigatinib, a FGFR 1-3 inhibitor, is the first to receive FDA approval for the treatment of CCA with FGF/FGFR alterations based on results showing 35% objective response in patients with locally advanced or metastatic CCA [39,40]. There is some concern that tumors could acquire resistance to FGFR inhibitors due to mutations in the FGFR kinase domain to early FGFR inhibitors such as infigratinib, but more recently developed irreversible FGFR inhibitor TAS-120 with high specificity for FGFR 1-4 has shown efficacy in patients with treatment failure due to FGFR kinase domain mutations[41,42]. This also suggests that these agents could be intentionally sequenced in order to prolong duration of response.

Immunotherapy has shown efficacy in an increasing number of malignancies and in some has become standard of care. Although the immune micro environment of iCCA is quite variable, it often displays features associated with responsiveness to immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI)[43]. Although there are several ongoing phase 2 and 3 trials of ICIs in CCA, the review of which is beyond the scope of this review, published data remains limited to multi-tumor basket trials and single arm studies[32]. There is promise in patients with microsatellite instability (MSI) where 40% objective response was seen in tumors, including CCA, with MSI treated with pembrolizumab[44]. Targeting these mutations may have limited application as only 5-10% of biliary tract tumors have these mutations[45]. However, more recently combined anti- PD-1/CTLA-4 blockade with Nivolumab and Ipilimumab showed efficacy in a phase II trial of patients of patients with advanced biliary tract cancer without MSI demonstrated an objective response rate of 23% and disease control in 44%[46]. Interestingly, all of the responders had either gallbladder or intrahepatic tumors again emphasizing that intra and extrahepatic malignancies are phenotypically distinct tumors.

To allow for improved individualization next generation sequencing should be performed early in order to identify targetable aberrations since mutational profiles can already yield actionable mutations in > 40% of biliary tract tumors (Table 1)[47]. Because of the rapidly changing landscape of treatment and increasing number of mutational targets for therapy the importance of early testing, dedicated centers and a multidisciplinary approach is increasing.

Tumor directed therapies

In patients with unresectable tumors liver directed therapies are a possible adjunct to systemic therapy and have demonstrated efficacy in multicenter retrospective and phase II prospective experiences. Although there is increasing interest in these modalities for treatment of iCCA they have not yet become standard of care. Liver directed therapies include trans-arterial radioembolization (TARE), trans-arterial chemoembolization (TACE), thermal ablation, external beam radiation, and intra-arterial pump chemotherapy. TARE delivers a high dose of localized radiation to the target tumor *via* yttrium-90 coated microspheres. A multicenter retrospective review including 115 patients with unresectable iCCA treated with TARE in addition to standard of care treatment demonstrated median overall after treatment was 11 mo and 1-year overall survival was 44%, which compares favorably to historical data[48]. Treatment with TACE involves intraarterial injection of embolic beads impregnated with a chemotherapeutic agent resulting in embolic tumor kill augmented by high dose localized chemotherapy. TACE use in CCA has been limited but have generally shown that TACE is well tolerated and is associated with median overall survival of up to 15 mo in patients without extra-hepatic disease[49]. Thermal therapy involves either radiofrequency or microwave induced thermal ablation with an image guided

Table 1 Targetable genomic alterations in cholagiocarcinoma under investigation

Alterations	iCCA	pCCA/dCCA	Products under investigation
FGFR fusion	15%-20%	< 5%	Pemigatinib[1], Derantinib (ARQ-087), Infigrantinib[1] (BGJ398), Erdafitinib, TAS-120, ADZ4547
IDH1/2 mutation	20%	< 5%	Ivosidenib1, Enasidenib (AG-221), BAY 1436032, IDH305
ErbB2 (HER-2) amplification	< 5%	10%-15%	Trastuzumab, iapatinib, TAS0728, A166, PRS-343, ZW25
BRAF mutation	5%	< 5%	Dabrafenib + trametinib
DNA damage repair gene mutation (*ARID1A*, *BRCA1/2*)	25%	10%-15%	PARP inhibitors (olaparib, rucaparib)

[1]FDA approved.

iCCA: Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; pCCA: Perihilar cholangiocarcinoma; dCCA: Distal cholangiocarcinoma; FGRR: Fibrobast growth factor receptor; IDH: Isocitrate dehydrogenase; ERBB (HER-2): A subtype of epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase; *BRAF*: Gene for serine/threonine-protein kinase B-Raf; *ARID1A*: Gene encoding a swItch/sucrose non-fermentable ATP-dependent chromatin remodeling complex; *BRCA*: Breast cancer gene.

probe percutaneously. Although data is limited, a systematic review of observational studies evaluating 84 patients with unresectable CCA treated with radiofrequency ablation showed pooled 1 year, 3 year, and 5 year survival of 82%, 47%, and 24% respectively[50]. Thermal ablation is therefore an option in patients with smaller (less than 4 cm) more peripheral tumors who are ineligible for surgery[51]. Both intraarterial and ablative treatment have also been reported as effective in patients with recurrence after resection[52,53]. Hepatic arterial infusion of high dose chemotherapy has demon-strated promising results in phase II studies of patients with unresectable iCCA. Of the 38 patients who were treated with intra-arterial infusion of floxuridine in addition to gemcitabine and oxaliplatin 58% achieved partial radiographic response with progression free survival of 11.8 mo, overall survival 25 mo, and 1 year survival of 89.5%[54].

Radiation therapy is also increasingly being evaluated for patients with unresectable iCCA as technologic advances has improved to the ability to specifically target malignant tissue while sparing non-malignant tissue. In a phase II trial high dose hypofractonated proton beam therapy was used to treat 37 patients with localized unresectable iCCA and demonstrated progression free survival of 8.4 mo, median overall survival of 22.5 mo and 1 year overall survival of 69.7%[55]. Evaluation of stereotactic body radiotherapy has similarly demonstrated safety and improved survival when compared to historical controls and is currently an area of investigation in phase III clinical trials (NCT02200042)[56,57].

PCCA

pCCA is the most common subset of CCA accounting for approximately 50% of CCA. The most common risk factor for pCCA is primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)[58]. Due to the risk of peritoneal seeding, percutaneous or fine-needle aspiration during endoscopic ultrasound is not recommended. Tissue diagnosis is most commonly obtained *via* cytology from endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP). Despite good specificity (97%), sensitivity of this is relatively low (43%)[59]. However, the addition of fluorescence in situ hybridization to conventional cytology can increase the sensitivity significantly to 65% while maintaining 100% specificity[60]. There is also interest in combining cytology with other methods to detect molecular or genetic signatures of CCA to aid in diagnosis, but these methods require further study before they are widely adopted[61-63].

Surgical resection

Although both liver transplantation and surgical resection for pCCA can offer cure, resection has historically been the preferred option[64]. Contraindications to resection include underlying PSC (because of high rates of multifocal disease) and presence of metastatic disease. Staging laparoscopy or laparotomy is recommended because occult metastatic disease or vascular involvement prior to surgical resection[65]. Despite this, recurrence is common with estimates based on long term follow up of 306 patients

who underwent curative intent surgery is 76%[66]. Patients with tumors involving both right and left intrahepatic ducts (Bismuth type IV) were previously not considered for resection however successful resection of these tumors has been described, primarily from centers in Asia. In one series from Japan 216 patients with Bismuth IV tumors treated with resection had 5 years survival of 32.8% and 53% in those who were negative for nodal and metastatic disease compared to 1.5% in those with unresected tumors[67]. Survival in Bismuth IV stage disease in this series was similar to earlier stage disease from other centers and suggests that presence of ductal invasion should not necessarily determine respectability if there is a high degree of local expertise[68]. Similarly advances in vascular reconstruction has allowed for resection of tumors with some degree of vascular involvement. While unilateral portal vein involvement does not impact overall survival in patients undergoing resection, there is decreased survival in patients with bilateral/main portal vein involvement or any hepatic artery involvement[69].

Liver transplantation

Although resection has been considered the standard of care for pCCA, only 20% of patients are candidates for surgical resection and of those who undergo surgical resection only 60%-80% achieve free margins (R0). Because survival after R0 resection is 20%-40% at 5 years and approaches 0% in those without R0 resection, there is significant interest in the use of liver transplantation for pCCA[70]. However, early experience with liver transplantation for pCCA resulted in recurrence rates of approximately 50% and poor long term survival[71]. Subsequently incorporating neoadjuvant chemoradiation prior to liver transplantation demonstrated favorable survival with multi-center experience from the United states showing 5-year disease free survival of 65% at 5 years following liver transplantation[72]. Based on this and other similar data, pCCA has been accepted by the United Network for Organ Sharing in the United States as an indication for liver transplantation and receives standard MELD exception points. In order to qualify, patients must have unresectable disease based on technical considerations or underlying liver disease, meet diagnostic criteria for pCCA less than 3 cm in size, be treated with neoadjuvant therapy, undergo operative staging to rule out intraperitoneal/lymph node metastases after neoadjuvant therapy, and be otherwise a candidate for liver transplantation. This approach has been criticized because a pathologic diagnosis is not required to qualify and residual tumor is found in only 52% of explants, therefore patients may undergo transplant without truly having CCA[72]. It has been argued that lack of pathologic evidence of CCA on explant may also be due to effective pre-transplant neoadjuvant therapy. There are no prospective comparisons of liver transplantation and surgical resection, however a multicenter retrospective comparison of curative intent resection (R0, R1) and transplantation for unresectable disease showed an improved overall survival of 77.4 mo compared to 17.1 mo ($P \leq 0.001$) and five year overall survival was 53% compared to 17%[73]. Survival advantage was maintained when limiting resections to only tumors < 3 cm with negative lymph nodes ($P = 0.002$) and non-PSC patients ($P = 0.049$). It should be noted that in this comparison, all patients had pathologically confirmed CCA. This data raises the possibility that liver transplantation will have an increasing role in the management of pCCA, but further study of this topic is required.

Systemic therapy

There is currently very little data regarding the use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy for pCCA prior to resection and reported experiences are from single centers and with small sample sizes[74]. However, these experiences suggest that there may be a role for neoadjuvant therapy in patients with initially unresectable disease. Neoadjuvant therapy with 5-FU and radiation therapy prior to liver transplantation for pCCA has become standard of care since initial positive experiences were reported[75]. Based on the BILCAP study which was previously described, adjuvant therapy with capecitabine is recommended for 6 mo following curative intent resection regardless of R0 or R1 status[28]. Adjuvant therapy after liver transplantation is not recommended. Reports of adjuvant therapy is primarily from prior to wide application of neoadjuvant therapy or small series where patients had significantly more or more advanced disease than suspected pre-transplant[76]. First and second line systemic therapy for patients with advanced pCCA who are not candidates for liver transplantation or resection are the same as for iCCA, gemcitabine/cisplatin and FOLFOX respectively [31,77] (Table 2).

Table 2 Role of treatment modalities in the management of cholangiocarcinoma

Tumor location	Surgery	Liver transplantation	Systemic therapy			Radiation therapy
			NeoAdjuvant	Adjuvant	Palliative	
Intrahepatic	Liver resection is first line management, anatomic resection is preferred	Clinical trials and select centers only	Not indicated	Capecitabine	Gemcitabine/Cisplatin; FOLFOX or evaluate for targetable mutations	External beam radiation reduces recurrence in R1 resection
Perihilar	Liver resection is first line management	Consider if not resection candidate, PSC	Only prior to liver transplant	Capecitabine	Gemcitabine/Cisplatin; FOLFOX	External beam radiation required pre liver transplant
Distal	Pancreaticoduodenectomy is first line management	Not indicated	Not indicated	Capecitabine	Gemcitabine/Cisplatin; FOLFOX	No defined role

PSC: Primary sclerosing cholangitis; FOLFOX: Leucovorin, fluorouracil, and oxaliplatin.

Tumor directed therapy

In patients who are candidates for surgical resection, neo adjuvant radiation therapy is not recommended while the role for radiation therapy is well established in prior to liver transplantation for pCCA. Although there are no randomized trials evaluating adjuvant radiation therapy in patients with complete resection of extrahepatic CCA, it has not been shown to improve survival in review of the SEER database[78]. In patients with incomplete surgical resection adjuvant radiation therapy is recommended and was found to reduce post resection local recurrence in retrospective series [64]. Data specific to patients with locally advanced unresectable pCCA is limited however based on small series of patients including pCCA and evidence of benefit of radiation and chemotherapy (capecitabine plus cisplatin) compared to chemotherapy alone (overall survival 9.3 mo *vs* 6.3 mo) in iCCA, radiation therapy is often used in patients with unresectable pCCA[79,80]. There is even less data for TARE and other intra-arterial therapies for pCCA, but based on experience in iCCA, this can also be used in selected patients.

Management of biliary obstruction

Biliary obstruction is a common complication of CCA given the presence of advance disease at the time of diagnosis. Proximal malignant biliary obstruction (MBO) secondary to pCCA accounts for roughly 60% of all MBO, whereas distal MBO is caused by dCCA and account for 20%-30% of cases[3]. Although endoscopic stenting is the mainstream endoscopic approach for MBO, numerous clinical studies have failed to show any benefits of routine pre-operative endoscopic stenting[81-83]. However, since most patients are not candidates for curative surgical resection, endoscopy provides a minimally invasive, cost-effective, and safe intervention for palliative biliary drainage (BD) with the aim of improving the patient's quality of life (QOL)[81].

The optimal approach for proximal MBO remains controversial with conflicting results on whether percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage (PTHD) or ERCP with biliary stenting is superior[84,85]. The choice between these two strategies depends on multiple factors, including local expertise availability. When available, the potential advantage of an endoscopic approach may include minimally invasiveness, lower risk for leakage and higher patient satisfaction when compared to PTHD[85].

Several randomized clinical trials on patients with hilar MBO support the use of self-expanding metal stents (SEMS) over plastic stents (PS). SEMS are associated with higher stent patency, lower rate of adverse events, and improved survival[86-88]. SEMS can be broadly divided into two types: uncovered (USEMS) or fully-covered (FCSEMS). USEMS are routinely used, as FCSEMS pose the risk of iatrogenic biliary obstruction of the contralateral and/or branch ducts.

The choice between unilateral *vs* bilateral drainage remains a point of debate given the conflicting data. When compared to bilateral stenting, De Palma *et al*[89] demonstrated that unilateral stenting was associated with a higher technical success rate (88.6% *vs* 76.9%; P = 0.04) and less adverse events (18.9% *vs* 26.9%; P = 0.03). However, recent randomized studies from Asia suggest that bilateral stenting, particularly in patients with Bismuth type III-V strictures, result in fewer interventions,

improved stent patency and BD[90,91]. There are currently two main strategies for bilateral endoscopic drainage: The stent-in-stent (SIS) or stent-by-stent (SBS) techniques. With SIS, a USEMS is placed through the mesh of the first indwelling USEMS into the contralateral hepatic duct. This method requires the use of large cell-sized SEMS to facilitate the introduction of the second stent in the SIS fashion. This type of stents is commonly available in Asia but not in the United States. As opposed to the SIS technique, with SBS, both stents are inserted and deployed simultaneously into two opposite lobes of the liver. Both techniques appear to be associated with similar rates of technical success, adverse events and stent occlusion[92-94]. In clinical practice, the choice between these two techniques is often based on endoscopist's preference and device availability.

In all, the optimal treatment strategy will vary and should be individualized. From a broad perspective, the goal is to drain at least 50% of the total liver volume, as this is associated with improved clinical outcomes and survival[95]. Considering the high degree of technical difficulty of ERCP in this patient population, referral to high-volume centers is recommended. High quality cross-sectional imaging are crucial for pre-procedural planning to determine the extent of the liver volume involved by the strictures and whether BD of those segments is indicated.

Several studies have reported a possible role for endobiliary ablation with different modalities (*i.e.*, radiofrequency ablation, cryoablation, photodynamic therapy, intraluminal brachytherapy) as a primary palliative treatment for CCA or as and adjunct therapy for SEMS occlusion[96]. Several studies suggest that endobiliary ablation combined with palliative stenting may improve stent patency and prolong patient survival without an increase in adverse events[97,98]. Ablative therapies may be of particular benefit for patients with comorbidities who are not surgical candidates. Nonetheless, few prospective comparative trials are available and high-quality studies evaluating endobiliary ablation with standard palliative treatments with QOL and survival endpoints are necessary to better define their role in the management of these patients.

Endoscopic ultrasound guided BD (EUS-BD) has recently emerged as an alternate endoscopic option for the primary palliation of MBO or as rescue therapy in those who have failed conventional ERCP with transpapillary BD[99-101]. The various EUS-BD approaches (*i.e.*, choledochoduodenostomy, hepaticogastrostomy, antegrade biliary stenting and rendezvous procedure) are beyond the scope of this review. Overall, the route of approach and site of BD are largely dependent on local expertise and the level of the obstruction (*i.e.*, distal *vs* proximal MBO). A recent systematic review and meta-analysis of nine studies and 483 patients demonstrated similar technical success between EUS-BD and PTHD, albeit the former was associated with lower rate of adverse events and fewer interventions[102]. Furthermore, EUS-BD obviates the need for an external drain as in PTHD thereby enhancing patient's QOL[102]. EUS-BD may also confer some additional benefits when compared to ERCP. Unlike ERCP, EUS-BD does not require transpapillary access, which increases the likelihood of procedural success when concomitant duodenal obstruction is present and reduces the risk of iatrogenic pancreatitis. Furthermore, EUS-BD can be achieved without strictly placing a SEMS across the MBO, which potentially reduces stent issues associated with tumor overgrowth/ingrowth. Noteworthy, EUS-BD is a technically demanding procedure and should be limited to centers with adequate advanced endoscopy expertise.

DISTAL CCA

Although dCCA and pCCA are similar with respect to the pathologic mutations and cells of origin, they differ significantly in their surgical management largely because of their distinct anatomic location[4]. Lesions suspicious for dCCA are evaluated similarly to pCCA with EUS, ERCP, computed tomography, and magnetic resonance imaging for definitive diagnosis, staging, and determining resectability. In evaluations of radiation therapy for CCA, dCCA and pCCA are generally referred to as extrahepatic CCA. This data was reviewed above, therefore will not be repeated in this section.

Surgical management

As with other types of CCA, the treatment of choice for dCCA is surgical resection. However, patients with dCCA are typically treated with pancreaticoduodenectomy rather than liver resection. Complete R0 resection is more common in patients with dCCA and is achieved in approximately 78% of patients[10]. The five-year survival of

patients who have curative intent surgery remains relatively poor at 37% with median survival of 33 mo[103]. Because the tumor does not involve the liver or require biliary reconstruction, liver transplant is not necessary or beneficial in the management of distal CCA.

Systemic therapy

Patients who undergo curative intent resection should be treated with capcitabine which has been shown to improve survival compared to observation[29]. In patients who are not candidates for resection and have good performance status, first line systemic therapy gemcitabine and cisplatin. Data regarding survival in patients with advanced unresectable dCCA treated with this regimen is difficult interpret due to pCCA and dCCA often being classified together and one trial in which the 95% confidence interval of the hazard radio for death crossed 1 in patients with extrahepatic CCA[30]. However, survival for patients with advanced unresectable biliary tract cancers treated with gemcitabine/cisplatin is approximately 11 mo[77]. Because of the limited data for survival benefit specific to patients with dCCA treated with gemcitabine/cisplatin consideration should be given to enroll patients in clinical trials and evaluate for targetable mutations, when available.

Management of biliary obstruction

ERCP with biliary stenting is the preferred approach for the management of patients with distal MBO. When compared to PTHD, ERCP is associated with less adverse events (8.6% *vs* 12.3%), lower cost and shorter hospitalization, and improved QOL[82,83,104-106].

Recent data support the use of SEMS over PS for the management of distal MBO, although it largely includes patients with .biliary obstruction secondary to pancreatic malignancy. Overall, there is no significant difference in terms of technical success between the two approaches; however, SEMS are associated with longer stent patency, fewer adverse events, and less reinterventions[107,108].

Several studies have evaluated outcomes between uncovered *vs* covered metal stents for distal MBO[109-112]. In a randomized trial of 129 patients with distal MBO, there was no difference in stent patency or survival rates between uncovered *vs* partially covered SEMS; albeit the latter were associated with a higher rate of stent migration (0% *vs* 12%)[111]. Similarly, in another randomized trial of 400 patients, USEMS and FCSEMS had similar stent failure rates and time to re-occlusion, with no differences in survival time. Notably, stent migration was also more frequent with FCSEMS *vs* USEMS (3% *vs* 0%)[112]. Since MBO secondary to CCA is primarily a consequence of tumor growth within the bile duct lumen, placement of a FCSEMS may be preferable as to reduce the risk of tumor ingrowth.

CONCLUSION

Over the past several years there has been significant progress in the management of CCA. The role of liver transplantation has been clearly established for the management of pCCA and in some series rivaling the success of surgical resection. Transplantation is also being evaluated for iCCA with encouraging early results. Capecitabine has become first line adjuvant chemotherapy for all patients with curative intent resections of biliary tumors. With increasing understanding of mutational pathogenesis of the CCA, targeted therapies are showing significant promise and has led to the first FDA approved therapy for CCA targeting a specific mutation, pemigatinib. The use of SEMS has also improved management of obstructive symptoms over PS and advanced biliary stent design, endobiliary ablation, and EUS guided BD are avenues of investigation that may further improve management.

REFERENCES

1 **Bridgewater J**, Galle PR, Khan SA, Llovet JM, Park JW, Patel T, Pawlik TM, Gores GJ. Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 1268-1289 [PMID: 24681130 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.01.021]

2 **Khan SA**, Toledano MB, Taylor-Robinson SD. Epidemiology, risk factors, and pathogenesis of cholangiocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2008; **10**: 77-82 [PMID: 18773060 DOI: 10.1080/13651820801992641]

3 **Rizvi S**, Khan SA, Hallemeier CL, Kelley RK, Gores GJ. Cholangiocarcinoma - evolving concepts

and therapeutic strategies. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2018; **15**: 95-111 [PMID: 28994423 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2017.157]

4 **Banales JM**, Marin JJG, Lamarca A, Rodrigues PM, Khan SA, Roberts LR, Cardinale V, Carpino G, Andersen JB, Braconi C, Calvisi DF, Perugorria MJ, Fabris L, Boulter L, Macias RIR, Gaudio E, Alvaro D, Gradilone SA, Strazzabosco M, Marzioni M, Coulouarn C, Fouassier L, Raggi C, Invernizzi P, Mertens JC, Moncsek A, Rizvi S, Heimbach J, Koerkamp BG, Bruix J, Forner A, Bridgewater J, Valle JW, Gores GJ. Cholangiocarcinoma 2020: the next horizon in mechanisms and management. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **17**: 557-588 [PMID: 32606456 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-020-0310-z]

5 **Jarnagin WR**, Fong Y, DeMatteo RP, Gonen M, Burke EC, Bodniewicz BS J, Youssef BA M, Klimstra D, Blumgart LH. Staging, resectability, and outcome in 225 patients with hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2001; **234**: 507-517 [PMID: 11573044 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200110000-00010]

6 **Bertuccio P**, Malvezzi M, Carioli G, Hashim D, Boffetta P, El-Serag HB, La Vecchia C, Negri E. Global trends in mortality from intrahepatic and extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 104-114 [PMID: 30910538 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.03.013]

7 AJCC Cancer Staging Handbook - From the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. 7th ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 2010

8 **Weber SM**, Ribero D, O'Reilly EM, Kokudo N, Miyazaki M, Pawlik TM. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: expert consensus statement. *HPB (Oxford)* 2015; **17**: 669-680 [PMID: 26172134 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12441]

9 **Amini N**, Ejaz A, Spolverato G, Kim Y, Herman JM, Pawlik TM. Temporal trends in liver-directed therapy of patients with intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma in the United States: a population-based analysis. *J Surg Oncol* 2014; **110**: 163-170 [PMID: 24676600 DOI: 10.1002/jso.23605]

10 **DeOliveira ML**, Cunningham SC, Cameron JL, Kamangar F, Winter JM, Lillemoe KD, Choti MA, Yeo CJ, Schulick RD. Cholangiocarcinoma: thirty-one-year experience with 564 patients at a single institution. *Ann Surg* 2007; **245**: 755-762 [PMID: 17457168 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000251366.62632.d3]

11 **Si A**, Li J, Yang Z, Xia Y, Yang T, Lei Z, Cheng Z, Pawlik TM, Lau WY, Shen F. Impact of Anatomical Versus Non-anatomical Liver Resection on Short- and Long-Term Outcomes for Patients with Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2019; **26**: 1841-1850 [PMID: 30843164 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-019-07260-8]

12 **Chapelle T**, Op de Beeck B, Roeyen G, Bracke B, Hartman V, De Greef K, Huyghe I, Van der Zijden T, Morrison S, Francque S, Ysebaert D. Measuring future liver remnant function prior to hepatectomy may guide the indication for portal vein occlusion and avoid posthepatectomy liver failure: a prospective interventional study. *HPB (Oxford)* 2017; **19**: 108-117 [PMID: 27956027 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2016.11.005]

13 **Ebata T**, Yokoyama Y, Igami T, Sugawara G, Takahashi Y, Nagino M. Portal vein embolization before extended hepatectomy for biliary cancer: current technique and review of 494 consecutive embolizations. *Dig Surg* 2012; **29**: 23-29 [PMID: 22441616 DOI: 10.1159/000335718]

14 **Liu R**, Wakabayashi G, Kim HJ, Choi GH, Yiengpruksawan A, Fong Y, He J, Boggi U, Troisi RI, Efanov M, Azoulay D, Panaro F, Pessaux P, Wang XY, Zhu JY, Zhang SG, Sun CD, Wu Z, Tao KS, Yang KH, Fan J, Chen XP. International consensus statement on robotic hepatectomy surgery in 2018. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 1432-1444 [PMID: 30948907 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i12.1432]

15 **Sahara K**, Tsilimigras DI, Merath K, Bagante F, Guglielmi A, Aldrighetti L, Weiss M, Bauer TW, Alexandrescu S, Poultsides GA, Maithel SK, Marques HP, Martel G, Pulitano C, Shen F, Soubrane O, Koerkamp BG, Matsuyama R, Endo I, Pawlik TM. Therapeutic Index Associated with Lymphadenectomy Among Patients with Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: Which Patients Benefit the Most from Nodal Evaluation? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2019; **26**: 2959-2968 [PMID: 31152272 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-019-07483-9]

16 **Mazzaferro V**, Gorgen A, Roayaie S, Droz Dit Busset M, Sapisochin G. Liver resection and transplantation for intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2020; **72**: 364-377 [PMID: 31954498 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.11.020]

17 **Wright GP**, Perkins S, Jones H, Zureikat AH, Marsh JW, Holtzman MP, Zeh HJ 3rd, Bartlett DL, Pingpank JF Jr. Surgical Resection Does Not Improve Survival in Multifocal Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: A Comparison of Surgical Resection with Intra-Arterial Therapies. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2018; **25**: 83-90 [PMID: 29063296 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-017-6110-1]

18 **Tan JC**, Coburn NG, Baxter NN, Kiss A, Law CH. Surgical management of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma--a population-based study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 600-608 [PMID: 17987347 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9627-x]

19 **Chan KM**, Tsai CY, Yeh CN, Yeh TS, Lee WC, Jan YY, Chen MF. Characterization of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma after curative resection: outcome, prognostic factor, and recurrence. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2018; **18**: 180 [PMID: 30514231 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-018-0912-x]

20 **Patel T**. Increasing incidence and mortality of primary intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma in the United States. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1353-1357 [PMID: 11391522 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.25087]

21 **Hyder O**, Marques H, Pulitano C, Marsh JW, Alexandrescu S, Bauer TW, Gamblin TC, Sotiropoulos GC, Paul A, Barroso E, Clary BM, Aldrighetti L, Ferrone CR, Zhu AX, Popescu I, Gigot JF, Mentha G, Feng S, Pawlik TM. A nomogram to predict long-term survival after resection

for intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: an Eastern and Western experience. *JAMA Surg* 2014; **149**: 432-438 [PMID: 24599477 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2013.5168]

22 **Mavros MN**, Economopoulos KP, Alexiou VG, Pawlik TM. Treatment and Prognosis for Patients With Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *JAMA Surg* 2014; **149**: 565-574 [PMID: 24718873 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2013.5137]

23 **Spolverato G**, Kim Y, Alexandrescu S, Marques HP, Lamelas J, Aldrighetti L, Clark Gamblin T, Maithel SK, Pulitano C, Bauer TW, Shen F, Poultsides GA, Tran TB, Wallis Marsh J, Pawlik TM. Management and Outcomes of Patients with Recurrent Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma Following Previous Curative-Intent Surgical Resection. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2016; **23**: 235-243 [PMID: 26059651 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-015-4642-9]

24 **Goldstein RM**, Stone M, Tillery GW, Senzer N, Levy M, Husberg BS, Gonwa T, Klintmalm G. Is liver transplantation indicated for cholangiocarcinoma? *Am J Surg* 1993; **166**: 768-771 [PMID: 8273866 DOI: 10.1016/s0002-9610(05)80696-8]

25 **Sapisochin G**, Facciuto M, Rubbia-Brandt L, Marti J, Mehta N, Yao FY, Vibert E, Cherqui D, Grant DR, Hernandez-Alejandro R, Dale CH, Cucchetti A, Pinna A, Hwang S, Lee SG, Agopian VG, Busuttil RW, Rizvi S, Heimbach JK, Montenovo M, Reyes J, Cesaretti M, Soubrane O, Reichman T, Seal J, Kim PT, Klintmalm G, Sposito C, Mazzaferro V, Dutkowski P, Clavien PA, Toso C, Majno P, Kneteman N, Saunders C, Bruix J; iCCA International Consortium. Liver transplantation for "very early" intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: International retrospective study supporting a prospective assessment. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 1178-1188 [PMID: 27481548 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28744]

26 **De Martin E**, Rayar M, Golse N, Dupeux M, Gelli M, Gnemmi V, Allard MA, Cherqui D, Sa Cunha A, Adam R, Coilly A, Antonini TM, Guettier C, Samuel D, Boudjema K, Boleslawski E, Vibert E. Analysis of Liver Resection Versus Liver Transplantation on Outcome of Small Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma and Combined Hepatocellular-Cholangiocarcinoma in the Setting of Cirrhosis. *Liver Transpl* 2020; **26**: 785-798 [PMID: 32090444 DOI: 10.1002/lt.25737]

27 **Lunsford KE**, Javle M, Heyne K, Shroff RT, Abdel-Wahab R, Gupta N, Mobley CM, Saharia A, Victor DW, Nguyen DT, Graviss EA, Kaseb AO, McFadden RS, Aloia TA, Conrad C, Li XC, Monsour HP, Gaber AO, Vauthey JN, Ghobrial RM; Methodist–MD Anderson Joint Cholangiocarcinoma Collaborative Committee (MMAJCCC). Liver transplantation for locally advanced intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma treated with neoadjuvant therapy: a prospective case-series. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **3**: 337-348 [PMID: 29548617 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(18)30045-1]

28 **Shroff RT**, Kennedy EB, Bachini M, Bekaii-Saab T, Crane C, Edeline J, El-Khoueiry A, Feng M, Katz MHG, Primrose J, Soares HP, Valle J, Maithel SK. Adjuvant Therapy for Resected Biliary Tract Cancer: ASCO Clinical Practice Guideline. *J Clin Oncol* 2019; **37**: 1015-1027 [PMID: 30856044 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.18.02178]

29 **Primrose JN**, Fox R, Palmer DH, Prasad R, Mirza D, Anthoney DA, Corrie P, Falk S, Wasan HS, Ross PJ, Wall LR, Wadsley J, Evans TRJ, Stocken D, Praseedom R, Cunningham D, Garden OJ, Stubbs C, Valle JW, Bridgewater JA. Adjuvant capecitabine for biliary tract cancer: The BILCAP randomized study. *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 4006 [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2017.35.15_suppl.4006]

30 **Valle J**, Wasan H, Palmer DH, Cunningham D, Anthoney A, Maraveyas A, Madhusudan S, Iveson T, Hughes S, Pereira SP, Roughton M, Bridgewater J; ABC-02 Trial Investigators. Cisplatin plus gemcitabine versus gemcitabine for biliary tract cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1273-1281 [PMID: 20375404 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908721]

31 **Lamarca A**, Palmer DH, Wasan HS, Ross PJ, Ma YT, Arora A, Falk S, Gillmore R, Wadsley J, Patel K, Anthoney A, Maraveyas A, Waters JS, Hobbs C, Barber S, Ryder D, Ramage J, Davies LM, Bridgewater JA, Valle JW. ABC-06 | A randomised phase III, multi-centre, open-label study of active symptom control (ASC) alone or ASC with oxaliplatin / 5-FU chemotherapy (ASC+mFOLFOX) for patients (pts) with locally advanced / metastatic biliary tract cancers (ABC) previously-treated with cisplatin/gemcitabine (CisGem) chemotherapy. *J Clin Oncol* 2019; **37**: 4003 [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2019.37.15_suppl.4003]

32 **Kelley RK**, Bridgewater J, Gores GJ, Zhu AX. Systemic therapies for intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2020; **72**: 353-363 [PMID: 31954497 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.10.009]

33 **Lee J**, Park SH, Chang HM, Kim JS, Choi HJ, Lee MA, Jang JS, Jeung HC, Kang JH, Lee HW, Shin DB, Kang HJ, Sun JM, Park JO, Park YS, Kang WK, Lim HY. Gemcitabine and oxaliplatin with or without erlotinib in advanced biliary-tract cancer: a multicentre, open-label, randomised, phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: 181-188 [PMID: 22192731 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70301-1]

34 **Kipp BR**, Voss JS, Kerr SE, Barr Fritcher EG, Graham RP, Zhang L, Highsmith WE, Zhang J, Roberts LR, Gores GJ, Halling KC. Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 and 2 mutations in cholangiocarcinoma. *Hum Pathol* 2012; **43**: 1552-1558 [PMID: 22503487 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2011.12.007]

35 **Abou-Alfa GK**, Macarulla T, Javle MM, Kelley RK, Lubner SJ, Adeva J, Cleary JM, Catenacci DV, Borad MJ, Bridgewater J, Harris WP, Murphy AG, Oh DY, Whisenant J, Lowery MA, Goyal L, Shroff RT, El-Khoueiry AB, Fan B, Wu B, Chamberlain CX, Jiang L, Gliser C, Pandya SS, Valle JW, Zhu AX. Ivosidenib in IDH1-mutant, chemotherapy-refractory cholangiocarcinoma (ClarIDHy): a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**:

796-807 [PMID: 32416072 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30157-1]
36 **Babina IS**, Turner NC. Advances and challenges in targeting FGFR signalling in cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2017; **17**: 318-332 [PMID: 28303906 DOI: 10.1038/nrc.2017.8]
37 **Graham RP**, Barr Fritcher EG, Pestova E, Schulz J, Sitailo LA, Vasmatzis G, Murphy SJ, McWilliams RR, Hart SN, Halling KC, Roberts LR, Gores GJ, Couch FJ, Zhang L, Borad MJ, Kipp BR. Fibroblast growth factor receptor 2 translocations in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Hum Pathol* 2014; **45**: 1630-1638 [PMID: 24837095 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2014.03.014]
38 **Sia D**, Losic B, Moeini A, Cabellos L, Hao K, Revill K, Bonal D, Miltiadous O, Zhang Z, Hoshida Y, Cornella H, Castillo-Martin M, Pinyol R, Kasai Y, Roayaie S, Thung SN, Fuster J, Schwartz ME, Waxman S, Cordon-Cardo C, Schadt E, Mazzaferro V, Llovet JM. Massive parallel sequencing uncovers actionable FGFR2-PPHLN1 fusion and ARAF mutations in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Nat Commun* 2015; **6**: 6087 [PMID: 25608663 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms7087]
39 **Abou-Alfa GK**, Sahai V, Hollebecque A, Vaccaro G, Melisi D, Al-Rajabi R, Paulson AS, Borad MJ, Gallinson D, Murphy AG, Oh DY, Dotan E, Catenacci DV, Van Cutsem E, Ji T, Lihou CF, Zhen H, Féliz L, Vogel A. Pemigatinib for previously treated, locally advanced or metastatic cholangiocarcinoma: a multicentre, open-label, phase 2 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 671-684 [PMID: 32203698 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30109-1]
40 **Javle M**, Lowery M, Shroff RT, Weiss KH, Springfeld C, Borad MJ, Ramanathan RK, Goyal L, Sadeghi S, Macarulla T, El-Khoueiry A, Kelley RK, Borbath I, Choo SP, Oh DY, Philip PA, Chen LT, Reungwetwattana T, Van Cutsem E, Yeh KH, Ciombor K, Finn RS, Patel A, Sen S, Porter D, Isaacs R, Zhu AX, Abou-Alfa GK, Bekaii-Saab T. Phase II Study of BGJ398 in Patients With FGFR-Altered Advanced Cholangiocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2018; **36**: 276-282 [PMID: 29182496 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.75.5009]
41 **Goyal L**, Shi L, Liu LY, Fece de la Cruz F, Lennerz JK, Raghavan S, Leschiner I, Elagina L, Siravegna G, Ng RWS, Vu P, Patra KC, Saha SK, Uppot RN, Arellano R, Reyes S, Sagara T, Otsuki S, Nadres B, Shahzade HA, Dey-Guha I, Fetter IJ, Baiev I, Van Seventer EE, Murphy JE, Ferrone CR, Tanabe KK, Deshpande V, Harding JJ, Yaeger R, Kelley RK, Bardelli A, Iafrate AJ, Hahn WC, Benes CH, Ting DT, Hirai H, Getz G, Juric D, Zhu AX, Corcoran RB, Bardeesy N. TAS-120 Overcomes Resistance to ATP-Competitive FGFR Inhibitors in Patients with FGFR2 Fusion-Positive Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma. *Cancer Discov* 2019; **9**: 1064-1079 [PMID: 31109923 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0182]
42 **Goyal L**, Saha SK, Liu LY, Siravegna G, Leshchiner I, Ahronian LG, Lennerz JK, Vu P, Deshpande V, Kambadakone A, Mussolin B, Reyes S, Henderson L, Sun JE, Van Seventer EE, Gurski JM Jr, Baltschukat S, Schacher-Engstler B, Barys L, Stamm C, Furet P, Ryan DP, Stone JR, Iafrate AJ, Getz G, Porta DG, Tiedt R, Bardelli A, Juric D, Corcoran RB, Bardeesy N, Zhu AX. Polyclonal Secondary *FGFR2* Mutations Drive Acquired Resistance to FGFR Inhibition in Patients with FGFR2 Fusion-Positive Cholangiocarcinoma. *Cancer Discov* 2017; **7**: 252-263 [PMID: 28034880 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-16-1000]
43 **Høgdall D**, Lewinska M, Andersen JB. Desmoplastic Tumor Microenvironment and Immunotherapy in Cholangiocarcinoma. *Trends Cancer* 2018; **4**: 239-255 [PMID: 29506673 DOI: 10.1016/j.trecan.2018.01.007]
44 **Le DT**, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, Skora AD, Luber BS, Azad NS, Laheru D, Biedrzycki B, Donehower RC, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Duffy SM, Goldberg RM, de la Chapelle A, Koshiji M, Bhaijee F, Huebner T, Hruban RH, Wood LD, Cuka N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Zhou S, Cornish TC, Taube JM, Anders RA, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Diaz LA Jr. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2509-2520 [PMID: 26028255 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1500596]
45 **Silva VW**, Askan G, Daniel TD, Lowery M, Klimstra DS, Abou-Alfa GK, Shia J. Biliary carcinomas: pathology and the role of DNA mismatch repair deficiency. *Chin Clin Oncol* 2016; **5**: 62 [PMID: 27829276 DOI: 10.21037/cco.2016.10.04]
46 **Kim RD**, Chung V, Alese OB, El-Rayes BF, Li D, Al-Toubah TE, Schell MJ, Zhou JM, Mahipal A, Kim BH, Kim DW. A Phase 2 Multi-institutional Study of Nivolumab for Patients With Advanced Refractory Biliary Tract Cancer. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: 888-894 [PMID: 32352498 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2020.0930]
47 **Zehir A**, Benayed R, Shah RH, Syed A, Middha S, Kim HR, Srinivasan P, Gao J, Chakravarty D, Devlin SM, Hellmann MD, Barron DA, Schram AM, Hameed M, Dogan S, Ross DS, Hechtman JF, DeLair DF, Yao J, Mandelker DL, Cheng DT, Chandramohan R, Mohanty AS, Ptashkin RN, Jayakumaran G, Prasad M, Syed MH, Rema AB, Liu ZY, Nafa K, Borsu L, Sadowska J, Casanova J, Bacares R, Kiecka IJ, Razumova A, Son JB, Stewart L, Baldi T, Mullaney KA, Al-Ahmadie H, Vakiani E, Abeshouse AA, Penson AV, Jonsson P, Camacho N, Chang MT, Won HH, Gross BE, Kundra R, Heins ZJ, Chen HW, Phillips S, Zhang H, Wang J, Ochoa A, Wills J, Eubank M, Thomas SB, Gardos SM, Reales DN, Galle J, Durany R, Cambria R, Abida W, Cercek A, Feldman DR, Gounder MM, Hakimi AA, Harding JJ, Iyer G, Janjigian YY, Jordan EJ, Kelly CM, Lowery MA, Morris LGT, Omuro AM, Raj N, Razavi P, Shoushtari AN, Shukla N, Soumerai TE, Varghese AM, Yaeger R, Coleman J, Bochner B, Riely GJ, Saltz LB, Scher HI, Sabbatini PJ, Robson ME, Klimstra DS, Taylor BS, Baselga J, Schultz N, Hyman DM, Arcila ME, Solit DB, Ladanyi M, Berger MF. Mutational landscape of metastatic cancer revealed from prospective clinical sequencing of 10,000 patients. *Nat Med* 2017; **23**: 703-713 [PMID: 28481359 DOI: 10.1038/nm.4333]
48 **Buettner S**, Braat AJAT, Margonis GA, Brown DB, Taylor KB, Borgmann AJ, Kappadath SC,

Mahvash A, IJzermans JNM, Weiss MJ, Lamarca A, Bell JK, Valle JW, Hagendoorn J, Koerkamp BG, Sze DY, Lam MGEH. Yttrium-90 Radioembolization in Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: A Multicenter Retrospective Analysis. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2020; **31**: 1035-1043 [PMID: 32473757 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2020.02.008]

49 **Kiefer MV**, Albert M, McNally M, Robertson M, Sun W, Fraker D, Olthoff K, Christians K, Pappas S, Rilling W, Soulen MC. Chemoembolization of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma with cisplatinum, doxorubicin, mitomycin C, ethiodol, and polyvinyl alcohol: a 2-center study. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 1498-1505 [PMID: 21425151 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25625]

50 **Han K**, Ko HK, Kim KW, Won HJ, Shin YM, Kim PN. Radiofrequency ablation in the treatment of unresectable intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2015; **26**: 943-948 [PMID: 25899049 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2015.02.024]

51 **Koay EJ**, Odisio BC, Javle M, Vauthey JN, Crane CH. Management of unresectable intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: how do we decide among the various liver-directed treatments? *Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr* 2017; **6**: 105-116 [PMID: 28503558 DOI: 10.21037/hbsn.2017.01.16]

52 **Wu ZF**, Zhang HB, Yang N, Zhao WC, Fu Y, Yang GS. Postoperative adjuvant transcatheter arterial chemoembolisation improves survival of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma patients with poor prognostic factors: results of a large monocentric series. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2012; **38**: 602-610 [PMID: 22417704 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2012.02.185]

53 **Kim JH**, Won HJ, Shin YM, Kim PN, Lee SG, Hwang S. Radiofrequency ablation for recurrent intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma after curative resection. *Eur J Radiol* 2011; **80**: e221-e225 [PMID: 20950977 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2010.09.019]

54 **Cercek A**, Boerner T, Tan BR, Chou JF, Gönen M, Boucher TM, Hauser HF, Do RKG, Lowery MA, Harding JJ, Varghese AM, Reidy-Lagunes D, Saltz L, Schultz N, Kingham TP, D'Angelica MI, DeMatteo RP, Drebin JA, Allen PJ, Balachandran VP, Lim KH, Sanchez-Vega F, Vachharajani N, Majella Doyle MB, Fields RC, Hawkins WG, Strasberg SM, Chapman WC, Diaz LA Jr, Kemeny NE, Jarnagin WR. Assessment of Hepatic Arterial Infusion of Floxuridine in Combination With Systemic Gemcitabine and Oxaliplatin in Patients With Unresectable Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: A Phase 2 Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: 60-67 [PMID: 31670750 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.3718]

55 **Hong TS**, Wo JY, Yeap BY, Ben-Josef E, McDonnell EI, Blaszkowsky LS, Kwak EL, Allen JN, Clark JW, Goyal L, Murphy JE, Javle MM, Wolfgang JA, Drapek LC, Arellano RS, Mamon HJ, Mullen JT, Yoon SS, Tanabe KK, Ferrone CR, Ryan DP, DeLaney TF, Crane CH, Zhu AX. Multi-Institutional Phase II Study of High-Dose Hypofractionated Proton Beam Therapy in Patients With Localized, Unresectable Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 460-468 [PMID: 26668346 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.64.2710]

56 **Tse RV**, Hawkins M, Lockwood G, Kim JJ, Cummings B, Knox J, Sherman M, Dawson LA. Phase I study of individualized stereotactic body radiotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 657-664 [PMID: 18172187 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.3529]

57 **Tao R**, Krishnan S, Bhosale PR, Javle MM, Aloia TA, Shroff RT, Kaseb AO, Bishop AJ, Swanick CW, Koay EJ, Thames HD, Hong TS, Das P, Crane CH. Ablative Radiotherapy Doses Lead to a Substantial Prolongation of Survival in Patients With Inoperable Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma: A Retrospective Dose Response Analysis. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 219-226 [PMID: 26503201 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.61.3778]

58 **Weismüller TJ**, Trivedi PJ, Bergquist A, Imam M, Lenzen H, Ponsioen CY, Holm K, Gotthardt D, Färkkilä MA, Marschall HU, Thorburn D, Weersma RK, Fevery J, Mueller T, Chazouillères O, Schulze K, Lazaridis KN, Almer S, Pereira SP, Levy C, Mason A, Naess S, Bowlus CL, Floreani A, Halilbasic E, Yimam KK, Milkiewicz P, Beuers U, Huynh DK, Pares A, Manser CN, Dalekos GN, Eksteen B, Invernizzi P, Berg CP, Kirchner GI, Sarrazin C, Zimmer V, Fabris L, Braun F, Marzioni M, Juran BD, Said K, Rupp C, Jokelainen K, Benito de Valle M, Saffioti F, Cheung A, Trauner M, Schramm C, Chapman RW, Karlsen TH, Schrumpf E, Strassburg CP, Manns MP, Lindor KD, Hirschfield GM, Hansen BE, Boberg KM; International PSC Study Group. Patient Age, Sex, and Inflammatory Bowel Disease Phenotype Associate With Course of Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 1975-1984 [PMID: 28274849 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.02.038]

59 **Trikudanathan G**, Navaneethan U, Njei B, Vargo JJ, Parsi MA. Diagnostic yield of bile duct brushings for cholangiocarcinoma in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 783-789 [PMID: 24140129 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.09.015]

60 **Barr Fritcher EG**, Voss JS, Brankley SM, Campion MB, Jenkins SM, Keeney ME, Henry MR, Kerr SM, Chaiteerakij R, Pestova EV, Clayton AC, Zhang J, Roberts LR, Gores GJ, Halling KC, Kipp BR. An Optimized Set of Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization Probes for Detection of Pancreatobiliary Tract Cancer in Cytology Brush Samples. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **149**: 1813-1824.e1 [PMID: 26327129 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.08.046]

61 **Rizvi S**, Eaton J, Yang JD, Chandrasekhara V, Gores GJ. Emerging Technologies for the Diagnosis of Perihilar Cholangiocarcinoma. *Semin Liver Dis* 2018; **38**: 160-169 [PMID: 29871021 DOI: 10.1055/s-0038-1655775]

62 **Yang JD**, Campion MB, Liu MC, Chaiteerakij R, Giama NH, Ahmed Mohammed H, Zhang X, Hu C, Campion VL, Jen J, Venkatesh SK, Halling KC, Kipp BR, Roberts LR. Circulating tumor cells are associated with poor overall survival in patients with cholangiocarcinoma. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**:

148-158 [PMID: 26096702 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27944]
63 **Dudley JC**, Zheng Z, McDonald T, Le LP, Dias-Santagata D, Borger D, Batten J, Vernovsky K, Sweeney B, Arpin RN, Brugge WR, Forcione DG, Pitman MB, Iafrate AJ. Next-Generation Sequencing and Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization Have Comparable Performance Characteristics in the Analysis of Pancreaticobiliary Brushings for Malignancy. *J Mol Diagn* 2016; **18**: 124-130 [PMID: 26596524 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmoldx.2015.08.002]
64 **Mertens J**. Clinical diagnosis and management of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2014; **3**: 60-64 [PMID: 30992887 DOI: 10.1002/cld.328]
65 **Bird N**, Elmasry M, Jones R, Elniel M, Kelly M, Palmer D, Fenwick S, Poston G, Malik H. Role of staging laparoscopy in the stratification of patients with perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2017; **104**: 418-425 [PMID: 27861766 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.10399]
66 **Groot Koerkamp B**, Wiggers JK, Allen PJ, Besselink MG, Blumgart LH, Busch OR, Coelen RJ, D'Angelica MI, DeMatteo RP, Gouma DJ, Kingham TP, Jarnagin WR, van Gulik TM. Recurrence Rate and Pattern of Perihilar Cholangiocarcinoma after Curative Intent Resection. *J Am Coll Surg* 2015; **221**: 1041-1049 [PMID: 26454735 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2015.09.005]
67 **Ebata T**, Mizuno T, Yokoyama Y, Igami T, Sugawara G, Nagino M. Surgical resection for Bismuth type IV perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2018; **105**: 829-838 [PMID: 28488733 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.10556]
68 **Neuhaus P**, Jonas S, Bechstein WO, Lohmann R, Radke C, Kling N, Wex C, Lobeck H, Hintze R. Extended resections for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Ann Surg* 1999; **230**: 808-818 [PMID: 10615936 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199912000-00010]
69 **van Vugt JLA**, Gaspersz MP, Coelen RJS, Vugts J, Labeur TA, de Jonge J, Polak WG, Busch ORC, Besselink MG, IJzermans JNM, Nio CY, van Gulik TM, Willemssen FEJA, Groot Koerkamp B. The prognostic value of portal vein and hepatic artery involvement in patients with perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2018; **20**: 83-92 [PMID: 28958483 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2017.08.025]
70 **Rosen CB**, Heimbach JK, Gores GJ. Liver transplantation for cholangiocarcinoma. *Transpl Int* 2010; **23**: 692-697 [PMID: 20497401 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2010.01108.x]
71 **Meyer CG**, Penn I, James L. Liver transplantation for cholangiocarcinoma: results in 207 patients. *Transplantation* 2000; **69**: 1633-1637 [PMID: 10836374 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-200004270-00019]
72 **Darwish Murad S**, Kim WR, Harnois DM, Douglas DD, Burton J, Kulik LM, Botha JF, Mezrich JD, Chapman WC, Schwartz JJ, Hong JC, Emond JC, Jeon H, Rosen CB, Gores GJ, Heimbach JK. Efficacy of neoadjuvant chemoradiation, followed by liver transplantation, for perihilar cholangiocarcinoma at 12 US centers. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 88-98 [PMID: 22504095 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.04.008]
73 **Ethun CG**, Lopez-Aguiar AG, Anderson DJ, Adams AB, Fields RC, Doyle MB, Chapman WC, Krasnick BA, Weber SM, Mezrich JD, Salem A, Pawlik TM, Poultsides G, Tran TB, Idrees K, Isom CA, Martin RCG, Scoggins CR, Shen P, Mogal HD, Schmidt C, Beal E, Hatzaras I, Shenoy R, Cardona K, Maithel SK. Transplantation Versus Resection for Hilar Cholangiocarcinoma: An Argument for Shifting Treatment Paradigms for Resectable Disease. *Ann Surg* 2018; **267**: 797-805 [PMID: 29064885 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000002574]
74 **Frosio F**, Mocchegiani F, Conte G, Bona ED, Vecchi A, Nicolini D, Vivarelli M. Neoadjuvant therapy in the treatment of hilar cholangiocarcinoma: Review of the literature. *World J Gastrointest Surg* 2019; **11**: 279-286 [PMID: 31367275 DOI: 10.4240/wjgs.v11.i6.279]
75 **Heimbach JK**, Gores GJ, Haddock MG, Alberts SR, Pedersen R, Kremers W, Nyberg SL, Ishitani MB, Rosen CB. Predictors of disease recurrence following neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy and liver transplantation for unresectable perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Transplantation* 2006; **82**: 1703-1707 [PMID: 17198263 DOI: 10.1097/01.tp.0000253551.43583.d1]
76 **Hong JC**, Jones CM, Duffy JP, Petrowsky H, Farmer DG, French S, Finn R, Durazo FA, Saab S, Tong MJ, Hiatt JR, Busuttil RW. Comparative analysis of resection and liver transplantation for intrahepatic and hilar cholangiocarcinoma: a 24-year experience in a single center. *Arch Surg* 2011; **146**: 683-689 [PMID: 21690444 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2011.116]
77 **Valle JW**, Furuse J, Jitlal M, Beare S, Mizuno N, Wasan H, Bridgewater J, Okusaka T. Cisplatin and gemcitabine for advanced biliary tract cancer: a meta-analysis of two randomised trials. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: 391-398 [PMID: 24351397 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdt540]
78 **Vern-Gross TZ**, Shivnani AT, Chen K, Lee CM, Tward JD, MacDonald OK, Crane CH, Talamonti MS, Munoz LL, Small W Jr. Survival outcomes in resected extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: effect of adjuvant radiotherapy in a surveillance, epidemiology, and end results analysis. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2011; **81**: 189-198 [PMID: 20971573 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2010.05.001]
79 **Kim YI**, Park JW, Kim BH, Woo SM, Kim TH, Koh YH, Lee WJ, Kim CM. Outcomes of concurrent chemoradiotherapy versus chemotherapy alone for advanced-stage unresectable intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Radiat Oncol* 2013; **8**: 292 [PMID: 24359879 DOI: 10.1186/1748-717X-8-292]
80 **Gkika E**, Hallauer L, Kirste S, Adebahr S, Bartl N, Neeff HP, Fritsch R, Brass V, Nestle U, Grosu AL, Brunner TB. Stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT) for locally advanced intrahepatic and extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *BMC Cancer* 2017; **17**: 781 [PMID: 29162055 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-017-3788-1]
81 **van der Gaag NA**, Rauws EA, van Eijck CH, Bruno MJ, van der Harst E, Kubben FJ, Gerritsen JJ,

Greve JW, Gerhards MF, de Hingh IH, Klinkenbijl JH, Nio CY, de Castro SM, Busch OR, van Gulik TM, Bossuyt PM, Gouma DJ. Preoperative biliary drainage for cancer of the head of the pancreas. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 129-137 [PMID: 20071702 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0903230]

82 **Qiu YD**, Bai JL, Xu FG, Ding YT. Effect of preoperative biliary drainage on malignant obstructive jaundice: a meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 391-396 [PMID: 21253401 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i3.391]

83 **Sewnath ME**, Karsten TM, Prins MH, Rauws EJ, Obertop H, Gouma DJ. A meta-analysis on the efficacy of preoperative biliary drainage for tumors causing obstructive jaundice. *Ann Surg* 2002; **236**: 17-27 [PMID: 12131081 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200207000-00005]

84 **Lee SH**, Park JK, Yoon WJ, Lee JK, Ryu JK, Yoon YB, Kim YT. Optimal biliary drainage for inoperable Klatskin's tumor based on Bismuth type. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 3948-3955 [PMID: 17663508 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.i29.3948]

85 **Moole H**, Dharmapuri S, Duvvuri A, Boddireddy R, Moole V, Yedama P, Bondalapati N, Uppu A, Yerasi C. Endoscopic versus Percutaneous Biliary Drainage in Palliation of Advanced Malignant Hilar Obstruction: A Meta-Analysis and Systematic Review. *Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **2016**: 4726078 [PMID: 27648439 DOI: 10.1155/2016/4726078]

86 **Perdue DG**, Freeman ML, DiSario JA, Nelson DB, Fennerty MB, Lee JG, Overby CS, Ryan ME, Bochna GS, Snady HW, Moore JP; ERCP Outcome Study ERCOST Group. Plastic versus self-expanding metallic stents for malignant hilar biliary obstruction: a prospective multicenter observational cohort study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42**: 1040-1046 [PMID: 18719507 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31815853e0]

87 **Peters RA**, Williams SG, Lombard M, Karani J, Westaby D. The management of high-grade hilar strictures by endoscopic insertion of self-expanding metal endoprostheses. *Endoscopy* 1997; **29**: 10-16 [PMID: 9083730 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1004054]

88 **Sangchan A**, Kongkasame W, Pugkhem A, Jenwitheesuk K, Mairiang P. Efficacy of metal and plastic stents in unresectable complex hilar cholangiocarcinoma: a randomized controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 93-99 [PMID: 22595446 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.02.048]

89 **De Palma GD**, Galloro G, Siciliano S, Iovino P, Catanzano C. Unilateral versus bilateral endoscopic hepatic duct drainage in patients with malignant hilar biliary obstruction: results of a prospective, randomized, and controlled study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **53**: 547-553 [PMID: 11323577 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.113381]

90 **Lee TH**, Kim TH, Moon JH, Lee SH, Choi HJ, Hwangbo Y, Hyun JJ, Choi JH, Jeong S, Kim JH, Park DH, Han JH, Park SH. Bilateral versus unilateral placement of metal stents for inoperable high-grade malignant hilar biliary strictures: a multicenter, prospective, randomized study (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **86**: 817-827 [PMID: 28479493 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.04.037]

91 **Xia MX**, Cai XB, Pan YL, Wu J, Gao DJ, Ye X, Wang TT, Hu B. Optimal stent placement strategy for malignant hilar biliary obstruction: a large multicenter parallel study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **91**: 1117-1128 [PMID: 31881205 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.12.023]

92 **Naitoh I**, Hayashi K, Nakazawa T, Okumura F, Miyabe K, Shimizu S, Yoshida M, Yamashita H, Ohara H, Joh T. Side-by-side versus stent-in-stent deployment in bilateral endoscopic metal stenting for malignant hilar biliary obstruction. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 3279-3285 [PMID: 22732832 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-012-2270-9]

93 **Liu N**, Yang D, Draganov PV. Endoscopic Stenting for Malignant Hilar Biliary Obstruction: After You Double Down, Are You In or Out? *Dig Dis Sci* 2020; **65**: 3428-3430 [PMID: 32297066 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-020-06249-8]

94 **Kim KM**, Lee KH, Chung YH, Shin JU, Lee JK, Lee KT, Shim SG. A comparison of bilateral stenting methods for malignant hilar biliary obstruction. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2012; **59**: 341-346 [PMID: 22353496 DOI: 10.5754/hge11533]

95 **Vienne A**, Hobeika E, Gouya H, Lapidus N, Fritsch J, Choury AD, Chryssostalis A, Gaudric M, Pelletier G, Buffet C, Chaussade S, Prat F. Prediction of drainage effectiveness during endoscopic stenting of malignant hilar strictures: the role of liver volume assessment. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 728-735 [PMID: 20883850 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.06.040]

96 **Buerlein RCD**, Wang AY. Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography-Guided Ablation for Cholangiocarcinoma. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2019; **29**: 351-367 [PMID: 30846158 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2018.11.006]

97 **Alvarez-Sánchez MV**, Napoléon B. Review of endoscopic radiofrequency in biliopancreatic tumours with emphasis on clinical benefits, controversies and safety. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 8257-8270 [PMID: 27729733 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i37.8257]

98 **Yang J**, Wang J, Zhou H, Zhou Y, Wang Y, Jin H, Lou Q, Zhang X. Efficacy and safety of endoscopic radiofrequency ablation for unresectable extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: a randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 2018; **50**: 751-760 [PMID: 29342492 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-124870]

99 **Paik WH**, Lee TH, Park DH, Choi JH, Kim SO, Jang S, Kim DU, Shim JH, Song TJ, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. EUS-Guided Biliary Drainage Versus ERCP for the Primary Palliation of Malignant Biliary Obstruction: A Multicenter Randomized Clinical Trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2018; **113**: 987-997 [PMID: 29961772 DOI: 10.1038/s41395-018-0122-8]

100 **Bang JY**, Navaneethan U, Hasan M, Hawes R, Varadarajulu S. Stent placement by EUS or ERCP for primary biliary decompression in pancreatic cancer: a randomized trial (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **88**: 9-17 [PMID: 29574126 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.03.012]

101 **Park JK**, Woo YS, Noh DH, Yang JI, Bae SY, Yun HS, Lee JK, Lee KT, Lee KH. Efficacy of

EUS-guided and ERCP-guided biliary drainage for malignant biliary obstruction: prospective randomized controlled study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **88**: 277-282 [PMID: 29605722 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.03.015]

102 **Sharaiha RZ**, Khan MA, Kamal F, Tyberg A, Tombazzi CR, Ali B, Tombazzi C, Kahaleh M. Efficacy and safety of EUS-guided biliary drainage in comparison with percutaneous biliary drainage when ERCP fails: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **85**: 904-914 [PMID: 28063840 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2016.12.023]

103 **Zhou Y**, Liu S, Wu L, Wan T. Survival after surgical resection of distal cholangiocarcinoma: A systematic review and meta-analysis of prognostic factors. *Asian J Surg* 2017; **40**: 129-138 [PMID: 26337377 DOI: 10.1016/j.asjsur.2015.07.002]

104 **Velanovich V**, Kheibek T, Khan M. Relationship of postoperative complications from preoperative biliary stents after pancreaticoduodenectomy. A new cohort analysis and meta-analysis of modern studies. *JOP* 2009; **10**: 24-29 [PMID: 19129611]

105 **Abraham NS**, Barkun JS, Barkun AN. Palliation of malignant biliary obstruction: a prospective trial examining impact on quality of life. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 835-841 [PMID: 12447294 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.129868]

106 **Inamdar S**, Slattery E, Bhalla R, Sejpal DV, Trindade AJ. Comparison of Adverse Events for Endoscopic vs Percutaneous Biliary Drainage in the Treatment of Malignant Biliary Tract Obstruction in an Inpatient National Cohort. *JAMA Oncol* 2016; **2**: 112-117 [PMID: 26513013 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2015.3670]

107 **Sawas T**, Al Halabi S, Parsi MA, Vargo JJ. Self-expandable metal stents versus plastic stents for malignant biliary obstruction: a meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 256-267 [PMID: 25982849 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.03.1980]

108 **Almadi MA**, Barkun A, Martel M. Plastic vs. Self-Expandable Metal Stents for Palliation in Malignant Biliary Obstruction: A Series of Meta-Analyses. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2017; **112**: 260-273 [PMID: 27845340 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2016.512]

109 **Davids PH**, Groen AK, Rauws EA, Tytgat GN, Huibregtse K. Randomised trial of self-expanding metal stents versus polyethylene stents for distal malignant biliary obstruction. *Lancet* 1992; **340**: 1488-1492 [PMID: 1281903 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(92)92752-2]

110 **Kaassis M**, Boyer J, Dumas R, Ponchon T, Coumaros D, Delcenserie R, Canard JM, Fritsch J, Rey JF, Burtin P. Plastic or metal stents for malignant stricture of the common bile duct? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **57**: 178-182 [PMID: 12556780 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2003.66]

111 **Telford JJ**, Carr-Locke DL, Baron TH, Poneros JM, Bounds BC, Kelsey PB, Schapiro RH, Huang CS, Lichtenstein DR, Jacobson BC, Saltzman JR, Thompson CC, Forcione DG, Gostout CJ, Brugge WR. A randomized trial comparing uncovered and partially covered self-expandable metal stents in the palliation of distal malignant biliary obstruction. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 907-914 [PMID: 21034891 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.08.021]

112 **Kullman E**, Frozanpor F, Söderlund C, Linder S, Sandström P, Lindhoff-Larsson A, Toth E, Lindell G, Jonas E, Freedman J, Ljungman M, Rudberg C, Ohlin B, Zacharias R, Leijonmarck CE, Teder K, Ringman A, Persson G, Gözen M, Eriksson O. Covered versus uncovered self-expandable nitinol stents in the palliative treatment of malignant distal biliary obstruction: results from a randomized, multicenter study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 915-923 [PMID: 21034892 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.07.036]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1019-1041

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1019

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Herbal and dietary supplement induced liver injury: Highlights from the recent literature

Stephanie M Woo, William D Davis, Soorya Aggarwal, Joseph W Clinton, Sara Kiparizoska, James H Lewis

ORCID number: Stephanie M Woo 0000-0002-2010-3539; William D Davis 0000-0002-4059-4590; Soorya Aggarwal 0000-0003-0990-632X; Joseph W Clinton 0000-0002-9040-4302; Sara Kiparizoska 0000-0001-9470-2932; James H Lewis 0000-0002-6686-3744.

Author contributions: Woo SM, Davis WD, Aggarwal S, Clinton JW, Kiparizoska S and Lewis JH contributed equally to this work; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to be declared.

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Stephanie M Woo, William D Davis, Joseph W Clinton, Sara Kiparizoska, Department of Internal Medicine, MedStar Georgetown University Hospital, Washington, DC 20007, United States

Soorya Aggarwal, James H Lewis, Department of Gastroenterology, MedStar Georgetown University Hospital, Washington, DC 20007, United States

Corresponding author: Stephanie M Woo, MD, Staff Physician, Department of Internal Medicine, MedStar Georgetown University Hospital, 3800 Reservoir Road, Washington, DC 20007, United States. stephanie.m.woo@medstar.net

Abstract

Herbal-induced liver injury (HILI) is an important and increasingly concerning cause of liver toxicity, and this study presents recent updates to the literature. An extensive literature review was conducted encompassing September 2019 through March 2021. Studies with clinically significant findings were analyzed and included in this review. We emphasized those studies that provided a causality assessment methodology, such as Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method scores. Our review includes reports of individual herbals, including *Garcinia cambogia*, green tea extract, kratom as well as classes such as performance enhancing supplements, Traditional Chinese medicine, Ayurvedic medicine and herbal contamination. Newly described herbals include ashwagandha, boldo, skyfruit, and 'Thermo gun'. Several studies discussing data from national registries, including the United States Drug-Induced Liver Injury (DILI) Network, Spanish DILI Registry, and Latin American DILI Network were incorporated. There has also been a continued interest in hepatoprotection, with promising use of herbals to counter hepatotoxicity from anti-tubercular medications. We also elucidated the current legal conversation surrounding use of herbals by presenting updates from the Federal Drug Administration. The highlights of the literature over the past year indicate interest in HILI that will continue as the supplement industry in the United States grows.

Key Words: Herbal-induced liver injury; Dietary supplement-induced liver injury; Drug-induced liver injury; Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method; Hepatotoxicity; Liver toxicity

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: May 4, 2021
Peer-review started: May 4, 2021
First decision: June 4, 2021
Revised: June 8, 2021
Accepted: August 9, 2021
Article in press: August 9, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Becker MW
S-Editor: Wu YXJ
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Guo X

Core Tip: Herbal-induced liver injury is a growing concern worldwide with increasing rates of reported cases. Here we provide an encompassing review of reported new cases of well-established herbals along with newly described herbals causing liver injury over the past year. Causality assessment was emphasized. New studies addressing the hepatocytoprotective effects in human studies are also emphasized.

Citation: Woo SM, Davis WD, Aggarwal S, Clinton JW, Kiparizoska S, Lewis JH. Herbal and dietary supplement induced liver injury: Highlights from the recent literature. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1019-1041
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1019.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1019

INTRODUCTION

Reports of herbal-induced liver injury (HILI) and dietary and weight loss supplement liver injury (DSLI) continue to be published at an increasing rate, highlighting the growing interest in the field, as well as enhanced recognition of HILI by clinicians. For example, a routine PubMed search revealed eight systematic reviews and meta-analyses on HILI published in 2020 and four in 2019, compared to none published earlier than 2002[1-8]. In this review, we discuss the highlights chosen from the recent literature regarding HILI and DSLI liver injury since our last review period[9]. New information on the incidence of HILI and DSLI, reports of new herbal hepatotoxins and updates on previously described HILI are included, along with the current regulatory status of kratom and other agents.

METHODOLOGY

A literature review for this paper was performed utilizing PubMed and Google Scholar search engines spanning September 1, 2019 through March 31, 2021. Keywords utilized included "hepatotoxicity," "hepatic toxicity," "liver toxicity," "herbal induced liver injury," "HILI" and "dietary supplements." Using both search engines, we came across approximately 1800 publications. In order to narrow down this extensive search we focused on case reports, case series, review articles and original research that were published in journals with an impact factor ≥ 1 based on listings contained in Scholar One[10]. Of note, seven of the 85 discrete journals that we reviewed had an impact factor < 1 or none at all. However, we felt the information within those particular articles was important enough to include in our review. The range of journal impact factors (IF) was 0.28-60 (Zhongguo Zhong Yao Za Zhi and Lancet respectively), mean IF was 5.46, and median was 3.37[10]. Additionally, we focused on recent literature reporting new cases of HILI/DSLI along with particular herbal agents of interest such as green tea extract (GTE) and kratom along with performance enhancing supplements (PES), traditional Chinese medicines (TCM) and Ayurvedic medicines. Many reports described the cytoprotective effects of herbal compounds, and we focused on those utilized in human studies. Legal and regulatory ramifications were also addressed in particular with regard to kratom. As in past years, we emphasized those studies that provided a causality assessment methodology, such as RUCAM scores, believing that this enhanced their validity[11]. Through this selection process we narrowed our review to approximately 150 publications (Figure 1). Given the number of publications reviewed, the omission of any specific article should not be viewed as lacking importance or significance.

INCIDENCE RATES OF HILI/DSLI

Data on the true frequency of HILI/DSLI are generally lacking, in part due to under-diagnosis and under-reporting[12]. The incidence of HILI in mainland China, which we would expect to be among the highest worldwide, is estimated to be 6.38 per 100000 based on the large retrospective study by Shen *et al*[13], who described DILI

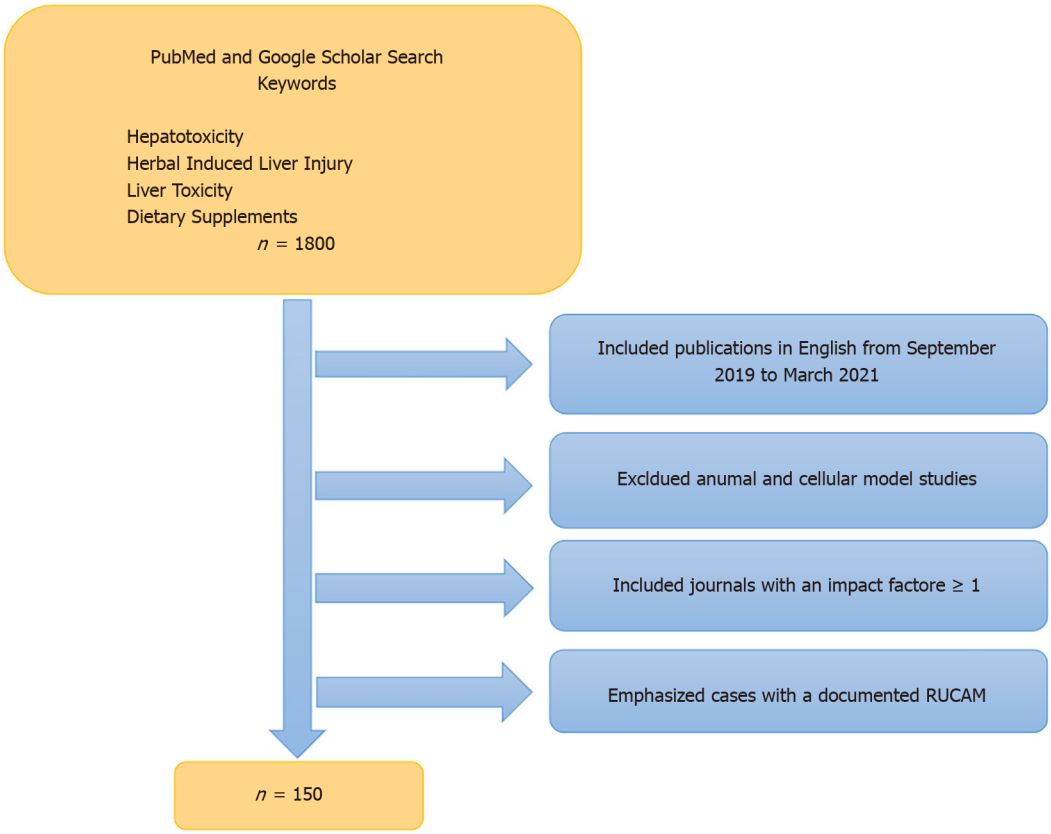


Figure 1 Study selection flowchart.

incidence to be 23.8 per 100000 of which 26.8% of single agents were TCM. In the United States, the estimated incidence of HILI was 1.16 per 100000 based on a small prospective study conducted in Delaware[14]. Perhaps a better estimation for a Western country comes from a prospective population-based study from Iceland that found an incidence of 3 per 100000[15]. While these estimates are lower than China's, HILI cases reported to the United States DILI Network have increased from 7% of all drug-induced liver injury cases in 2005 to 20% in 2014, with herbal and dietary supplements (HDS) representing the second leading class of compounds causing liver injury after antibiotics[16]. The most recent update of the United States DILI Network contained 404 cases of HILI enrolled between 2003 to 2019[17].

Registry-based frequency data demonstrates HDS responsible for 8% and 4% of DILI cases reported by the Latin DILI and Spanish DILI Networks, respectively[18]. Data from a single German hospital dedicated to TCM indicates a HILI frequency of 0.12% over a 20-year period[19]. The increasing number of reports of HILI are likely explained by the combination of more widespread HDS use as well as clinician awareness[13].

An ongoing difficulty with assessing a true incidence of HILI relates to the fact that herbal supplements commonly contain multiple ingredients, and several products are often used concurrently. As a result, it is challenging, if not impossible, to determine which specific HDS component might be responsible for the hepatotoxicity[16]. Frequent mislabeling of supplements, patient non-disclosure, and physician lack of awareness further complicate the diagnosis of HILI[16,20]. Nevertheless, it is crucial that clinicians maintain awareness of HILI, as it may have a greater potential for acute liver failure than DILI[16].

REGULATORY STATUS OF HERBAL AND HDS PRODUCTS

In contrast to the United States, herbal supplements undergo much more regulatory scrutiny in member states of the European Union (EU), where according to Directive 2004/24/EC, herbal medicinal products are required to not only register with the EU, but also comply with specific manufacturing and quality standards[21]. Herbal supplements are widely accessible to Americans both online and in nutrition stores

and pharmacies, and their appeal is heightened by marketers portraying them as natural and healthy[22]. In 2019, Americans spent $9.6 billion on herbal supplements alone, (exclusive of vitamins and other complementary and alternative therapies, which represented an 8.6% increase from the previous year[23]. As the use of HDS continues to climb, clinicians and patients alike will be faced with the challenge of recognizing and managing potential hepatic injury. The relative lack of regulatory control over HDS in the US compared to conventional medications, means there are fewer protections available to the consumer, such as quality control.

Despite the general lack of regulation of the herbal and supplement industry, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) does maintain a role in providing for their safety. Herbal medications and vitamin supplements have long been categorized as food supplements and thus have a lower threshold required to maintain evidence for safety[24]. This was changed when the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of 1994 (DSHEA) was passed that named the FDA as responsible for safety concerns and for taking action against dietary supplements if needed[25]. Unfortunately, the provision only takes effect after supplements reach the market and supplement companies are not required to register themselves or their products with the FDA before offering them for sale. Until recently, the FDA mainly monitored product information through a voluntary dietary supplement adverse reporting system and took action retroactively against companies when necessary[25,26].

In recent years however, there has been an outcry regarding the sheer number of herbal supplements that have come to market with little to no consumer protection regarding their claims[27,28]. In 2019, then FDA Commissioner, Dr. Scott Gottlieb, issued a statement announcing plans for major policy changes toward the oversight of the dietary supplement industry. This included improvements in the adverse reporting system and a proposal to require the listing of the ingredients of dietary supplements with the FDA[29]. Since then, the proposal to register ingredients of various supplements has been a primary objective of the FDA with both the 2020 and 2021 budget proposals to Congress including a provision for this. In addition, they have asked for a mandate to allow them to act against products and manufacturers providing misleading information to the FDA[30]. However, both proposals have been met with significant resistance from the industry and have yet to become enacted into law.

CAUSALITY ASSESSMENT OF HILI AND DSLI

Diagnosing HILI remains a challenge and while there are several assessment tools used to determine causality, ultimately it is a diagnosis of exclusion[31]. Currently, Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method (RUCAM), designed in 1993, is the most widely used assessment tool for determining causality[32]. Indeed, Teschke *et al*[33] identified 12068 HILI cases reported in the recent literature in which RUCAM was used as the basis of causality.

In another retrospective review, Teschke *et al*[34] analyzed 11,160 HILI cases from Asian countries - mainland China, Hong Kong and Taiwan, Korea, Singapore, and Japan - collected from 1964 to 2019. They identified China and Korea as being exemplary in their use of RUCAM to evaluate HILI cases. They suggest that RUCAM will be a particularly valuable tool when assessing causality of liver injury occurring during the COVID-19 pandemic, which may confound findings given the high incidence of liver test abnormalities associated with the infection[34,35]. Anirvan *et al*[36] described the effects of COVID-19 on the liver, concluding it has both direct viral cytopathic mechanisms and also acts indirectly, through immune-mediated, drug-induced, and other pathways. These investigators suggest that acute non-icteric hepatitis may precede pulmonary symptoms in COVID-19 infection[36].

RUCAM, however, is an imperfect tool, and some authors argue that it should be developed further as some of its criteria are not evidence-based[31]. For example, RUCAM does not accommodate evaluation of the several individual hepatotoxins that may comprise a single HDS[4]. Other assessment tools include the Clinical Diagnostic Scale (CDS) and Digestive Disease Week Japan 2004 Scale (DDW-J). Liu *et al*[37] compared RUCAM, CDS, and DDW-J in a cohort of 458 DILI patients at a hospital in Tianjin, China and found the CDS to be the most accurate in diagnosing DILI. The six variables that CDS employs are comparable to RUCAM's seven, though the former allocates different point values for timing of drug administration to onset of symptoms in addition to assigning points for extrahepatic manifestations including rash, fevers, eosinophilia, arthralgia, and cytopenia[38]. Of note, the most common causative agents

for liver injury in this cohort were TCM, used in 52.41% of patients.

BIOMARKERS AND GENETICS

This past year showed continued interest in innovative tools for diagnosing HILI. Liu *et al*[37] investigated the potential role of an *in vitro* monocyte-derived hepatocyte-like (MH) cell test in diagnosing HILI. Investigators identified 47 patients in Munich and Hong Kong who were determined by RUCAM to have had HILI. Among these patients, the MH cell test exhibited sensitivity and specificity of 90.6% and 86.7%, respectively. In a prior study, the MH cell test was shown to have higher specificity than RUCAM[39]. Thus, the MH cell test may be a valuable test in diagnosing HILI in the future.

Studies have investigated potential biomarkers for specific agents. Pyrrolizidine alkaloids (PA) are hepatotoxins commonly found in food items and herbs used in TCM, including *Gynura japonica (G. japonica)*. Pyrrole-hemoglobin adducts and three miRNAs - has-miR-148a-3p, has-miR-362-5p, and hs-miR-194-5p - have been shown to increase diagnostic accuracy of PA-induced liver injury. Similarly, *Polygonum multiflorum* (*P. multiflorum*) is an herbal popular in TCM. Metabolomics profiling has shown to successfully differentiate between DILI caused by *P. multiflorum* and autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) as well as hepatitis B virus[40]. Given the widespread ingestion of PA and *P. multiflorum*, these pioneering diagnostic tests may help guide clinicians in managing liver injury caused by these herbals.

UPDATES IN HILI REGISTRIES

United States

The United States DILI Network (DILIN) examined the association between GTE and the proinflammatory allele HLA-B*35:01 (see "Green Tea Extract")[41]. The other update focused on ashwagandha, a popular Ayurvedic medicine using data from the United States DILIN and Iceland (see "Ayurveda")[42].

Spain

Two updates from the Spanish DILI registry were published in 2020. While mainly focused on DILI, there is also comment on HILI. In a study of liver injury in the elderly, Weersink *et al*[43] found herbal products accounted for 4% of cases in younger patients, with a decreasing overall incidence with increased age. Similarly, in their comprehensive review of DILI over the span of 20 years up until 2018, Stephens *et al* [44] identified 843 cases of liver injury, 29 (3.4%) of which were attributable to HDS and an additional 22 (2.6%) were caused by selective androgen receptor modulators (SARMs).

Latin America

The Latin DILI Network (LATINDILI) comprises a group of seven countries that collect DILI cases prospectively, using RUCAM to determine causality. Bessone *et al* [18] published an analysis of HDS in Latin America from 2011 to 2019, and found that, similar to the findings from the prospective Spanish DILI and United States DILIN, HILI was more common among young women attempting to lose weight[18,45,46]. Rates of acute liver failure were 17%, 16%, and 6%, respectively for the LATINDILI, DILIN, and Spanish DILI networks. In another study using LATINDILI data, Santos *et al*[5] reviewed 17 records of HILI and found *Centiella asiatica*, *Carthamus tinctorius*, and the weight loss supplement 'HerbaLife' (that previously contained GTE and ephedra), as the most common causes[47]. They also found weight loss to be the most common reason for supplement use, which was also the most common indication reported by Bessone *et al*[18] Interestingly, while *Garcinia cambogia* (*G. cambogia*) is the third most frequent cause of liver injury in Latin America, as reported by Bessone *et al*[18], it was not present in the Spanish DILI registry. The authors suspected this was due to native cultural influences and surrounding geography, as well as the growing potential of different regions.

Malaysia

In Malaysia, a national centralized database of hepatic adverse drug reactions sponsored by the Ministry of Health was used to collect cases retrospectively and Lee

et al[47] presented data from 2000 to 2017. They presented 2090 cases of DILI, 11.24% of which were attributable to HDS. Causality was determined using WHO-Uppsala Monitoring Center criteria employed by physician and pharmacist members of the Malaysian Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (MADRAC). Of note, only 27.1% of products causing liver injury in this study were registered with the Ministry of Health, meaning the vast majority were unregulated. This highlights the similar regulatory challenges faced by authorities in Asia and in the West.

China

There are no significant updates to the China registry since Shen *et al*[13] extrapolated data from the National Health and Family Planning Commission to conduct the first nationwide study on HILI in mainland China, published in 2019. However, given the surge in literature investigating the impact of COVID-19 on liver injury, a potential confounder, we expect updates to Chinese HILI and DILI registries will be forthcoming.

LiverTox

Livertox is a database founded and maintained by the National Institute of Health. At present, it lists 1095 drugs, including 66 herbal and dietary supplements, and their potential for hepatotoxicity[48]. Likelihood scores are attributed to each herbal or supplement, ranging A-E, as designed by the United States DILIN to determine causality. In the LiverTox compendium, 24 (36.4%) of listed herbs or supplements have an A, B, or C rating, meaning a drug has "well known or more than 50 cases described", "known or highly likely or 12-50 cases described", or "probable or less than 12 cases described" to cause liver injury, respectively, based on published reports. In 2020, entries for 11 (16.6%) herbal and dietary supplements were updated on the website (Table 1).

NEWLY DESCRIBED HEPATOTOXINS

Peumus boldus

Peumus boldus (*P. boldus*) has been implicated as a cause of hepatotoxicity when consumed orally as an infusion, like a tea, especially in elderly patients[49]. The compound Epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) has been identified as the underlying cause of hepatotoxicity[49]. Oliveira *et al*[49] describe a case report of an 87-year-old male patient who presented with weakness, anorexia, and jaundice. He was found to have a hepatocellular injury pattern. It was later discovered that the patient had been orally ingesting infusions of *P. boldus* over the past month as a treatment for dyspepsia. After exclusion of other causes of liver injury, the authors determined *P. boldus* was the probable cause of HILI, although they did not include a causality assessment score[49]. The patient's liver tests returned to baseline with conservative management.

Skyfruit

Skyfruit, also known as Xiang-tian-guo, is used to treat diabetes and hypertension, and was first reported to be hepatotoxic in 2018[50]. Since then, fewer than five case reports are documented in the literature. A 67-year-old woman with skyfruit exposure for six months and presenting with jaundice received a RUCAM score of 7, indicating 'probable' causality, described by Shao *et al*[51]. Xia *et al*[52] describe another case of a 63-year-old woman with a three day history of skyfruit use, who developed epigastric pain, nausea, and fever, and was given a RUCAM score of 10, indicating 'highly probable' causality. As diabetes and hypertension are common afflictions and clinicians become more aware of skyfruit's hepatotoxic potential, the incidence of skyfruit-induced liver injury may increase.

Ashwagandha

Ashwagandha, from the roots of *Withania somnifera,* is an Ayurvedic medication used to treat anxiety, depression, and erectile dysfunction. Björnsson *et al*[42] published a case series, drawing from an Icelandic registry and the United States DILIN, of five patients with Ashwagandha-induced liver injury. The authors used DILI expert opinion to determine causality in these patients who developed jaundice and pruritus after a latency period ranging from two to twelve weeks. The pattern of liver injury was cholestatic or mixed and liver enzyme abnormalities self-resolved within one to

Table 1 Herbs or supplements with an A, B, or C rating as listed in LiverTox

Herbal or supplement	Likelihood score	Last updated	Most recent citation
Aloe vera	B	2016	2015
Ashwagandha	C	2020	2019
Black cohosh	A	2020	2019
Butterbur	C	2019	2018
Polygonum multiflorum	A	2020	2020
Sho Saiko to and Dai Saiko to	B	2020	2019
Eugenol	C	2019	2018
Flavocoxid	C	2018	2013
Garcinia cambogia	C	2018	2013
Germander	A	2018	2017
Green tea	A	2020	2020
Kava	A	2018	2017
Kratom	B	2020	2020
Margosa oil	C	2020	2019
Noni	C	2020	2017
Pennyroyal oil	B	2020	2017
Red yeast rice	C	2018	2017
Skullcap	B	2020	2019
Usnic acid	B	2018	2017
Valerian	C	2020	2018
Move free	C	2020	2018
OxyELITE pro	C	2020	2018

five months in four of the five patients; the fifth patient was lost to follow up. Prior to this paper, only one case report had been published on the topic.

'Thermo gun'

Ferreira *et al*[53] described a case of a 36-year-old male who presented to the hospital with jaundice one week after taking the dietary supplement 'Thermo gun'. The authors reported no previous reports of a HILI association, but noted that oxilofrine, white willow, and caffeine could all play a possible role. Laboratory exams showed a cholestatic liver injury pattern. The drug was discontinued but the patient's liver function continued to deteriorate and he eventually developed acute liver failure. He successfully underwent liver transplantation and continued to do well at long term follow up. The authors assigned this case a RUCAM score of 7, indicating 'probable' causality by 'Thermo gun'.

UPDATES ON KNOWN HEPATOTOXINS

Kratom

Kratom is a controversial herbal compound derived from *Mitragyona speciosa* and originating in Southeast Asia. It has dominated headlines in recent years because of its popularity as a stimulant and the associated legal ramifications of its use to reduce opiate withdrawal symptoms[54,55]. The active components are believed to be Mitragyona and 7-Hydroxymitragynine (7-HMG)[56]. Kratom has been used as a stimulant at lower doses or to treat pain and precipitate euphoria at higher doses. At even higher doses, it acts as a sedative. Although it has found use in people who suffer from opioid addiction to prevent withdrawal, at present there are no medical

indications for kratom use in the United States, and the FDA has labeled it a 'drug of concern'. Despite being banned in countries including Thailand and Malaysia, it remains widely available in the United States over the internet - although it is banned in Alabama, Arkansas, Indiana, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Wisconsin.

Despite these admonitions, it is becoming more mainstream with over $207 million in annual sales[57]. Of note, in 2021, Schimmel *et al*[58] published the first national survey of kratom use in the United States. Using data from the Non-Medical Use of Prescription Drugs (NMURx) Program, these investigators conducted a cross-sectional study of kratom users in the United States from 2018 to 2019, and found kratom users were more likely to be young, male, and have more severe substance abuse profiles, as measured using DAST-10, than cannabis, alcohol, or cigarette users[58]. They also estimated a prevalence of kratom use of 0.8%.

Cultural differences may influence the use of kratom, and subsequently its adverse effects. Ramanathan and McCurdy argue that kratom has been more harmful in the west as compared to Southeast Asia. These authors propose this is because western users are more likely to ingest kratom recreationally[59]. To further delineate the motivations for using kratom in their Malaysian cohort, they found that current opioid users were more likely to use kratom to ameliorate withdrawal symptoms as compared to former opioid users, who used kratom recreationally (OR 1.9, $P < 0.035$) [60].

Current legal status

In 2016, the Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) attempted to classify kratom as a Schedule I drug, meaning it has no medical indication and high potential for abuse, alongside heroin, lysergic acid diethylamide, and methylenedioxymethamphetamine (ecstasy). However, this effort was met with pushback from lobbying groups, members of congress, and the public. A bipartisan group of senators, including Bernie Sanders and Orrin Hatch, signed a letter protesting the FDA's immediate scheduling of kratom, and encouraged a lengthier investigation into the safety of kratom given its long history of use in other countries and growing popularity in the United States[54]. Moreover, some researchers believe that restricting kratom as a Schedule I drug would prevent advancement of research because of increased bureaucratic processes previously illustrated by studies on marijuana and psychedelic-assisted therapies[61]. Thus, kratom remains legal at the federal level, despite its known hepatotoxic potential.

Polypharmacy

Polypharmacy plays a significant role in kratom's potential for hepatotoxicity. Mitragynine inhibits glucuronidation by UDP-glucuronosyltransferases (UGT), which may explain kratom's increased toxicity when co-administered with other substances, such as UGT substrates including buprenorphine and ketamine[56]. Polysubstance abuse with kratom furthermore increases rates of death. The CDC collects data on death from substance abuse in the State Unintentional Drug Overdose Reporting System (SUDORS), and has investigated kratom, most recently publishing updated data in 2019[62]. Of the 27338 deaths due to overdose reported to SUDORS from July 2016 to December 2017, kratom was implicated in 152 (0.56%) cases. Among the 152 cases, medical examiners determined kratom to be a cause of death in 91 (59.9%), with kratom identified as the only substance in seven cases. Eggleston *et al*[63] conducted a retrospective review using kratom exposures reported to the National Poison Data System and New York State's county medical examiner's office records, and found 2312 cases of kratom exposure, of which 935 reported kratom as the only substance used.

Product contamination

The potential lethality of kratom is heightened by issues with product contamination, with both heavy metals and organisms that may cause illness. Most recently, in 2018, the FDA/DEA completed an investigation of kratom products contaminated with salmonella resulting in an outbreak affecting 199 individuals across 41 states[64]. Contaminants in kratom products were most recently found in a survey of kratom use in a Chicago suburb, which also revealed the presence of heavy metals, fungi, and bacteria[65,66].

New reports of kratom liver injury

Despite the safety concerns surrounding kratom, its popularity is continuing to rise. According to data from the System to Retrieve Information from Drug Evidence/ST-

ARLiMS, the DEA's registry for seized drugs, reports of kratom increased to 589 in 2018 from one in 2010[67]. A PubMed query for "kratom" revealed 101 articles published in 2020 compared to just 11 in 2010. The United States DILIN reported 11 cases of kratom-induced hepatotoxicity in the United States from 2003 to 2019, and causality was determined by expert consensus opinion[17].

Schimmel and Dart published a review of 85 kratom cases that nicely summarizes its clinical signature with respect to liver injury[68]. Using published case reports and abstracts, cases in the United States DILIN, FDA databases, and online user forum, they found most patients presented with abdominal discomfort, jaundice, pruritus, and dark urine. While liver tests revealed a mixed injury pattern, histology often showed cholestasis. The authors were only able to calculate a RUCAM score for 20 cases, with a median modified RUCAM score of 5 and mean of 4.5 (range 1-8), indicating 'possible' causality.

A newly reported form of kratom-induced injury is cholestasis resembling primary biliary cholangitis. A case report by Gandhi *et al*[69] from India, is only the second in the literature, reported. Causality in this case was determined by clinical judgment using symptoms of nausea, decreased appetite, fatigue, and jaundice with associated elevated bilirubin levels in the setting of kratom use two weeks prior to presentation. Cholestatic liver injury consistent with primary biliary cholangitis, was confirmed by histology revealing centrilobular cholestasis, moderate chronic portal tract inflammation, and brisk lymphocytic-predominant bile duct injury. Symptoms resolved with supportive care and steroids.

GTE

Green tea is one of the most widely consumed drinks worldwide, and is not considered a hepatotoxin[70]. In contrast, GTE has gained significant popularity for its weight loss enhancing potential and can be found in over a 100 herbal preparations in varying concentrations[70]. and have been associated with the potential for hepatotoxicity[71]. A systematic review of GTE performed by the United States Pharmacopeial Convention (USP) in 2008 and revisited in 2019 urged the use of cautionary labels to warn the general public of such causal relationships[71].

The USP reviewed both human case reports and animal studies to establish the role of GTE in hepatotoxicity. EGCG, a highly bioactive phytochemical, is felt to be the main compound implicated in liver injury and is seen in approximately 10% of GTE formulations at varying concentrations[70-72]. Indeed, the concentration of EGCG has been directly correlated to risk of liver injury[71]. The review conducted by the USP of human cases determined the median intake of 720 mg/d of EGCG for at least two weeks was related to liver injury[71]. Notably, the average over-the-counter GTE supplement contains an EGCG concentration from 45-1575 mg/d[71]. In addition, the bioavailability of EGCG increases in a fasting state, increasing serum concentrations at lower consumed dosages[71].

GTE-related hepatotoxicity almost always presents as an acute hepatitis with a hepatocellular injury pattern[70,71]. While the exact pathogenesis of injury is unclear, proposed mechanisms include the interaction of cytochrome P450 and EGCG, direct mitochondrial toxicity from reactive oxygen species produced by EGCG, or possibly, bactericidal effects of EGCG causing endotoxic induced liver injury[72,73]. Additionally, there is believed to be an idiosyncratic, dose-independent cause in genetically susceptible individuals related to individual HLA phenotype[41,72].

Hoofnagle *et al*[41] performed a retrospective review of 1414 cases of drug induced liver injury, of which 40 were attributed to GTE. 95% of these patients had the typically hepatocellular injury pattern with 3 ultimately requiring liver transplant. Notably, an HLA analysis on these 40 patients found that 72% had HLA-B*35:01[41]. There have been reports of other drugs causing idiosyncratic liver injury related to HLA-B *35:01, including trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and *P. multiflorum*[74,75]. This pharmacogenetic association suggests there may be a possible immunologic susceptibility in GTE-related HILI.

G. cambogia

G. cambogia is derived from the fruit of the Malabar tamarind tree found in South East Asia[76-78]. This herb continues to be an increasingly popular over the counter herbal supplement for its potential for enhancing weight loss[78,79]. Its weight loss potential stems from the active agent within *G. cambogia*, hydroxyl citric acid (HCA). HCA is thought to be an appetite suppressant which has demonstrated weight loss in rat models[78,80]. Additionally, HCA prohibits cholesterol and fatty acid synthesis in tissue through inhibition of adenosine triphosphate-dependent citrate lyase enzyme

helping in weight reduction[78,81]. Although it is an OTC supplement, caution must be taken as there have been rare, but serious cases of serotonin syndrome, rhabdomyolysis and hepatotoxicity[78].

It has been estimated that approximately 1 in 10000 individuals using *G. cambogia* experience significant liver-related injury[76,78]. Onset of injury generally occurs over one week to a few months after initiation[77]. The pattern of liver injury is typically hepatocellular. This year, cases of *G. cambogia* -induced liver injury with a pattern similar to autoimmune hepatitis appeared[76-79]. Injury and subsequent recovery is frequently managed with abstinence from offending supplements and supportive care [77-79]. However, there have been instances of individuals requiring liver transplant or even death related to such liver injury[78]. Although the pathogenesis of liver injury is unclear, proposed mechanisms through rat models include excessive production of reactive oxygen radicals from lipid peroxidation resulting in increased oxidative stress and cytoplasmic vacuolization signaling hepatocyte injury[77,79]. Nonetheless, there is thought to be two broader mechanisms; a dose-dependent mechanism through HCA consumption and an idiosyncratic, dose-independent etiology[78].

One of the most well-known examples of *G. cambogia* associated hepatotoxicity was seen in the weight loss supplement, "Hydroxycut™"[81]. This product was recalled in 2009 after the FDA issued a warning of its potential hepatotoxic effects based on numerous case reports reporting severe hepatotoxicity[81,82]. Andueza *et al*[82] summarized 21 cases of *G. cambogia* related liver injury of which seven were attributed to the use of Hydroxycut. RUCAM was utilized in two of seven cases and was deemed 'highly probable' in both cases with a score of 9. Hydroxycut™ has been newly formulated in the absence of *G. cambogia* and continues to be marketed. Despite the new formulations however, new cases of Hydroxycut-related liver injury continue to be reported. Yousaf *et al*[77] described a tabulated summary of eight reported cases of non-*G. cambogia* containing Hydroxycut induced hepatotoxicity cases from found in 2010-2018. Of the eight reported cases, RUCAM was used in six, with scores ≥ 6[77]. An additional case associated with the use of "Proclinical Hydroxycut™" over a twelve weeks period presented with tremor, progressive fatigue, chest pain and hepatocellular liver injury on laboratory tests. RUCAM was 9, indicating a 'highly probable' causality with this new formulation of Hydroxycut[81].

In addition to the cases of liver injury from Hydroxycut, there have been other notable cases of *G. cambogia*-induced liver injury from other *G. cambogia* containing products this year[77,80,83]. Three recent cases described liver injury related to GC-containing products occurring four weeks to seven months after ingestion[77,80]. Both were in young patients and presented with hepatocellular injury patterns[77,80,83]. It is important to note, however, that the patient presenting seven months after ingestion was also taking GTE[80]. Two of the three patients ultimately required liver transplant due to failed conservative management[80,83]. RUCAM scoring was used in one of three cases, who did not require liver transplant and recovered with conservative management. The RUCAM score in this case was 9, deeming causality 'highly probable'[77].

An additional noteworthy case was the first presentation of *G. cambogia*-induced liver injury with a pattern of AIH. A 39-year-old female presented with jaundice, hepatomegaly and fatigue five weeks after using "slimming tea" containing *G. cambogia*[76]. Liver tests demonstrated a hepatocellular injury pattern with positive ANA and anti-smooth muscle antibodies. A liver biopsy was suggestive of DILI with superimposed AIH[76]. Given these findings, the patient was treated with high-dose prednisone but relapsed after a steroid taper, and was eventually transitioned to chronic immunosuppressive agents. No causality score was presented for this patient.

PES

The use of PES has become a billion dollar industry[84]. Usage of multiple different PES is commonplace, confounding the ability to determine causality in many cases of liver injury[84].

SARMs have become increasingly popular outside the fields of bodybuilding and professional athletics[85]. Their selective tissue effects on muscle and bone allow for the benefit of building muscle mass without unwanted side effects[86,87]. SARMs act intracellularly through the binding of androgen receptors that subsequently regulate the production of androgen genes within the cell's nucleus[87]. Due to these effects, SARMs are being actively investigated in the management of sarcopenia, osteoporosis and profound nutritional deficiency. However, they are not approved by the United States FDA for such uses[87].

In fact, the FDA warns users of such supplements due to their hepatotoxic effects [87]. Several recent reports have described both SARM-induced cholestatic as well as hepatocellular injury, all starting within two weeks to four months after ingestion[86-89]. The SARMs described in these cases were Ligandrol (Alpha Elite), RAD-140 (Alpha Bolic) and enobosarm[86-89]. Liver enzymes improved with conservative management in all cases. In the cases described by Flores *et al*[89], liver injury was related to Ligandrol and RAD-140, presenting five weeks and four months respectively after initial ingestion. Laboratory findings were consistent with hepatocellular and hepatocellular-cholestatic injury respectively. RUCAM scoring deemed both cases as 'probable'. RUCAM was not used in the other cases, with causality determined simply by ruling out viral, autoimmune and possible other medication-induced liver injuries[86-88].

Stimulant workout supplements have also been implicated in DSLI[90-92]. These mixtures may vary in concentrations of ingredients or contain undeclared active ingredients that can result in harm[90]. Eiswerth *et al*[91] described a case of hepatocellular liver injury in a previously healthy 38-year-old male after using a popular pre-workout brand "Bucked Up." It is thought the component "deer antler extract," which contains insulin-like growth factor, was the culprit for such injury[8]. Liver enzymes were shown to downtrend with supportive care[90]. A RUCAM causality score was deemed 'probable' with a score of 7[91].

Two additional cases of pre-workout PES-induced liver injury were reported in previously healthy young adults[90,92]. In one case, the patient was found to have a cholestatic injury pattern[92]. He admitted to taking creatine, whey protein powder and "Mr. Hyde" pre-workout, containing the ingredient theacrine which was thought to be the cause of liver injury[92]. Indeed, rats exposed to theacrine in high concentrations demonstrated centrilobular hepatocellular necrosis[92]. Additionally, the co-ingestion of caffeine, which is also found in "Mr. Hyde" pre-workout, has been shown to increase the bioavailability of theacrine, potentially raising serum concentrations to hepatotoxic levels[92]. The other case described hepatocellular liver injury after ingesting of "Dust V2" pre-workout consistently for four months [90]. While the patient's liver enzymes declined with conservative management, his clinical course was further complicated by severe aplastic anemia two months after the initial presentation requiring hematopoietic stem cell transplant[90]. RUCAM was not used to assess causality in either of these two cases.

Additional brief reports of DSLI noted on our literature review included usage of creatine and glutamine powder[84,93].

TCM

TCM aims to establish and maintain balance in patients through acupuncture, massage, tai chi, and herbals, and its influence continues to grow[94]. In 2019, TCM was officially recognized by the World Health Organization[95]. TCM is included in Chapter 26 of the 11th ICD, set to roll out in 2022, which will broaden its reach worldwide[96]. However, controversy exists over this decision, as some clinicians argue it is dangerous to perpetuate practices that are not evidence based[97].

Our search yielded 264 results on TCM published during 2020. The interested reader is referred to a comprehensive review by Pan *et al*[98] emphasizing the complexity of TCM agents and their mechanisms for hepatotoxicity. We will highlight a few examples of TCM liver injury.

P. multiflorum

P. multiflorum is a commonly used and widely researched herbal within TCM, with its major active ingredients being stilbene glucosides and anthroquinones[99]. Although believed to have therapeutic effects on the liver, it is also a known hepatotoxin and is the only TCM listed on LiverTox with a likelihood score of A[49]. Much of the current literature on *P. multiflorum* induced liver injury is focused on its mechanism of toxicity. Li *et al*[99] argue that *P. multiflorum* liver toxicity is idiosyncratic and immune-mediated, rather than direct as previously proposed in the literature. Zhang *et al*[100] conducted a prospective study using metabolomics to examine serum samples, and identified 25 metabolites that could distinguish between groups susceptible to or tolerant of *P. multiflorum* induced liver injury. In another study investigating risk factors for *P. multiflorum*-induced hepatotoxicity, Yang *et al*[101] identified HLA-B35:01 as a potential susceptibility factor.

San-Qi and G. japonica

San-Qi is a TCM that is used for hemostasis and to treat trauma and ischemic

cardiovascular disease, with the main component being *Panax notoginseng*[102]. Two other herbals, both called Tu-San-Qi, one of which contains the pyrrolizydine alkaloid (PA)-producing *G. Japonica* and the other is *Sedum aizoon* (*S. Aizoon*), which does not produce PAs[102]. *G. Japonica* and *S. Aizoon* are also known to induce blood flow and detumescence as well as treat pain. The similarity of the names has led to confusion with regard to usage which has led to cases of liver injury, as PAs are known hepatotoxic agents, specifically causing hepatic sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (HSOS). A review by Zhu *et al*[102] identified 2156 incidences of Tu-San-Qi induced HSOS. While the authors used the 'Nanjing Criteria', developed by the Hepatobiliary Diseases Committee of the Chinese Society of Gastroenterology, to evaluate PA-induced HSOS, it is unclear how causality was determined for the patients identified in this study. Furthermore, the authors conceded that in many of the cases, they did not specify which agent was included in the specific formulation of Tu-San-Qi.

Bu Gu Zhi and Psoralea corylifolia

Bu Gu Zhi (BGZ) is a TCM used to treat osteoporosis, and the main ingredient is *Psoralea corylifolia* (*P. corylifolia*). In a retrospective review conducted by Wang *et al* [103], 40 cases of BGZ-induced liver injury were identified at a single hospital in Beijing. Causality was determined using presence of clinical symptoms, namely decreased appetite, dark urine, and fatigue, as well as liver enzyme abnormalities, 92% of which were consistent with hepatocellular injury. Zero patients died or required liver transplantation. This is the first study of this size examining BGZ-induced liver injury.

Rhubarb

Rhubarb, also known as dahuang in TCM, possesses anti-inflammatory properties through its anthraquinones, specifically rhein, emodin, aloe-emodin[104]. Zhuang *et al* [104] reviewed the literature on the dual protective and toxic properties of rhubarb on the liver, and concluded rhubarb's hepatotoxicity increases with higher doses and less processing of the product. More studies are required to make definitive conclusions regarding rhubarb's effect on the liver.

Ayurveda

Ayurveda is another form of ancient medicine, and while not as mainstream in the United States, interest in the field is growing. The practice of Ayurveda comes from India and is based on balancing the five elements to optimize bodily humors[105].

Assessing HILI due to Ayurvedic medication is difficult because labeling of ingredients is often incomplete or incorrect. In one case series, a woman is described to have developed acute liver injury after consumption of a combination powder medication called "puriyas" prescribed by a local healer[106]. When Ayurvedic ingredients are identified, the literature commonly describes ashwagandha, brahmi/gotu kola, turmeric, guggul, bakuchi, Indian senna, aloe vera, Indian mulberry, pyrrolizidine alkaloids[107].

In their case series, Karousatos *et al*[108] present three patients with HILI from three different Ayurvedic preparations. The medications presented were Giloy kwarth containing the hepatotoxic *Tinospora cordifolia*, followed by a combination of Manjishthadi kwatham and Aragwadhi kwatham, containing 52 and 10 individual plant extracts with 23 and nine known hepatotoxins, respectively, and finally Kanchnar guggulu, comprised of 10 individual plant extracts of which nine are known hepatotoxins. The individual RUCAM scores for each product ranged from 7 to 8, indicating 'probable' HILI. The complexity of these preparations highlights the need for clinician awareness with regard to HILI from Ayurveda.

Turmeric

Turmeric has been suggested to have hepatotoxic effects through its active ingredient of curcumin. Lombardi *et al*[109] published a series of cases of acute liver injury in Tuscany following ingestion of turmeric, using RUCAM to establish a causal relationship that was supported by a positive de-challenge response in six of seven 'possible' and 'probable cases, although the actual RUCAM scores were not provided. A systematic review identified 23 cases of 'possible' to 'probable' turmeric-induced liver injury, but the majority of patients had a concomitant exposure to another medication. A case reported by Lee *et al*[110] described a patient who developed AIH following turmeric ingestion, established using a RUCAM of score 9, indicating turmeric was 'highly probable'. This patient also was using piperine, and the authors propose the combined use of turmeric and piperine increased the absorption of

turmeric and increased the risk for liver injury.

Ayurveda and autoimmune hepatitis

Ayurvedic medicine has also been shown to worsen liver injury in patients with existing liver disease. In their single-center case-control study, Philips *et al*[111] found that in patients diagnosed with AIH who are treated with Ayurvedic and herbal medicines, defined in this study broadly as complementary alternative medicine, had significantly worse biomarkers and changes on pathology, leading to reduced short-term survival compared to those who were treated with conventional medicine. Specifically, patients treated with polyherbal Ayurvedic compounds, which comprised the majority of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) therapy employed, displayed significantly higher Child-Pugh, chronic liver failure, and discriminant function scores. When comparing the two groups at the end of one-, three-, and six-month follow-up periods, authors found a significantly higher mortality among CAM patients, with sepsis the most common cause of death in both groups. Authors also identified the contamination of the CAM compounds with heavy metals, antibiotics, chemotherapy agents, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, alcohols, antidepressants, anxiolytics, and recreational drugs.

OTHER HERBAL AND DIETARY SUPPLEMENTS

Khat

Khat is an herbal stimulant originating in Ethiopia and used in Eastern Africa, Somalia, and Yemen that can be chewed, ingested, or smoked[112]. The main active components are cathine and cathinone. A number of case reports depicting khat-induced liver injury have been published, but Argueta *et al*[113] present the first case of hepatotoxicity due to khat in the United States. The patient was a 28-year-old man from Yemen who presented with hepatotoxicity in the setting of regular recreational khat use until one week prior to presentation. The authors identified abnormal liver enzymes consistent with hepatocellular injury. Cessation of Khat resulted in clinical improvement, indicated a positive de-challenge response which was the basis of causality as RUCAM scoring was not mentioned. Of note, American clinicians are likely unfamiliar with the presentation of Khat, as it is illegal in the United States.

Skullcap

Skullcap comes from the root of *Scutellaria baicalensis* and is commonly used in TCM. There are previously published case reports of skullcap causing liver injury through the active ingredient wogonin. Skullcap has a designated LiverTox likelihood score of B[114]. Puri *et al*[115] imply that these case reports may have overstated the hepatotoxic potential of skullcap, as patients were all concurrently at least one other HDS with established association with hepatotoxicity, and conducted their own prospective study to test their hypothesis. They found that skullcap ingestion did not result in significant liver enzyme abnormalities or hepatic dysfunction.

Black cohosh and arborvitae

Black cohosh, from *Cimicifuga racemose*, is a well-established hepatotoxin with greater than 50 cases reported cases[116]. It is native to North America and is used to treat menopausal symptoms[117]. Recent studies have investigated the effect of adding black cohosh to clomiphene to treat infertility[118,119]. Black cohosh's main active ingredients are glycoside and terpene. Arborvitae or white cedar, from *Thuja occidentalis (T. occidentalis)*, is a tree native to North America and is used to treat respiratory infections, uterine malignancy, amenorrhea[120]. Unlike black cohosh, arborvitae has not been described in the literature as a hepatotoxin. Arborvitae's main active ingredient is thujone. Caruntu *et al*[120] present a case of a 40-year-old female from Bangladesh and living in the United States who concomitantly used black cohosh and arborvitae to increase her fertility. The combination of these herbal supplements was given a RUCAM score of 6, indicating 'probable' HILI. Both agents were discontinued at the same time, neither were re-challenged, and the patient showed clinical improvement. Thus, it is impossible to determine if the liver injury was caused entirely by black cohosh or if arborvitae also contributed. As such, clinicians should remain aware of the possibility of hepatotoxicity from arborvitae use.

HERBAL HEPATOCYTOPROTECTION

A significant number of review articles were identified in the past year dealing with the potential protective effects of herbals on the liver. The majority of reports found however, were conducted either using *in vitro* or *in vivo* rat models. In order to provide the most relevant information to clinical practice we focused only of those herbals utilized in human studies, in particular, silibinin (milk thistle) and N-acetylcysteine (NAC) to prevent anti-tuberculosis medication liver injury and vitamin E to protect against methotrexate DILI.

Mycobacterium tuberculosis continues to be the leading cause of infection related mortality amongst adults worldwide[1]. The mainstay of treatment consists of quadruple therapy [isoniazid (INH), pyrazinamide (PZA), ethambutol and rifampin] for two months followed by rifampin and isoniazid for the remaining four months [121]. Despite adjustments in duration of treatment, the hepatotoxic effects of PZA, INH and rifampin limit their use, leading to therapy discontinuation in approximately 11% of patients[122,123]. The mechanism of hepatotoxicity of PZA and INH is thought to stem from oxidative injury and production of toxic metabolites[122]. Rifampin upregulates hepatic microsomal enzymes accelerating INH metabolism, increasing toxic metabolites thus increasing risk of liver injury[123].

Silibinin (milk thistle) is a TCM flavonoid derived from the extract of the plant *Silybum marianum*[123]. Goh *et al*[122] investigated silibinin's hepatoprotective role against INH, PZA and combination regimen with *in vitro* assays as a prophylactic agent (prior to anti-TB treatment), rescue agent (given with anti-TB treatment), and as a salvage agent (given after onset of hepatotoxicity). They found that silibinin was most effective as a rescue agent by way of reducing intracellular levels of oxidative stress and oxidative damage to intracellular targets and mitochondria, leading to decreased apoptotic activity[122]. Silibinin was not effective as a prophylactic or salvage agent. Additionally, it was found that silibinin was more protective against INH alone compared to PZA or combination regimens suggesting that silibinin does not protect against PZA-induced hepatotoxicity[122].

Additionally, Singh *et al*[2] performed a systematic review of randomized control trials of chemoprophylaxis in the setting of four-drug regimen anti-tuberculosis treatment. They identified four trials utilizing silymarin/silibinin and three trials utilizing NAC[2]. Only one of four trials demonstrated clinically significant cytoprotection. The study in question, however, was shown to have insufficient power and was stopped prematurely for safety concerns[2]. These findings are concordant with the study performed by Goh *et al*[122] in which silibinin showed protection against INH, but not PZA. NAC however, showed clinically significant cytoprotection in all three studies reviewed. Its hepatoprotective effect is thought to stem from the increase in glutathione, protecting the liver against oxidative stress[2].

Sanjay *et al*[123] studied gallic acid, an Ayurvedic herbal medicine that is present in various fruits and vegetables in the setting of INH and rifampin DILI in Wistar rat models. Gallic acid was co-administered with INH and rifampin and was compared to both negative control and positive control (silymarin treated) models[123]. Gallic acid demonstrated a hepatic protective effect with co-administration and was comparable to the protective effect of the silymarin treated group[123]. Mechanism of action was attributed to gallic acid's antioxidant properties by increasing expression and activation of Nrf2[123].

Vitamin E and methotrexate

Methotrexate is one of the main treatments used in rheumatoid arthritis[124]. However, long term use has been associated with the development of fatty liver disease, fibrosis and cirrhosis[125]. As a result, it is often discontinued when aminotransferases reach 3× upper limit of normal (ULN) or remain persistently above 2× ULN[124]. Vitamin E has been studied for its beneficial effects in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), and a systematic review and meta-analysis performed by Amanullah *et al*[126] looked at five randomized controlled trials of adult patients with NAFLD treated with vitamin E that demonstrated biochemical and histological improvement.

Vaidya *et al*[124] performed a prospective open-label case-control study over a six month span evaluating the hepatoprotective effects of vitamin E in the setting of methotrexate use. Prior animal studies have demonstrated vitamin E hepatoprotection against methotrexate[124]. The groups were randomized such that each consisted of their individualized methotrexate regimen, folate 1mg/daily along with dietary and exercise advice to minimize lifestyle induced fatty liver disease. The treatment group received vitamin E 400 mg twice a day while the control group did not. This study also

included a crossover design in which the control group individuals that were shown to have ≥ 1-fold but less than 3-fold rise in aminotransferase levels at the three month follow up visit were then treated with vitamin E. The study found that the vitamin E treated group had a statistically significant reduction in AST/ALT levels compared to controls. Additionally, those individuals who were crossed over to receive vitamin E also demonstrated a statistically significant decrease in AST/ALT. The authors concluded that vitamin E attenuates methotrexate-induced liver injury. A limitation of this study is not knowing if these patients had underlying fatty liver disease prior to methotrexate initiation.

Numerous additional studies were identified that investigated the hepatoprotective effects of many other herbal medications for their antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and anti-apoptotic roles. These studies were largely conducted through *in vitro* or *in vivo* rat models as mentioned above. The individual studies that may be of interest to the reader include polyphenols and acetaminophen (APAP)[127,128], Gamisou-san and APAP[129], Lycopene and tamoxifen[130], and licorice and cisplatin[131]. Additional herbal agents were identified as cytoprotective after induction of liver injury by carbon tetrachloride or APAP[132-142].

HILI MISCELLANY

Psoralen and APAP-induced toxicity

Psoralen, an organic compound found in the seeds of *P. corylifolia*, is known for its photosynthesizing properties used to treat psoriasis and vitiligo. Unfortunately, it has also been implicated in hepatotoxicity and is one of the key ingredients responsible for liver injury in the popular TCM, buguzhi. Britza *et al*[143] conducted an *in vitro* study using a line of liver carcinoma cells and showed that psoralen exacerbates APAP hepatotoxicity. Interestingly, when non-toxic doses of psoralen and APAP were concurrently applied to the cell cultures, they synergistically induced liver injury. These findings have yet to be applied to *in vivo* animal models.

Selenium

Selenium is a trace element abundant in brazil nuts and fish and believed to protect against oxidative stress and infection[144]. In a cross-sectional study conducted by Aktary *et al*[145], a negative association was observed between selenium intake and the presence of NAFLD in a Canadian cohort. Similar findings suggesting selenium's hepatoprotective effect was seen in multiple rat models[146,147]. However, in a population-based study in China, Wu *et al*[148] found a significant association between dietary selenium intake and the presence of NAFLD, consistent with a dose-response relationship. Our understanding of selenium's effect on the liver therefore remains inconclusive.

Usnic acid

Usnic acid derived from lichens is a well-documented agent of liver injury with first reported cases dating to 2000 in relation to the dietary supplement, LipoKinetix[149]. Approximately 21 cases of LipoKinetix-induced liver toxicity were reported leading to one death and one liver transplant[149]. This dietary supplement has since been removed from the market[150]. Usnic acid's known mechanism of liver injury is a dose- and time-dependent manner through decoupling oxidative phosphorylation along with inducing oxidative stress through glutathione depletion[149].

Contaminants

Herbal products are not subjected to the same quality control measures as prescription drugs and such can lead to contaminations and subsequent liver injury. Quan *et al*[4] describes contaminates of herbal products as nonphyto-hepatoxins. These contaminates can be divided into heavy metals, biologic factors, pesticide and herbicidal residue[4]. Of the heavy metal arsenic, mercury, cadmium, nickel and lead are most commonly detected[4]. A study performed by Abualhasan *et al*[151] analyzed 18 green and herbal tea samples. Seven of 18 samples were detected to contain chromium and lead at concentrations above set limits set by WHO. In this study microbial contamination were also detected in six of these seven metal containing samples[151]. These microbial contaminations have been shown to be hepatotoxic through decreasing antioxidation, increasing lipid peroxidation and upregulating apoptotic genes.[4] Additionally, the use of pesticides and herbicides have been shown to cause hepato-

toxicity through hepatic mitochondrial toxicity and obstructive cholestasis[4].

CONCLUSION

HILI continues to be a growing concern for clinicians both in the United States and worldwide. While currently considered a subtype of DILI, differences in composition, application, and outcomes of HDS compared to conventional medications indicate that HILI may deserve to be considered independently.

The lack of HDS regulation in the United States limits our understanding of their potential for hepatotoxicity. Even an accurate estimate of the incidence of HILI is difficult to ascertain, and the frequencies that are reported using registries, single center hospitals, and population-based cohorts, make them difficult to compare.

Moreover, the diagnosis of HILI remains a challenge, and while assessment tools are valuable in determining causality, even the widely applied RUCAM scale - designed to evaluate DILI - falls short of adequately evaluating HILI[31]. Complete data are required for proper utilization of RUCAM, thus highlighting the importance of prospective registries. While imperfect, the RUCAM scale is currently the most widely used tool available, and until a better alternative is developed, we encourage its continued use and refinement to help identify verifiable HILI cases[31]. Development of prospective HILI/DSLI registries in Asia would also improve the overall utility of RUCAM and provide a more reliable and standardized causality scoring system. Future studies in HILI should examine (1) causality assessment scores; (2) clinical significance of using multiple herbal ingredients simultaneously; and (3) prospective studies to better understand incidence in Western countries. By improving assessment tools and expanding the data, advocates may be able to make stronger arguments to regulatory boards in support of consumer protection laws with regard to HDS.

The use of pharmacogenetics has identified susceptibility factors to HILI in the case of GTE and HLA-B *35:01. The search for other associations showing a strong correlation to idiosyncratic HILI is ongoing[41].

The use of herbals in hepato-protection continue to show promising outcomes in preventing and/or attenuating DILI from anti-TB liver injury. Further human clinical trials are still required in order to assess the true therapeutic benefit of cytoprotective herbals in other settings.

Kratom and its legal status will undoubtedly remain a hotly debated topic in coming years, as the opioid epidemic continues. At present, kratom is legal at the federal level, but banned in several states and countries. The literature indicates kratom is potentially lethal, not only through overdose but also by contaminated products, and some degree of regulation certainly seems warranted[63-65,152]. However, it has yet to be determined which end of the spectrum, through a ban or legalization, would best serve consumers.

The highlights of the updated literature over the past year indicate interest in HILI that we expect will continue to increase as the multi-billion-dollar supplement industry in the United States grows.

REFERENCES

1 **Shi Z**, Wu J, Yang Q, Xia H, Deng M, Yang Y. Efficacy and safety of milk thistle preventive treatment of anti-tuberculosis drug-induced liver injury: A protocol for systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e23674 [PMID: 33350748 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000023674]

2 **Singh AK**, Verma S, Kumar-M P, Soni H, Sharma S, Patil A, Sharma V. Appropriate chemopreventive strategy for anti-tubercular therapy related liver injury is unsettled: Results from a systematic review and network meta-analysis. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol* 2020; **13**: 1253-1262 [PMID: 33043729 DOI: 10.1080/17512433.2020.1835468]

3 **Zi-Yu K**, Feng J, Jia-Xu WU, Hui-Min L. [Network Meta-analysis of traditional Chinese medicine in treating drug-induced liver injury]. *Zhongguo Zhong Yao Za Zhi* 2020; **45**: 4746-4755 [PMID: 33164442 DOI: 10.19540/j.cnki.cjcmm.20200727.501]

4 **Quan NV**, Dang Xuan T, Teschke R. Potential Hepatotoxins Found in Herbal Medicinal Products: A Systematic Review. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32708570 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21145011]

5 **Santos G**, Gasca J, Parana R, Nunes V, Schinnoni M, Medina-Caliz I, Cabello MR, Lucena MI, Andrade RJ. Profile of herbal and dietary supplements induced liver injury in Latin America: A systematic review of published reports. *Phytother Res* 2021; **35**: 6-19 [PMID: 32525269 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.6746]

6 **Xiao Z**, Jiang Y, Chen XF, Wang CQ, Xu WH, Liu Y, Hu SS, Huang XR, Shan LJ, Tang YH, Yang

YB, Feng JH, Xiao X, Li XF. The Hepatorenal Toxicity and Tumor Response of Chemotherapy With or Without Aidi Injection in Advanced Lung Cancer: A Meta-Analysis of 80 Randomized Controlled Trials. *Clin Ther* 2020; **42**: 515-543.e31 [PMID: 32088021 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2020.01.011]

7 **Zhu J**, Chen M, Borlak J, Tong W. The landscape of hepatobiliary adverse reactions across 53 herbal and dietary supplements reveals immune-mediated injury as a common cause of hepatitis. *Arch Toxicol* 2020; **94**: 273-293 [PMID: 31720699 DOI: 10.1007/s00204-019-02621-4]

8 **Low EXS**, Zheng Q, Chan E, Lim SG. Drug induced liver injury: East vs West – a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Mol Hepatol* 2020; **26**: 142-154 [PMID: 31816676 DOI: 10.3350/cmh.2019.1003]

9 **Rosenberg J**, Higley C, Shabazi S, Lewis J. Selected Highlights and Controversies of Drug-Induced Liver Injury from the Recent Literature. *World J Gastroenterol Hepatol Endosc Res* 2020; **1**: 1-16

10 **Professor E**. Journal Impact Factor List. 2020. Available from: https://www.scopusjournals.com/2020/07/journal-impact-factor.html#1 [DOI: 10.1109/impact50485.2020.9268563]

11 **Real M**, Barnhill MS, Higley C, Rosenberg J, Lewis JH. Drug-Induced Liver Injury: Highlights of the Recent Literature. *Drug Saf* 2019; **42**: 365-387 [PMID: 30343418 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-018-0743-2]

12 **Kennedy J**. Herb and supplement use in the US adult population. *Clin Ther* 2005; **27**: 1847-1858 [PMID: 16368456 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2005.11.004]

13 **Shen T**, Liu Y, Shang J, Xie Q, Li J, Yan M, Xu J, Niu J, Liu J, Watkins PB, Aithal GP, Andrade RJ, Dou X, Yao L, Lv F, Wang Q, Li Y, Zhou X, Zhang Y, Zong P, Wan B, Zou Z, Yang D, Nie Y, Li D, Wang Y, Han X, Zhuang H, Mao Y, Chen C. Incidence and Etiology of Drug-Induced Liver Injury in Mainland China. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 2230-2241.e11 [PMID: 30742832 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.02.002]

14 **Vega M**, Verma M, Beswick D, Bey S, Hossack J, Merriman N, Shah A, Navarro V; Drug Induced Liver Injury Network (DILIN). The Incidence of Drug- and Herbal and Dietary Supplement-Induced Liver Injury: Preliminary Findings from Gastroenterologist-Based Surveillance in the Population of the State of Delaware. *Drug Saf* 2017; **40**: 783-787 [PMID: 28555362 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-017-0547-9]

15 **Björnsson ES**, Bergmann OM, Björnsson HK, Kvaran RB, Olafsson S. Incidence, presentation, and outcomes in patients with drug-induced liver injury in the general population of Iceland. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1419-1425, 1425.e1 [PMID: 23419359 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.02.006]

16 **Zheng E**, Sandhu N, Navarro V. Drug-induced Liver Injury Secondary to Herbal and Dietary Supplements. *Clin Liver Dis* 2020; **24**: 141-155 [PMID: 31753247 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2019.09.009]

17 J, Odin JA, Hayashi PH, Fontana RJ, Conjeevaram H, Avula B, Khan IA, Barnhart H, Vuppalanchi R, Navarro VJ; Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network. Liver injury associated with kratom, a popular opioid-like product: Experience from the U.S. drug induced liver injury network and a review of the literature. *Drug Alcohol Depend* 2021; **218**: 108426 [PMID: 33257199 DOI: 10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2020.108426]

18 **Bessone F**, García-Cortés M, Medina-Caliz I, Hernandez N, Parana R, Mendizabal M, Schinoni MI, Ridruejo E, Nunes V, Peralta M, Santos G, Anders M, Chiodi D, Tagle M, Montes P, Carrera E, Arrese M, Lizarzabal MI, Alvarez-Alvarez I, Caballano-Infantes E, Niu H, Pinazo J, Cabello MR, Lucena MI, Andrade RJ. Herbal and Dietary Supplements-Induced Liver Injury in Latin America: Experience From the Latindili Network. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021 [PMID: 33434654 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2021.01.011]

19 **Melchart D**, Hager S, Albrecht S, Dai J, Weidenhammer W, Teschke R. Herbal Traditional Chinese Medicine and suspected liver injury: A prospective study. *World J Hepatol* 2017; **9**: 1141-1157 [PMID: 29085558 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v9.i29.1141]

20 **Gardiner P**, Sadikova E, Filippelli AC, White LF, Jack BW. Medical reconciliation of dietary supplements: don't ask, don't tell. *Patient Educ Couns* 2015; **98**: 512-517 [PMID: 25636694 DOI: 10.1016/j.pec.2014.12.010]

21 **European Commission**. Herbal medicinal products. Medicinal Products. 2014. Available from: https://ec.europa.eu/health/human-use/herbal-medicines_en

22 **McGroarty B**. Wellness Industry Statistics and Facts. Global Wellness Institute. October 2019. Available from: https://globalwellnessinstitute.org/press-room/statistics-and-facts/

23 **Smith T**, May G, Eckl V, Morton C. MARKET REPORT US Sales of Herbal Supplements Increase by 8.6% in 2019 CBD, mushroom, and elderberry supplements continue to drive sales. Published online 2020. [cited 4 February 2021]. Available from: www.herbalgram.org

24 **Goldman P**. Herbal medicines today and the roots of modern pharmacology. *Ann Intern Med* 2001; **135**: 594-600 [PMID: 11601931 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-135-8_part_1-200110160-00010]

25 **Navarro VJ**. Herbal and dietary supplement hepatotoxicity. *Semin Liver Dis* 2009; **29**: 373-382 [PMID: 19826971 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1240006]

26 **FDA**. Dietary Supplements. FDA Food. 16 August 2019. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/food/dietary-supplements

27 **Himes DO**, Clayton MF, Donaldson GW, Ellington L, Buys SS, Kinney AY. Breast Cancer Risk Perceptions among Relatives of Women with Uninformative Negative BRCA1/2 Test Results: The Moderating Effect of the Amount of Shared Information. *J Genet Couns* 2016; **25**: 258-269 [PMID:

26245632 DOI: 10.1007/s10897-015-9866-0]
28 **McGinley L**. FDA Launches Tougher Oversight of Supplements. The Washington Post. 11 February 2019. Available from: https://www.washingtonpost.com/health/2019/02/11/fda-launches-tougher-oversight-supplements/
29 **Gottlieb S**. Statement from FDA Commissioner Scott Gottlieb, M.D., on the agency's new efforts to strengthen regulation of dietary supplements by modernizing and reforming FDA's oversight. FDA Press Announcements. 11 February 2019. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/statement-fda-commissioner-scott-gottlieb-md-agencys-new-efforts-strengthen-regulation-dietary
30 **United States Environment Protection Agency**. FY 2020 Justification of Appropriation Estimates for the Committee on Appropriations. Available from: https://www.epa.gov/planandbudget/fy-2020-justification-appropriation-estimates-committee-appropriations
31 **Garcia-Cortes M**, Robles-Diaz M, Stephens C, Ortega-Alonso A, Lucena MI, Andrade RJ. Drug induced liver injury: an update. *Arch Toxicol* 2020; **94**: 3381-3407 [PMID: 32852569 DOI: 10.1007/s00204-020-02885-1]
32 **Teschke R**, Danan G. Worldwide Use of RUCAM for Causality Assessment in 81,856 Idiosyncratic DILI and 14,029 HILI Cases Published 1993-Mid 2020: A Comprehensive Analysis. *Medicines (Basel)* 2020; **7** [PMID: 33003400 DOI: 10.3390/medicines7100062]
33 **Teschke R**, Schulze J, Eickhoff A, Danan G. Drug Induced Liver Injury: Can Biomarkers Assist RUCAM in Causality Assessment? *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18** [PMID: 28398242 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18040803]
34 **Teschke R**, Zhu Y, Jing J. Herb-induced Liver Injury in Asia and Current Role of RUCAM for Causality Assessment in 11,160 Published Cases. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 200-214 [PMID: 32832401 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00009]
35 **Chen F**, Chen W, Chen J, Xu D, Xie W, Wang X, Xie Y. Clinical features and risk factors of COVID-19-associated liver injury and function: A retrospective analysis of 830 cases. *Ann Hepatol* 2021; **21**: 100267 [PMID: 33053426 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.09.011]
36 **Anirvan P**, Bharali P, Gogoi M, Thuluvath PJ, Singh SP, Satapathy SK. Liver injury in COVID-19: The hepatic aspect of the respiratory syndrome - what we know so far. *World J Hepatol* 2020; **12**: 1182-1197 [PMID: 33442447 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i12.1182]
37 **Liu Y**, Li P, Wang F, Liu L, Zhang Y, Liu Y, Shi R. Comparison of diagnostic accuracy of 3 diagnostic criteria combined with refined pathological scoring system for drug-induced liver injury. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e22259 [PMID: 33031266 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000022259]
38 **Tillmann HL**, Suzuki A, Barnhart HX, Serrano J, Rockey DC. Tools for causality assessment in drug-induced liver disease. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2019; **35**: 183-190 [PMID: 30865042 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000526]
39 **Benesic A**, Leitl A, Gerbes AL. Monocyte-derived hepatocyte-like cells for causality assessment of idiosyncratic drug-induced liver injury. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 1555-1563 [PMID: 26045135 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309528]
40 **Huang Y**, Zhao X, Zhang ZT, Chen SS, Li SS, Shi Z, Jing J, Huang A, Guo YM, Bai ZF, Zou ZS, Xiao XH, Wang JB, Niu M. Metabolomics Profiling and Diagnosis Biomarkers Searching for Drug-Induced Liver Injury Implicated to *Polygonum multiflorum*: A Cross-Sectional Cohort Study. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 592434 [PMID: 33330552 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.592434]
41 **Hoofnagle JH**, Bonkovsky HL, Phillips EJ, Li YJ, Ahmad J, Barnhart H, Durazo F, Fontana RJ, Gu J, Khan I, Kleiner DE, Koh C, Rockey DC, Seeff LB, Serrano J, Stolz A, Tillmann HL, Vuppalanchi R, Navarro VJ; Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network. HLA-B*35:01 and Green Tea Induced Liver Injury. *Hepatol* 2021; **73**: 2484-2493 [PMID: 32892374 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31538]
42 **Björnsson HK**, Björnsson ES, Avula B, Khan IA, Jonasson JG, Ghabril M, Hayashi PH, Navarro V. Ashwagandha-induced liver injury: A case series from Iceland and the US Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 825-829 [PMID: 31991029 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14393]
43 **Weersink RA**, Alvarez-Alvarez I, Medina-Cáliz I, Sanabria-Cabrera J, Robles-Díaz M, Ortega-Alonso A, García-Cortés M, Bonilla E, Niu H, Soriano G, Jimenez-Perez M, Hallal H, Blanco S, Kaplowitz N, Lucena MI, Andrade RJ. Clinical Characteristics and Outcome of Drug-Induced Liver Injury in the Older Patients: From the Young-Old to the Oldest-Old. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2021; **109**: 1147-1158 [PMID: 33179256 DOI: 10.1002/cpt.2108]
44 **Stephens C**, Robles-Diaz M, Medina-Caliz I, Grove JI, Ortega-Alonso A, Lucena MI, Aithal GP. Comprehensive analysis and insights gained from long-term experience of the Spanish DILI registry. *J Hepatol* 2021 [DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(16)00370-6]
45 **Navarro VJ**, Barnhart H, Bonkovsky HL, Davern T, Fontana RJ, Grant L, Reddy KR, Seeff LB, Serrano J, Sherker AH, Stolz A, Talwalkar J, Vega M, Vuppalanchi R. Liver injury from herbals and dietary supplements in the U.S. Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 1399-1408 [PMID: 25043597 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27317]
46 **Medina-Caliz I**, Garcia-Cortes M, Gonzalez-Jimenez A, Cabello MR, Robles-Diaz M, Sanabria-Cabrera J, Sanjuan-Jimenez R, Ortega-Alonso A, García-Muñoz B, Moreno I, Jimenez-Perez M, Fernandez MC, Ginés P, Prieto M, Conde I, Hallal H, Soriano G, Roman E, Castiella A, Blanco-Reina E, Montes MR, Quiros-Cano M, Martin-Reyes F, Lucena MI, Andrade RJ; Spanish DILI Registry. Herbal and Dietary Supplement-Induced Liver Injuries in the Spanish DILI Registry. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **16**: 1495-1502 [PMID: 29307848 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2017.12.051]
47 **Lee FY**, Wong HS, Chan HK, Mohamed Ali N, Abu Hassan MR, Omar H, Abdul Mutalib NA.

Hepatic adverse drug reactions in Malaysia: An 18-year review of the national centralized reporting system. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf* 2020; **29**: 1669-1679 [PMID: 33064335 DOI: 10.1002/pds.5153]

48 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2012 [PMID: 31643176]

49 **Oliveira Sá A**, Pimentel T, Oliveira N. Boldo-Induced Hepatotoxicity: A Case of Unexplained Jaundice. *Eur J Case Rep Intern Med* 2020; **7**: 002116 [PMID: 33457373 DOI: 10.12890/2020_002116]

50 **Yeap V**, Tan TJY, Loh T, Kumar R. Liver failure associated with mahogany seed extract consumption. *BMJ Case Rep* 2018; bcr-2018 [PMID: 30061133 DOI: 10.1136/bcr-2018-225382]

51 **Shao YM**, Zhang Y, Yin X, Qin TT, Jin QL, Wen XY. Herb-induced autoimmune-like hepatitis associated with Xiang-tian-guo (Swietenia macrophylla seeds): A case report and literature review. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2021; **100**: e24045 [PMID: 33466156 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000024045]

52 **Xia C**, Liu Y, Yao H, Zhu W, Ding J, Jin J. Causality assessment of skyfruit-induced liver injury using the updated RUCAM: a case report and review of the literature. *J Int Med Res* 2020; **48**: 300060520917569 [PMID: 32293220 DOI: 10.1177/0300060520917569]

53 **Ferreira GSA**, Watanabe ALC, Trevizoli NC, Jorge FMF, Diaz LGG, Couto CF, Lima LV, Raupp DRL, Araujo BE. Acute Liver Failure Caused by Use of Fat Burner: A Case Report. *Transplant Proc* 2020; **52**: 1409-1412 [PMID: 32192741 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2020.01.072]

54 **Oppel RJ**, Kovaleski SF. Opioid Users Call Kratom a Godsend. The F.D.A. Says It's a Menace. The New York Times. 17 April 2019. Available from: https://www.nytimes.com/2019/04/17/us/kratom-overdose-deaths.html

55 **Marshall E**. The Rise and Decline of Temik: Once hailed as a miracle pest killer and still warmly regarded by farmers, it is being investigated, denounced, and threatened with federal controls. *Science* 1985; **229**: 1369-1371 [PMID: 17798373 DOI: 10.1126/science.229.4720.1369]

56 **Eastlack SC**, Cornett EM, Kaye AD. Kratom-Pharmacology, Clinical Implications, and Outlook: A Comprehensive Review. *Pain Ther* 2020; **9**: 55-69 [PMID: 31994019 DOI: 10.1007/s40122-020-00151-x]

57 **Han C**, Schmitt J, Gilliland KM. DARK Classics in Chemical Neuroscience: Kratom. *ACS Chem Neurosci* 2020 [PMID: 31841631 DOI: 10.1021/acschemneuro.9b00535]

58 **Schimmel J**, Amioka E, Rockhill K, Haynes CM, Black JC, Dart RC, Iwanicki JL. Prevalence and description of kratom (Mitragyna speciosa) use in the United States: a cross-sectional study. *Addiction* 2021; **116**: 176-181 [PMID: 32285981 DOI: 10.1111/add.15082]

59 **Ramanathan S**, McCurdy CR. Kratom (Mitragyna speciosa): worldwide issues. *Curr Opin Psychiatry* 2020; **33**: 312-318 [PMID: 32452943 DOI: 10.1097/YCO.0000000000000621]

60 **Singh D**, Yeou Chear NJ, Narayanan S, Leon F, Sharma A, McCurdy CR, Avery BA, Balasingam V. Patterns and reasons for kratom (Mitragyna speciosa) use among current and former opioid poly-drug users. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2020; **249**: 112462 [PMID: 31816368 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2019.112462]

61 **Prozialeck WC**, Avery BA, Boyer EW, Grundmann O, Henningfield JE, Kruegel AC, McMahon LR, McCurdy CR, Swogger MT, Veltri CA, Singh D. Kratom policy: The challenge of balancing therapeutic potential with public safety. *Int J Drug Policy* 2019; **70**: 70-77 [PMID: 31103778 DOI: 10.1016/j.drugpo.2019.05.003]

62 **Olsen EO**, O'Donnell J, Mattson CL, Schier JG, Wilson N. Notes from the Field: Unintentional Drug Overdose Deaths with Kratom Detected - 27 States, July 2016-December 2017. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2019; **68**: 326-327 [PMID: 30973850 DOI: 10.15585/mmwr.mm6814a2]

63 **Eggleston W**, Stoppacher R, Suen K, Marraffa JM, Nelson LS. Kratom Use and Toxicities in the United States. *Pharmacotherapy* 2019; **39**: 775-777 [PMID: 31099038 DOI: 10.1002/phar.2280]

64 **FDA**. FDA Investigated Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Infections Linked to Products Reported to Contain Kratom. FDA Outbreaks of Foodborne Illnesses. 29 June 2018. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/food/outbreaks-foodborne-illness/fda-investigated-multistate-outbreak-salmonella-infections-linked-products-reported-contain-kratom

65 **Prozialeck WC**, Edwards JR, Lamar PC, Plotkin BJ, Sigar IM, Grundmann O, Veltri CA. Evaluation of the Mitragynine Content, Levels of Toxic Metals and the Presence of Microbes in Kratom Products Purchased in the Western Suburbs of Chicago. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2020; **17** [PMID: 32751712 DOI: 10.3390/ijerph17155512]

66 **Kuehn B**. Kratom-Related Deaths. *JAMA* 2019; **321**: 1966 [PMID: 31135856 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2019.6339]

67 **DEA**. KRATOM. DEA Diversion Control Division. November 2019. Available from: https://www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/drug_chem_info/kratom.pdf

68 **Schimmel J**, Dart RC. Kratom (Mitragyna Speciosa) Liver Injury: A Comprehensive Review. *Drugs* 2020; **80**: 263-283 [PMID: 31919755 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-019-01242-6]

69 **Gandhi D**, Ahuja K, Quade A, Batts KP, Patel L. Kratom induced severe cholestatic liver injury histologically mimicking primary biliary cholangitis: A case report. *World J Hepatol* 2020; **12**: 863-869 [PMID: 33200023 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i10.863]

70 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Disease; 2012-Green Tea. 2020 [PMID: 31643260]

71 **Oketch-Rabah HA**, Roe AL, Rider CV, Bonkovsky HL, Giancaspro GI, Navarro V, Paine MF,

Betz JM, Marles RJ, Casper S, Gurley B, Jordan SA, He K, Kapoor MP, Rao TP, Sherker AH, Fontana RJ, Rossi S, Vuppalanchi R, Seeff LB, Stolz A, Ahmad J, Koh C, Serrano J, Low Dog T, Ko R. United States Pharmacopeia (USP) comprehensive review of the hepatotoxicity of green tea extracts. *Toxicol Rep* 2020; **7**: 386-402 [PMID: 32140423 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxrep.2020.02.008]

72 **Teschke R**, Xuan TD. Suspected herb induced liver injury by green tea extracts: Critical review and case analysis applying RUCAM for causality assessment. *Japanese J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **6**: 1-16 [DOI: 10.21037/tgh-20-149]

73 European Symposium on Animal, Plant and Microbial Toxins. Basel, Switzerland, 25-28 August 1996. Abstracts. *Toxicon* 1997; **35**: 801-819 [PMID: 9289896 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-0101(96)00197-3]

74 **Li YJ**, Phillips EJ, Dellinger A, Nicoletti P, Schutte R, Li D, Ostrov DA, Fontana RJ, Watkins PB, Stolz A, Daly AK, Aithal GP, Barnhart H, Chalasani N; Drug-induced Liver Injury Network. Human Leukocyte Antigen B*14:01 and B*35:01 Are Associated With Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole Induced Liver Injury. *Hepatology* 2021; **73**: 268-281 [PMID: 32270503 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31258]

75 **Li C**, Rao T, Chen X, Zou Z, Wei A, Tang J, Xiong P, Li P, Jing J, He T, Bai Z, Yin J, Tan Z, Yu P, Zhou H, Wang J, Xiao X, Ouyang D. HLA-B*35:01 Allele Is a Potential Biomarker for Predicting Polygonum multiflorum –Induced Liver Injury in Humans. *Hepatology* 2019; **70**: 346-357 [PMID: 30985007 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30660]

76 **Malik N**, Brandt L, Timsar AK. First Case of Garcinia Camogio (GC)-Induced Autoimmune Hepatitis (AIH). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2019; s1043 [DOI: 10.14309/01.ajg.0000712468.03721.ae]

77 **Yousaf MN**, Chaudhary FS, Hodanazari SM, Sittambalam CD. Hepatotoxicity associated with *Garcinia cambogia*: A case report. *World J Hepatol* 2019; **11**: 735-742 [PMID: 31772720 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v11.i11.735]

78 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestion and Kidney Disease; 2012-. Garcinia Cambogia. 2019 February 13

79 Erratum for the Research Article: "A rapid triage test for active pulmonary tuberculosis in adult patients with persistent cough" by R. Ahmad, L. Xie, M. Pyle, M. F. Suarez, T. Broger, D. Steinberg, S. M. Ame, M. G. Lucero, M. J. Szucs, M. MacMullan, F. S. Berven, A. Dutta, D. M. Sanvictores, V. L. Tallo, R. Bencher, D. P. Eisinger, U. Dhingra, S. Deb, S. M. Ali, S. Mehta, W. W. Fawzi, I. D. Riley, S. Sazawal, Z. Premji, R. Black, C. J. L. Murray, B. Rodriguez, S. A. Carr, D. R. Walt, M. A. Gillette. *Sci Transl Med* 2019; **11:** eaaz9925 [PMID: 31666404 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaz9925]

80 **Ferreira V**, Mathieu A, Soucy G, Giard JM, Erard-Poinsot D. Acute Severe Liver Injury Related to Long-Term Garcinia cambogia Intake. *ACG Case Rep J* 2020; **7**: e00429 [PMID: 32821764 DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000429]

81 **Khetpal N**, Mandzhieva B, Shahid S, Khetpal A, Jain AG. Not All Herbals are Benign: A Case of Hydroxycut-induced Acute Liver Injury. *Cureus* 2020; **12**: e6870 [PMID: 32190438 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.6870]

82 **Andueza N**, Giner RM, Portillo MP. Risks Associated with the Use of Garcinia as a Nutritional Complement to Lose Weight. *Nutrients* 2021; **13** [PMID: 33572973 DOI: 10.3390/nu13020450]

83 **McCarthy RE**, Bowen DG, Strasser SI, McKenzie C. The dangers of herbal weight loss supplements: a case report of drug-induced liver injury secondary to Garcinia cambogia ingestion. *Pathology* 2021; **53**: 545-547 [PMID: 33250192 DOI: 10.1016/j.pathol.2020.08.021]

84 **Villavicencio Kim J**, Wu GY. Body Building and Aminotransferase Elevations: A Review. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 161-167 [PMID: 32832396 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00005]

85 **Richards JR**, Scheerlinck PH, Owen KP, Colby DK. Bodybuilding supplements leading to copper toxicity, encephalopathy, fulminant hepatic failure and rhabdomyolysis. *Am J Emerg Med* 2020; **38**: 2487.e1-2487.e5 [PMID: 32532617 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajem.2020.05.096]

86 **Barbara M**, Dhingra S, Mindikoglu AL. Drug-Induced Liver Injury Associated With Alpha Bolic (RAD-140) and Alpha Elite (RAD-140 and LGD-4033). *ACG Case Rep J* 2020; **7**: e00409 [PMID: 33062783 DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000409]

87 **Barbara M**, Dhingra S, Mindikoglu AL. Ligandrol (LGD-4033)-Induced Liver Injury. *ACG Case Rep J* 2020; **7**: e00370 [PMID: 32637435 DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000370]

88 **Bedi H**, Hammond C, Lond M. Drug-Induced Liver Injury From Enobosarm (Ostarine), a Selective Androgen Receptor Modulator. *ACG Case Rep J* 2021; **8**: 7-9 [DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000518]

89 **Flores JE**, Chitturi S, Walker S. Drug-Induced Liver Injury by Selective Androgenic Receptor Modulators. *Hepatol Commun* 2020; **4**: 450-452 [PMID: 32140660 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1456]

90 **Bastola S**, Kc O, Khanal S, Halalau A. Hepatitis-associated aplastic anemia from workout supplement: Rare but potentially fatal entity. *SAGE Open Med Case Rep* 2020; **8**: 2050313X20901937 [PMID: 32030129 DOI: 10.1177/2050313X20901937]

91 **Eiswerth M**, Heckroth MA, Yacyshyn BR. The Buck Stops Here: A Case of Deer Antler Extract-Induced Liver Injury. *Ghady Moafa* 2020; **115**: 1308-1309 [DOI: 10.14309/01.ajg.0000711948.46953.01]

92 **Romick J**, Viswanathan L, Ramos B, Grant D, Badal BD, Wellner M. Pre-Workout Peril: Drug-Induced Liver Injury in a Young Deployed Service Member. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: S1365-S1366 [DOI: 10.14309/01.ajg.0000712448.30016.be]

93 **Hatami B**, Saffaei A, Jamali F, Abbasinazari M. Glutamine powder-induced hepatotoxicity: it is time to understand the side effects of sports nutritional supplements. *Gastroenterol Hepatol Bed*

Bench 2020; **13**: 86-89 [PMID: 32190229]
94 **Hopp C**, Schutleff D. Traditional Chinese Medicine: What You Need To Know. Available from: https://www.nccih.nih.gov/health/traditional-chinese-medicine-what-you-need-to-know
95 **Sung WS**, Jeon SR, Hong YJ, Kim TH, Shin S, Lee HJ, Seo BK, Park YC, Kim EJ, Nam DW. Efficacy, safety, and cost-effectiveness analysis of adjuvant herbal medicine treatment, Palmijihwang-hwan, for chronic low back pain: a study protocol for randomized, controlled, assessor-blinded, multicenter clinical trial. *Trials* 2019; **20**: 778 [PMID: 31882016 DOI: 10.1186/s13063-019-3776-7]
96 **Cyranoski D**. Why Chinese medicine is heading for clinics around the world. Nature News Feature. 26 December 2018. Available from: https://www.nature.com/articles/d41586-018-06782-7
97 **Eigenschink M**, Dearing L, Dablander TE, Maier J, Sitte HH. A critical examination of the main premises of Traditional Chinese Medicine. *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 2020; **132**: 260-273 [PMID: 32198544 DOI: 10.1007/s00508-020-01625-w]
98 **Pan X**, Zhou J, Chen Y, Xie X, Rao C, Liang J, Zhang Y, Peng C. Classification, hepatotoxic mechanisms, and targets of the risk ingredients in traditional Chinese medicine-induced liver injury. *Toxicol Lett* 2020; **323**: 48-56 [PMID: 32017980 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxlet.2020.01.026]
99 **Li D**, Yang M, Zuo Z. Overview of Pharmacokinetics and Liver Toxicities of Radix Polygoni Multiflori. *Toxins (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 33233441 DOI: 10.3390/toxins12110729]
100 **Zhang L**, Niu M, Wei AW, Tang JF, Tu C, Bai ZF, Zou ZS, Xiao XH, Liu YP, Wang JB. Risk profiling using metabolomic characteristics for susceptible individuals of drug-induced liver injury caused by Polygonum multiflorum. *Arch Toxicol* 2020; **94**: 245-256 [PMID: 31630224 DOI: 10.1007/s00204-019-02595-3]
101 **Yang WN**, Pang LL, Zhou JY, Qiu YW, Miao L, Wang SY, Liu XZ, Tan KA, Shi WW, Wang GQ, Hou FQ. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms of HLA and Polygonum multiflorum -induced liver injury in the Han Chinese population. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 1329-1339 [PMID: 32256020 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i12.1329]
102 **Zhu L**, Zhang CY, Li DP, Chen HB, Ma J, Gao H, Ye Y, Wang JY, Fu PP, Lin G. Tu-San-Qi (Gynura japonica): The culprit behind pyrrolizidine alkaloid-induced liver injury in China. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2021; **42**: 1212-1222 [PMID: 33154553 DOI: 10.1038/s41401-020-00553-9]
103 **Wang L**, Wang Y, Wee A, Soon G, Gouw ASH, Yang R, Tian Q, Liu L, Ma H, Zhao X. Clinicopathological features of Bu Gu Zhi-induced liver injury, a long-term follow-up cohort study. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 571-580 [PMID: 31758650 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14306]
104 **Zhuang T**, Gu X, Zhou N, Ding L, Yang L, Zhou M. Hepatoprotection and hepatotoxicity of Chinese herb Rhubarb (Dahuang): How to properly control the "General (Jiang Jun)" in Chinese medical herb. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2020; **127**: 110224 [PMID: 32559851 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2020.110224]
105 **Mukherjee PK**, Harwansh RK, Bahadur S, Banerjee S, Kar A, Chanda J, Biswas S, Ahmmed SM, Katiyar CK. Development of Ayurveda – Tradition to trend. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2017; **197**: 10-24 [PMID: 27633405 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2016.09.024]
106 **Paudyal B**, Thapa A, Sigdel KR, Adhikari S, Basnyat B. Adverse events with ayurvedic medicines-possible adulteration and some inherent toxicities. *Wellcome Open Res* 2019; **4**: 23 [PMID: 31641694 DOI: 10.12688/wellcomeopenres.15096.3]
107 **Philips CA**, Ahamed R, Rajesh S, George T, Mohanan M, Augustine P. Comprehensive review of hepatotoxicity associated with traditional Indian Ayurvedic herbs. *World J Hepatol* 2020; **12**: 574-595 [PMID: 33033566 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i9.574]
108 **Karousatos CM**, Lee JK, Braxton DR, Fong TL. Case series and review of Ayurvedic medication induced liver injury. *BMC Complement Med Ther* 2021; **21**: 91 [PMID: 33714265 DOI: 10.1186/s12906-021-03251-z]
109 **Lombardi N**, Crescioli G, Maggini V, Ippoliti I, Menniti-Ippolito F, Gallo E, Brilli V, Lanzi C, Mannaioni G, Firenzuoli F, Vannacci A. Acute liver injury following turmeric use in Tuscany: An analysis of the Italian Phytovigilance database and systematic review of case reports. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2021; **87**: 741-753 [PMID: 32656820 DOI: 10.1111/bcp.14460]
110 **Lee BS**, Bhatia T, Chaya CT, Wen R, Taira MT, Lim BS. Autoimmune Hepatitis Associated With Turmeric Consumption. *ACG Case Rep J* 2020; **7**: e00320 [PMID: 32337301 DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000320]
111 **Philips CA**, Rajesh S, George T, Ahamed R, Kumbar S, Augustine P. Outcomes and Toxicology of Herbal Drugs in Alcoholic Hepatitis - A Single Center Experience from India. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2019; **7**: 329-340 [PMID: 31915602 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2019.00043]
112 **DEA**. Khat. DEA Drug Fact Sheet. April 2020. Available from: https://www.dea.gov/factsheets/khat
113 **Palacios Argueta P**, Attar B, Sikavi C, Alagiozian-Angelova V, Mishra S. Drug-Induced Liver Injury Caused by "Khat," an Herbal Stimulant. *ACG Case Rep J* 2020; **7**: e00480 [PMID: 33299901 DOI: 10.14309/crj.0000000000000480]
114 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestion and Kidney Disease; 2012-. Skullcap. 2020 March 28
115 **Puri BK**, White N, Monro JA. The effect of supplementation with Scutellaria baicalensis on hepatic function. *Med Hypotheses* 2019; **133**: 109402 [PMID: 31557595 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2019.109402]

116 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestion and Kidney Disease; 2012-. Black Cohosh. 2020 November 4

117 **Black Cohosh**. Available from: https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/BlackCohosh-HealthProfessional/

118 **Shahin AY**, Mohammed SA. Adding the phytoestrogen Cimicifugae Racemosae to clomiphene induction cycles with timed intercourse in polycystic ovary syndrome improves cycle outcomes and pregnancy rates - a randomized trial. *Gynecol Endocrinol* 2014; **30**: 505-510 [PMID: 24592984 DOI: 10.3109/09513590.2014.895983]

119 **Shahin AY**, Ismail AM, Shaaban OM. Supplementation of clomiphene citrate cycles with Cimicifuga racemosa or ethinyl oestradiol--a randomized trial. *Reprod Biomed Online* 2009; **19**: 501-507 [PMID: 19909590 DOI: 10.1016/j.rbmo.2009.06.007]

120 **Caruntu S**, Ciceu A, Olah NK, Don I, Hermenean A, Cotoraci C. *Thuja occidentalis* L. (Cupressaceae): Ethnobotany, Phytochemistry and Biological Activity. *Molecules* 2020; **25** [PMID: 33228192 DOI: 10.3390/molecules25225416]

121 **Zha BS**, Nahid P. Treatment of Drug- Susceptible Tuberculosis. *Clin Chest Med* 2019; **40**: 763-774 [PMID: 31731983 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccm.2019.07.006]

122 **Goh ZH**, Tee JK, Ho HK. An Evaluation of the In Vitro Roles and Mechanisms of Silibinin in Reducing Pyrazinamide- and Isoniazid-Induced Hepatocellular Damage. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32466226 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21103714]

123 **Sanjay S**, Girish C, Toi PC, Bobby Z. Gallic acid attenuates isoniazid and rifampicin-induced liver injury by improving hepatic redox homeostasis through influence on Nrf2 and NF-κB signalling cascades in Wistar Rats. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 2021; **73**: 473-486 [PMID: 33793834 DOI: 10.1093/jpp/rgaa048]

124 **Vaidya B**, Bhochhibhoya M, Nakarmi S. Efficacy of Vitamin E in Methotrexate-Induced Hepatotoxicity in Rheumatoid Arthritis : An Open-Label Case-Control Study. *Int J Rheumatol* 2020; **2020**: 5723485 [PMID: 32411250 DOI: 10.1155/2020/5723485]

125 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestion and Kidney Disease; 2012-. Methotrexate. 2020 February 19

126 **Amanullah I**, Khan YH, Anwar I, Gulzar A, Mallhi TH, Raja AA. Effect of vitamin E in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Postgrad Med J* 2019; **95**: 601-611 [PMID: 31434683 DOI: 10.1136/postgradmedj-2018-136364]

127 **Liu FC**, Yu HP, Chou AH, Lee HC, Liao CC. Corilagin reduces acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity through MAPK and NF- κ B signaling pathway in a mouse model. *Am J Transl Res* 2020; **12**: 5597-5607 [PMID: 33042441]

128 **Hu F**, Guo Q, Wei M, Huang Z, Shi L, Sheng Y, Ji L. Chlorogenic acid alleviates acetaminophen-induced liver injury in mice via regulating Nrf2-mediated HSP60-initiated liver inflammation. Eur J Pharmacol 2020; 883: 173286 [PMID: 32603696 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2020.173286]

129 **Jin SE**, Shin HK, Ha H. Hepatoprotective effects of *Gamisoyo-san* against acetaminophen-induced liver injuries. *Integr Med Res* 2021; **10**: 100466 [PMID: 32904181 DOI: 10.1016/j.imr.2020.100466]

130 **Adikwu E**, Ebinyo NC, Benalayefa O. Protective effect of lycopene against tamoxifen-induced hepatotoxicity in albino rats. *Biomed Biotechnol Res J* 2020; **4**: 69-75 [DOI: 10.15171/npj.2019.22]

131 **Man Q**, Deng Y, Li P, Ma J, Yang Z, Yang X, Zhou Y, Yan X. Licorice Ameliorates Cisplatin-Induced Hepatotoxicity Through Antiapoptosis, Antioxidative Stress, Anti-Inflammation, and Acceleration of Metabolism. *Front Pharmacol* 2020; **11**: 563750 [PMID: 33240085 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2020.563750]

132 **Lin W**, Wu Y, Wang J, Lin H, Xu X, He G, He B, Ma X. Network Pharmacology Study of the Hepatoprotective Effects of Quercetin- Containing Traditional Chinese Medicine, Anoectochilus roxburghii, and Validation of Quercetin as an Anti-Liver Injury Agent in a Mouse Model of Liver Injury. *Med Sci Monit* 2020; **26**: e923533 [PMID: 33325451 DOI: 10.12659/MSM.923533]

133 **Al-Sayed E**, Korinek M, Esmat A, Chen GY, Cheng YB, Hsieh PW, Chen BH, Hwang TL. Anti-inflammatory, hepatoprotective and antioxidant activity of ellagitannin isolated from Melaleuca styphelioides. *Phytochemistry* 2020; **177**: 112429 [PMID: 32559488 DOI: 10.1016/j.phytochem.2020.112429]

134 **Shakya AK**. Drug-induced Hepatotoxicity and Hepatoprotective Medicinal Plants: A Review. *Indian J Pharmaceut Educat Res* 2020; **54**: 234-250 [DOI: 10.5530/ijper.54.2.28]

135 **Fan X**, Lin L, Cui B, Zhao T, Mao L, Song Y, Wang X, Feng H, Qingxiang Y, Zhang J, Jiang K, Cao X, Wang B, Sun C. Therapeutic potential of genipin in various acute liver injury, fulminant hepatitis, NAFLD and other non-cancer liver diseases: More friend than foe. *Pharmacol Res* 2020; **159**: 104945 [PMID: 32454225 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2020.104945]

136 **Shen Y**, Shen X, Cheng Y, Liu Y. Myricitrin pretreatment ameliorates mouse liver ischemia reperfusion injury. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2020; **89**: 107005 [PMID: 33045574 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2020.107005]

137 **Wang Z**, Zhao P, Zhang Y, Shi S, Chen X. The hepatoprotective effect and mechanism of lotus leaf on liver injury induced by Genkwa Flos. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 2020; **72**: 1909-1920 [PMID: 32979237 DOI: 10.1111/jphp.13355]

138 **Gao Y**, Tian Y, Zhang X, Duan Z, Ren F, Chen Y. Magnesium isoglycyrrhizinate ameliorates concanavalin A-induced liver injury *via* the p38 and JNK MAPK pathway. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol* 2020; **42**: 445-455 [PMID: 32787473 DOI: 10.1080/08923973.2020.1808984]

139 **Dong Y**, Qiu P, Zhao L, Zhang P, Huang X, Li C, Chai K, Shou D. Metabolomics study of the hepatoprotective effect of Phellinus igniarius in chronic ethanol-induced liver injury mice using UPLC-Q/TOF-MS combined with ingenuity pathway analysis. *Phytomedicine* 2020; **74**: 152697 [PMID: 30392748 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2018.09.232]

140 **Zhao Y**, Zhang Y, Kong H, Zhang M, Cheng J, Wu J, Qu H, Zhao Y. Carbon Dots from Paeoniae Radix Alba Carbonisata: Hepatoprotective Effect. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2020; **15**: 9049-9059 [PMID: 33235451 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S281976]

141 **Ezzat MI**, Okba MM, Ahmed SH, El-Banna HA, Prince A, Mohamed SO, Ezzat SM. In-depth hepatoprotective mechanistic study of Phyllanthus niruri: In vitro and in vivo studies and its chemical characterization. *PLoS One* 2020; **15**: e0226185 [PMID: 31940365 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0226185]

142 **Zou J**, Li W, Wang G, Fang S, Cai J, Wang T, Zhang H, Liu P, Wu J, Ma Y. Hepatoprotective effects of Huangqi decoction (Astragali Radix and Glycyrrhizae Radix et Rhizoma) on cholestatic liver injury in mice: Involvement of alleviating intestinal microbiota dysbiosis. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2021; **267**: 113544 [PMID: 33152436 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2020.113544]

143 **Britza SM**, Musgrave IF, Byard RW. Paracetamol (acetaminophen) hepatotoxicity increases in the presence of an added herbal compound. *Leg Med (Tokyo)* 2020; **47**: 101740 [PMID: 32634765 DOI: 10.1016/j.legalmed.2020.101740]

144 National Institute of Health Office of Dietary Supplements: Selenium. Available from: https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/Selenium-HealthProfessional/ [DOI: 10.1002/9780470319444.ch10]

145 **Aktary ML**, Eller LK, Nicolucci AC, Reimer RA. Cross-sectional analysis of the health profile and dietary intake of a sample of Canadian adults diagnosed with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Food Nutr Res* 2020; **64** [PMID: 33061886 DOI: 10.29219/fnr.v64.4548]

146 **Malyar RM**, Li H, Liu D, Abdulrahim Y, Farid RA, Gan F, Ali W, Enayatullah H, Banuree SAH, Huang K, Chen X. Selenium/Zinc-Enriched probiotics improve serum enzyme activity, antioxidant ability, inflammatory factors and related gene expression of Wistar rats inflated under heat stress. *Life Sci* 2020; **248**: 117464 [PMID: 32097667 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2020.117464]

147 **Malyar RM**, Naseri E, Li H, Ali I, Farid RA, Liu D, Maroof K, Nasim M, Banuree SAH, Huang K, Waldron KJ, Chen X. Hepatoprotective Effects of Selenium-Enriched Probiotics Supplementation on Heat-Stressed Wistar Rat Through Anti-Inflammatory and Antioxidant Effects. *Biol Trace Elem Res* 2021; **199**: 3445-3456 [PMID: 33161525 DOI: 10.1007/s12011-020-02475-3]

148 **Wu J**, Zeng C, Yang Z, Li X, Lei G, Xie D, Wang Y, Wei J, Yang T. Association Between Dietary Selenium Intake and the Prevalence of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: A Cross-Sectional Study. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2020; **39**: 103-111 [PMID: 31157605 DOI: 10.1080/07315724.2019.1613271]

149 **Kwong SP**, Wang C. Review: Usnic acid-induced hepatotoxicity and cell death. *Environ Toxicol Pharmacol* 2020; **80**: 103493 [PMID: 32961280 DOI: 10.1016/j.etap.2020.103493]

150 **Sanchez W**, Maple JT, Burgart LJ, Kamath PS. Severe hepatotoxicity associated with use of a dietary supplement containing usnic acid. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2006; **81**: 541-544 [PMID: 16610575 DOI: 10.4065/81.4.541]

151 **Abualhasan MN**, Nidal Jaradat, Hawash M, Khayat R, Khatatbeh E, Ehmidan M, Al-Atrash M. Evaluation of Heavy Metal and Microbial Contamination in Green Tea and Herbal Tea Used for Weight Loss in the Palestinian Market. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2020; **2020**: 7631562 [PMID: 33299455 DOI: 10.1155/2020/7631562]

152 **Stenson J**. What is kratom? The popular herbal supplement has caught flak from the FDA. NBC Health News. 16 October 2019. Available from: https://www.nbcnews.com/health/health-news/what-kratom-popular-herbal-supplement-has-caught-flak-fda-n1066526

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1042-1057

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1042

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Challenges in the discontinuation of chronic hepatitis B antiviral agents

Apichat Kaewdech, Pimsiri Sripongpun

ORCID number: Apichat Kaewdech 0000-0002-4058-5977; Pimsiri Sripongpun 0000-0003-0007-8214.

Author contributions: Kaewdech A and Sripongpun P made a substantial contribution to the review concept and drafting of the manuscript; Sripongpun P made a critical revision of the manuscript; All authors approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflicting interests.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Apichat Kaewdech, Pimsiri Sripongpun, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Prince of Songkla University, Hat Yai 90110, Songkhla, Thailand

Corresponding author: Pimsiri Sripongpun, MD, Assistant Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Prince of Songkla University, 15 Kanchanavanich Road, Hat Yai 90110, Songkhla, Thailand. spimsiri@medicine.psu.ac.th

Abstract

Long-term antiviral treatment of chronic hepatitis B patients has been proven to be beneficial in reducing liver-related complications. However, lengthy periods of daily administration of medication have some inevitable drawbacks, including decreased medication adherence, increased cost of treatment, and possible long-term side effects. Currently, discontinuation of antiviral agent has become the strategy of interest to many hepatologists, as it might alleviate the aforementioned drawbacks and increase the probability of achieving functional cure. This review focuses on the current evidence of the outcomes following stopping antiviral treatment and the factors associated with subsequent hepatitis B virus relapse, hepatitis B surface antigen clearance, and unmet needs.

Key Words: Viral hepatitis B; Relapse; Retreatment; SCALE-B; Stop treatment strategy; Nucleoside analogs

Core Tip: Stop strategy is one of the options to get closer to functional cure with a finite duration of treatment in chronic hepatitis B patients. Virological relapse and clinical relapse are common after stopping antiviral agent. Half the patients with clinical relapse require retreatment. Novel biomarkers and the SCALE-B score predict clinical relapse and hepatitis B surface antigen clearance. Knowing when to restart treatment and novel sensitive biomarkers are unmet needs.

Citation: Kaewdech A, Sripongpun P. Challenges in the discontinuation of chronic hepatitis B antiviral agents. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1042-1057

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1042.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1042

Country/Territory of origin: Thailand

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 21, 2021
Peer-review started: February 21, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: May 7, 2021
Accepted: July 28, 2021
Article in press: July 28, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Bottaro M
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Yuan YY

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is a major health problem globally; approximately 292 million people are affected by this virus[1]. Patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) infection are at risk of developing long-term liver-related complications, *e.g.*, cirrhosis, decompensation, and malignant liver tumors[2]. Although the prevalence of CHB infection has declined as a result of immunization programs, the majority of Southeast Asian countries are still categorized as intermediately to highly endemic areas[3]. HBV replication occurs through the formation of covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA), and the persistence of intrahepatic cccDNA is the major reason for disease chronicity and a major obstacle for the eradication of HBV[4]. However, the measurement of intrahepatic cccDNA is not practical in clinical practice as it can only be done through liver biopsy.

Long-term nucleos(t)ide analogs (NA) inhibit the reverse transcriptase activity of viral polymerase and effectively inhibit HBV replication, reverse liver fibrosis, and reduce the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[5,6]. However, NA have no direct effect on intrahepatic cccDNA or virus transcription in the liver. Therefore, because functional cure, defined as hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) clearance with or without anti-HBs seroconversion, is not often achieved, and most patients need long-term or even lifelong NA therapy[7].

Currently, the best time to stop NA therapy before HBsAg clearance is still uncertain because of the high rates of nontreatment recurrence. For instance, the pooled analysis of a systematic review showed a virological relapse (VR) rate of about 50% to 60% within 12 to 36 mo after drug withdrawal[8]. Although recent clinical guidelines suggest that some patients may stop taking NA before achieving HBsAg serum clearance[9-11], sensitive and reliable biomarkers for identifying patients with low recurrence risk have not yet been established[12,13]. This review focuses on both benefits and risks of discontinuing antiviral agents, as well as the current recommendations, factors, and novel biomarkers for predicting outcomes following NA cessation, and unfulfilled demands.

ADVANTAGES *VS* DISADVANTAGES OF ANTIVIRAL AGENT DISCONTINUATION

Benefit and risk concerns of CHB antiviral cessation are summarized in Figure 1.

Advantages

Increased HBsAg loss: The ultimate goal of CHB treatment is clearance of intrahepatic cccDNA. Nonetheless, this endpoint seems to be unrealistic with the current treatment options[9-11]. A more pragmatic endpoint is HBsAg loss with undetectable HBV DNA or a so called "functional cure," yet HBsAg loss is rarely achieved with long-term NA therapy. In a French study of 18 CHB patients with NA treatment, the annual decrease of HBsAg levels was only 0.084 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL[14], with a study-derived model predicting that HBsAg loss after continuous treatment with NA would be achieved in 52.2 years.

On the other hand, cessation of NA therapy may increase HBsAg clearance. An initial study by Hadziyannis *et al*[15] showed a high rate of HBsAg loss of 39.4% at 6 years after stopped adefovir (ADV) in hepatitis B e-antigen (HBeAg) negative CHB patients. That study was followed by a peak of interest in NA discontinuation[15]. A recent systematic review including 1085 patients reported a rate of HBsAg loss of approximately 8%[8]. In contrast, a subsequent study reported HBsAg loss in a minority of patients on continuous NA therapy, approximately 2.1% after 10 years of follow-up[16].

Finite duration: Generally, long-term treatment with NA is required, in contrast to the definable duration of interferon-based therapy, 12 mo in HBeAg-negative, and 6-12 mo in HBeAg-positive patients[17]. Even though the side effects after several years of medication are very few, they can be problematic in real-life practice. An attempt to define a limited duration of NA therapy was first proposed in the Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver (APASL) 2008 guidelines[18]. Finite duration may increase drug adherence, lower the chances of developing side effects from the drug, and reduce costs[19].

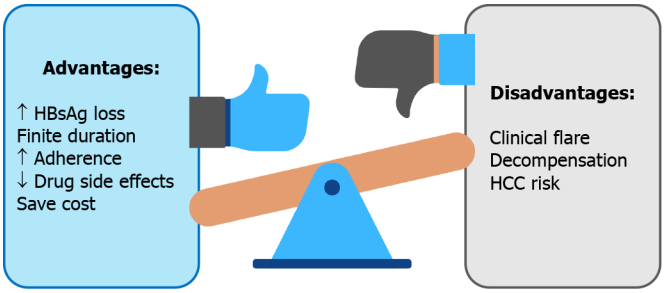


Figure 1 Advantages *vs* disadvantages of antiviral agent discontinuation in chronic hepatitis B. HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

Increased adherence: Longer use of NA treatment is associated with lower medication compliance. Drug adherence is of concern in real-life practice[20]. Poor antiviral agent compliance is associated with emerging resistance, particularly in agents with a low genetic barrier[21]. A large retrospective study that included 11,100 CHB patients in the United States found a rate of adherence of 87%[20]. Moreover, a systematic review and meta-analysis included of 30 studies reported that the long-term adherence rate was only 74.7% after a median follow-up of 16 mo[22]. Notably, it was suboptimal compared with a good adherence rate of 95% defined in previous studies[20,23-25]. Compliance to antiviral agent use may improve with finite duration of treatment.

Decreased side effects: A recent systematic review indicated adverse events associated with NA were not common. However, some events were fatal, especially mitochondrial toxicity[26]. Long-term treatment with NA potentiates renal and bone side effects, particularly in tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) and ADV users. In addition to the well-known side effects of tubular dysfunction and Fanconi syndrome associated with TDF and ADV, the real-world data also found that the estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) declined more quickly in TDF and ADV users than in untreated CHB patients[27]. Despite the observation in recent registration trials that tenofovir alafenamide (TAF) had significantly lower rates of bone mineral density and eGFR reduction compared with TDF[28,29], making it is safer for long-term use, the reported safety data were from follow-up of no longer than 96 wk[30]. Therefore, whether TAF is truly safe for extended treatment is yet to be confirmed. Nonetheless, as shorter time of exposure to NA would decrease the risk of side effects.

Cost savings: As mentioned above, hepatitis B treatment with NA might be a long-term therapy. According to a survey in Singapore, fewer than half the patients preferred lifelong treatment[31]. One of the most concerns of lifelong therapy is the cost of treatment. Moreover, only about a quarter of the patients were willing to pay for lifelong therapy, with an acceptable daily cost of 8 United States dollars.

Disadvantages

Clinical flare and decompensation following off-therapy: The concerning issue after NA discontinuation is HBV flare, especially clinical relapse (CR). Most studies defined CR as an off-therapy HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL plus an alanine aminotransferase (ALT) level > 2 times the upper limit of normal (ULN)[8,32]. The overall CR rate from a pooled data analysis with a follow-up ranging from 12-69 mo duration after NA discontinuation was 34.6% in which CR was higher in HBeAg-negative patients (43.7%) than in HBeAg-positive (23.8%)[8]. CR, particularly severe CR, may lead to jaundice, prolonged prothrombin time (PT), or eventually liver failure. In our study in Thai patients, two noncirrhotic HBeAg-negative patients developed jaundice (classified as severe CR) 3 mo after NA discontinuation[12]. Jaundice and hepatitis resolved in both patients after retreatment. Clinical decompensation and death following NA discontinuation has been reported in Asian studies; decompensation and fatality were observed in 0%-1.58% and 0%-0.19% in noncirrhotic patients at 1-3 years of follow-up, while there was a limited number of studies in cirrhotic patients [33-35]. The annual incidence of liver decompensation and death were recently reported to be 2.95% and 1%, respectively in cirrhotic patients who stopped NA[33]. Of interest, ENUMERATE study of the patients in the United States reported hepatic decompensation in five of 61 entecavir-treated patients (8.2%) after a median follow-up of 4 years[36]. Although not from a head-to-head comparison, the data are of

concern because liver decompensation in cirrhotic patients who stopped NA therapy seems to be numerically higher than in those who continued treatment. Thus, the current evidence indicates a need for vigilance after NA discontinuation in cirrhotic patients.

HCC risk: There are several well-known benefits of NA treatment in CHB patients[9-11]. Antiviral therapy with NA results in viral suppression, fibrosis improvement, and lower risk of HCC development[37]. Whether patients who stop NA will experience an increased occurrence of HCC in the future than those with continuous treatment is not clear. Nevertheless, to date, HCC development in patients who discontinued NA is not significantly higher than in those who continued NA treatment[33].

GUIDELINE RECOMMENDATIONS

Currently, international practice guidelines for CHB management suggest that patients who had consecutive findings of undetectable HBV DNA for a certain duration can stop NA[9-11]. The expert consensus from the APASL first mentioned treatment discontinuation in 2008, advocating that NA therapy can be stopped in selected patients because of drug resistance concerns in long-term NA treatment[18]. The latest recommendations from international hepatology societies for considering stopping NA therapy are shown in Table 1.

In HBeAg-positive CHB patients, all guidelines allow NA discontinuation in patients who develop HBeAg seroconversion with persistent normal ALT levels and undetectable HBV DNA following consolidation therapy after e-seroconversion for at least 12 mo[38] or preferably 3 years in the APASL guidelines[11]. For patients who are HBeAg-negative, the APASL guideline states that NA can be withdrawn in noncirrhotic patients after treatment for at least 2 years, with an undetectable HBV DNA documented on three consecutive visits, 6 mo apart, or until HBsAg loss with or without development of anti-HBs[11]. Likewise, the European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL) allows stopping NA in highly selected patients with 3 years of continuously suppression of HBV DNA in noncirrhotic patients[9]. On the contrary, the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) recommend continuing NA treatment indefinitely unless HBsAg loss is achieved[10]. In patients with liver cirrhosis, the APASL recommends that the discontinuation of NA might be considered, but only with close monitoring[11].

HBV RELAPSE AND PREDICTIVE FACTORS

HBV relapse is a common event after NA discontinuation and can be simply categorized into virological relapse (VR) and CR. Most of the studies defined HBV DNA greater than 2000 IU/mL as the definition of VR, and when in combination with an ALT of at least two times the ULN, CR is recognized. A systematic review by Papatheodoridis *et al*[8], reported VR rates of 51.4% and 38.2% at 1- and 3-year, respectively, after NA discontinuation. The occurrence of VR was higher in HBeAg-negative patients than in HBeAg-positive patients. The rates were 56.3% *vs* 37.5% and 69.9% *vs* 48.5% at 1- and 3-year, respectively. VR commonly occurred when NA was stopped, but VR alone might not have a clinically significant impact. In some patients, VR may be transient, with a spontaneous decline of viral replication resulting from an immune response. In contrast, a CR may require initiation of retreatment, or more importantly lead to severe flare, and hepatic failure. A randomized controlled study by Liem *et al*[39] reported that half the patients developed CR after NA discontinuation[39]. Consequently, three-quarters of the patients required retreatment. A summary of the studies reporting the occurrence of VR, CR, and HBsAg loss after NA discontinuation is shown in Table 2.

Various baseline and on-treatment factors are associated with VR off-therapy patients. At pretreatment, the baseline characteristics of increasing age and male sex have been associated with an increased relapse rate[40]. During treatment, extension of consolidation treatment duration by more than 1 to 3 years reduces the risk of VR in both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients[38]. For that reason, the international guidelines recommend at least 1 year of consolidation therapy, and preferably 3 years in the APASL guidelines[11], after HBeAg seroconversion before considering NA discontinuation in HBeAg-positive patients. Moreover, the end of treatment (EOT) HBsAg level is highly predictive of HBV relapse, a higher level is correlated with a

Table 1 Guidelines for stopping nucleos(t)ide analog therapy

Guidelines	HBeAg-positive CHB	HBeAg-negative CHB
APASL 2015 [11]	HBeAg seroconversion: + undetectable HBV DNA + normal ALT for ≥ 12 mo (or preferably 3 yr). Cirrhotic patients may be stopped with careful monitoring	Undetectable HBV DNA at least 2 yr with documented on three separate occasions, 6 mo apart: Or HBsAg clearance either at least for 1 yr; Or until anti-HBs seroconversion. Cirrhotic patients may be stopped with careful monitoring
AASLD 2018 [10]	HBeAg seroconversion + undetectable DNA + normal ALT for ≥ 12 mo. Not recommended in cirrhosis	HBsAg clearance. Not recommended in cirrhosis
EASL 2017[9]	HBeAg seroconversion + undetectable DNA for ≥ 12 mo. Not recommended in cirrhosis	HBsAg clearance. Or selected noncirrhotic with undetectable HBV DNA ≥ 3 yr. Not recommended in cirrhosis

AASLD: American Association for the Study of the Liver; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; APASL: Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver; CHB: Chronic hepatitis B; EASL: European Association for the Study of the Liver; HBeAg: Hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

higher HBV relapse rate[40,41].

From our point of view, the CR is more clinically important than VR, as it may be followed by liver-related complications. A study in a Thai cohort demonstrated that EOT hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) and HBV RNA level were independent risk factors for the subsequent development of CR[12]. A recent meta-analysis including 1573 patients indicated that the higher pretreatment HBsAg levels were associated with shorter consolidation duration and the higher EOT HBsAg levels, especially those > 1000 IU/mL, were independently associated with CR[33]. Many studies attempted to find factors associated with VR and CR, and the reported results are summarized in Table 3.

HBsAg CLEARANCE AND PREDICTIVE FACTORS

HBsAg clearance is the desired goal of hepatitis B treatment. Nonetheless, as mentioned above, even if possible, it seldom occurs while on NA treatment, and stopping NA may be a strategy to increase the chance of HBsAg loss. A pivotal Greece study with 33 genotype D, HBeAg-negative patients who stopped ADV, HBsAg loss occurred in 13 of 33 patients (39.4%) after a 6-year follow-up[15]. In addition, the first small randomized controlled trial (RCT) from Germany reported HBsAg clearance in 4 of 21 HBeAg-negative CHB patients after 3-year of off-therapy[42]. However, another RCT conducted by Liem *et al*[39], in which the majority of the patients were Asian, HBsAg loss occurred in only one patient 1.5 years after NA cessation[39]. Ethnicity and HBV genotype may affect the rate of HBsAg loss.

A large retrospective Taiwanese study that included 691 patients, demonstrated a shorter time to undetectable HBV DNA (especially if assayed less than 12 wk after NA initiation), on-treatment reduction of HBsAg level of > 1 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL, and an EOT HBsAg level of < 100 IU/mL were independently associated with an increase in the likelihood of off-therapy HBsAg loss[33]. Furthermore, lower pretreatment ALT and HBV DNA levels, lower EOT HBsAg level, and longer treatment duration predicted HBsAg loss in another study[40]. The predictive factors for HBsAg loss in off-therapy patients are summarized in Table 4.

NOVEL BIOMARKERS TO PREDICT HBV RELAPSE AND HBsAg CLEARANCE

HBsAg quantification

Quantitative serum HBsAg (qHBsAg) has been around in the management of CHB for a while. In untreated patients, serum HBsAg quantification can help to define disease stage, predict spontaneous HBsAg clearance, and predict long-term liver-related complications[43]. As qHBsAg has been used in the clinical practice nowadays, commercial assay kits are widely available. There is increasing evidence of qHBsAg as a marker to aid physicians in deciding whether to discontinue NA. A Taiwanese study by Chen *et al*[40] found that a cutoff level of < 120 IU/mL predicted HBsAg clearance in HBeAg-negative patients and < 300 IU/mL in HBeAg-positive, respectively[40]. A systematic review by Liu *et al*[41] indicated that an EOT HBsAg level < 100 IU/mL

Table 2 Off-therapy virological relapse, clinical relapse, and hepatitis B surface antigen loss in chronic hepatitis B patients

Ref.	Country	*n* (%)	HBeAg-negative, *n* (%)	Follow-up time (mo)	Virological relapse rate (%)	Clinical relapse rate (%)	HBsAg loss, *n* (%)
Fung *et al*[67], 2004	Canada	27	27	18	44.4	25.9	NR[1]
Enomoto *et al*[68], 2008	Japan	22	22	48	68.7	68.7	NR
Yeh *et al*[69], 2009	Taiwan	71	0	15	26.8	26.8	0
Fung *et al*[70], 2009	Hongkong	22	0	20	63.6	31.8	NR
Wang *et al*[71], 2010	China	125	125	24	30.4	NR	NR
Kuo *et al*[72], 2010	Taiwan	124	0	> 12	66.1	66.1	NR
Cai *et al*[73], 2010	China	11	0	22	42.8	0	NR
Liu *et al*[74], 2011	China	61	61	15	50.8	45.9	8/61
Jung *et al*[75], 2011	South Korea	19	9	12	31.6	21	0
Chan *et al*[76], 2011	Hongkong	53	53	47	69.8	NR	9/53
Liang *et al*[77], 2011	Hongkong	84	43		44	14.3	NR
Chaung *et al*[78], 2012	United States	39	0	14	89.7	38.5	0
Hadziyannis *et al*[15], 2012	Greece	33	33	69	45.4	45.4	13/33
Ha *et al*[79], 2012	China	145	145	16	65.5	64.1	NR
Song *et al*[80], 2012	South Korea	48	0	18	41.6	NR	NR
He *et al*[81], 2013	China	66	66	17	28.8	NR	2/66
Kim *et al*[82], 2013	Korea	45	45	26	73.3	53.3	NR
Jeng *et al*[83], 2013	Taiwan	95	95	> 12	57.9	45.3	0/95
Kwon *et al*[84], 2013	South Korea	16	NR	32	25	25	2/16
Ridruejo *et al*[85], 2014	Argentina	35	0	15	25.7	NR	18/35
Sohn *et al*[86], 2014	South Korea	95	54	22	83.1	NR	0/95
Patwardhan *et al*[87], 2014	United States	33	33	36	63.6	48.5	0/33
He *et al*[88], 2014	China	97	0	32	8.2	1	11/97
Chen *et al*[40], 2014	Taiwan	188	105	49	66.5	NR	33/185
Jiang *et al*[89], 2015	China	72	39	13	65.3	41.7	NR
Seto *et al*[90], 2015	Hongkong	184	184	12	91.8	22.8	0
Peng *et al*[91], 2015	China	65	21	12	43.1	27.7	1/65
Jeng *et al*[92], 2016	Taiwan	85	85	155	69	52	2/85
Qiu *et al*[93], 2016	China	112	0	52	48.2	NR	1/112
Yao *et al*[94], 2017	Taiwan	119	119	6 yr	25.2	12.7	44/119[2]
Cao *et al*[95], 2017	China	82	22	91	70.7	34.1	5/82
Chen *et al*[96], 2018	Taiwan	143	104	104	67.1	48.9	7/143
Hung *et al*[97], 2017	Taiwan	73	73	6 yr	54.8	6.8	20/73
Berg *et al*[42], 2017	German	21	21	144	52	23	4/21
Jeng *et al*[33], 2018	Taiwan	691	691	6 yr	79.2	60.6	42/691
Liem *et al*[39], 2019	Canada	45	27	72	71	13	1/45
Kaewdech *et al*[12], 2020	Thailand	92	70	48	63	33.7	2/92

[1]Not reported.
[2]All patients had hepatitis B surface antigen level < 200 IU/mL at the end of treatment.
EOT: End of treatment; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; NR: Not reported.

Table 3 Factors predictive of hepatitis B virus relapse

Baseline at pretreatment	On-treatment	End of treatment
Virological relapse		
High age[40,44]	Short consolidation duration[38]	High HBsAg level[40,41]
Male sex[40]		High HBcrAg level[12]
High HBsAg level[44]		High HBV RNA level[12]
Clinical relapse		
High HBsAg level[44]	Short consolidation duration[44]	High HBsAg level[13,40,41]
		High HBcrAg level[12,13,52]
		High HBV RNA level[12,52]

HBcrAg: Hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

Table 4 Factors predictive of hepatitis B surface antigen clearance

Baseline at pretreatment	On-treatment	End of treatment
Low ALT level[40]	Long treatment duration[40]	Low HBsAg level especially < 100 IU/mL[41]
Low HBV DNA level[40]	HBsAg level reduction > 1 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL[33]	Low HBcrAg level[13]

ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HBcrAg: Hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

was the optimal cutoff[41] to predict low rates of HBV relapse and a high chance of HBsAg loss. A meta-analysis involving 1573 patients found that the same EOT HBsAg level (> 100 IU/mL) was associated with an increased risk of VR and CR, however, it is not predictive of CR in a subgroup of Asian patients[44]. The finding is consistent with our study in Thai patients in which the HBsAg level was not associated with the development of CR. A recent multicenter study by Sonneveld *et al*[13] found that a cutoff level of < 50 IU/mL was the best for predicting a sustained response and HBsAg loss[13]. In conclusion, HBsAg level is a good predictor of HBsAg loss after NA cessation, but its use as a biomarker to predict CR, especially in Asian patients, is still not clear.

HBcrAg level

Serum HBcrAg has emerged as a novel biomarker in CHB patients. Serum HBcrAg measurement is the combined assay of hepatitis B core antigen, HBeAg, and p22 protein, and it has been shown to be a potential surrogate marker of intrahepatic cccDNA[45,46]. In previous Japanese reports, an increased HBcrAg level was associated with an increase in the rate of off-therapy relapse in NA-treated patients[47]. In addition, a multicenter cohort of Taiwanese patients showed that HBcrAg and HBsAg measured at the time of NA discontinuation were predictive of off-therapy relapse [48]. Moreover, data from CREATE project, a multicenter study including both Asian and Caucasian patients, confirmed the utility of serum HBcrAg. The low cutoff of < 2 $\log_{10}$ U/mL was associated with sustained response and HBsAg clearance regardless of HBeAg status and ethnicity[13]. A compilation of the clinical applications of HBcrAg in the cessation of NA is shown in Table 5.

HBV RNA level

Serum HBV RNA is closely associated with the transcriptional activity of intrahepatic cccDNA and can be quantified by polymerase chain reaction-based techniques[31]. Moreover, this novel marker is potentially valuable in monitoring for relapse after NA

Table 5 Hepatitis B core-related antigen level and clinical application

Ref.	*n* (%)	End of treatment HBcrAg level (log_{10} U/mL)	Clinical application
Shinkai *et al*[98], 2006	22	< 3.4	Predictive factor for absence of the off-therapy relapse
Matsumoto *et al*[47], 2007	34	< 3.2	Predictive factor for absence of the off-therapy relapse
Jung *et al*[99], 2016	113	≤ 3.7	Virological relapse within 1 yr of NA cessation
Hsu *et al*[48], 2019	135	NR	Predictive factors of HBsAg loss and lower clinical relapse
Kaewdech *et al*[12], 2020	92	< 3	Low risk of off-therapy relapse
Papatheodoridi *et al*[54], 2020	57	< 2	Predictive factor of HBsAg loss, not required retreatment
Sonneveld *et al*[13], 2020	572	< 2	Higher risk of sustained response and HBsAg loss

ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HBcrAg: Hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; NA: Nucleos(t)ide analog; NR: Not reported.

discontinuation[49]. A study by Wang *et al*[49] reported that viral rebound occurred in 100% of patients who had detectable HBV RNA at EOT[49]. A recent study in HBeAg-positive patients found that positive serum HBV RNA at EOT was associated with the development of off-therapy CR[50].

The combination of biomarkers

Together, the data suggest that serum qHBsAg, HBcrAg, and HBV RNA, especially at EOT, are predictive of the outcomes following NA cessation. A few studies have explored the usefulness of combining the biomarkers to select the best candidates for stopping NA[12,48,51,52]. A post-hoc analysis from China included 130 CHB patients who discontinued NA and serial followed-up HBV DNA, qHBsAg and HBV RNA[50] found that the combination of negative HBV DNA and HBV RNA at EOT correlated with lower a CR rate and had an excellent 92% negative predictive value (NPV). Another study, combining qHBsAg, and HBcrAg reported that lower qHBsAg, and HBcrAg levels were associated with lower CR and increased HBsAg clearance[48]. Furthermore, a combination of the two biomarkers before stopping NA showed that no patients with negative HBV RNA, and HBcrAg < 4 log_{10} U/mL at EOT developed CR[52]. The result is consistent with that observed in our study of the combination of the three biomarkers, *i.e.* qHBsAg, HBcrAg, and HBV RNA in the prediction of CR after cessation of NA. We found that HBcrAg of < 3 log_{10} U/mL and HBV RNA of < 2 log_{10} U/mL had 100% NPV for CR[12]. Nonetheless, when combining all three biomarkers, the prediction of CR was not better than that with HBcrAg plus HBV RNA [12].

SCORING SYSTEMS TO PREDICT HBV RELAPSE AND HBsAg CLEARANCE

Apart from using only biomarkers, previous studies illustrated that other clinical and laboratory parameters were significantly associated with post off-treatment outcomes. Therefore, the development of scoring systems utilizing various variables to predict HBV relapse and HBsAg clearance is foreseeable. The first score to predict CR after NA discontinuation is the Japan society of hepatology (JSH) score that consisted of the HBsAg level and HBcrAg level at the time of cessation. The JSH scores are divided into low, moderate, and high-risk groups for HBV relapse after NA cessation[53]. However, this predictive score is not widely used outside the country of origin.

The SCALE-B scoring system was developed using data from 135 Taiwanese CHB patients[48]. The score is comprised of the HBsAg level (S), HBcrAg (C), age (A), ALT (L), and tenofovir (E) for HBV (B) and is calculated as HBsAg (log_{10}IU/mL) + 20 × HBcrAg (log_{10}U/mL) + 2 × age (yr) + ALT (U/L) + 40 for the use of tenofovir. The scores are divided into three strata, low (< 260 points), intermediate (260-320 points), and high (> 320 points) risk of CR. A score of < 260 points was associated with a subsequent HBsAg loss in 27.1% of the patients at 3 years[48]. The SCALE-B score has

been validated in a Caucasian population in which it predicted HBsAg clearance, but not relapse[54]. Recently, the CREATE study, which included a large number of Asian as well as Caucasian patients reported that the SCALE-B score predicted CR and HBsAg loss regardless of HBeAg status or ethnicity[13].

IMMUNE SYSTEM EFFECTS AFTER DISCONTINUATION OF ANTIVIRAL AGENTS

T cells contribute to the control of HBV infection by killing infected hepatocytes[55]. However, chronic HBV infection can exhaust immune activity, particularly T cell function[55], as the longer time of HBV infection is associated with the length of exposure to high antigenicity[56]. With NA therapy, T cell function decreases over time. With discontinuation of NA, T cell function may recover with the increase in the number of active T cells and less exhausted phenotypes[57,58].

After the cessation of NA treatment, the HBV DNA usually becomes detectable and often triggers ALT flares that reflect the immune response. Increased numbers of HBV-specific T cells were observed in patients in virological remission after NA discontinuation[59]. A study by Rinker *et al*[58] that high function of HBV-specific T cells was observed after NA cessation in patients with subsequent HBsAg loss, especially HBV-specific CD4* T cells[58]. In addition, T cell function increased after programmed death-ligand 1 blockage. More recently, a study by a Spanish group[60] reported that an HBsAg level of ≤ 1000 IU/mL, lower cccDNA transcriptional activity, and a higher HBV-specific T cell response were associated with the development of HBsAg loss.

A new concept of the immune response after NA cessation, beneficial flare *vs* bad flare is of interest, and was introduced by a Taiwanese group[61]. HBsAg kinetics may be useful in predicting whether patients will require retreatment after CR. Initiation of retreatment is considered in patients who have an increase in HBsAg level before or during ALT flare, which reflects an ineffective immune response. On the other hand, patients in whom a reduction on the HBsAg level was observed before or during ALT flare may not need retreatment, and spontaneous HBsAg clearance may eventually occur[62].

MONITORING /RESTARTING THERAPY AFTER STOPPING ANTIVIRAL AGENT THERAPY

At present, there is no consensus on how to monitor and when to restart NA therapy. Previous studies reported that most HBV relapses occurred within 1 year after the discontinuation of antiviral agents. Most studies recommend careful monitoring, with physical examinations, liver function tests, and serum HBV DNA assays every 1-2 mo for the first 3 mo, every 3 mo for 1 year, and every 6 mo thereafter[12-14,63]. If the patient experiences ALT flare, then close follow-up every week with liver function tests and PT are mandatory for deciding whether prompt retreatment is needed.

Currently, retreatment criteria differ among the studies summarized in Table 6[12,13,39,63]. Most suggested that retreatment should be initiated in patients with an ALT level > 10 times above the ULN regardless of bilirubin level, with an ALT level > 5 times above ULN plus a bilirubin > 1.5-2 mg/dL, persistent of ALT level > 5 times the ULN for 4 wk, or an ALT elevation with either a prolonged PT > 2 sec or a bilirubin level >1.5-2 mg/dL. The retreatment strategy is challenging as CR may reflect the immune restoration and reintroduction of NA might alleviate the effect. However, delayed initiation of retreatment can cause severe ALT flare, and eventually liver decompensation. The biomarkers or tools to aid justification of the optimal timing of retreatment are unmet needs.

PERSPECTIVE OF NA DISCONTINUATION IN EASTERN AND WESTERN COUNTRIES

In Asian and Caucasian populations, there are differences in rates of HBsAg clearance and HBV relapse. Caucasians have a higher probability of achieving a functional cure after NA cessation[13]. HBsAg clearance has been observed in 19%-29% of Caucasians at 2 years[42,64] whereas it had been found in only 1.78%/year in Asians. This

Table 6 Summary of follow-up interval and retreatment criteria

Ref.	Follow-up interval	Criteria of retreatment
Berg *et al*[42], 2017	Every 2 wk in the first 3 mo, every 4 wk until week 48, and every 12 wk thereafter until week 144	Two consecutive total bilirubin > 1.5 mg/dL plus ALT > ULN
		Two consecutive PT ≥ 2.0 seconds (INR ≥ 0.5) prolonged from baseline with adequate vitamin K therapy plus ALT > ULN
		Two consecutive ALT > 10 × ULN
		ALT > 2 × but ≤ 5 × ULN persisting for ≥ 12 wk plus HBV DNA > 20000 copies/mL
		ALT 5 × but ≤ 10 × ULN persisting for ≥ 4 wk
Papatheodoridi *et al*[63], 2018	Every mo in the first 3 mo then at least every 3 mo until month 12	Greece cohort: (1) ALT > 10 × ULN; (2) ALT > 5 × ULN plus total bilirubin > 2 mg/dL; (3) ALT > 3 × ULN plus HBV DNA > 100000 IU/mL; and (4) ALT > ULN plus HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL on three sequential occasions
		Taiwanese cohort: (1) ALT > 2 × ULN twice 3 mo apart plus HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL; (2) Total bilirubin > 2 mg/dL; and (3) PT ≥ 3 seconds of control range
Liem *et al*[39], 2019	Wk 4, 6, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 60, and 72	HBeAg seroreversion
		HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL plus ALT > 600 IU/mL
		HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL plus ALT > 5 × ULN (40 IU/mL) on two consecutive visits
		HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL plus ALT > 200 IU/mL but < 600 IU/mL for > 6–8 wk
		HBV DNA > 20000 IU/mL on two consecutive visits at least 4 wk apart
García-López *et al*[60], 2020	Monthly in the first 6 mo then every 3-4 mo until 24 mo	Two consecutive ALT > 10 × ULN regardless of HBV DNA level
		ALT > 5-10 × ULN and HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL persisting for ≥ 4 wk
		ALT > 2-5 × ULN and HBV DNA > 2000 IU/mL persisting for ≥ 6 mo
		Need for immunosuppressive treatment

ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HBeAg: Hepatitis B e antigen; HBV: hepatitis B virus; INR: International normalized ratio; PT: Prothrombin time; ULN: Upper limit of normal.

phenomenon might be explained by the difference of HBV genotypes between Asians and Caucasians, and the duration of infectivity. In Asians, the most common genotypes are B and C, in contrast to the Caucasians in which genotype D is more common[65]. Regarding the duration of infection, most Asian CHB patients are infected perinatally, resulting in a longer extent of chronic infection than in Caucasian patients[66]. Therefore, apart from the chance of patients to have drug-free periods, lower long-term side effects and costs, the ultimate benefit of achieving a functional cure after NA cessation is lower in Asians than in Caucasians.

Another discrepancy between East and West is the consideration of stopping NA in cirrhotic patients. The APASL recommends that in highly selected cirrhotic patients, NA discontinuation may be considered according to the stopping criteria and safety results of previous Asian studies[11,33]. On the contrary, the AASLD and EASL do not recommend NA cessation in cirrhotic patients because safety concerns[9,10].

CONCLUSION

From our perspective, the stop strategy is optimal in highly selected noncirrhotic CHB patients. At present, we propose the ideal candidates for NA discontinuation in CHB patients as shown in Figure 2. The major benefit of this strategy is it enhances the chance of achieving a functional cure faster than continuous long-term NA therapy. However, there are some caveats, including severe CR, liver decompensation, or HCC development to be considered. The current unmet needs for NA discontinuation strategy in CHB patients are the better prediction of the patients who are good candidates for stopping, emerging and more widely available noninvasive biomarkers, and the identification of the best timing to consider retreatment initiation, balancing the chance of achieving functional cure and liver decompensation.

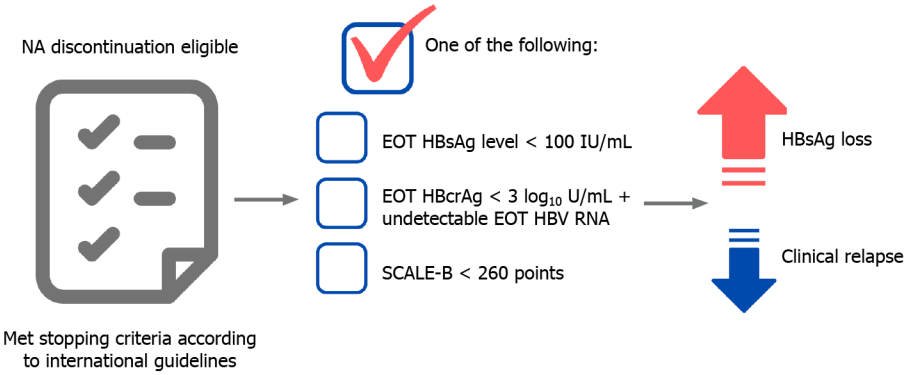


Figure 2 Proposed ideal candidates to for stopping the use of antiviral agents in chronic hepatitis B patients. EOT: End of treatment; HBcrAg: Hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank the Faculty of Medicine, Prince of Songkla University, Hat Yai, Thailand and Thai Association for the Study of the Liver (THASL) for the inspiration and their support for this review. The work is that of the authors only.

REFERENCES

1 **Polaris Observatory Collaborators**. Global prevalence, treatment, and prevention of hepatitis B virus infection in 2016: a modelling study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **3**: 383-403 [PMID: 29599078 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(18)30056-6]

2 **Ganem D**, Prince AM. Hepatitis B virus infection--natural history and clinical consequences. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1118-1129 [PMID: 15014185 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra031087]

3 **Udompap P**, Tanwandee T, Gani R. Affordability of Antiviral Therapy in Asia-Pacific Countries and Its Impact on Public Health Outcomes. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2020; **16**: 249-253 [PMID: 33489097 DOI: 10.1002/cld.977]

4 **Kumar R**, Pérez-Del-Pulgar S, Testoni B, Lebossé F, Zoulim F. Clinical relevance of the study of hepatitis B virus covalently closed circular DNA. *Liver Int* 2016; **36** Suppl 1: 72-77 [PMID: 26725901 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13001]

5 **Nassal M**. HBV cccDNA: viral persistence reservoir and key obstacle for a cure of chronic hepatitis B. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1972-1984 [PMID: 26048673 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309809]

6 **Marcellin P**, Gane E, Buti M, Afdhal N, Sievert W, Jacobson IM, Washington MK, Germanidis G, Flaherty JF, Aguilar Schall R, Bornstein JD, Kitrinos KM, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Heathcote EJ. Regression of cirrhosis during treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B: a 5-year open-label follow-up study. *Lancet* 2013; **381**: 468-475 [PMID: 23234725 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61425-1]

7 **Lok AS**, McMahon BJ, Brown RS Jr, Wong JB, Ahmed AT, Farah W, Almasri J, Alahdab F, Benkhadra K, Mouchli MA, Singh S, Mohamed EA, Abu Dabrh AM, Prokop LJ, Wang Z, Murad MH, Mohammed K. Antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis B viral infection in adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 284-306 [PMID: 26566246 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28280]

8 **Papatheodoridis G**, Vlachogiannakos I, Cholongitas E, Wursthorn K, Thomadakis C, Touloumi G, Petersen J. Discontinuation of oral antivirals in chronic hepatitis B: A systematic review. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 1481-1492 [PMID: 27100145 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28438]

9 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL 2017 Clinical Practice Guidelines on the management of hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 370-398 [PMID: 28427875 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.03.021]

10 **Terrault NA**, Lok ASF, McMahon BJ, Chang KM, Hwang JP, Jonas MM, Brown RS Jr, Bzowej NH, Wong JB. Update on prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of chronic hepatitis B: AASLD 2018 hepatitis B guidance. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 1560-1599 [PMID: 29405329 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29800]

11 **Sarin SK**, Kumar M, Lau GK, Abbas Z, Chan HL, Chen CJ, Chen DS, Chen HL, Chen PJ, Chien RN, Dokmeci AK, Gane E, Hou JL, Jafri W, Jia J, Kim JH, Lai CL, Lee HC, Lim SG, Liu CJ, Locarnini S, Al Mahtab M, Mohamed R, Omata M, Park J, Piratvisuth T, Sharma BC, Sollano J, Wang FS, Wei L, Yuen MF, Zheng SS, Kao JH. Asian-Pacific clinical practice guidelines on the management of hepatitis B: a 2015 update. *Hepatol Int* 2016; **10**: 1-98 [PMID: 26563120 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-015-9675-4]

12 **Kaewdech A**, Tangkijvanich P, Sripongpun P, Witeerungrot T, Jandee S, Tanaka Y, Piratvisuth T. Hepatitis B surface antigen, core-related antigen and HBV RNA: Predicting clinical relapse after NA

therapy discontinuation. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2961-2971 [PMID: 32668074 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14606]

13 **Sonneveld MJ**, Park JY, Kaewdech A, Seto WK, Tanaka Y, Carey I, Papatheodoridi M, van Bömmel F, Berg T, Zoulim F, Ahn SH, Dalekos GN, Erler NS, Höner Zu Siederdissen C, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M, Yuen MF, Agarwal K, Boonstra A, Buti M, Piratvisuth T, Papatheodoridis G, Maasoumy B; CREATE Study Group. Prediction of Sustained Response After Nucleo(s)tide Analogue Cessation Using HBsAg and HBcrAg Levels: A Multicenter Study (CREATE). *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020 [PMID: 33309804 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.12.005]

14 **Chevaliez S**, Hézode C, Bahrami S, Grare M, Pawlotsky JM. Long-term hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) kinetics during nucleoside/nucleotide analogue therapy: finite treatment duration unlikely. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 676-683 [PMID: 23219442 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.11.039]

15 **Hadziyannis SJ**, Sevastianos V, Rapti I, Vassilopoulos D, Hadziyannis E. Sustained responses and loss of HBsAg in HBeAg-negative patients with chronic hepatitis B who stop long-term treatment with adefovir. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 629-636.e1 [PMID: 22659218 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.05.039]

16 **Lok AS**, Zoulim F, Dusheiko G, Chan HLY, Buti M, Ghany MG, Gaggar A, Yang JC, Wu G, Flaherty JF, Subramanian GM, Locarnini S, Marcellin P. Durability of Hepatitis B Surface Antigen Loss With Nucleotide Analogue and Peginterferon Therapy in Patients With Chronic Hepatitis B. *Hepatol Commun* 2020; **4**: 8-20 [PMID: 31909352 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1436]

17 **Brunetto MR**, Bonino F. Interferon therapy of chronic hepatitis B. *Intervirology* 2014; **57**: 163-170 [PMID: 25034484 DOI: 10.1159/000360941]

18 **Liaw YF**, Leung N, Kao JH, Piratvisuth T, Gane E, Han KH, Guan R, Lau GK, Locarnini S; Chronic Hepatitis B Guideline Working Party of the Asian-Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver. Asian-Pacific consensus statement on the management of chronic hepatitis B: a 2008 update. *Hepatol Int* 2008; **2**: 263-283 [PMID: 19669255 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-008-9080-3]

19 **Liaw YF**. Finite nucleos(t)ide analog therapy in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B: an emerging paradigm shift. *Hepatol Int* 2019; **13**: 665-673 [PMID: 31559604 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-019-09989-6]

20 **Chotiyaputta W**, Peterson C, Ditah FA, Goodwin D, Lok AS. Persistence and adherence to nucleos(t)ide analogue treatment for chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 12-18 [PMID: 20888661 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.06.016]

21 **Thompson AJ**, Ayres A, Yuen L, Bartholomeusz A, Bowden DS, Iser DM, Chen RY, Demediuk B, Shaw G, Bell SJ, Watson KJ, Locarnini SA, Desmond PV. Lamivudine resistance in patients with chronic hepatitis B: role of clinical and virological factors. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 1078-1085 [PMID: 17608854 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2006.04630.x]

22 **Ford N**, Scourse R, Lemoine M, Hutin Y, Bulterys M, Shubber Z, Donchuk D, Wandeler G. Adherence to Nucleos(t)ide Analogue Therapies for Chronic Hepatitis B Infection: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Hepatol Commun* 2018; **2**: 1160-1167 [PMID: 30288470 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1247]

23 **Allard N**, Dev A, Dwyer J, Srivatsa G, Thompson A, Cowie B. Factors associated with poor adherence to antiviral treatment for hepatitis B. *J Viral Hepat* 2017; **24**: 53-58 [PMID: 27502689 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12582]

24 **Lieveld FI**, van Vlerken LG, Siersema PD, van Erpecum KJ. Patient adherence to antiviral treatment for chronic hepatitis B and C: a systematic review. *Ann Hepatol* 2013; **12**: 380-391 [PMID: 23619254 DOI: 10.1016/S1665-2681(19)31000-2]

25 **Berg T**, Marcellin P, Zoulim F, Moller B, Trinh H, Chan S, Suarez E, Lavocat F, Snow-Lampart A, Frederick D, Sorbel J, Borroto-Esoda K, Oldach D, Rousseau F. Tenofovir is effective alone or with emtricitabine in adefovir-treated patients with chronic-hepatitis B virus infection. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1207-1217 [PMID: 20600025 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.06.053]

26 **de Fraga RS**, Van Vaisberg V, Mendes LCA, Carrilho FJ, Ono SK. Adverse events of nucleos(t)ide analogues for chronic hepatitis B: a systematic review. *J Gastroenterol* 2020; **55**: 496-514 [PMID: 32185517 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-020-01680-0]

27 **Udompap P**, Kim D, Ahmed A, Kim WR. Longitudinal trends in renal function in chronic hepatitis B patients receiving oral antiviral treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 1282-1289 [PMID: 30370967 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15020]

28 **Buti M**, Gane E, Seto WK, Chan HL, Chuang WL, Stepanova T, Hui AJ, Lim YS, Mehta R, Janssen HL, Acharya SK, Flaherty JF, Massetto B, Cathcart AL, Kim K, Gaggar A, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Pan CQ, Brunetto M, Izumi N, Marcellin P; GS-US-320-0108 Investigators. Tenofovir alafenamide versus tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for the treatment of patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a randomised, double-blind, phase 3, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **1**: 196-206 [PMID: 28404092 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(16)30107-8]

29 **Chan HL**, Fung S, Seto WK, Chuang WL, Chen CY, Kim HJ, Hui AJ, Janssen HL, Chowdhury A, Tsang TY, Mehta R, Gane E, Flaherty JF, Massetto B, Gaggar A, Kitrinos KM, Lin L, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Lim YS, Acharya SK, Agarwal K; GS-US-320-0110 Investigators. Tenofovir alafenamide versus tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for the treatment of HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a randomised, double-blind, phase 3, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **1**: 185-195 [PMID: 28404091 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(16)30024-3]

30 **Agarwal K**, Brunetto M, Seto WK, Lim YS, Fung S, Marcellin P, Ahn SH, Izumi N, Chuang WL, Bae H, Sharma M, Janssen HLA, Pan CQ, Çelen MK, Furusyo N, Shalimar D, Yoon KT, Trinh H, Flaherty JF, Gaggar A, Lau AH, Cathcart AL, Lin L, Bhardwaj N, Suri V, Mani Subramanian G,

Gane EJ, Buti M, Chan HLY; GS-US-320-0110; GS-US-320-0108 Investigators. 96 weeks treatment of tenofovir alafenamide vs. tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 672-681 [PMID: 29756595 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.11.039]

31 **Lim SG**, Aung MO, Chung SW, Soon CS, Mak BH, Lee KH. Patient preferences for hepatitis B therapy. *Antivir Ther* 2013; **18**: 663-670 [PMID: 23232291 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2482]

32 **Chang ML**, Liaw YF, Hadziyannis SJ. Systematic review: cessation of long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **42**: 243-257 [PMID: 26151841 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13272]

33 **Jeng WJ**, Chen YC, Chien RN, Sheen IS, Liaw YF. Incidence and predictors of hepatitis B surface antigen seroclearance after cessation of nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2018; **68**: 425-434 [PMID: 29108132 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29640]

34 **Kuo MT**, Hu TH, Hung CH, Wang JH, Lu SN, Tsai KL, Chen CH. Hepatitis B virus relapse rates in chronic hepatitis B patients who discontinue either entecavir or tenofovir. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2019; **49**: 218-228 [PMID: 30484881 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15053]

35 **Ma TL**, Hu TH, Hung CH, Wang JH, Lu SN, Chen CH. Incidence and predictors of retreatment in chronic hepatitis B patients after discontinuation of entecavir or tenofovir treatment. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0222221 [PMID: 31584951 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0222221]

36 **Ahn J**, Lee HM, Lim JK, Pan CQ, Nguyen MH, Ray Kim W, Mannalithara A, Trinh H, Chu D, Tran T, Min A, Do S, Te H, Reddy KR, Lok AS. Entecavir safety and effectiveness in a national cohort of treatment-naïve chronic hepatitis B patients in the US - the ENUMERATE study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **43**: 134-144 [PMID: 26510638 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13440]

37 **Yip TC**, Wong VW, Chan HL, Tse YK, Lui GC, Wong GL. Tenofovir Is Associated With Lower Risk of Hepatocellular Carcinoma Than Entecavir in Patients With Chronic HBV Infection in China. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 215-225.e6 [PMID: 31574268 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.09.025]

38 **Chi H**, Hansen BE, Yim C, Arends P, Abu-Amara M, van der Eijk AA, Feld JJ, de Knegt RJ, Wong DK, Janssen HL. Reduced risk of relapse after long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue consolidation therapy for chronic hepatitis B. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **41**: 867-876 [PMID: 25752878 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13150]

39 **Liem KS**, Fung S, Wong DK, Yim C, Noureldin S, Chen J, Feld JJ, Hansen BE, Janssen HLA. Limited sustained response after stopping nucleos(t)ide analogues in patients with chronic hepatitis B: results from a randomised controlled trial (Toronto STOP study). *Gut* 2019; **68**: 2206-2213 [PMID: 31462554 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-318981]

40 **Chen CH**, Lu SN, Hung CH, Wang JH, Hu TH, Changchien CS, Lee CM. The role of hepatitis B surface antigen quantification in predicting HBsAg loss and HBV relapse after discontinuation of lamivudine treatment. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 515-522 [PMID: 24798617 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.04.029]

41 **Liu J**, Li T, Zhang L, Xu A. The Role of Hepatitis B Surface Antigen in Nucleos(t)ide Analogues Cessation Among Asian Patients With Chronic Hepatitis B: A Systematic Review. *Hepatology* 2019; **70**: 1045-1055 [PMID: 30561829 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30474]

42 **Berg T**, Simon KG, Mauss S, Schott E, Heyne R, Klass DM, Eisenbach C, Welzel TM, Zachoval R, Felten G, Schulze-Zur-Wiesch J, Cornberg M, Op den Brouw ML, Jump B, Reiser H, Gallo L, Warger T, Petersen J; FINITE CHB study investigators [First investigation in stopping TDF treatment after long-term virological suppression in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B]. Long-term response after stopping tenofovir disoproxil fumarate in non-cirrhotic HBeAg-negative patients - FINITE study. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 918-924 [PMID: 28736139 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.07.012]

43 **Mak LY**, Seto WK, Fung J, Yuen MF. Use of HBsAg quantification in the natural history and treatment of chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 35-46 [PMID: 31745711 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-019-09998-5]

44 **Liu Y**, Jia M, Wu S, Jiang W, Feng Y. Predictors of relapse after cessation of nucleos(t)ide analog treatment in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients: A meta-analysis. *Int J Infect Dis* 2019; **86**: 201-207 [PMID: 31394205 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2019.07.036]

45 **Mak LY**, Wong DK, Cheung KS, Seto WK, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Review article: hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg): an emerging marker for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **47**: 43-54 [PMID: 29035003 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14376]

46 **Testoni B**, Lebossé F, Scholtes C, Berby F, Miaglia C, Subic M, Loglio A, Facchetti F, Lampertico P, Levrero M, Zoulim F. Serum hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) correlates with covalently closed circular DNA transcriptional activity in chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Hepatol* 2019; **70**: 615-625 [PMID: 30529504 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.11.030]

47 **Matsumoto A**, Tanaka E, Minami M, Okanoue T, Yatsuhashi H, Nagaoka S, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Chayama K, Imamura M, Yotsuyanagi H, Nakaoka S, Maki N, Kawata S, Kumada H, Iino S, Kiyosawa K. Low serum level of hepatitis B core-related antigen indicates unlikely reactivation of hepatitis after cessation of lamivudine therapy. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37**: 661-666 [PMID: 17584261 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2007.00094.x]

48 **Hsu YC**, Nguyen MH, Mo LR, Wu MS, Yang TH, Chen CC, Tseng CH, Tai CM, Wu CY, Lin JT, Tanaka Y, Chang CY. Combining hepatitis B core-related and surface antigens at end of nucleos(t)ide analogue treatment to predict off-therapy relapse risk. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2019; **49**: 107-115 [PMID: 30450681 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15058]

49 **Wang J**, Shen T, Huang X, Kumar GR, Chen X, Zeng Z, Zhang R, Chen R, Li T, Zhang T, Yuan Q,

Li PC, Huang Q, Colonno R, Jia J, Hou J, McCrae MA, Gao Z, Ren H, Xia N, Zhuang H, Lu F. Serum hepatitis B virus RNA is encapsidated pregenome RNA that may be associated with persistence of viral infection and rebound. *J Hepatol* 2016; **65**: 700-710 [PMID: 27245431 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.05.029]

50 **Fan R**, Zhou B, Xu M, Tan D, Niu J, Wang H, Ren H, Chen X, Wang M, Ning Q, Shi G, Sheng J, Tang H, Bai X, Liu S, Lu F, Peng J, Sun J, Xie Q, Hou J; Chronic Hepatitis B Study Consortium. Association Between Negative Results From Tests for HBV DNA and RNA and Durability of Response After Discontinuation of Nucles(t)ide Analogue Therapy. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 719-727.e7 [PMID: 31362119 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.07.046]

51 **Carey I**, Gersch J, Wang B, Moigboi C, Kuhns M, Cloherty G, Dusheiko G, Agarwal K. Pregenomic HBV RNA and Hepatitis B Core-Related Antigen Predict Outcomes in Hepatitis B e Antigen-Negative Chronic Hepatitis B Patients Suppressed on Nucleos(T)ide Analogue Therapy. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 42-57 [PMID: 31701544 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31026]

52 **Fan R**, Peng J, Xie Q, Tan D, Xu M, Niu J, Wang H, Ren H, Chen X, Wang M, Sheng J, Tang H, Bai X, Wu Y, Zhou B, Sun J, Hou J; Chronic Hepatitis B Study Consortium. Combining Hepatitis B Virus RNA and Hepatitis B Core-Related Antigen: Guidance for Safely Stopping Nucleos(t)ide Analogues in Hepatitis B e Antigen-Positive Patients With Chronic Hepatitis B. *J Infect Dis* 2020; **222**: 611-618 [PMID: 32211776 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiaa136]

53 **Drafting Committee for Hepatitis Management Guidelines and the Japan Society of Hepatology**. JSH Guidelines for the Management of Hepatitis B Virus Infection. *Hepatol Res* 2014; **44** Suppl S1: 1-58 [PMID: 24397839 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12269]

54 **Papatheodoridi M**, Hadziyannis E, Berby F, Zachou K, Testoni B, Rigopoulou E, Gatselis NK, Lyberopoulou A, Vlachogiannakos I, Manolakopoulos S, Dalekos GN, Zoulim F, Papatheodoridis GV. Predictors of hepatitis B surface antigen loss, relapse and retreatment after discontinuation of effective oral antiviral therapy in noncirrhotic HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *J Viral Hepat* 2020; **27**: 118-126 [PMID: 31562748 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13211]

55 **Boni C**, Laccabue D, Lampertico P, Giuberti T, Viganò M, Schivazappa S, Alfieri A, Pesci M, Gaeta GB, Brancaccio G, Colombo M, Missale G, Ferrari C. Restored function of HBV-specific T cells after long-term effective therapy with nucleos(t)ide analogues. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 963-73.e9 [PMID: 22796241 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.07.014]

56 **Boni C**, Fisicaro P, Valdatta C, Amadei B, Di Vincenzo P, Giuberti T, Laccabue D, Zerbini A, Cavalli A, Missale G, Bertoletti A, Ferrari C. Characterization of hepatitis B virus (HBV)-specific T-cell dysfunction in chronic HBV infection. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 4215-4225 [PMID: 17287266 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02844-06]

57 **Höner Zu Siederdissen C**, Rinker F, Maasoumy B, Wiegand SB, Filmann N, Falk CS, Deterding K, Port K, Mix C, Manns MP, Herrmann E, Wedemeyer H, Kraft AR, Cornberg M. Viral and Host Responses After Stopping Long-term Nucleos(t)ide Analogue Therapy in HBeAg-Negative Chronic Hepatitis B. *J Infect Dis* 2016; **214**: 1492-1497 [PMID: 27609808 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiw412]

58 **Rinker F**, Zimmer CL, Höner Zu Siederdissen C, Manns MP, Kraft ARM, Wedemeyer H, Björkström NK, Cornberg M. Hepatitis B virus-specific T cell responses after stopping nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 584-593 [PMID: 29758333 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.05.004]

59 **Rivino L**, Le Bert N, Gill US, Kunasegaran K, Cheng Y, Tan DZ, Becht E, Hansi NK, Foster GR, Su TH, Tseng TC, Lim SG, Kao JH, Newell EW, Kennedy PT, Bertoletti A. Hepatitis B virus-specific T cells associate with viral control upon nucleos(t)ide-analogue therapy discontinuation. *J Clin Invest* 2018; **128**: 668-681 [PMID: 29309050 DOI: 10.1172/JCI92812]

60 **García-López M**, Lens S, Pallett LJ, Testoni B, Rodríguez-Tajes S, Mariño Z, Bartres C, García-Pras E, Leonel T, Perpiñán E, Lozano JJ, Rodríguez-Frías F, Koutsoudakis G, Zoulim F, Maini MK, Forns X, Pérez-Del-Pulgar S. Viral and immune factors associated with successful treatment withdrawal in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 1064-1074 [PMID: 33278456 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.11.043]

61 **Liaw YF**, Jeng WJ, Chang ML. HBsAg Kinetics in Retreatment Decision for Off-Therapy Hepatitis B Flare in HBeAg-Negative Patients. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 2280-2281 [PMID: 29746811 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.03.066]

62 **Jeng WJ**, Chang ML, Liaw YF. Off-therapy precipitous HBsAg decline predicts HBsAg loss after finite entecavir therapy in HBeAg-negative patients. *J Viral Hepat* 2019; **26**: 1019-1026 [PMID: 31009126 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13114]

63 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Manolakopoulos S, Su TH, Siakavellas S, Liu CJ, Kourikou A, Yang HC, Kao JH. Significance of definitions of relapse after discontinuation of oral antivirals in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2018; **68**: 415-424 [PMID: 28859219 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29497]

64 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Rigopoulou EI, Papatheodoridi M, Zachou K, Xourafas V, Gatselis N, Hadziyannis E, Vlachogiannakos J, Manolakopoulos S, Dalekos GN. DARING-B: discontinuation of effective entecavir or tenofovir disoproxil fumarate long-term therapy before HBsAg loss in non-cirrhotic HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Antivir Ther* 2018; **23**: 677-685 [PMID: 30044765 DOI: 10.3851/IMP3256]

65 **Tangkijvanich P**, Mahachai V, Komolmit P, Fongsarun J, Theamboonlers A, Poovorawan Y. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and hepatocellular carcinoma in Thailand. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 2238-2243 [PMID: 15818732 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v11.i15.2238]

66 **Chamroonkul N**, Piratvisuth T. Hepatitis B During Pregnancy in Endemic Areas: Screening,

Treatment, and Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission. *Paediatr Drugs* 2017; **19**: 173-181 [PMID: 28434087 DOI: 10.1007/s40272-017-0229-1]

67 **Fung SK**, Wong F, Hussain M, Lok AS. Sustained response after a 2-year course of lamivudine treatment of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *J Viral Hepat* 2004; **11**: 432-438 [PMID: 15357648 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2004.00556.x]

68 **Enomoto M**, Tamori A, Kohmoto MT, Hayashi T, Morikawa H, Jomura H, Sakaguchi H, Habu D, Kawada N, Shiomi S, Nishiguchi S. Optimal duration of additional therapy after biochemical and virological responses to lamivudine in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B: a randomized trial. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 954-959 [PMID: 18498358 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2008.00378.x]

69 **Yeh CT**, Hsu CW, Chen YC, Liaw YF. Withdrawal of lamivudine in HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B patients after achieving effective maintained virological suppression. *J Clin Virol* 2009; **45**: 114-118 [PMID: 19451024 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2009.04.006]

70 **Fung J**, Lai CL, Tanaka Y, Mizokami M, Yuen J, Wong DK, Yuen MF. The duration of lamivudine therapy for chronic hepatitis B: cessation vs. continuation of treatment after HBeAg seroconversion. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1940-1946; quiz 1947 [PMID: 19455108 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.200]

71 **Wang L**, Liu F, Liu YD, Li XY, Wang JB, Zhang ZH, Wang YZ. Stringent cessation criterion results in better durability of lamivudine treatment: a prospective clinical study in hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17**: 298-304 [PMID: 19758278 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01178.x]

72 **Kuo YH**, Chen CH, Wang JH, Hung CH, Tseng PL, Lu SN, Changchien CS, Lee CM. Extended lamivudine consolidation therapy in hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B patients improves sustained hepatitis B e antigen seroconversion. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 75-81 [PMID: 20030580 DOI: 10.3109/00365520903394550]

73 **Cai W**, Xie Q, An B, Wang H, Zhou X, Zhao G, Guo Q, Gu R, Bao S. On-treatment serum HBsAg level is predictive of sustained off-treatment virologic response to telbivudine in HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Clin Virol* 2010; **48**: 22-26 [PMID: 20233672 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2010.02.014]

74 **Liu F**, Wang L, Li XY, Liu YD, Wang JB, Zhang ZH, Wang YZ. Poor durability of lamivudine effectiveness despite stringent cessation criteria: a prospective clinical study in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 456-460 [PMID: 21332542 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06492.x]

75 **Jung YK**, Yeon JE, Lee KG, Jung ES, Kim JH, Seo YS, Yim HJ, Um SH, Ryu HS, Byun KS. Virologic response is not durable after adefovir discontinuation in lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B patients. *Korean J Hepatol* 2011; **17**: 261-267 [PMID: 22310790 DOI: 10.3350/kjhep.2011.17.4.261]

76 **Chan HL**, Wong GL, Chim AM, Chan HY, Chu SH, Wong VW. Prediction of off-treatment response to lamivudine by serum hepatitis B surface antigen quantification in hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients. *Antivir Ther* 2011; **16**: 1249-1257 [PMID: 22155906 DOI: 10.3851/IMP1921]

77 **Liang Y**, Jiang J, Su M, Liu Z, Guo W, Huang X, Xie R, Ge S, Hu J, Jiang Z, Zhu M, Wong VW, Chan HL. Predictors of relapse in chronic hepatitis B after discontinuation of anti-viral therapy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 344-352 [PMID: 21671967 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04738.x]

78 **Chaung KT**, Ha NB, Trinh HN, Garcia RT, Nguyen HA, Nguyen KK, Garcia G, Ahmed A, Keeffe EB, Nguyen MH. High frequency of recurrent viremia after hepatitis B e antigen seroconversion and consolidation therapy. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **46**: 865-870 [PMID: 22941429 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31825ceed9]

79 **Ha M**, Zhang G, Diao S, Lin M, Sun L, She H, Kuan C, Shen L, Huang C, Shen W, Huang Z. A prospective clinical study in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients with stringent cessation criteria for adefovir. *Arch Virol* 2012; **157**: 285-290 [PMID: 22080196 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-011-1163-0]

80 **Song MJ**, Song DS, Kim HY, Yoo SH, Bae SH, Choi JY, Yoon SK, Paik YH, Lee JS, Lee HW, Kim HJ. Durability of viral response after off-treatment in HBeAg positive chronic hepatitis B. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 6277-6283 [PMID: 23180949 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i43.6277]

81 **He D**, Guo S, Chen W, Chen X, Yan G, Wang J, Li M, Zhu P, Huang H, Wang Y. Long-term outcomes after nucleos(t)ide analogues discontinuation in chronic hepatitis B patients with HBeAg-negative. *BMC Infect Dis* 2013; **13**: 458 [PMID: 24090287 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-13-458]

82 **Kim YJ**, Kim K, Hwang SH, Kim SS, Lee D, Cheong JY, Cho SW. Durability after discontinuation of nucleos(t)ide therapy in chronic HBeAg negative hepatitis patients. *Clin Mol Hepatol* 2013; **19**: 300-304 [PMID: 24133668 DOI: 10.3350/cmh.2013.19.3.300]

83 **Jeng WJ**, Sheen IS, Chen YC, Hsu CW, Chien RN, Chu CM, Liaw YF. Off-therapy durability of response to entecavir therapy in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients. *Hepatology* 2013; **58**: 1888-1896 [PMID: 23744454 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26549]

84 **Kwon JH**, Jang JW, Choi JY, Park CH, Yoo SH, Bae SH, Yoon SK. Should lamivudine monotherapy be stopped or continued in patients infected with hepatitis B with favorable responses after more than 5 years of treatment? *J Med Virol* 2013; **85**: 34-42 [PMID: 23154874 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23421]

85 **Ridruejo E**, Marciano S, Galdame O, Reggiardo MV, Muñoz AE, Adrover R, Cocozzella D, Fernandez N, Estepo C, Mendizábal M, Romero GA, Levi D, Schroder T, Paz S, Fainboim H, Mandó OG, Gadano AC, Silva MO. Relapse rates in chronic hepatitis B naïve patients after discontinuation

of antiviral therapy with entecavir. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 590-596 [PMID: 24188363 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12200]

86 **Sohn HR**, Min BY, Song JC, Seong MH, Lee SS, Jang ES, Shin CM, Park YS, Hwang JH, Jeong SH, Kim N, Lee DH, Kim JW. Off-treatment virologic relapse and outcomes of re-treatment in chronic hepatitis B patients who achieved complete viral suppression with oral nucleos(t)ide analogs. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 439 [PMID: 25125320 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-439]

87 **Patwardhan VR**, Sengupta N, Bonder A, Lau D, Afdhal NH. Treatment cessation in noncirrhotic, e-antigen negative chronic hepatitis B is safe and effective following prolonged anti-viral suppression with nucleosides/nucleotides. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 804-810 [PMID: 25109610 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12908]

88 **He D**, Guo S, Zhu P, Tao S, Li M, Huang H, Wang J, Wang Y, Ding M. Long-term outcomes after nucleos(t)ide analogue discontinuation in HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B patients. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: O687-O693 [PMID: 25469947 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12605]

89 **Jiang JN**, Huang ZL, He LX, Huang YH, Su MH, Xie R, Liang YX, Fu WD, Huang XH, Guo WW, Zhong SH, Liu ZH, Li SH, Zhu TF, Gao ZL. Residual amount of HBV DNA in serum is related to relapse in chronic hepatitis B patients after cessation of nucleos(t)ide analogs. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2015; **49**: 323-328 [PMID: 25014234 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000170]

90 **Seto WK**, Hui AJ, Wong VW, Wong GL, Liu KS, Lai CL, Yuen MF, Chan HL. Treatment cessation of entecavir in Asian patients with hepatitis B e antigen negative chronic hepatitis B: a multicentre prospective study. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 667-672 [PMID: 24833635 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307237]

91 **Peng J**, Cao J, Yu T, Cai S, Li Z, Zhang X, Sun J. Predictors of sustained virologic response after discontinuation of nucleos(t)ide analog treatment for chronic hepatitis B. *Saudi J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 245-253 [PMID: 26228369 DOI: 10.4103/1319-3767.161645]

92 **Jeng WJ**, Chen YC, Sheen IS, Lin CL, Hu TH, Chien RN, Liaw YF. Clinical Relapse After Cessation of Tenofovir Therapy in Hepatitis B e Antigen-Negative Patients. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **14**: 1813-1820.e1 [PMID: 27404969 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2016.07.002]

93 **Qiu YW**, Huang LH, Yang WL, Wang Z, Zhang B, Li YG, Su TT, Zhou HY, Xu W, Wang XD, Dai YP, Gan JH. Hepatitis B surface antigen quantification at hepatitis B e antigen seroconversion predicts virological relapse after the cessation of entecavir treatment in hepatitis B e antigen-positive patients. *Int J Infect Dis* 2016; **43**: 43-48 [PMID: 26523639 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2015.10.019]

94 **Yao CC**, Hung CH, Hu TH, Lu SN, Wang JH, Lee CM, Chen CH. Incidence and predictors of HBV relapse after cessation of nucleoside analogues in HBeAg-negative patients with HBsAg ≤ 200 IU/mL. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 1839 [PMID: 28500322 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-02010-w]

95 **Cao J**, Chi H, Yu T, Li Z, Hansen BE, Zhang X, Zhong C, Sun J, Hou J, Janssen HLA, Peng J. Off-Treatment Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) DNA Levels and the Prediction of Relapse After Discontinuation of Nucleos(t)ide Analogue Therapy in Patients With Chronic Hepatitis B: A Prospective Stop Study. *J Infect Dis* 2017; **215**: 581-589 [PMID: 28329347 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jix025]

96 **Chen CH**, Hsu YC, Lu SN, Hung CH, Wang JH, Lee CM, Hu TH. The incidence and predictors of HBV relapse after cessation of tenofovir therapy in chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Viral Hepat* 2018; **25**: 590-597 [PMID: 29274189 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12851]

97 **Hung CH**, Wang JH, Lu SN, Hu TH, Lee CM, Chen CH. Hepatitis B surface antigen loss and clinical outcomes between HBeAg-negative cirrhosis patients who discontinued or continued nucleoside analogue therapy. *J Viral Hepat* 2017; **24**: 599-607 [PMID: 28130815 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12683]

98 **Shinkai N**, Tanaka Y, Orito E, Ito K, Ohno T, Hirashima N, Hasegawa I, Sugauchi F, Ueda R, Mizokami M. Measurement of hepatitis B virus core-related antigen as predicting factor for relapse after cessation of lamivudine therapy for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Hepatol Res* 2006; **36**: 272-276 [PMID: 16971173 DOI: 10.1016/j.hepres.2006.08.005]

99 **Jung KS**, Park JY, Chon YE, Kim HS, Kang W, Kim BK, Kim SU, Kim do Y, Han KH, Ahn SH. Clinical outcomes and predictors for relapse after cessation of oral antiviral treatment in chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Gastroenterol* 2016; **51**: 830-839 [PMID: 26687058 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-015-1153-1]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1058-1068

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1058

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Liver kidney crosstalk: Hepatorenal syndrome

Mahmoud Nassar, Nso Nso, Luis Medina, Victoria Ghernautan, Anastasia Novikov, Alli El-Ijla, Karim M Soliman, Yungmin Kim, Mostafa Alfishawy, Vincent Rizzo, Ahmed Daoud

ORCID number: Mahmoud Nassar 0000-0002-5401-9562; Nso Nso 0000-0002-0340-169X; Luis Medina 0000-0001-9518-1470; Victoria Ghernautan 0000-0002-2410-9479; Anastasia Novikov 0000-0001-5260-7101; Alli El-Ijla 0000-0002-4828-0027; Karim M Soliman 0000-0002-0960-2644; Yungmin Kim 0000-0002-3562-3510; Mostafa Alfishawy 0000-0002-9153-3237; Vincent Rizzo 0000-0002-5530-447X; Ahmed Daoud 0000-0001-6311-3887.

Author contributions: Nassar M, Nso N, Medina L, Ghernautan V, Novikov A, El-Ijla A, Soliman KM, Kim Y, and Alfishawy M participated in writing the manuscript; Rizzo V and Daoud A reviewed the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors confirm the absence of personal and financial interests impacting the outcomes of this research study.

Mahmoud Nassar, Nso Nso, Luis Medina, Victoria Ghernautan, Anastasia Novikov, Alli El-Ijla, Yungmin Kim, Vincent Rizzo, Department of Medicine, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai / NYC Health + Hospitals / Queens, New York, NY 11432, United States

Karim M Soliman, Department of Medicine, Medical University of South Carolina, Charleston, SC 29425, United States

Mostafa Alfishawy, Department of Infectious Diseases, Infectious Diseases Consultants and Academic Researchers of Egypt IDCARE, Cairo 11562, Egypt

Ahmed Daoud, Department of Medicine, Kasr Alainy Medical School, Cairo University, Cairo 11211, Egypt

Corresponding author: Ahmed Daoud, MD, PhD, Doctor, Lecturer, Staff Physician, Department of Medicine, Kasr Alainy Medical School, Cairo University, Kasr Alainy Street, Cairo 11211, Egypt. ahmed.daoud84@yahoo.com

Abstract

The dying liver causes the suffocation of the kidneys, which is a simplified way of describing the pathophysiology of hepatorenal syndrome (HRS). HRS is characterized by reversible functional renal impairment due to reduced blood supply and glomerular filtration rate, secondary to increased vasodilators. Over the years, HRS has gained much attention and focus among hepatologists and nephrologists. HRS is a diagnosis of exclusion, and in some cases, it carries a poor prognosis. Different classifications have emerged to better understand, diagnose, and promptly treat this condition. This targeted review aims to provide substantial insight into the epidemiology, pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management of HRS, shed light on the various milestones of this condition, and add to our current understanding.

Key Words: Hepatorenal syndrome; Liver; Kidney; Crosstalk; Acute kidney injury

Core Tip: The dying liver causes the suffocation of the kidneys, a simplified way of describing the pathophysiology of hepatorenal syndrome (HRS). This targeted review aims to provide substantial insight into the epidemiology, pathophysiology, diagnosis,

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 28, 2021
Peer-review started: February 28, 2021
First decision: May 2, 2021
Revised: May 12, 2021
Accepted: July 30, 2021
Article in press: July 30, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Lenz K
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Liu JH

and management of HRS, shed the light on the various milestones of this condition, and add to our current understanding.

Citation: Nassar M, Nso N, Medina L, Ghernautan V, Novikov A, El-Ijla A, Soliman KM, Kim Y, Alfishawy M, Rizzo V, Daoud A. Liver kidney crosstalk: Hepatorenal syndrome. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1058-1068
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1058.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1058

INTRODUCTION

Incidence and prevalence

Hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) has been a challenge for clinicians and patients for many years. It is imperative to have a proper understanding of risk factors, patient populations involved, and possible preventive measures to be taken to minimize the progression of this complicated clinical state.

Older and more recent studies have revealed that acute kidney injury (AKI) is diagnosed in almost 50% of hospitalized cirrhotic patients, and HRS-AKI represents 11% to 20% of those cases[1]. HRS occurs in approximately 10% to 40% of patients with ascites and advanced liver cirrhosis[2,3], with the one-year probability of developing HRS estimated to be 18% and the five-year probability 39%[4]. Fortunately, the prevalence of the syndrome is not elevated when no precipitating factors are detected. The most common precipitating events contributing to the development of HRS are infections, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, and large-volume paracentesis (LVP)[4,5].

AKI-HRS is associated with a 30% increase in the risk of mortality during hospital stays. A comprehensive meta-analysis revealed mortality rates of 58% at 1 mo and 63% at one year[3]. Broader knowledge is needed to identify the potential predictors of HRS and stratify the individual risk score. To this end, three independent predictors have been implicated in multivariate analysis: No evidence of enlarged liver, elevated plasma renin activity, and hyponatremia[5].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY AND PROGRESSION OF HRS

HRS is a reversible functional renal impairment seen in hepatic cirrhosis with portal vein hypertension and is caused by multiple pathophysiological changes[6]. Renal dysfunction commonly occurs in cirrhotic patients and is associated with high morbidity and mortality[5].

Historically, there were two types of HRS. Type 1 was defined as a fast deterioration of renal function over two weeks with a serum creatinine level > 2.5 mg/dL, while type 2 was described as a subtle impairment over months. According to the more recent definition proposed by the Acute Kidney Injury Network in 2007 and supported by the International Club of Ascites (ICA) and Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative in 2011, HRS was divided into subgroups based on the underlying pathologic process[1]: HRS-AKI and non-HRS AKI. The distinction between these is that HRS-AKI is a functional renal impairment that is reversible with liver transplantation, whereas non-HRS AKI is a structural pathology of the renal parenchyma caused by various injuries. ICA specific criteria for HRS-AKI were defined as an increase in serum creatinine of ≥ 0.3 mg/dL or ≥ 1.5 times the baseline creatinine or a 50% increase within 48 h from baseline, no response to diuretic discontinuation, the presence of cirrhosis with ascites, no evidence of shock, no history of administering nephrotoxic medications, and no signs of organic renal disease[3,5].

Several mechanisms are involved in the pathophysiology of HRS, such as circulatory dysfunction and splanchnic arterial vasodilation, increased vasoconstrictor effects on renal vasculature, cardiac impairment, systemic inflammation, and adrenal insufficiency[1]. Portal hypertension in cirrhosis causes a structural strain on the endothelium, leading to the release of endogenous vasodilators, such as nitric oxide, prostacyclin, carbon monoxide, and endocannabinoids[5,7]. Gut bacterial translocation in the mesenteric lymph nodes and then into the bloodstream, along with nitric oxide

and other vasodilators, also contributes to intense splanchnic vasodilation and pooling of large plasma volume into the splanchnic vascular bed[2,4]. This creates low effective circulatory volume, which stimulates the baroreceptors in the carotid body and aortic arch. As a result, counterregulatory systemic vasoconstrictor pathways, such as the sympathetic nervous system, renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS), and the non-osmotic release vasopressin, are triggered[6,8]. Consequently, hyperdynamic circulation occurs with increases in cardiac output, heart rate, sodium and water retention, and renal vasoconstriction, leading to the development of ascites and subsequent renal dysfunction. RAAS and vasopressin act on sodium and exacerbate free water retention, further worsening the developing ascites and aggravating renal impairment[1].

In the incipient stages, the kidneys maintain an adequate glomerular filtration rate (GFR) due to renal prostaglandins, which keep the afferent arterioles dilatated. However, cirrhosis progression intensifies both splanchnic and systemic vasodilation and contributes to decreased mean arterial pressure, prolonged renal vasoconstriction with reduced renal blood flow, and GFR[5]. Overall, a state of renal hypoperfusion occurs. Therefore, HRS is a prerenal type of renal failure, which is not responsive to fluids.

Cardiac dysfunction in HRS is caused by the diseased liver itself and less commonly by the same etiologic factor of cirrhosis (*e.g.*, alcohol). Myocardial impairment is complex and has several contributory mechanisms: Increased neurohumoral activity leading to myocardial hypertrophy and fibrosis with affected relaxation and inhibitory effects of the cytokines on the ventricular function[6]. Generally, inotropic and chronotropic functions become altered in hepatocardiorenal syndrome[9].

Non-infectious systemic inflammatory response syndrome was identified in almost half of the patients with AKI-HRS[5]. On the other hand, HRS is often preceded by bacterial infections. Inflammation in cirrhosis is induced by macrophage activation, oxidative stress, and inflammatory molecules[9]. Pathogen-associated molecular patterns emerge from the translocation of gut bacteria and damage-associated molecular patterns from the damaged hepatocytes. In turn, these inflammatory molecules activate cytokine release, leading to increased vasodilator production, with the result being reduced systemic arterial resistance and mean arterial pressure[6].

Relative adrenal insufficiency (RAI) is observed in less than half of the patients with advanced cirrhosis and may develop into HRS. The mechanisms are not well established; however, depletion of the substrates for cortisol production and dysfunction of the hypothalamus-pituitary axis by the pro-inflammatory cytokines have been implied[6]. Other mechanisms have been theorized to contribute to the HRS, mainly the hepatorenal reflex. The hepatorenal reflex is thought to be the result of abnormal hepatic blood flow directly affecting kidney hemodynamics. Evidence to support this theory is reinforced by the transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt placement, which leads to the HRS's amelioration by reducing portal hypertension[8].

Reduction in GFR and decreases in renal blood flow progress along with the degree of cirrhosis. The following objective evidence indicates that renal impairment in cirrhotic patients is functional: No evidence of morphological changes and largely preserved tubular function on kidney biopsy, resolution of AKI-HRS following liver transplant, and successful cadaveric transplantation of kidneys from patients with HRS[1] (Figure 1).

HRS DIAGNOSIS

The diagnostic criteria for the HRS were first developed in 1994, and since then, it has undergone multiple modifications[10]. In the previous years, AKI in cirrhotic patients was defined as a serum creatinine level of ≥ 1.5 mg/dL[11]. The latest guidelines of the ICA reveal that the definition of AKI in this population has changed based on modifications of the Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) criteria[12]. The removal of this static value has led to the earlier identification of this condition in patients with chronic liver disease (CLD)[12].

AKI is now defined as an increase of serum creatinine of ≥ 0.3 mg/dL within 48 h and/or increase of ≥ 50% from the patient's baseline within 7 d (or within the past 3 mo before admission, if a value within the previous week is not available). Furthermore, the ICA classifies AKI in three stages based on serum creatinine levels. Stage 1 is when there is an increase of ≥ 0.3 mg/dL or an increase of ≥ 1.5-fold to 2-fold from the baseline; stage 2 is when there is an increase of > 2-fold to 3-fold from the baseline; stage 3 is when there is an increase of > 3-fold from the baseline or serum

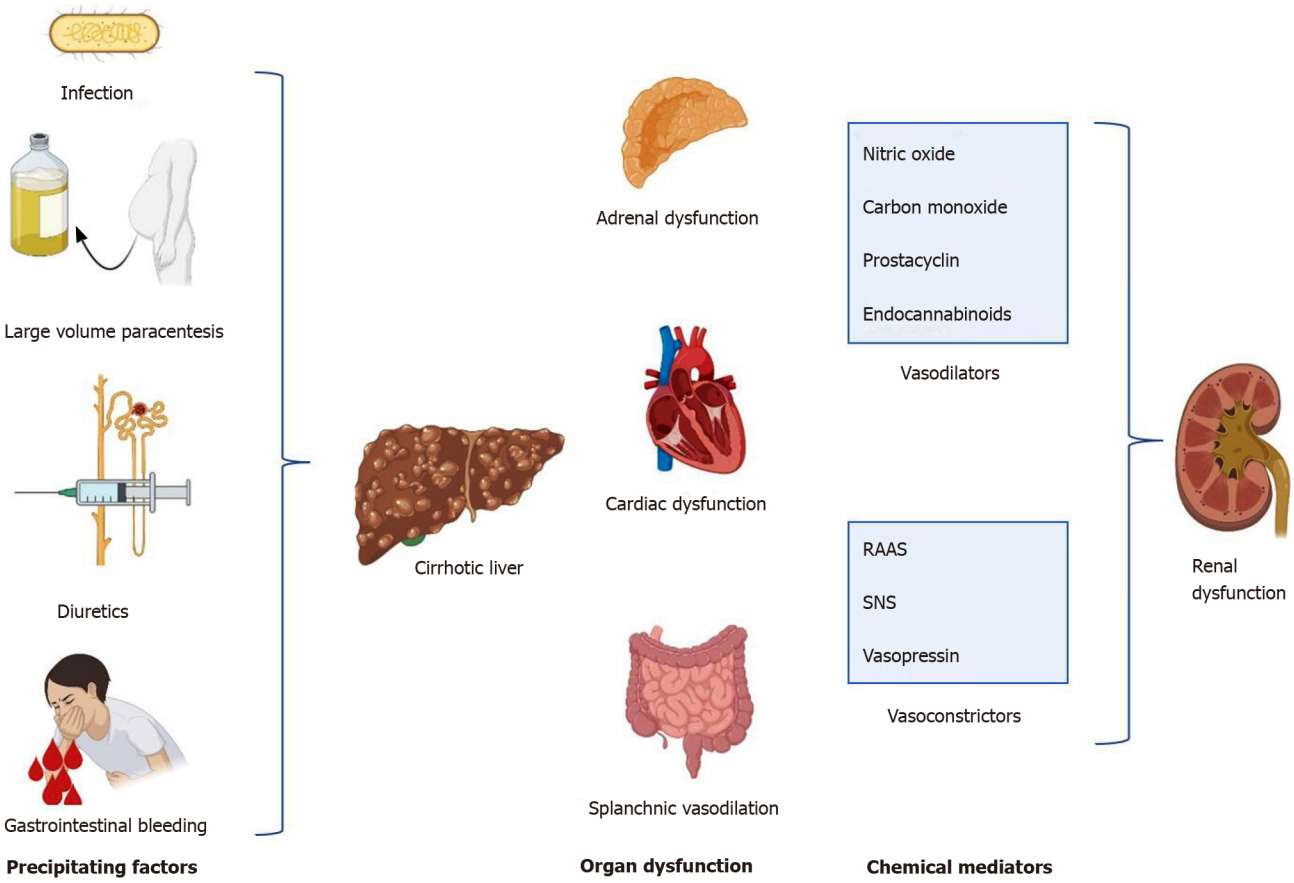


Figure 1 Pathophysiology of hepatorenal syndrome. Figure created with BioRender.com. RAAS: Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system; SNS: Sympathetic nervous system.

creatinine is ≥ 4.0 mg/dL with an acute increase of ≥ 0.3 mg/dL or the initiation of renal replacement therapy (RRT)[11].

The use of urine output as a criterion for AKI in CLD was subsequently removed [11]. Despite this, in a retrospective study, Amathieu *et al*[13] found that the addition of urine output as a criterion, along with serum creatinine for identification of AKI in patients with CLD, showed increased sensitivity for the identification of this pathology and that the presence of transient oliguria was associated with an increase in mortality rates[13]. Therefore, in this population, an acute decrease in urine output should be considered, particularly in patients with transient oliguria.

HRS is diagnosed when a patient with cirrhosis and ascites has stage ≥ 2 AKI per the ICA guidelines, has no response to diuretic withdrawal or a trial of treatment with albumin for volume expansion (1 g/kg per day with a maximum of 100 g/d) for a total of 2 d, and has no evidence of other etiologies causing kidney injury (*i.e.* absence of shock, no recent use of nephrotoxic drugs, no macroscopic signs of structural kidney injury, such as the presence of proteinuria, microhematuria, or abnormal findings on renal ultrasonography)[10,12,14,15].

HRS was previously classified as HRS type 1 and HRS type 2, based on the acuity of kidney function deterioration. HRS type 1 was defined as a doubling of serum creatinine above 2.5 mg/dL within 2 wk, and type 2 was defined as a slower increase in serum creatinine to a value > 1.5 mg/dL. These definitions have been renamed from HRS type 1 to HRS-AKI and HRS type 2 to HRS-chronic kidney disease[12].

New biomarkers have been identified for HRS diagnosis, including the urinary neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL) and the serum cystatin C. The use of these biomarkers has been shown to help diagnose HRS early and prognostic assessment in patients with decompensated cirrhosis[16]. A systematic review by Puthumana *et al*[17] revealed that both interleukin (IL) 18 and NGAL might be useful in the differentiation between AKI due to acute tubular necrosis (ATN) and HRS. These and other markers have not been included in the diagnostic criteria at the time of this review but might be considered in the future.

HRS PREVENTION

A proper understanding of HRS's underlying pathophysiology is crucial in preventative strategies used in today's clinical practice. Discussed below are some strategies found beneficial for the prevention of HRS. The focus of all strategies is on reversing the poor perfusion to the kidney due to a combination of renal vessels' constriction and decreased renal blood flow in response to systemic vasodilation.

Role of diuretics

Diuretic therapy may cause intravascular volume contraction and result in compensatory vasoconstriction, further worsening an already impaired renal function. In severely decompensated patients, diuretic therapy may induce HRS. The current recommendation for patients with ascites is to receive spironolactone treatment not exceeding 400 mg daily and divided doses of furosemide not exceeding 160 mg daily. In hospitalized patients, the addition of albumin to diuretic regimens may prevent diuretic-induced changes in creatinine and BUN[18].

Large-volume paracentesis can lead to the deterioration of kidney function. Plasma renin activity, baseline creatinine measurements, and daily monitoring should be performed, which helps identify patients deemed to be at high risk of developing post-paracentesis HRS. Such patients should receive supplementation with albumin, with the recommended dosing 6–8 gm/L of ascitic fluid removed[19].

Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP)

It is a known fact that SBP is a common precipitant of HRS. Prompt recognition and treatment of SBP and managing the patient in a monitored setting are crucial in preventing HRS development. For patients with impaired renal function and bilirubin levels of > 4 mg/dL, IV albumin infusion at 1.5 mg/kg should be initiated[20].

Rifaximin

In a study by Ibrahim *et al*[21], published in the European Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, prolonged therapy with Rifaximin showed benefits due to decreased cirrhosis-related complications, SBP, and recurrent hepatic encephalopathy, along with hemodynamic and renal improvement in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Furthermore, patients on Rifaximin therapy for 12 weeks showed more stable renal function than placebo[21].

Finally, another study by Dong *et al*[22] reported a lower incidence of acute renal injury in patients treated with Rifaximin for at least 90 d.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSES

HRS-AKI is considered a diagnosis of exclusion, and the ICA defines it as AKI (an increase in serum creatinine of 0.3 mg/dL or more within 48 h) in the setting of cirrhosis and ascites, with failure to improve after 48 h of diuretic withdrawal and volume expansion with albumin, in the absence of shock, nephrotoxic drugs, and signs of structural kidney injury (proteinuria > 500 mg/d, microhematuria > 50 RBC/HPF, or abnormal renal imaging)[23-25].

AKI is reported in about 20–30% of hospitalized cirrhotic patients[24,26], with six-fold higher mortality[26], and although HRS is unique to cirrhosis, AKI in cirrhotic patients can be due to other causes, including prerenal azotemia and ATN[23,24]. Other causes such as glomerulonephritis and post-renal AKI should also be considered [24]. As these causes differ markedly in their treatment options and prognosis, early differentiation is key to improving outcomes[23,24,27].

In studies involving cirrhotic patients, hypovolemic AKI was reported as the most common cause of AKI stage IA (stage I with sCr < 1.5 mg/dL), which has better survival (90 d survival rate of 82%) than AKI stage IB (stage I with sCr ≥ 1.5 mg/dL) (90 d survival rate of 55%), where HRS and ATN were more frequent[23]. It was also reported that acute, chronic liver failure was more likely with AKI stage IB[24].

Prerenal AKI: Renal hypoperfusion without tubular or glomerular lesion usually occurs in GI bleeding, dehydration, and/or diuretic use[28]. It is differentiated from the other causes of AKI by improvement after volume replacement with albumin and/or fluids and diuretics withdrawal[23,29].

ATN: Tubular cell necrosis is usually the result of an ischemic (in the setting of shock) or toxic (*e.g.*, nephrotoxic drugs) insult[28]. As with HRS, there is no improvement with withdrawing diuretics and giving albumin[29]. Intrinsic AKI is

excluded using the ICA-HRS criteria[29].

The use of UNa and FeNa to differentiate causes of AKI is deemed less useful in cirrhosis: Prerenal AKI and HRS have urinary Na excretion < 20 mEq/L and FeNa < 1%, whereas ATN classically has UNa > 40 mEq/L and FeNa > 1%[28].

Limitations to this rule are that patients with cirrhosis can be on diuretics, which will falsely increase UNa[28]. Additionally, as cirrhosis is a sodium acid state, some ATN cases were reported to have FeNa < 1%[24,28].

The presence of urinary casts may not be helpful either in cirrhosis, as granular and epithelial cell casts (classically seen in ATN) can be present as nonspecific findings in cirrhosis due to hyperbilirubinemia[28].

The use of urinary biomarkers to differentiate the various AKI etiologies in cirrhotic patients is promising: NGAL (a glycoprotein that is overexpressed by injured kidney tubular epithelia) is the most studied, but other urinary markers such as IL-8, albumin, and liver fatty acid-binding protein have also been investigated and show similar performance[24]. Higher levels were found in intrinsic AKI/ATN, compared to HRS. Meanwhile, prerenal had the lowest levels[23,24]. One study done on 94 patients with decompensated cirrhosis showed a median urine neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (uNGAL) of 1217.50 in ATN, 465.00 in HRS, and 95.50 in prerenal AKI (P < 0.001)[23]. It also determined the optimal cutoffs for the various diagnoses: ATN is likely with uNGAL more than 650 ng/mL (100% sensitivity, 83.78% specificity), HRS is likely with uNGAL between 299-650 ng/mL (87.9% sensitivity, 96.3% specificity), while prerenal is likely with uNGAL less than 299 ng/mL[23].

uNGAL and IL-8 were also found to predict prognosis, where the higher the biomarker levels, the higher is the short-term mortality[23,24].

It is to be noted that leucocytes can also produce uNGAL. Hence, levels of uNGAL can be elevated in the setting of urinary tract infection and should be cautiously interpreted in these settings[24].

HRS treatment

The definitive treatment for HRS is liver transplantation[30]. The goal of therapy is to maintain adequate kidney function before the patient undergoes a liver transplant, which can be achieved by optimizing the mean arterial blood pressure and cardiac output[31,32]. Patients should be screened thoroughly for signs of infection, and if necessary, empiric antibiotic therapy should be started[33]. Therapy for the treatment of viral hepatitis, if present, should be continued. Diuretic therapy should be stopped, as these have been identified to be a provoking factor for HRS development.

Patients should receive volume expansion with albumin, as it has shown to significantly reduce mortality in this population, which has not been seen with other volume expanders. The protective effects of albumin are thought to be also driven by its anti-inflammatory and antioxidative effects[5]. Several vasodilators have been studied in the past as potential treatment options for HRS, including dopamine, prostaglandins, and endothelin receptor blockers, which have not been effective in improving kidney function[34,35]. The use of vasoconstrictors, such as terlipressin, norepinephrine, or a combination of midodrine, octreotide, and albumin showed improved renal function and are considered the first line of therapy for HRS[36,37]. The rationale behind its use is the reversal of splanchnic vasodilatation thought to cause renal impairment in this population. The choice of therapy depends on different factors, including which drugs are available at the time of treatment, if the patient is admitted to the intensive care unit or medical floors, and if they qualify for a liver transplant[32].

In patients who have no response to pharmacological alternatives, non-pharmacological approaches should be considered. This includes transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt, RRT, and molecular adsorbent recirculating system (MARS)[33].

Vasoconstrictive therapy

Terlipressin and albumin: Terlipressin (a vasopressin analog) and albumin are the most effective medical therapy for HRS[30]. It has been associated with reducing mortality and increased renal function in patients with type 1 HRS (HRS-AKI as per new definition)[38]. It is the most commonly used combination of vasoconstrictive agents (however, not available worldwide) with its efficacy ranging between 25% and 75%[36]. Several studies have compared the efficacy of albumin alone *vs* albumin combined with terlipressin, demonstrating that their combination is significatively more efficacious[39].

Terlipressin should be administered either by intravenous bolus (0.5–1 mg every 4–6 h) or continuous infusion with an initial dose of 2 mg/d. If there is no appropriate response to therapy (defined as a decrease of at least 25% of creatinine levels), the

intravenous bolus dose may be increased up to 2 mg every 4 h or the continuous infusion increased to a maximum of 12 mg/d. Albumin should be administered by intravenous bolus for the first 2 d, with doses of 1 g/kg (with a maximum dose of 100 g/d) and later continued with 25-50 g/d until the terlipressin therapy is stopped[32,36].

Terlipressin has been associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular events and ischemia induction[32,36,38,40]. However, it has a relatively good safety profile, as adverse events are reported in < 1% of patients[41]. Factors that help determine response to therapy are increased mean arterial pressure of ≥ 5 mmHg and decreased serum bilirubin levels to < 10 mg/dL on day 3 of therapy[42]. In a recent phase 3 trial conducted by Wong *et al*[43], the combination of terlipressin and albumin was reported to be significantly more effective when compared to placebo. However, its use was associated with significant adverse events, including respiratory failure.

Norepinephrine and albumin: Norepinephrine is an acceptable alternative to terlipressin[30]. It is used as a continuous intravenous infusion rate of 0.5–3 mg/h[30]. Its use is limited as the patient needs a central venous catheter for its administration; therefore, it is usually administered in the intensive care setting[33]. Terlipressin is superior to norepinephrine at decreasing RRT's need and increasing survival in this population[44].

Midodrine, octreotide, and albumin: The combination of midodrine, octreotide, and albumin improves hemodynamics, leading to increased GFR and decreased mortality [45,46]. Midodrine is dosed at 7.5 mg every 8 h and can be increased to a maximum dose of 15 mg every 8 h. Octreotide can be given as a continuous infusion at a rate of 50 μg/h or subcutaneously at doses of 100 μg to 200 μg every 8 h. Albumin is added to an intravenous bolus, with doses of 1 g/kg[32]. In a study by Wang *et al*[47], terlipressin was reported to be superior to octreotide for improved kidney function but did not show superiority to norepinephrine. This combination is usually used in countries where terlipressin is not yet available[36]. The use of this combination is acceptable in non-intensive care settings, such as inpatient medical floors[30].

Non-vasoconstrictive therapy

Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts: Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts (TIPS) have been shown to improve renal function in patients with HRS [48]. However, its use is limited, mainly due to its complications, including a higher incidence of hepatic encephalopathy[49]. A study by Song *et al*[50], in which 128 patients with HRS were treated with TIPS, revealed a pooled rate of hepatic encephalopathy of 49%, with a pooled rate of renal function improvement of 93% and 83% in HRS type 1 and 2, respectively (HRS-AKI and HRS-CKD per the new definitions).

Renal replacement therapy: The indications for RRT in patients with HRS are the same as those without it[10]. RRT may be effective until liver transplantation is available[36,51]. In a retrospective study by Sourianarayanane *et al*[52], where 380 patients were reviewed, there was no significant improvement in the survival rates of patients undergoing RRT who did not receive liver transplantation. Other studies suggest that mechanical ventilation might play a role as an independent risk factor for worse outcomes at the time of initiation of RRT. Furthermore, RRT initiation in these patients might be futile, compared to those who are not mechanically ventilated[53].

Molecular adsorbent recirculating system (MARS): Albumin dialysis with MARS has been shown to decrease creatinine levels in patients with HRS. However, there have been no significant changes in survival rates among patients receiving this treatment [36,51,54].

Emerging therapies: Serelaxin, a recombinant human relaxin 2, is a molecule that acts on renal vasculature, increasing perfusion. It has been suggested that Serelaxin could be used for the treatment of HRS, given that in animal models, it has been shown to exert renal vasodilatation[5].

Pentoxifylline is a phosphodiesterase inhibitor that has also been suggested as a potential therapeutic option. A small study showed that it is safe to use along with albumin, midodrine, and octreotide[55]. However, further studies are needed to evaluate the effectiveness of these therapies.

MORTALITY/COMORBIDITY OF HRS

HRS is a significant illness linked to poor prognosis in patients with cirrhosis[56]. Patients with Type I HRS have a mortality rate of 80% 2 wk after the confirmation of the disease, increasing to a 100% within months. Patients with type II HRS have a median survival of 3–6 mo after presentation[57]. In 24-47% of patients with chronic ascites and liver disease, RAI is observed, influencing HRS progression[58].

CONCLUSION

Prognosis after intervention for HRS

The most crucial objectives in HRS treatment are to reverse AKI and enable additional medications to be provided to the patients before orthotopic liver transplant (OLT). A recently published study reported that patients with HRS who received treatment before OLT had a significantly higher three-year survival rate, lower incidence of renal dysfunction and serious and acute infections, and lower number of days in the ICU and the hospital, as compared to patients who received transplants without HRS and had normal renal function[59]. HRS is closely linked to hyponatremia, and when serum sodium levels fall below 130 mmol/L, the incidence of HRS due to hyponatremia increases[60]. Raising serum sodium levels leads to hemodynamic recovery. OLT is the best treatment strategy for HRS[61]. Most clinicians use the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease-Sodium (MELDNa) score to determine the prognosis of CLD, especially in cirrhosis. In patients with cirrhosis, the MELDNa score was superior to the MELD score for predicting postoperative 90 d mortality[62].

REFERENCES

1 **Amin AA**, Alabsawy EI, Jalan R, Davenport A. Epidemiology, Pathophysiology, and Management of Hepatorenal Syndrome. *Semin Nephrol* 2019; **39**: 17-30 [PMID: 30606404 DOI: 10.1016/j.semnephrol.2018.10.002]

2 **Bertino G**, Privitera G, Purrello F, Demma S, Crisafulli E, Spadaro L, Koukias N, Tsochatzis EA. Emerging hepatic syndromes: pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment. *Intern Emerg Med* 2016; **11**: 905-916 [PMID: 27273018 DOI: 10.1007/s11739-016-1478-7]

3 **Busk TM**, Bendtsen F, Møller S. Hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis: diagnostic, pathophysiological, and therapeutic aspects. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **10**: 1153-1161 [PMID: 27248461 DOI: 10.1080/17474124.2016.1196132]

4 **Low G**, Alexander GJ, Lomas DJ. Hepatorenal syndrome: aetiology, diagnosis, and treatment. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2015; **2015**: 207012 [PMID: 25649410 DOI: 10.1155/2015/207012]

5 **Simonetto DA**, Gines P, Kamath PS. Hepatorenal syndrome: pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management. *BMJ* 2020; **370**: m2687 [PMID: 32928750 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.m2687]

6 **Wadei HM**, Mai ML, Ahsan N, Gonwa TA. Hepatorenal syndrome: pathophysiology and management. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2006; **1**: 1066-1079 [PMID: 17699328 DOI: 10.2215/CJN.01340406]

7 **Ospina TJR**, Restrepo GJC. Pathophysiology, Diagnosis and Management of Hepatorenal Syndrome. *Colomb J Gastroenterol* 2016; **31**: 146-153

8 **Erly B**, Carey WD, Kapoor B, McKinney JM, Tam M, Wang W. Hepatorenal Syndrome: A Review of Pathophysiology and Current Treatment Options. *Semin Intervent Radiol* 2015; **32**: 445-454 [PMID: 26622108 DOI: 10.1055/s-0035-1564794]

9 **Kazory A**, Ronco C. Hepatorenal Syndrome or Hepatocardiorenal Syndrome: Revisiting Basic Concepts in View of Emerging Data. *Cardiorenal Med* 2019; **9**: 1-7 [PMID: 30223273 DOI: 10.1159/000492791]

10 **Chmielewski J**, Lewandowski RJ, Maddur H. Hepatorenal Syndrome: Physiology, Diagnosis and Management. *Semin Intervent Radiol* 2018; **35**: 194-197 [PMID: 30087522 DOI: 10.1055/s-0038-1660797]

11 **Angeli P**, Garcia-Tsao G, Nadim MK, Parikh CR. News in pathophysiology, definition and classification of hepatorenal syndrome: A step beyond the International Club of Ascites (ICA) consensus document. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 811-822 [PMID: 31302175 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.07.002]

12 **Ojeda-Yuren AS**, Cerda-Reyes E, Herrero-Maceda MR, Castro-Narro G, Piano S. An Integrated Review of the Hepatorenal Syndrome. *Ann Hepatol* 2021; **22**: 100236 [PMID: 32846202 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.07.008]

13 **Amathieu R**, Al-Khafaji A, Sileanu FE, Foldes E, DeSensi R, Hilmi I, Kellum JA. Significance of oliguria in critically ill patients with chronic liver disease. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 1592-1600 [PMID: 28586126 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29303]

14 **Velez JCQ**, Therapondos G, Juncos LA. Reappraising the spectrum of AKI and hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis. *Nat Rev Nephrol* 2020; **16**: 137-155 [PMID: 31723234 DOI: 10.1038/s41581-019-0218-4]

15 **de Mattos ÁZ**, de Mattos AA, Méndez-Sánchez N. Hepatorenal syndrome: Current concepts related to diagnosis and management. *Ann Hepatol* 2016; **15**: 474-481 [PMID: 27236146]

16 **Gomaa SH**, Shamseya MM, Madkour MA. Clinical utility of urinary neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin and serum cystatin C in a cohort of liver cirrhosis patients with renal dysfunction: a challenge in the diagnosis of hepatorenal syndrome. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **31**: 692-702 [PMID: 30601335 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001347]

17 **Puthumana J**, Ariza X, Belcher JM, Graupera I, Ginès P, Parikh CR. Urine Interleukin 18 and Lipocalin 2 Are Biomarkers of Acute Tubular Necrosis in Patients With Cirrhosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **15**: 1003-1013.e3 [PMID: 28013112 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2016.11.035]

18 **Wong F**, Blendis L. New challenge of hepatorenal syndrome: prevention and treatment. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 1242-1251 [PMID: 11732014 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.29200]

19 **Saló J**, Ginès A, Ginès P, Piera C, Jiménez W, Guevara M, Fernández-Esparrach G, Sort P, Bataller R, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Effect of therapeutic paracentesis on plasma volume and transvascular escape rate of albumin in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 1997; **27**: 645-653 [PMID: 9365040 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(97)80081-5]

20 **Sort P**, Navasa M, Arroyo V, Aldeguer X, Planas R, Ruiz-del-Arbol L, Castells L, Vargas V, Soriano G, Guevara M, Ginès P, Rodés J. Effect of intravenous albumin on renal impairment and mortality in patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **341**: 403-409 [PMID: 10432325 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199908053410603]

21 **Ibrahim ES**, Alsebaey A, Zaghla H, Moawad Abdelmageed S, Gameel K, Abdelsameea E. Long-term rifaximin therapy as a primary prevention of hepatorenal syndrome. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **29**: 1247-1250 [PMID: 28902040 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000967]

22 **Dong T**, Aronsohn A, Gautham Reddy K, Te HS. Rifaximin Decreases the Incidence and Severity of Acute Kidney Injury and Hepatorenal Syndrome in Cirrhosis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2016; **61**: 3621-3626 [PMID: 27655104 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-016-4313-0]

23 **Udgirkar S**, Rathi P, Sonthalia N, Chandnani S, Contractor Q, Thanage R, Jain S. Urinary neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin determines short-term mortality and type of acute kidney injury in cirrhosis. *JGH Open* 2020; **4**: 970-977 [PMID: 33102772 DOI: 10.1002/jgh3.12377]

24 **Solé C**, Pose E, Solà E, Ginès P. Hepatorenal syndrome in the era of acute kidney injury. *Liver Int* 2018; **38**: 1891-1901 [PMID: 29845739 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13893]

25 **Acevedo JG**, Cramp ME. Hepatorenal syndrome: Update on diagnosis and therapy. *World J Hepatol* 2017; **9**: 293-299 [PMID: 28293378 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v9.i6.293]

26 **Tariq R**, Hadi Y, Chahal K, Reddy S, Salameh H, Singal AK. Incidence, Mortality and Predictors of Acute Kidney Injury in Patients with Cirrhosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 135-142 [PMID: 32832393 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2019.00060]

27 **Martín-Llahí M**, Guevara M, Torre A, Fagundes C, Restuccia T, Gilabert R, Solá E, Pereira G, Marinelli M, Pavesi M, Fernández J, Rodés J, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Prognostic importance of the cause of renal failure in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 488-496.e4 [PMID: 20682324 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.07.043]

28 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Parikh CR, Viola A. Acute kidney injury in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 2064-2077 [PMID: 19003880 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22605]

29 **Rognant N**. Acute kidney injury in patients with chronic liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 993-1000 [PMID: 25954481 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i7.993]

30 **Nanda A**, Reddy R, Safraz H, Salameh H, Singal AK. Pharmacological Therapies for Hepatorenal Syndrome: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2018; **52**: 360-367 [PMID: 28991106 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000913]

31 **Chancharoenthana W**, Leelahavanichkul A. Acute kidney injury spectrum in patients with chronic liver disease: Where do we stand? *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 3684-3703 [PMID: 31391766 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i28.3684]

32 **Dundar HZ**, Yılmazlar T. Management of hepatorenal syndrome. *World J Nephrol* 2015; **4**: 277-286 [PMID: 25949942 DOI: 10.5527/wjn.v4.i2.277]

33 **Facciorusso A**. Hepatorenal Syndrome Type 1: Current Challenges And Future Prospects. *Ther Clin Risk Manag* 2019; **15**: 1383-1391 [PMID: 31819465 DOI: 10.2147/TCRM.S205328]

34 **Clewell JD**, Walker-Renard P. Prostaglandins for the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome. *Ann Pharmacother* 1994; **28**: 54-55 [PMID: 8123962]

35 **Bennett WM**, Keeffe E, Melnyk C, Mahler D, Rösch J, Porter GA. Response to dopamine hydrochloride in the hepatorenal syndrome. *Arch Intern Med* 1975; **135**: 964-971 [PMID: 1156055]

36 **Francoz C**, Durand F, Kahn JA, Genyk YS, Nadim MK. Hepatorenal Syndrome. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2019; **14**: 774-781 [PMID: 30996046 DOI: 10.2215/CJN.12451018]

37 **Velez JC**, Nietert PJ. Therapeutic response to vasoconstrictors in hepatorenal syndrome parallels increase in mean arterial pressure: a pooled analysis of clinical trials. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2011; **58**: 928-938 [PMID: 21962618 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2011.07.017]

38 **Allegretti AS**, Israelsen M, Krag A, Jovani M, Goldin AH, Schulman AR, Winter RW, Gluud LL. Terlipressin *vs* placebo or no intervention for people with cirrhosis and hepatorenal syndrome.

Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017; **6**: CD005162 [PMID: 29943803 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005162.pub4]

39 **Boyer TD**, Sanyal AJ, Wong F, Frederick RT, Lake JR, O'Leary JG, Ganger D, Jamil K, Pappas SC; REVERSE Study Investigators. Terlipressin Plus Albumin Is More Effective Than Albumin Alone in Improving Renal Function in Patients With Cirrhosis and Hepatorenal Syndrome Type 1. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1579-1589.e2 [PMID: 26896734 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.02.026]

40 **Bucsics T**, Krones E. Renal dysfunction in cirrhosis: acute kidney injury and the hepatorenal syndrome. *Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf)* 2017; **5**: 127-137 [PMID: 28533910 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/gox009]

41 **Krag A**, Borup T, Møller S, Bendtsen F. Efficacy and safety of terlipressin in cirrhotic patients with variceal bleeding or hepatorenal syndrome. *Adv Ther* 2008; **25**: 1105-1140 [PMID: 19018483 DOI: 10.1007/s12325-008-0118-7]

42 **Nazar A**, Pereira GH, Guevara M, Martín-Llahi M, Pepin MN, Marinelli M, Solá E, Baccaro ME, Terra C, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Predictors of response to therapy with terlipressin and albumin in patients with cirrhosis and type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 219-226 [PMID: 19877168 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23283]

43 **Wong F**, Pappas SC, Curry MP, Reddy KR, Rubin RA, Porayko MK, Gonzalez SA, Mumtaz K, Lim N, Simonetto DA, Sharma P, Sanyal AJ, Mayo MJ, Frederick RT, Escalante S, Jamil K; CONFIRM Study Investigators. Terlipressin plus Albumin for the Treatment of Type 1 Hepatorenal Syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2021; **384**: 818-828 [PMID: 33657294 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2008290]

44 **Arora V**, Maiwall R, Rajan V, Jindal A, Muralikrishna Shasthry S, Kumar G, Jain P, Sarin SK. Terlipressin Is Superior to Noradrenaline in the Management of Acute Kidney Injury in Acute on Chronic Liver Failure. *Hepatology* 2020; **71**: 600-610 [PMID: 30076614 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30208]

45 **Esrailian E**, Pantangco ER, Kyulo NL, Hu KQ, Runyon BA. Octreotide/Midodrine therapy significantly improves renal function and 30-day survival in patients with type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 742-748 [PMID: 17235705 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9312-0]

46 **Kalambokis G**, Economou M, Fotopoulos A, Al Bokharhii J, Pappas C, Katsaraki A, Tsianos EV. The effects of chronic treatment with octreotide *vs* octreotide plus midodrine on systemic hemodynamics and renal hemodynamics and function in nonazotemic cirrhotic patients with ascites. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 879-885 [PMID: 15784036 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40899.x]

47 **Wang H**, Liu A, Bo W, Feng X, Hu Y. Terlipressin in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e0431 [PMID: 29668606 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000010431]

48 **Guevara M**, Ginès P, Bandi JC, Gilabert R, Sort P, Jiménez W, Garcia-Pagan JC, Bosch J, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt in hepatorenal syndrome: effects on renal function and vasoactive systems. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 416-422 [PMID: 9696006 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510280219]

49 **Rössle M**, Gerbes AL. TIPS for the treatment of refractory ascites, hepatorenal syndrome and hepatic hydrothorax: a critical update. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 988-1000 [PMID: 20581246 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.193227]

50 **Song T**, Rössle M, He F, Liu F, Guo X, Qi X. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for hepatorenal syndrome: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2018; **50**: 323-330 [PMID: 29422242 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2018.01.123]

51 **Mindikoglu AL**, Pappas SC. New Developments in Hepatorenal Syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **16**: 162-177.e1 [PMID: 28602971 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2017.05.041]

52 **Sourianarayanane A**, Raina R, Garg G, McCullough AJ, O'Shea RS. Management and outcome in hepatorenal syndrome: need for renal replacement therapy in non-transplanted patients. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2014; **46**: 793-800 [PMID: 23934619 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-013-0527-7]

53 **Witzke O**, Baumann M, Patschan D, Patschan S, Mitchell A, Treichel U, Gerken G, Philipp T, Kribben A. Which patients benefit from hemodialysis therapy in hepatorenal syndrome? *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **19**: 1369-1373 [PMID: 15610310 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2004.03471.x]

54 **Bañares R**, Nevens F, Larsen FS, Jalan R, Albillos A, Dollinger M, Saliba F, Sauerbruch T, Klammt S, Ockenga J, Pares A, Wendon J, Brünnler T, Kramer L, Mathurin P, de la Mata M, Gasbarrini A, Müllhaupt B, Wilmer A, Laleman W, Eefsen M, Sen S, Zipprich A, Tenorio T, Pavesi M, Schmidt HH, Mitzner S, Williams R, Arroyo V; RELIEF study group. Extracorporeal albumin dialysis with the molecular adsorbent recirculating system in acute-on-chronic liver failure: the RELIEF trial. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 1153-1162 [PMID: 23213075 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26185]

55 **Stine JG**, Wang J, Cornella SL, Behm BW, Henry Z, Shah NL, Caldwell SH, Northup PG. Treatment of Type-1 Hepatorenal Syndrome with Pentoxifylline: A Randomized Placebo Controlled Clinical Trial. *Ann Hepatol* 2018; **17**: 300-306 [PMID: 29469046 DOI: 10.5604/01.3001.0010.8660]

56 **Ginès P**, Solà E, Angeli P, Wong F, Nadim MK, Kamath PS. Hepatorenal syndrome. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2018; **4**: 23 [PMID: 30213943 DOI: 10.1038/s41572-018-0022-7]

57 **Arroyo V**, Terra C, Ginès P. Advances in the pathogenesis and treatment of type-1 and type-2 hepatorenal syndrome. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 935-946 [PMID: 17391801 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.02.001]

58 **Piano S**, Brocca A, Mareso S, Angeli P. Infections complicating cirrhosis. *Liver Int* 2018; **38** Suppl 1: 126-133 [PMID: 29427501 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13645]

59 **Restuccia T**, Ortega R, Guevara M, Ginès P, Alessandria C, Ozdogan O, Navasa M, Rimola A,

Garcia-Valdecasas JC, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Effects of treatment of hepatorenal syndrome before transplantation on posttransplantation outcome. A case-control study. *J Hepatol* 2004; **40**: 140-146 [PMID: 14672625 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2003.09.019]

60 **Angeli P**, Wong F, Watson H, Ginès P; CAPPS Investigators. Hyponatremia in cirrhosis: Results of a patient population survey. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1535-1542 [PMID: 17133458 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21412]

61 **Wang L**, Long Y, Li KX, Xu GS. Pharmacological treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a network meta-analysis. *Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf)* 2020; **8**: 111-118 [PMID: 32280470 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/goz043]

62 **Cho HC**, Jung HY, Sinn DH, Choi MS, Koh KC, Paik SW, Yoo BC, Kim SW, Lee JH. Mortality after surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis: comparison of Child-Turcotte-Pugh, MELD and MELDNa score. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **23**: 51-59 [PMID: 21084989 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3283407158]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1069-1078

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1069

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Hepatitis C virus treatment failure: Clinical utility for testing resistance-associated substitutions

Ezequiel Ridruejo, Matías Javier Pereson, Diego M Flichman, Federico Alejandro Di Lello

ORCID number: Ezequiel Ridruejo 0000-0002-3321-0683; Matías Javier Pereson 0000-0002-7842-8838; Diego M Flichman 0000-0001-5730-154X; Federico Alejandro Di Lello 0000-0001-9771-9705.

Author contributions: Ridruejo E and Di Lello FA designed and wrote the manuscript; Pereson MJ and Flichman DM wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflicting interests.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Ezequiel Ridruejo, Hepatology Section, Department of Medicine, Centro de Educación Médica e Investigaciones Clínicas Norberto Quirno "CEMIC", Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires C1425AS, Unspecified, Argentina

Matías Javier Pereson, Federico Alejandro Di Lello, Facultad de Farmacia y Bioquímica, Instituto de Investigaciones en Bacteriología y Virología Molecular (IBaViM), Universidad de Buenos Aires, Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires 1113, Argentina

Diego M Flichman, Instituto de Investigaciones Biomédicas en Retrovirus y Síndrome de Inmunodeficiencia Adquirida (INBIRS), Universidad de Buenos Aires, Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires 1113, Argentina

Corresponding author: Federico Alejandro Di Lello, PhD, Research Scientist, Teacher, Facultad de Farmacia y Bioquímica, Instituto de Investigaciones en Bacteriología y Virología Molecular (IBaViM), Universidad de Buenos Aires, Junin 9564 Piso, RA-1113 Buenos Aires, Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires 1113, Argentina. fadilello@ffyb.uba.ar

Abstract

The hepatitis C virus has a high mutation capacity that leads to the emergence of resistance-associated substitutions (RAS). However, the consequence of resistance selection during new direct-acting antiviral drug (DAA) treatment is not necessarily the therapeutic failure. In fact, DAA treatment has shown a high rate (> 95%) of sustained virological response even when high baseline RAS prevalence has been reported. In the context of RAS emergence and high rates of sustained viral response, the clinical relevance of variants harboring RAS is still controversial. Therefore, in order to summarize the data available in international guidelines, we have reviewed the clinical utility of testing RAS in the era of new pangenotypic DAA drugs.

Key Words: Hepatitis C virus; Treatment failure; Resistance; Direct-acting antiviral

Core Tip: The presence of resistance-associated substitutions (RAS) to hepatitis C virus (HCV) treatment is a frequent event. Direct-acting antiviral (DAA) treatment repre-

Country/Territory of origin: Argentina

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 22, 2021
Peer-review started: February 22, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: May 12, 2021
Accepted: August 10, 2021
Article in press: August 10, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Martin-Carbonero L
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Yuan YY

sents a milestone in the antiviral therapy of chronic HCV infection. The role of RAS in sustained virological response remains controversial. We herein discuss the clinical utility of testing RAS in the era of pangenotypic DAA drugs.

Citation: Ridruejo E, Pereson MJ, Flichman DM, Di Lello FA. Hepatitis C virus treatment failure: Clinical utility for testing resistance-associated substitutions. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1069-1078
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1069.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1069

INTRODUCTION

For years, the only available treatment for chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection was pegylated interferon and its combination with ribavirin (PEG-IFN/RBV) therapy. However, the sustained viral response (SVR) to treatment of infected patients was limited, varying between 42% and 46% for HCV genotype 1, about 60% for HCV genotype 4, and 76% to 80% for HCV genotype 2 or 3[1-5]. The outcomes were troublesome in patients coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus /HCV, whose SVR rates were even lower[6-9]. Fortunately, treatment against HCV infection has improved significantly in the last decade, changing from a nonspecific immunomodulatory therapy with multiple and severe side effects, such as PEG-IFN/RBV, to specific viral target options such as direct-acting antiviral (DAA) drugs against NS3, NS5A, and NS5B proteins. Thus, since the development of the latest generation of DAA drugs, the SVR is achieved in 95% to 99% of treated patients[10]. Although this scenario is very encouraging, the 1% to 5% of patients who do not achieve SVR are the pitfall of DAA therapy. Therefore, the current complex challenge is to rescue patients who fail to one or more DAA schemes.

Response to treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV was associated with viral variants and single nucleotide polymorphisms[11-17]. The introduction of DAA drugs implied a higher specific and targeted pressure on the virus, which favor the selection of resistance-associated substitutions (RAS) to different antiviral agents. In this context, virological failure was associated with RAS that may be present either from the beginning (baseline RAS) of treatment or acquired during it[18].

Naturally, HCV produces approximately 10^{12} viral particles per day[19]. In addition, the viral replication complex lacks proofreading activity, resulting in a large amount of viral variants in each infected individual. Although, in theory, all possible mutants can be produced in just 1 day, not all of them are able to remain in the population. That is because some viral genome regions have constraints and most mutations generate variants that impair viral fitness and, therefore, do not proliferate. As a result, a large mutant spectrum known as quasispecies is generated[20]. The quasispecies, that represent the lowest level of viral diversity, drives virus adaptability and constitute the greatest challenge to treatment resistance[20].

DAA drug administration inhibits wild-type HCV variants allowing the selection of reduced susceptibility variants, which present a better fitness to this environment. Although initially they do so inefficiently, over time they develop compensatory amino acid substitutions that have a higher fitness and increase the frequency of resistant variants in the quasispecies spectrum (Figure 1). Additionally, each antiviral drug has a different genetic barrier that is characterized by a threshold above which DAA resistance develops. The threshold is determined by several factors including the number of required nucleotide mutations, the level of resistance, and the viral variant fitness. Therefore, even when a viral variant with a RAS emerges, it does not mean that it is sufficient to lead to therapeutic failure. In that way, therapeutic outcome will depend on a finely poised and complex balance between the DAA genetic barrier and viral-resistant variant fitness. Consequently, a highly resistant strain with a low replication capacity will be clinically less relevant than a less resistant one that replicates more efficiently. Fortunately, more powerful DAA drugs with greater genetic barriers have been developed in the last few years[21].

In preclinical and in real-life studies, the reported prevalence rate of baseline RAS is around 5% to 40%, raising concern of the effect on reducing SVR[22-28]. Eventually, the adverse impact of baseline RAS could be minimized by extending treatment

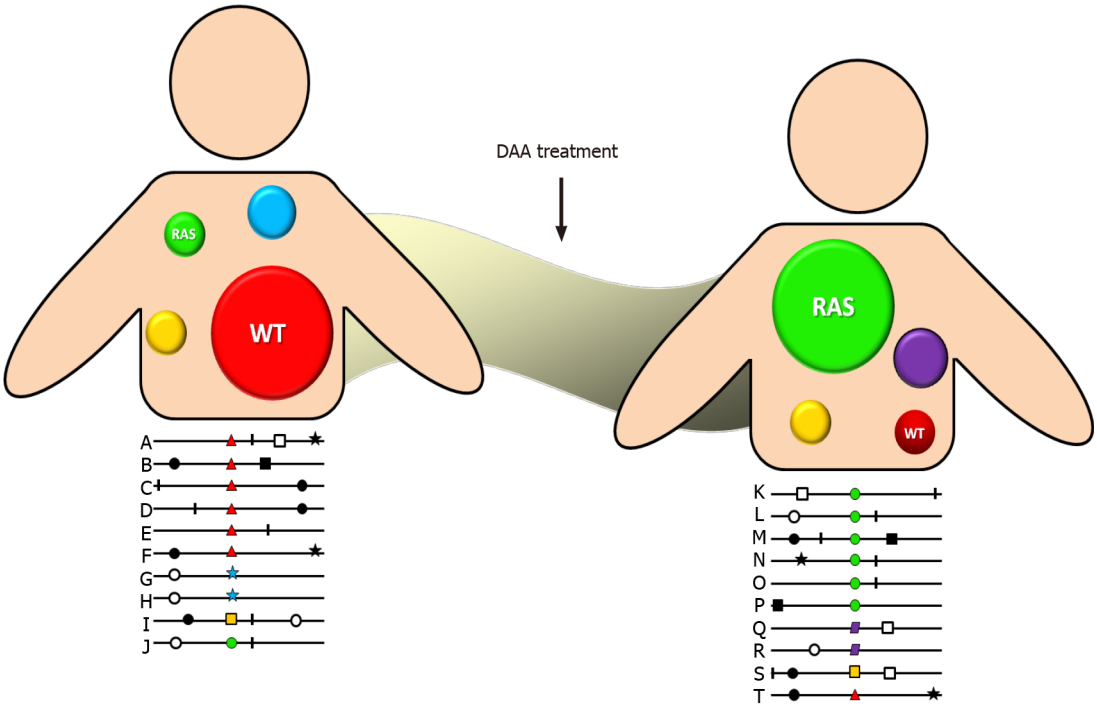


Figure 1 Quasispecies distribution. Simplified representation of quasispecies infecting an individual. Each genome is identified with a letter. The mutation highlighted by a red triangle in the wild-type (WT) confers a selective advantage that results in dominance of that mutation after a given number of replication rounds in an untreated patient. After the pressure generated by direct-acting antiviral (DAA) treatment, a modification of the consensus sequence is observed, where a green circle confers resistance to treatment and becomes dominant. In the upper example, mutant classes are represented as circles of sizes proportional to the number of genomes in each class. Red circles represent the WT, green circles represent a variant with resistance-associated substitutions (RAS). Yellow, light blue, and purple circles are variants with changes of the WT that are not associated with treatment response.

duration or optimizing DAA regimens. However, that is not always clinically possible, as a considerable proportion of treatment failures are caused by RAS acquired during it[29,30]. Table 1 shows the most relevant RAS reported for the currently most used DAA drugs.

RAS DETERMINATION

Unfortunately, the lack of a large market of standardized commercial assays for RAS determination has led to developing in-house RAS assays, which has created a great disparity the techniques that are used, the determined RAS, and their interpretation. Two main techniques for RAS detection have been applied. One is direct sequencing (Sanger) with sensitivity that allows detecting viral species present in between 15% and 25% within quasispecies, and the second is next generation sequencing (NGS), which allows the detection of variants present in less than 1%[31,32]. NGS is thus a more sensitive technique, but it is also much more expensive. It is therefore very likely that direct sequencing will continue to be the technique of choice because of its cost/benefit in the context of the high SVR rates of currently used DAA regimens.

Since the implementation of DAA agent, the main question that has been asked is the extent to which the RAS frequency impacts the outcome of treatment. It has been reported that the presence of a low proportion of viral variants carrying RAS within the quasispecies of an infected patient would have a lesser impact on SVR rates. In fact, some studies have reported a 15% cutoff of the viral population harboring RAS from in which a drop in the virological response rate was observed. Ikeda *et al*[33] (2017) reported that the SVR rates to daclatasvir (DCV)/asunaprevir (ASV) in HCV-infected patients with Y93H ratios of < 1%, 1%–25%, 26%-75%, and > 76% were 99%, 100%, 71%, and 23%, respectively[33]. Similarly, using a 15% NS5A pretreatment cutoff of ledipasvir (LDV)-specific RASs, Zeuzem *et al*[23] (2017) reported significant differences in SVR rates in patients treated with sofosbuvir (SOF)/LDV[23]. Overall, it has been established that SVR decreases as the proportion of RAS in the quasispecies infecting a patient increases. The second question was whether there was a differential impact of RAS depending on whether the patients were treatment naïve or previously

Table 1 Hepatitis C virus resistance-associated substitutions to currently used direct-acting antiviral drugs

Drug family	Drug	Licensed for genotype	RAS
NS3 inhibitors	Glecaprevir (GLE)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	36M, 56H, 156G/V, 168A/K/L/R
	Grazoprevir (GZR)	1, 4	36A/L/M, 56H/F, 155G/K/L/Q/T/S, 156T/V, 168any
	Paritaprevir (PTV)	1, 4	36A/M, 43L, 155C/K/Q/H, 156T/V, 168any
	Voxilaprevir (VOX)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	36A/G/L/M, 41K/R/S/V, 43L/S7V, 54S, 55A/I, 56H/F, 80K/L, 122D/G/N, 155G/K/N/K/T/W, 156L/S/T/V, 168any
NS5A inhibitors	Daclatasvir (DCV)	1, 3, 4	24H, 28A/M/S/T, 30D/E/G/H/K/N/Q/R/S/T, 31I/F/M/V, 32L/del, 58A/D/N/S, 62L, 93C/H/N/R/S/W
	Elbasvir (EBR)	1, 3, 4	28G/T, 30G/H/K/R/V/Y, 31F/M/V, 58D, 93C/H/N
	Ledipasvir (LDV)	1, 3, 4, 5, 6	24N/G, 28A/M/T, 30E/G/H/K/N/R/S/T/Y, 31I/M/V, 32L/del, 38F, 58D, 92K/T, 93C/H/N/R/S/T/W
	Ombitasvir (OBV)	1, 4	28M/S/T/V, 30E/Q/R/Y, 31I/F/V, 32del, 58D, 92T, 93C/H/N/S
	Pibrentasvir (PIB)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	24R, 28G/K/S, 30K/R, 31I/M, 32del, 58C/D, 93H/N
	Velpatasvir (VEL	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	28V, 30E/H/K, 31M/V, 32L, 93H/N/R/S/W
NS5B nucleoside analogs inhibitors	Dasabuvir (DSV)	1	316Y, 368T, 395G, 411S, 414T, 444K, 445F, 448C/H, 451S, 553T/V, 554S, 556G/N/R, 557R,558R, 559G/N, 561H, 565F
NS5B non-nucleoside analogs inhibitors	Sofosbuvir (SOF)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	159F, 282R/T, 289L, 320I/V, 321A

RAS: Resistance-associated substitutions.

treated. That question will be discussed in more detail below.

CLINICAL UTILITY OF RAS DETECTION

The clinical impact of RAS depends particularly on both the HCV genotype/subtype and the administered DAA regimen, which varies in efficacy according to the type of RAS as well as the treatment experience and presence of cirrhosis.

Naïve patients

In naïve patients, the prevalence of RAS that significantly affect the response to treatment is estimated to be approximately 5%. In that case, the SVR rates of patients with RAS would be 91%, while for patients without RAS it would be approximately 99%[23,34,35]. In summary, RAS assessment prior to the beginning of treatment is not recommended for naïve patients. In previously treated patients, the situation is more complex and refers to subjects who have failed to respond to treatment with a DAA compound. In that case, the presence of post-failure RAS is more than 75%, and SVR rates are more affected. In fact, it has been reported that SVR rates are between 75% and 85% in patients with RAS, while for patients without RAS they continue to be remarkably high (> 95%)[23,34,35].

Identifying the HCV genotype/subtype before starting therapy in naïve patients, in the pangenotypic treatment era, remains useful and may be necessary when drug availability or lack of affordability require genotype-specific treatment or optimal treatment regimens. In that sense, HCV genotyping and subtyping should be performed by nucleotide sequence analysis of some coding regions, generally the core, NS3, or the NS5B coding regions, which accurately discriminates HCV subtypes[36,37]. Furthermore, the use of the NS3 or NS5B regions to determine the viral genotype and subtype also allows the detection of the baseline RAS[36]. On the other hand, as HCV subtypes, including 1l, 3b, 3g, 4r, 6u, 6v, among others, harbor a high frequency of baseline RAS, knowing the HCV subtype before treatment in regions or countries

where these subtypes are prevalent (*i.e.* China, South-East Asia, and sub-Saharan Africa) is strongly recommended in order to optimize treatment[38-41]. Indeed, infrequent subtypes harboring RAS that confer resistance to NS5A inhibitors should be considered for treatment with the fixed-dose combinations SOF/velpatasvir (VEL)/voxilaprevir (VOX) for 12 wk.

HCV-1 is the most prevalent genotype worldwide (46.2%), and one third of the HCV-1 that infects patients belongs to subtype 1a[42]. Several studies have reported that DAA-naïve individuals infected with HCV-1a are more difficult to treat than those infected with HCV-1b[23,43-45]. In fact, it has been observed that in the presence of cirrhosis, high baseline viral load, or failure of previous treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV, the SVR rates of patients treated with elbasvir (EBR)/grazoprevir (GZR), or SOF/LDV were significantly lower for HCV-1a compare with HCV-1b infected individuals[23,43-45]. In EBR/GZR phase III clinical studies, the SVR rate was as low as 58% in HCV-1a treatment-naïve infected patients who harbored baseline NS5A RAS [46]. On the contrary, SVR rates were high (> 97%) in HCV-1b infected patients[46]. Nevertheless, the effect of RAS in HCV-1a infected patients can be overcome by extending treatment to 16 wk and adding RBV to patients with baseline NS5A RAS [44]. Therefore, NS5A resistance testing at baseline is recommended for HCV-1a infected patients with a viral load above 800.000 IU/mL if 12 wk treatment duration is intended.

In addition, pretreatment genotyping is recommended if cirrhotic patients will be treated with SOF/VEL, as baseline RAS reduce SVR rates in HCV-3 cirrhotic patients treated with that regimen. Moreover, a recent study analyzing 539 HCV-3 infected patients showed that patients with baseline Y93H and/or A30K RAS had an SVR rate of 72.2%, while HCV-3 infected patients without NS5A RASs achieved an SVR rate of 95.7% (P = 0.002)[47]. Accordingly, a large meta-analysis that included more than 6500 subjects with chronic HCV infection reported reduced effectiveness of GLE/PIB in HCV-3 infected patients with baseline RAS like A30K, Y93H, and P53del, and recommended, in order to improve prognosis of treatment outcome and selection of therapy, testing of RAS in such patients[48].

According to the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases guidelines, pretreatment RAS testing is recommended in cirrhotic HCV-3 infected patients because those without a baseline Y93H RAS in NS5A are eligible for 12 wk of SOF/VEL therapy. On the other hand, cirrhotic HCV-3 infected patients with baseline Y93H RAS should be treated with SOF/VEL plus RBV or SOF/VEL/VOX for 12 wk[49]. However, since HCV-3 infections are frequent in developing countries, the benefit of pretreatment screening for RAS should be weighed. On the contrary, the European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL) guidelines recommend the same therapeutic regime for all compensated cirrhotic patients regardless of viral genotype[50].

Retreatment for DAA failures

Even in the context of a low treatment failure rate (< 5%), the number of patients requiring retreatment is quite high because of the large number of patients with chronic HCV infection who are treated with DAA worldwide[22-24,29-30]. Currently, the main international treatment guidelines do not recommend massive testing of RAS before starting DAA treatment, although there are exceptions[49,50].

Treatment with SOF/VEL/VOX for 12 wk is one of the most promising pangenotypic regimens for rescuing patients who have failed treatment. Two phase III trials, POLARIS-1 and POLARIS-4, assessed the safety and efficacy of the SOF/VEL/VOX regimen for 12 wk in patients who failed treatment with NS3 and/or NS5A inhibitors [51]. In the POLARIS-1 study, which included 263 patients with NS5A inhibitor failure, the overall retreatment SVR rate was 96% (one breakthrough and six relapses). As expected, cirrhotic patients, who constituted 46% of the study population, had lower SVR than noncirrhotic patients (93% *vs* 99%, respectively). It is important to highlight that neither the HCV genotype nor the RAS profile at the beginning of retreatment influenced SVR[51,52]. Unlike POLARIS-1, the POLARIS-4 study included previously treated patients without NS5A inhibitors. Cirrhotic patients were equally represented in both studies (46%). In POLARIS-4, the overall SVR rate of retreatment with SOF/VEL/VOX for 12 wk was 98% (178/182; one relapse) compared with 90% (136/151; one breakthrough and 12 relapses) in patients retreated with SOF/VEL for 12 wk[51,52]. Regardless of patient gender, body mass index, HCV genotype, and baseline HCV-RNA levels, several real-life studies have confirmed the high SVR rates achieved with the SOF/VEL/VOX scheme in randomized clinical trials[53-56].

The other available pangenotypic option for the treatment of patients with resistant variants is GLE/PIB. However, the combination did not have a suitable genetic barrier to achieve optimal SVR rates in patients failing previous DAA treatment[57]. In the

MAGELLAN-1 Part 2 study, GLE/PIB was used for the retreatment of previous DAA failures. SVR12 was achieved by 89% and 91% of HCV-1 and HCV-4 infected patients who received 12 wk and 16 wk of treatment, respectively. Previous treatment with one inhibitor class (protease or NS5A) had no impact on SVR12, whereas past treatment with both classes of inhibitors was associated with lower SVR12 rates[57]. Another study adds support of the efficacy of the 16 wk regimen for retreatment of HCV-1 infected patients with a history of sofosbuvir/NS5A inhibitor treatment failure[58]. Consequently, treatment with GLE/PIB is recommended as an alternative regimen for the retreatment of patients who failed to a prior DAA regimen including a, NS5A or NS3 inhibitor. It is not recommended for patients who have failed treatment with the combination of both inhibitors[50]. Therefore, at present, the SOF/VEL/VOX combination is the regimen of choice for the retreatment of patients who did not achieve SVR after a course of DAA treatment. RAS determination is not necessary before initiating treatment[49,50].

Currently, the most challenging scenario is represented by patients who failed combinations containing the latest generation of pangenotypic DAA agents GLE/PIB and SOF/VEL/VOX. Thus, such patients who are very difficult to cure, the combinations of SOF/VEL/VOX or SOF/GLE/PIB with RBV for 12 wk, or without RBV for 16-24 wk, are the recommended options. In a previous study, 31 patients who failed GLE/PIB were retreated with SOF/VEL/VOX achieved an SVR of 94% despite the presence of NS5A RAS in 90% of the cases[59]. On the other hand, in the ongoing MAGELLAN-3 study, 23 patients who failed GLE/PIB and received treatment with SOF/GLE/PIB combined with RBV achieved an SVR of 96%, despite the presence of RAS in the NS5A region in 91% of them[60].

Recently, failure to SOF/VEL/VOX has been reported in 40 patients[61]. RAS testing after SOF/VEL/VOX failure showed that all HCV-1a had either NS3 or NS5A RAS. On the contrary, in HCV-1b, individual NS3 RAS were rather rare (11%), and the overall frequency of NS5A RAS was moderate (33%). Finally, for HCV-3, RAS in NS5A (56%) and in NS3 plus NS5A (28%) were relatively frequent. In 22 of the cases, rescue treatment with SOF/GLE/PIB, with or without RBV, for 12-24 wk achieved an SVR rate of 79%. Unfortunately, as all types of DAA drugs have been used in most developing countries; failure is a real possibility. Therefore, surveillance of circulating viral variants is imperative. From a practical point of view, if DAA treatment fails, there are two possibilities: (1) To determine RAS and adjust the new DAA regime according to the result; and (2) to administer empirical DAA treatment following clinical practice guidelines.

The EASL currently recommends first line therapy regimens that do not require pretreatment RAS detection. The 2020 EASL Recommendations on Treatment of Hepatitis C state that in areas where the regimens are not available or not reimbursed, physicians who have access to reliable resistance tests can use the results to guide their decisions, according to[50]. Thus, the selected retreatment option depends on the availability of RAS testing, the actual access to the DAA agent indicated in the event of the failure, and the preference of the treating physician.

CONCLUSION

In the current clinical setting, there is no need for baseline detection of RAS before DAA therapy initiation in naïve patients. The use of adequate pangenotypic regimes may overcome the effect of RAS in the first treatment. After treatment failure, RAS may be determined when available. Otherwise, SOF/VEL/VOX for 12 wk is the regimen of choice, as it has shown the highest SVR rates. GLE/PIB for 16 wk is an alternative regime and it may be used in patients who have failed NS5A or NS3 inhibitors, but not a combination of both. Failure to treatment with multiple DAA regimens may be the clearest clinical scenario for RAS detection. In such cases, rescue treatment can be guided based on the results. If after many failures, RAS detection is not available, treatment should be evaluated by multidisciplinary teams. SOF/VEL/VOX or SOF/GLE/PIB with RBV for 12 wk or without RBV for 16-24 wk are the regimens of choice as they have shown effectiveness in curing these difficult-to-treat patients.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

To Silvina Heisecke, from CEMIC-CONICET, for copyediting the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Pawlotsky JM**. Mechanisms of antiviral treatment efficacy and failure in chronic hepatitis C. *Antiviral Res* 2003; **59**: 1-11 [PMID: 12834855 DOI: 10.1016/s0166-3542(03)00088-3]
2 **Feld JJ**, Hoofnagle JH. Mechanism of action of interferon and ribavirin in treatment of hepatitis C. *Nature* 2005; **436**: 967-972 [PMID: 16107837 DOI: 10.1038/nature04082]
3 **Manns MP**, McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Rustgi VK, Shiffman M, Reindollar R, Goodman ZD, Koury K, Ling M, Albrecht JK. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 958-965 [PMID: 11583749 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(01)06102-5]
4 **Sánchez-Tapias JM**, Diago M, Escartín P, Enríquez J, Romero-Gómez M, Bárcena R, Crespo J, Andrade R, Martínez-Bauer E, Pérez R, Testillano M, Planas R, Solá R, García-Bengoechea M, Garcia-Samaniego J, Muñoz-Sánchez M, Moreno-Otero R; TeraViC-4 Study Group. Peginterferon-alfa2a plus ribavirin for 48 versus 72 weeks in patients with detectable hepatitis C virus RNA at week 4 of treatment. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 451-460 [PMID: 16890599 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.05.016]
5 **Mira JA**, Rivero A, de Los Santos-Gil I, López-Cortés LF, Girón-González JA, Márquez M, Merino D, del Mar Viloria M, Téllez F, Ríos-Villegas MJ, Omar M, Rivero-Juárez A, Macías J, Pineda JA; Grupo HEPAVIR de la Sociedad Andaluza de Enfermedades Infecciosas (SAEI). Hepatitis C virus genotype 4 responds better to pegylated interferon with ribavirin than genotype 1 in HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2012; **26**: 1721-1724 [PMID: 22695304 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283568884]
6 **Carrat F**, Bani-Sadr F, Pol S, Rosenthal E, Lunel-Fabiani F, Benzekri A, Morand P, Goujard C, Pialoux G, Piroth L, Salmon-Céron D, Degott C, Cacoub P, Perronne C; ANRS HCO2 RIBAVIC Study Team. Pegylated interferon alfa-2b vs standard interferon alfa-2b, plus ribavirin, for chronic hepatitis C in HIV-infected patients: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004; **292**: 2839-2848 [PMID: 15598915 DOI: 10.1001/jama.292.23.2839]
7 **Soriano V**, Miralles C, Berdún MA, Losada E, Aguirrebengoa K, Ocampo A, Arazo P, Cervantes M, de los Santos I, San Joaquín I, Echeverria S, Galindo MJ, Asensi V, Barreiro P, Sola J, Hernandez-Burruezo JJ, Guardiola J, Blanco F, Martin-Carbonero L, García-Samaniego J, Nuñez M; PRESCO Study Group. Premature treatment discontinuation in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients receiving pegylated interferon plus weight-based ribavirin. *Antivir Ther* 2007; **12**: 469-476 [PMID: 17668555]
8 **Vispo E**, Barreiro P, Pineda JA, Mira JA, Maida I, Martín-Carbonero L, Rodríguez-Nóvoa S, Santos I, López-Cortes LF, Merino D, Rivero A, Soriano V. Low response to pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis C treated with abacavir. *Antivir Ther* 2008; **13**: 429-437 [PMID: 18572756]
9 **Mira JA**, López-Cortés LF, Barreiro P, Tural C, Torres-Tortosa M, de Los Santos Gil I, Martín-Rico P, Ríos-Villegas MJ, Hernández-Burruezo JJ, Merino D, López-Ruz MA, Rivero A, Muñoz L, González-Serrano M, Collado A, Macías J, Viciana P, Soriano V, Pineda JA. Efficacy of pegylated interferon plus ribavirin treatment in HIV/hepatitis C virus co-infected patients receiving abacavir plus lamivudine or tenofovir plus either lamivudine or emtricitabine as nucleoside analogue backbone. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **62**: 1365-1373 [PMID: 18854330 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn420]
10 **Holmes JA**, Rutledge SM, Chung RT. Direct-acting antiviral treatment for hepatitis C. *Lancet* 2019; **393**: 1392-1394 [PMID: 30765125 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)32326-2]
11 **Enomoto N**, Sakuma I, Asahina Y, Kurosaki M, Murakami T, Yamamoto C, Ogura Y, Izumi N, Marumo F, Sato C. Mutations in the nonstructural protein 5A gene and response to interferon in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus 1b infection. *N Engl J Med* 1996; **334**: 77-81 [PMID: 8531962 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199601113340203]
12 **Pascu M**, Martus P, Höhne M, Wiedenmann B, Hopf U, Schreier E, Berg T. Sustained virological response in hepatitis C virus type 1b infected patients is predicted by the number of mutations within the NS5A-ISDR: a meta-analysis focused on geographical differences. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1345-1351 [PMID: 15306598 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.031336]
13 **Okanoue T**, Itoh Y, Hashimoto H, Yasui K, Minami M, Takehara T, Tanaka E, Onji M, Toyota J, Chayama K, Yoshioka K, Izumi N, Akuta N, Kumada H. Predictive values of amino acid sequences of the core and NS5A regions in antiviral therapy for hepatitis C: a Japanese multi-center study. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 952-963 [PMID: 19517057 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0087-x]
14 **Di Lello FA**, Mira JA, Neukam K, Parra-Sánchez M, Guelfo JR, Cifuentes C, Macías J, Palomares JC, Gómez-Mateos J, Pineda JA, Real LM. Core amino acid variation at position 110 is associated with sustained virological response in Caucasian patients with chronic hepatitis C virus 1b infection. *Arch Virol* 2014; **159**: 3345-3351 [PMID: 25161034 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-014-2209-x]
15 **Ge D**, Fellay J, Thompson AJ, Simon JS, Shianna KV, Urban TJ, Heinzen EL, Qiu P, Bertelsen AH, Muir AJ, Sulkowski M, McHutchison JG, Goldstein DB. Genetic variation in IL28B predicts hepatitis C treatment-induced viral clearance. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 399-401 [PMID: 19684573 DOI: 10.1038/nature08309]

16 **Neukam K**, Caruz A, Rivero-Juárez A, Barreiro P, Merino D, Real LM, Herrero R, Camacho A, Soriano V, Di Lello FA, Macías J, Rivero A, Pineda JA. Variations at multiple genes improve interleukin 28B genotype predictive capacity for response to therapy against hepatitis C infection. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 2715-2724 [PMID: 23842134 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000432459.36970.a9]

17 **Di Lello FA**, Caruz A, Rallon NI, Rivero-Juarez A, Neukam K, Barreiro P, Camacho A, García-Rey S, Rivero A, Soriano V, Cifuentes C, Macias J, Pineda JA. Effects of the genetic pattern defined by low-density lipoprotein receptor and IL28B genotypes on the outcome of hepatitis C virus infection. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2013; **32**: 1427-1435 [PMID: 23715768 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-013-1894-9]

18 **Pawlotsky JM**. Hepatitis C Virus Resistance to Direct-Acting Antiviral Drugs in Interferon-Free Regimens. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **151**: 70-86 [PMID: 27080301 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.04.003]

19 **Neumann AU**, Lam NP, Dahari H, Gretch DR, Wiley TE, Layden TJ, Perelson AS. Hepatitis C viral dynamics in vivo and the antiviral efficacy of interferon-alpha therapy. *Science* 1998; **282**: 103-107 [PMID: 9756471 DOI: 10.1126/science.282.5386.103]

20 **Domingo E**, Sheldon J, Perales C. Viral quasispecies evolution. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2012; **76**: 159-216 [PMID: 22688811 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.05023-11]

21 **Pearlman BL**, Hinds AE. Review article: novel antivirals for hepatitis C-sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir, glecaprevir/pibrentasvir. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 914-923 [PMID: 30288771 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14977]

22 **Harrington PR**, Komatsu TE, Deming DJ, Donaldson EF, O'Rear JJ, Naeger LK. Impact of hepatitis C virus polymorphisms on direct-acting antiviral treatment efficacy: Regulatory analyses and perspectives. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 2430-2448 [PMID: 29194682 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29693]

23 **Zeuzem S**, Mizokami M, Pianko S, Mangia A, Han KH, Martin R, Svarovskaia E, Dvory-Sobol H, Doehle B, Hedskog C, Yun C, Brainard DM, Knox S, McHutchison JG, Miller MD, Mo H, Chuang WL, Jacobson I, Dore GJ, Sulkowski M. NS5A resistance-associated substitutions in patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus: Prevalence and effect on treatment outcome. *J Hepatol* 2017; **66**: 910-918 [PMID: 28108232 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.01.007]

24 **Pérez AB**, Chueca N, Macías J, Pineda JA, Salmerón J, Rivero-Juárez A, Hidalgo-Tenorio C, Espinosa MD, Téllez F, Von-Wichmann MÁ, Omar M, Santos J, Hernández-Quero J, Antón JJ, Collado A, Lozano AB, García-Deltoro M, Casado M, Pascasio JM, Selfa A, Rosales JM, De la Iglesia A, Arenas JI, García-Bujalance S, Ríos MJ, Bernal E, Martínez O, García-Herola A, Vélez M, Rincón P, García F. Prevalence of resistance associated substitutions and efficacy of baseline resistance-guided chronic hepatitis C treatment in Spain from the GEHEP-004 cohort. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0221231 [PMID: 31469856 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0221231]

25 **Chen ZW**, Li H, Ren H, Hu P. Global prevalence of pre-existing HCV variants resistant to direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs): mining the GenBank HCV genome data. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 20310 [PMID: 26842909 DOI: 10.1038/srep20310]

26 **Martínez AP**, Culasso ACA, Pérez PS, Romano V, Campos RH, Ridruejo E, García G, Di Lello FA. Polymorphisms associated with resistance to protease inhibitors in naïve patients infected with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 in Argentina: Low prevalence of Q80K. *Virus Res* 2017; **240**: 140-146 [PMID: 28837817 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2017.08.006]

27 **Martínez AP**, García G, Ridruejo E, Culasso AC, Pérez PS, Pereson MJ, Neukam K, Flichman D, Di Lello FA. Hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection: Prevalence of NS5A and NS5B resistance-associated substitutions in naïve patients from Argentina. *J Med Virol* 2019; **91**: 1970-1978 [PMID: 31273794 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25536]

28 **Bertoli A**, Sorbo MC, Aragri M, Lenci I, Teti E, Polilli E, Di Maio VC, Gianserra L, Biliotti E, Masetti C, Magni CF, Babudieri S, Nicolini LA, Milana M, Cacciatore P, Sarmati L, Pellicelli A, Paolucci S, Craxì A, Morisco F, Palitti VP, Siciliano M, Coppola N, Iapadre N, Puoti M, Rizzardini G, Taliani G, Pasquazzi C, Andreoni M, Parruti G, Angelico M, Perno CF, Cento V, Ceccherini-Silberstein F; HCV Virology Italian Resistance Network (VIRONET-C). Prevalence of Single and Multiple Natural NS3, NS5A and NS5B Resistance-Associated Substitutions in Hepatitis C Virus Genotypes 1-4 in Italy. *Sci Rep* 2018; **8**: 8988 [PMID: 29895871 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-018-26862-y]

29 **Dietz J**, Susser S, Vermehren J, Peiffer KH, Grammatikos G, Berger A, Ferenci P, Buti M, Müllhaupt B, Hunyady B, Hinrichsen H, Mauss S, Petersen J, Buggisch P, Felten G, Hüppe D, Knecht G, Lutz T, Schott E, Berg C, Spengler U, von Hahn T, Berg T, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C; European HCV Resistance Study Group. Patterns of Resistance-Associated Substitutions in Patients With Chronic HCV Infection Following Treatment With Direct-Acting Antivirals. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 976-988.e4 [PMID: 29146520 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.11.007]

30 **Hezode C**, Reau N, Svarovskaia ES, Doehle BP, Shanmugam R, Dvory-Sobol H, Hedskog C, McNally J, Osinusi A, Brainard DM, Miller MD, Mo H, Roberts SK, O'Leary JG, Shafran SD, Zeuzem S. Resistance analysis in patients with genotype 1-6 HCV infection treated with sofosbuvir/velpatasvir in the phase III studies. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 895-903 [PMID: 29221887 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.11.032]

31 **Fourati S**, Pawlotsky JM. Virologic Tools for HCV Drug Resistance Testing. *Viruses* 2015; **7**: 6346-6359 [PMID: 26690198 DOI: 10.3390/v7122941]

32 **Verbinnen T**, Van Marck H, Vandenbroucke I, Vijgen L, Claes M, Lin TI, Simmen K, Neyts J, Fanning G, Lenz O. Tracking the evolution of multiple in vitro hepatitis C virus replicon variants under protease inhibitor selection pressure by 454 deep sequencing. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11124-11133 [PMID: 20739521 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01217-10]

33 **Ikeda H**, Watanabe T, Okuse C, Matsumoto N, Ishii T, Yamada N, Shigefuku R, Hattori N, Matsunaga K, Nakano H, Hiraishi T, Kobayashi M, Yasuda K, Yamamoto H, Yasuda H, Kurosaki M, Izumi N, Yotsuyanagi H, Suzuki M, Itoh F. Impact of resistance-associated variant dominancy on treatment in patients with HCV genotype 1b receiving daclatasvir/asunaprevir. *J Med Virol* 2017; **89**: 99-105 [PMID: 27329864 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24608]

34 **Sharafi H**, Alavian SM. Hepatitis C resistance to NS5A inhibitors: Is it going to be a problem? *World J Hepatol* 2018; **10**: 543-548 [PMID: 30310532 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v10.i9.543]

35 **Kjellin M**, Kileng H, Akaberi D, Palanisamy N, Duberg AS, Danielsson A, Kristiansen MG, Nöjd J, Aleman S, Gutteberg T, Goll R, Lannergård A, Lennerstrand J. Effect of the baseline Y93H resistance-associated substitution in HCV genotype 3 for direct-acting antiviral treatment: real-life experience from a multicenter study in Sweden and Norway. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 1042-1050 [PMID: 31424972 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1652846]

36 **Neukam K**, Martínez AP, Culasso ACA, Ridruejo E, García G, Di Lello FA. NS3 genomic sequencing and phylogenetic analysis as alternative to a commercially available assay to reliably determine hepatitis C virus subtypes 1a and 1b. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0182193 [PMID: 28753662 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0182193]

37 **Chevaliez S**, Bouvier-Alias M, Brillet R, Pawlotsky JM. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotype 1 subtype identification in new HCV drug development and future clinical practice. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e8209 [PMID: 19997618 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008209]

38 **Childs K**, Davis C, Cannon M, Montague S, Filipe A, Tong L, Simmonds P, Smith D, Thomson EC, Dusheiko G, Agarwal K. Suboptimal SVR rates in African patients with atypical genotype 1 subtypes: Implications for global elimination of hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 1099-1105 [PMID: 31400349 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.07.025]

39 **Wasitthankasem R**, Vongpunsawad S, Siripon N, Suya C, Chulothok P, Chaiear K, Rujirojindakul P, Kanjana S, Theamboonlers A, Tangkijvanich P, Poovorawan Y. Genotypic distribution of hepatitis C virus in Thailand and Southeast Asia. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126764 [PMID: 25962112 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126764]

40 **Wei L**, Lim SG, Xie Q, Văn KN, Piratvisuth T, Huang Y, Wu S, Xu M, Tang H, Cheng J, Le Manh H, Gao Y, Mou Z, Sobhonslidsuk A, Dou X, Thongsawat S, Nan Y, Tan CK, Ning Q, Tee HP, Mao Y, Stamm LM, Lu S, Dvory-Sobol H, Mo H, Brainard DM, Yang YF, Dao L, Wang GQ, Tanwandee T, Hu P, Tangkijvanich P, Zhang L, Gao ZL, Lin F, Le TTP, Shang J, Gong G, Li J, Su M, Duan Z, Mohamed R, Hou JL, Jia J. Sofosbuvir-velpatasvir for treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus infection in Asia: a single-arm, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 127-134 [PMID: 30555048 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(18)30343-1]

41 **Pawlotsky JM**. DAA failures in African patients with "unusual" HCV subtypes: Hey! Didn't you know there was another world? *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 1070-1072 [PMID: 31648816 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.09.021]

42 **Messina JP**, Humphreys I, Flaxman A, Brown A, Cooke GS, Pybus OG, Barnes E. Global distribution and prevalence of hepatitis C virus genotypes. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 77-87 [PMID: 25069599 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27259]

43 **Sarrazin C**, Dvory-Sobol H, Svarovskaia ES, Doehle BP, Pang PS, Chuang SM, Ma J, Ding X, Afdhal NH, Kowdley KV, Gane EJ, Lawitz E, Brainard DM, McHutchison JG, Miller MD, Mo H. Prevalence of Resistance-Associated Substitutions in HCV NS5A, NS5B, or NS3 and Outcomes of Treatment With Ledipasvir and Sofosbuvir. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **151**: 501-512.e1 [PMID: 27296509 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.06.002]

44 **Kwo P**, Gane EJ, Peng CY, Pearlman B, Vierling JM, Serfaty L, Buti M, Shafran S, Stryszak P, Lin L, Gress J, Black S, Dutko FJ, Robertson M, Wahl J, Lupinacci L, Barr E, Haber B. Effectiveness of Elbasvir and Grazoprevir Combination, With or Without Ribavirin, for Treatment-Experienced Patients With Chronic Hepatitis C Infection. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 164-175.e4 [PMID: 27720838 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.09.045]

45 **Zeuzem S**, Ghalib R, Reddy KR, Pockros PJ, Ben Ari Z, Zhao Y, Brown DD, Wan S, DiNubile MJ, Nguyen BY, Robertson MN, Wahl J, Barr E, Butterton JR. Grazoprevir-Elbasvir Combination Therapy for Treatment-Naive Cirrhotic and Noncirrhotic Patients With Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Genotype 1, 4, or 6 Infection: A Randomized Trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2015; **163**: 1-13 [PMID: 25909356 DOI: 10.7326/M15-0785]

46 **Zeuzem S**, Serfaty L, Vierling J, Cheng W, George J, Sperl J, Strasser S, Kumada H, Hwang P, Robertson M, Wahl J, Barr E, Talwani R, Platt H. The safety and efficacy of elbasvir and grazoprevir in participants with hepatitis C virus genotype 1b infection. *J Gastroenterol* 2018; **53**: 679-688 [PMID: 29344726 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-018-1429-3]

47 **Di Maio VC**, Barbaliscia S, Teti E, Fiorentino G, Milana M, Paolucci S, Pollicino T, Morsica G, Starace M, Bruzzone B, Gennari W, Micheli V, Yu La Rosa K, Foroghi L, Calvaruso V, Lenci I, Polilli E, Babudieri S, Aghemo A, Raimondo G, Sarmati L, Coppola N, Pasquazzi C, Baldanti F, Parruti G, Perno CF, Angelico M, Craxì A, Andreoni M, Ceccherini-Silberstein F; HCV Virology Italian Resistance Network Group (Vironet C). Resistance analysis and treatment outcomes in hepatitis C virus genotype 3-infected patients within the Italian network VIRONET-C. *Liver Int* 2021; **41**: 1802-1814 [PMID: 33497016 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14797]

48 **Zhang Y**, Jiang X, Zhao Y, Xu Y. Effect of baseline resistance-associated substitutions on the efficiency of glecaprevir/pibrentasvir in chronic hepatitis C subjects: A meta-analysis. *J Viral Hepat* 2021; **28**: 177-185 [PMID: 32961624 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13409]

49 **Ghany MG**, Morgan TR; AASLD-IDSA Hepatitis C Guidance Panel. Hepatitis C Guidance 2019 Update: American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases-Infectious Diseases Society of America Recommendations for Testing, Managing, and Treating Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *Hepatology* 2020; **71**: 686-721 [PMID: 31816111 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31060]

50 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**; Clinical Practice Guidelines Panel: Chair; EASL Governing Board representative; Panel members. EASL recommendations on treatment of hepatitis C: Final update of the series☆. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1170-1218 [PMID: 32956768 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.08.018]

51 **Bourlière M**, Gordon SC, Flamm SL, Cooper CL, Ramji A, Tong M, Ravendhran N, Vierling JM, Tran TT, Pianko S, Bansal MB, de Lédinghen V, Hyland RH, Stamm LM, Dvory-Sobol H, Svarovskaia E, Zhang J, Huang KC, Subramanian GM, Brainard DM, McHutchison JG, Verna EC, Buggisch P, Landis CS, Younes ZH, Curry MP, Strasser SI, Schiff ER, Reddy KR, Manns MP, Kowdley KV, Zeuzem S; POLARIS-1 and POLARIS-4 Investigators. Sofosbuvir, Velpatasvir, and Voxilaprevir for Previously Treated HCV Infection. *N Engl J Med* 2017; **376**: 2134-2146 [PMID: 28564569 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1613512]

52 **Sarrazin C**, Cooper CL, Manns MP, Reddy KR, Kowdley KV, Roberts SK, Dvory-Sobol H, Svarovskia E, Martin R, Camus G, Doehle BP, Stamm LM, Hyland RH, Brainard DM, Mo H, Gordon SC, Bourliere M, Zeuzem S, Flamm SL. No impact of resistance-associated substitutions on the efficacy of sofosbuvir, velpatasvir, and voxilaprevir for 12 wk in HCV DAA-experienced patients. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 1221-1230 [PMID: 30098373 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.07.023]

53 **Da BL**, Lourdusamy V, Kushner T, Dieterich D, Saberi B. Efficacy of sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir in direct-acting antiviral experienced patients with hepatitis C virus. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **33**: 859-861 [PMID: 32541241 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001786]

54 **Belperio PS**, Shahoumian TA, Loomis TP, Backus LI. Real-world effectiveness of sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir in 573 direct-acting antiviral experienced hepatitis C patients. *J Viral Hepat* 2019; **26**: 980-990 [PMID: 31012179 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13115]

55 **Degasperi E**, Spinetti A, Lombardi A, Landonio S, Rossi MC, Pasulo L, Pozzoni P, Giorgini A, Fabris P, Romano A, Lomonaco L, Puoti M, Vinci M, Gatti F, Carolo G, Zoncada A, Bonfanti P, Russo FP, Aghemo A, Soria A, Centenaro R, Maggiolo F, Rovere P, Pasin F, Paon V, Faggiano G, Vario A, Grossi G, Soffredini R, Carriero C, Paolucci S, Noventa F, Alberti A, Lampertico P, Fagiuoli S; NAVIGATORE-Lombardia and Veneto Study Groups. Real-life effectiveness and safety of sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir in hepatitis C patients with previous DAA failure. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 1106-1115 [PMID: 31433303 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.07.020]

56 **Llaneras J**, Riveiro-Barciela M, Lens S, Diago M, Cachero A, García-Samaniego J, Conde I, Arencibia A, Arenas J, Gea F, Torras X, Luis Calleja J, Antonio Carrión J, Fernández I, María Morillas R, Rosales JM, Carmona I, Fernández-Rodríguez C, Hernández-Guerra M, Llerena S, Bernal V, Turnes J, González-Santiago JM, Montoliu S, Figueruela B, Badia E, Delgado M, Fernández-Bermejo M, Iñarrairaegui M, Pascasio JM, Esteban R, Mariño Z, Buti M. Effectiveness and safety of sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir in patients with chronic hepatitis C previously treated with DAAs. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 666-672 [PMID: 31203153 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.06.002]

57 **Poordad F**, Pol S, Asatryan A, Buti M, Shaw D, Hézode C, Felizarta F, Reindollar RW, Gordon SC, Pianko S, Fried MW, Bernstein DE, Gallant J, Lin CW, Lei Y, Ng TI, Krishnan P, Kopecky-Bromberg S, Kort J, Mensa FJ. Glecaprevir/Pibrentasvir in patients with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 or 4 and past direct-acting antiviral treatment failure. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 1253-1260 [PMID: 29152781 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29671]

58 **Lok AS**, Sulkowski MS, Kort JJ, Willner I, Reddy KR, Shiffman ML, Hassan MA, Pearlman BL, Hinestrosa F, Jacobson IM, Morelli G, Peter JA, Vainorius M, Michael LC, Fried MW, Wang GP, Lu W, Larsen L, Nelson DR. Efficacy of Glecaprevir and Pibrentasvir in Patients With Genotype 1 Hepatitis C Virus Infection With Treatment Failure After NS5A Inhibitor Plus Sofosbuvir Therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **157**: 1506-1517.e1 [PMID: 31401140 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.08.008]

59 **Pearlman B**, Perrys M, Hinds A. Sofosbuvir/Velpatasvir/Voxilaprevir for Previous Treatment Failures With Glecaprevir/Pibrentasvir in Chronic Hepatitis C Infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2019; **114**: 1550-1552 [PMID: 31082871 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000248]

60 **Wyles D**, Weiland O, Yao B, Weilert F, Dufour JF, Gordon SC, Stoehr A, Brown A, Mauss S, Zhang Z, Pilot-Matias T, Rodrigues L Jr, Mensa FJ, Poordad F. Retreatment of patients who failed glecaprevir/pibrentasvir treatment for hepatitis C virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2019; **70**: 1019-1023 [PMID: 30857780 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.01.031]

61 **Dietz J**, Di Maio VC, de Salazar A, Merino D, Vermehren J, Paolucci S, Kremer AE, Lara M, Pardo MR, Zoller H, Degasperi E, Peiffer KH, Sighinolfi L, Téllez F, Graf C, Ghisetti V, Schreiber J, Fernández-Fuertes E, Boglione L, Muñoz-Medina L, Stauber R, Gennari W, Figueruela B, Santos J, Lampertico P, Zeuzem S, Ceccherini-Silberstein F, García F, Sarrazin C; HCV Virology Italian Resistance Network (VIRONET-C) collaborators; Spanish GEHEP-004 Collaborators; Members of the German HCV resistance study group. Failure on voxilaprevir, velpatasvir, sofosbuvir and efficacy of rescue therapy. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 801-810 [PMID: 33220331 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.11.017]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1079-1097

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1079

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Indeterminate liver lesions on gadoxetic acid-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging of the liver: Case-based radiologic-pathologic review

Jurate Noreikaite, Dekan Albasha, Vijay Chidambaram, Ankur Arora, Ashok Katti

ORCID number: Jurate Noreikaite 0000-0002-9909-1912; Dekan Albasha 0000-0002-3975-3080; Vijay Chidambaram 0000-0002-2363-8432; Ankur Arora 0000-0003-4350-5773; Ashok Katti 0000-0003-2723-5937.

Author contributions: Noreikaite J performed the majority of the writing, literature review and analysis and prepared the figures; Albasha D contributed with design of study, literature review and drafting; Chidambaram V, Arora A and Katti A contributed to this paper with critical revision, editing and final approval of the final revision; Katti A has also provided majority of the case examples; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Jurate Noreikaite, Dekan Albasha, Vijay Chidambaram, Ankur Arora, Ashok Katti, Department of Radiology, Liverpool University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, Liverpool L7 8XP, United Kingdom

Corresponding author: Jurate Noreikaite, MD, Doctor, Department of Radiology, Liverpool University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, Prescot Street, Liverpool L7 8XP, United Kingdom. jurate.noreikaite@liverpoolft.nhs.uk

Abstract

Different histopathological manifestations of focal liver lesions show varying common and uncommon imaging findings and some pathologies may show similar appearance despite of different histopathology. It is necessary to characterise focal liver lesions accurately as not only benign and malignant lesions are managed differently, but also certain benign lesions have differing management. These lesions are increasingly being detected due to rapid growth of use of cross-sectional imaging as well as improvement in image quality and new imaging techniques. Contrast enhanced magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is considered the gold standard technique in characterising focal liver lesions. Addition of gadoxetic acid has been shown to significantly increase diagnostic accuracy in the detection and characterization of liver abnormalities. Classic imaging characteristics of common liver lesions, including their behaviour on gadoxetic acid enhanced MRI, have been described in literature over recent years. It is important to be familiar with the typical aspects of these lesions as well as know the uncommon and overlapping imaging features to reach an accurate diagnosis. In this article, we will review the well-described characteristic imaging findings of common and rare focal liver lesions and present several challenging cases encountered in the clinical setting, namely hepatocellular adenoma, focal nodular hyperplasia, hepatic angiomyolipoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, neuroendocrine tumours as well as a pleomorphic liposarcoma of the liver.

Key Words: Indeterminate liver lesions; Magnetic resonance imaging; Gadoxetic acid; Hepatobiliary phase; Hepatocellular carcinoma

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United Kingdom

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 24, 2021
Peer-review started: February 24, 2021
First decision: June 4, 2021
Revised: June 24, 2021
Accepted: August 6, 2021
Article in press: August 6, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Xu Y
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Li JH

Core Tip: Being familiar with the typical magnetic resonance imaging aspects of focal liver lesions as well as knowing the uncommon and overlapping imaging features can help reach an accurate diagnosis without the need for further interventions. Gadoxetic acid has been shown to significantly increase diagnostic accuracy in the detection and characterization of liver abnormalities, although in certain challenging cases it may be prudent to seek histological confirmation.

Citation: Noreikaite J, Albasha D, Chidambaram V, Arora A, Katti A. Indeterminate liver lesions on gadoxetic acid-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging of the liver: Case-based radiologic-pathologic review. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1079-1097
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1079.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1079

INTRODUCTION

Recent years have seen a rapid growth of the use of cross-sectional imaging as well as an increase in image quality and new imaging techniques. This has led to a rise in the detection of a variety of benign and malignant focal liver lesions. It is necessary to characterise focal liver lesions accurately as not only benign and malignant lesions are managed differently, but also certain benign lesions have differing management. The ability to accurately identify various liver lesions on imaging also saves the patient from biopsy or other invasive interventions needed to reach a diagnosis, which carry associated complications such as bleeding, abdominal pain, or even mortality[1,2].

Contrast enhanced magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is considered the gold standard technique in characterising focal liver lesions because it provides superior tissue contrast resolution, safe contrast agent profile and is ionising radiation free. Gadoxetate disodium (Primovist, Bayer Schering Pharma), also known as gadoxetic acid, in particular, has been shown to significantly increase diagnostic accuracy in the detection and characterisation of focal liver lesions[3,4]. It provides dynamic vascular phases [arterial phase (AP), portal venous phase (PVP) and equilibrium phases] and due to its progressive distribution into functional hepatocytes and bile ducts also a hepatobiliary phase (HBP). Gadoxetic acid has been demonstrated to be invaluable in detecting hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in the cirrhotic liver and distinguishing between focal nodular hyperplasia (FNH) and hepatocellular adenoma (HCA)[4-6].

Different histopathological manifestations of focal liver lesions show varying common and uncommon imaging findings and some pathologies may show similar appearance despite different histopathology. Classic imaging characteristics of common liver lesions, including their behaviour on gadoxetic acid enhanced MRI, have been described in literature over recent years. It is important to be familiar with the typical aspects of these lesions as well as know the uncommon and overlapping imaging features to reach an accurate diagnosis. In this article, we will review the well-described characteristic imaging findings of focal liver lesions and present several challenging cases encountered in the clinical setting.

BENIGN LESIONS

HCA

HCA is a rare benign liver tumour which occurs predominantly in young and middle-aged women and is associated with the use of oral contraceptives or other steroid medications. In contrast to other benign liver tumours, an HCA may be complicated by malignant transformation or bleeding[7]. As such, because of its serious clinical consequences, an HCA is often treated with surgical resection while FNH is managed conservatively in the majority of cases, without the need for surgical intervention. Therefore, accurate diagnosis is important. The use of MRI with a hepato-specific contrast agent, specifically gadoxetic acid, makes the diagnosis relatively easy to reach [5,8,9].

Generally, typical MRI findings seen in HCA include mild to moderate high signal intensity on T2 weighted imaging (T2-WI), sometimes with small cystic areas or

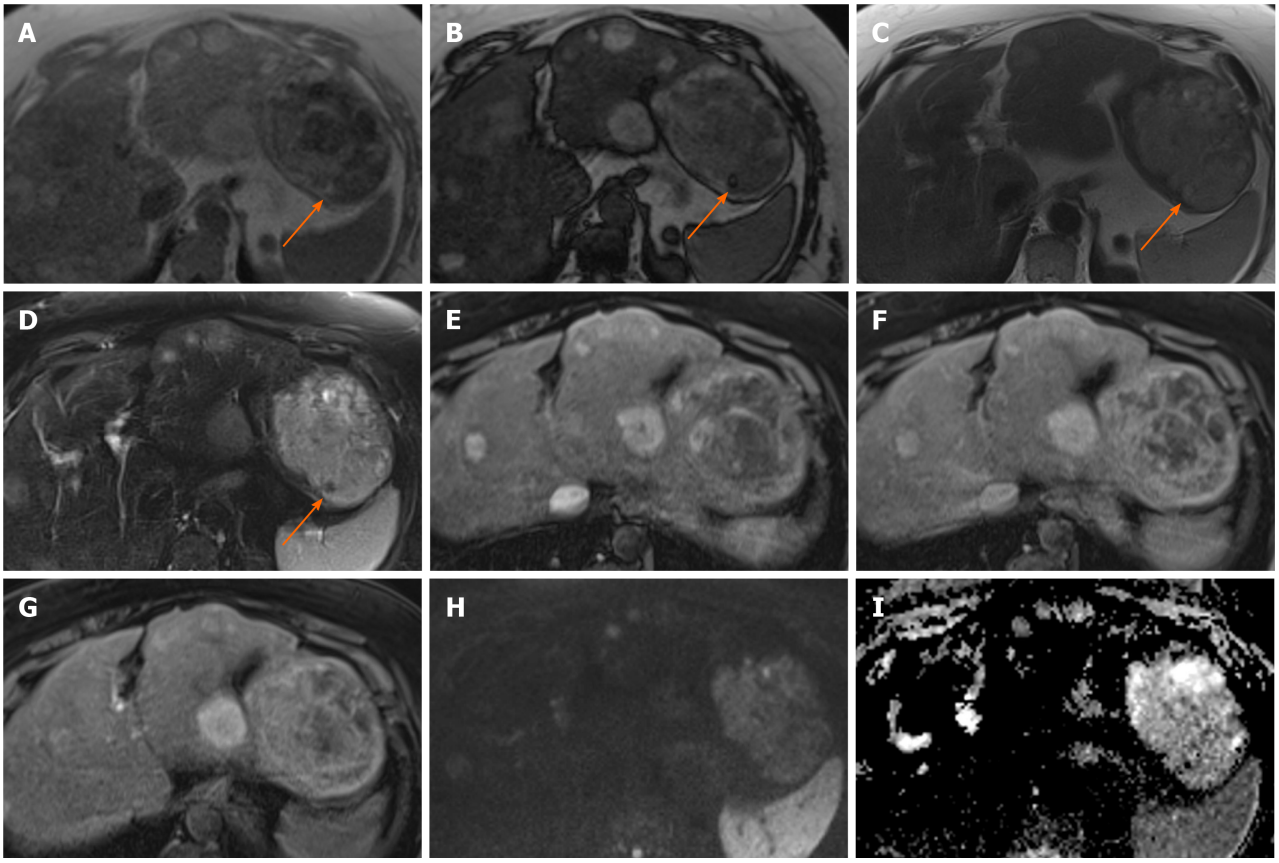


Figure 1 Hepatocellular adenoma. A 42-year-old lady with congenital absence of portal vein and history of use of oral contraceptive medication presented with worsening jaundice. She underwent computed tomography that demonstrated multiple liver lesions that could not be characterised and subsequent magnetic resonance with gadoxetic acid was performed. This demonstrates multiple small lesions showing characteristics those of focal nodular hyperplasia. There is a further exophytic large lesion arising from the left liver lobe. The lesion is well-defined, T2 hyperintense and shows intratumoral fat (arrowed). A: In phase T1; B: Out-of-phase T1; C: T2-weighted imaging (T2-WI); D: Fat suppressed T2-WI; E-G: The arterial (E) and equilibrium (F) phase sequences demonstrates heterogenous enhancement with progressive filling in and there is contrast retention on hepatobiliary phase (G); H and I: Diffusion-weighted imaging (H) and apparent diffusion coefficient (I) sequences show no restricted diffusion. Due to atypical appearances this was resected and histology revealed this to be an adenoma with background steatotic liver.

diffuse homogeneous steatosis of the lesion and it may show internal bleeding or atoll sign. FNH classically shows the presence of a T2-weighted (T2-W) hyperintense central scar. Both lesions show enhancement on the AP imaging and tend to be isointense in the PVP[10]. In particular, when compared with background liver parenchyma, on the HBP image an HCA is hypointense in the majority of cases whereas FNH is hyper- or isointense. FNH is composed of functional hepatocytes with abnormal biliary ductules and is therefore expected to accumulate hepatobiliary specific contrast agents, while HCA traditionally has been thought of as not having bile ductules and would often be expected to not retain such contrast[8].

The diagnostic conundrums are usually encountered when differentiating between HCA and malignant entities and characterising different molecular types of HCA (Figures 1 and 2). HCAs are classified into few major molecular subtypes: HNF1α inactivated HCA (H-HCA), inflammatory HCA (IHCA), β-catenin activated HCA (β-HCA) and β-catenin activated inflammatory HCA (β-IHCA) and sonic hedgehog HCA. The term Unclassified HCA is applied to those HCAs in which no specific mutation is identified[11]. The highest risk of malignant transformation was shown in mixed β-catenin-activated and inflammatory and β-catenin-activated forms[11]. Hepatobiliary contrast agent retention in the HBP can be seen in 83% of β-HCAs, 29% of IHCAs and not been demonstrated in H-HCA and unclassified HCAs[12]. Hyperintensity on HBP of HCAs could potentially help identify HCAs at high risk of malignancy[13]. However, this feature of high-risk HCAs makes it harder to differentiate radiologically from FNH which is hyperintense on HBP. Other MRI features may be helpful such as the presence of a central scar, the heterogeneous "periseptal" uptake of FNH on HBP, or other MR phases features. In addition, β-HCA typically demonstrates a subtle heterogenous hyperintense signal on T2-WI MRI, unlike FNH[12]. It is suggested that in patients with inflammatory HCA risk factors (such as obesity, metabolic syndrome,

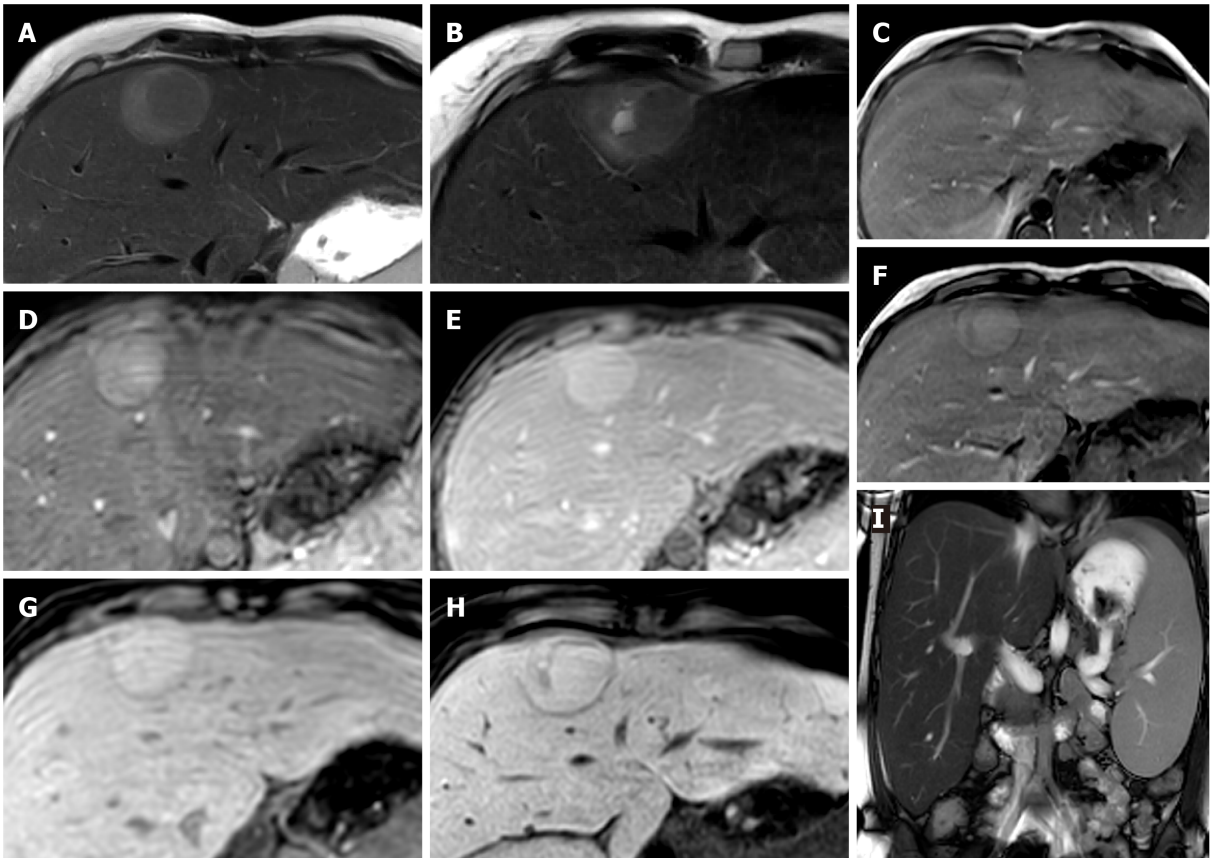


Figure 2 Hepatocellular adenoma. A 27-year-old lady with background of glycogen storage type 1 disease. A and B: Segment IVA liver lesion demonstrating mild T2 hyperintensity with atoll sign (A) and cystic foci (B); C and F: No signal drop out on out-of-phase (F) when compared to in-phase (C) T1-weighted sequence; D, E and G: There is quite homogenous hyperenhancement on arterial phase (D) with no washout on portal venous (E) and delayed (G) phases; H: Hepatobiliary phase shows contrast retention within the lesion; I: Coronal T2-weighted shows hepatosplenomegaly as features of glycogen storage disease type I. The lesion has increased in size and therefore was resected, histology revealed an inflammatory subtype hepatocellular adenoma.

and alcohol use), relying on MRI features alone to differentiate FNH from inflammatory HCA may not be appropriate[8]. Histopathological analysis may be required in certain cases still, in order to achieve the final diagnosis.

FNH

FNH is the second most frequent benign hepatic tumour (haemangioma being the most common). It is found most typically in women in their 3rd-5th decades of life. FNH is rarely symptomatic and usually found incidentally[14], unless very large in which case it can cause vague abdominal pain. There is some debate whether FNH is caused by or associated with use of oral contraceptives, but it may promote the growth of FNH. An FNH, contrary to HCA, has no malignant potential or life-threatening complications, and as such a surgical resection or further evaluation is not required if a diagnosis can be made confidently on imaging.

FNH is believed to represent a local hyperplastic response of hepatocytes to a congenital vascular anomaly. It is a proliferation of normal, non-neoplastic hepatocytes that are abnormally arranged. Normal portal venous structures are not present, but most lesions contain thick-walled arterial vessels that provide outstanding arterial supply; therefore haemorrhage, infarction and necrosis would be extremely rare[14]. Although the lesions have well-demarcated margins, they do not have a true capsule, which is consistent with their hyperplastic rather than neoplastic nature.

Typical MR features of FNH are iso- or mild hypointensity on T1-weighted imaging (T1-WI) and an iso- or slightly hyperintense lesion on T2-W sequences. FNH is known to have a classic central stellate fibrovascular scar, which is only seen in about 50% of cases and when present usually shows a high signal intensity on T2-WI. FNH is homogeneously and strongly enhanced on AP except for the central scar. It becomes isointense to the liver parenchyma during portal phase, with the central scar remaining relatively hypointense. The central scar typically shows enhancement in delayed phase. On the HBP FNH becomes iso- to hyperintense compared to surrounding liver without or with hypointense central scar[10]. Size of > 5 cm,

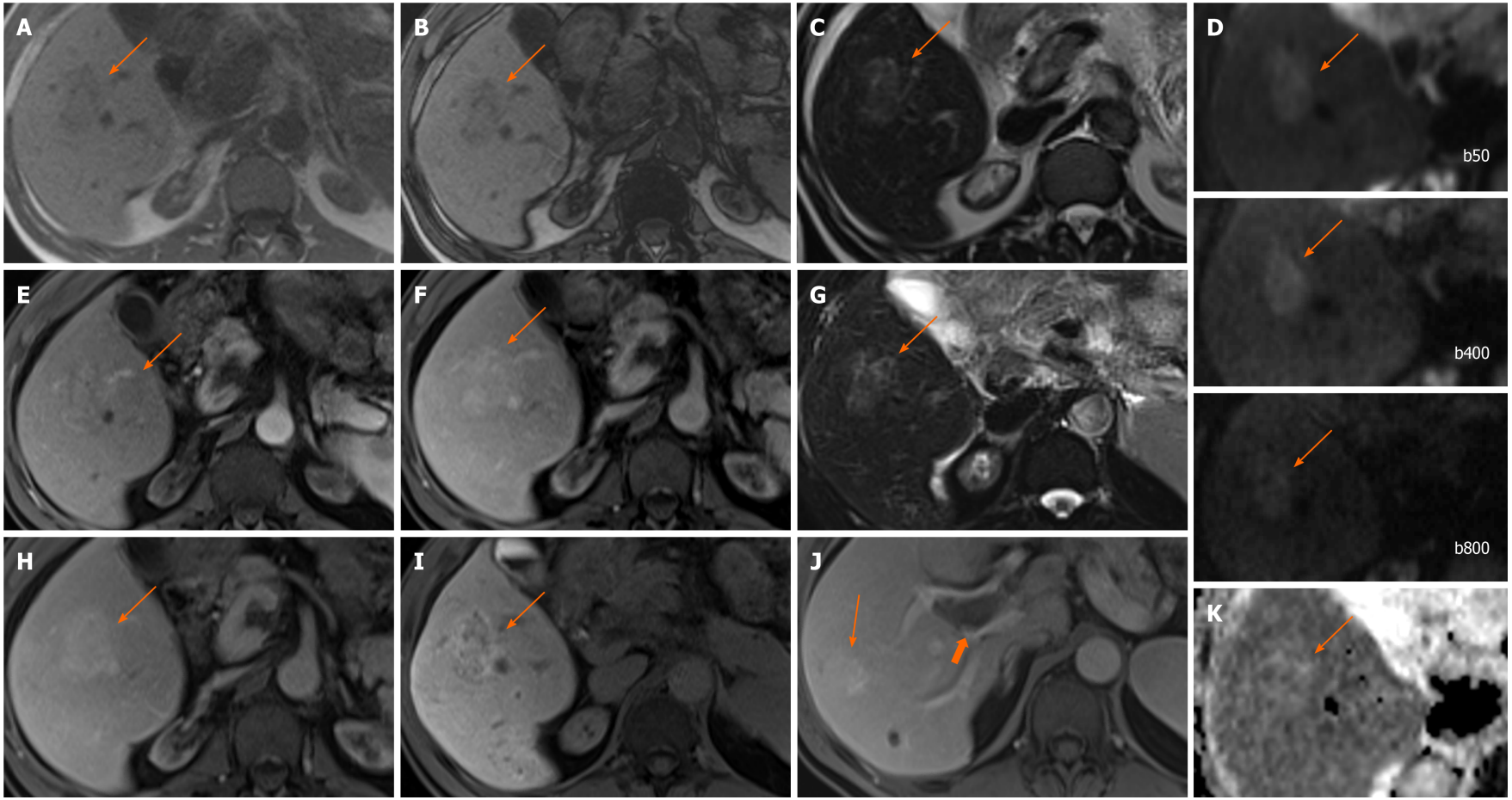


Figure 3 Focal nodular hyperplasia. A 53-year-old woman with background of renal failure with renal transplant and history of autoimmune hepatitis since childhood. She underwent ultrasound (US) of the abdomen after an episode of pancreatitis which identified portal vein thrombosis. Subsequent unenhanced computed tomography (due to poor renal function) demonstrated a liver lesion in segment 5. Initially contrast US was attempted due to renal failure, which showed liver lesions to be multiple, but the lesions were indeterminate and subsequent magnetic resonance with gadoxetic acid was performed. Largest lesion in segment 5 selected as example. A and B: In-(A) and out-(B) of phase imaging shows some signal loss and mildly hypointense T1-weighted signal of the ill-defined right lobe lesion; C and G: T2-weighted without (C) and with fat suppression (G) show mildly hyperintense T2 signal; D and K: Diffusion-weighted imaging (D) and apparent diffusion coefficient (K) images show no diffusion restriction. E, F, and H: There is heterogenous enhancement on arterial phase (E) with no washout and slightly more homogenous contrast enhancement on portal venous (F) and delayed (H) phases; I and J: Heterogenous contrast uptake persists on hepatobiliary phase (I), which is mostly rim-like. Further similar lesion demonstrated on portal venous phase (J) in segment 7 (long arrow) and the known portal vein thrombus (short arrow). Initial radiological diagnosis favoured hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver function tests were normal. Initial non targeted liver biopsy was inconclusive for underlying cirrhosis. Second targeted lesion biopsy was performed. Both specimens were further reviewed in a national liver centre. Histology of the lesion was consistent with focal nodular hyperplasia and background liver demonstrated no cirrhosis, but signs consistent with nodular regenerative hyperplasia.

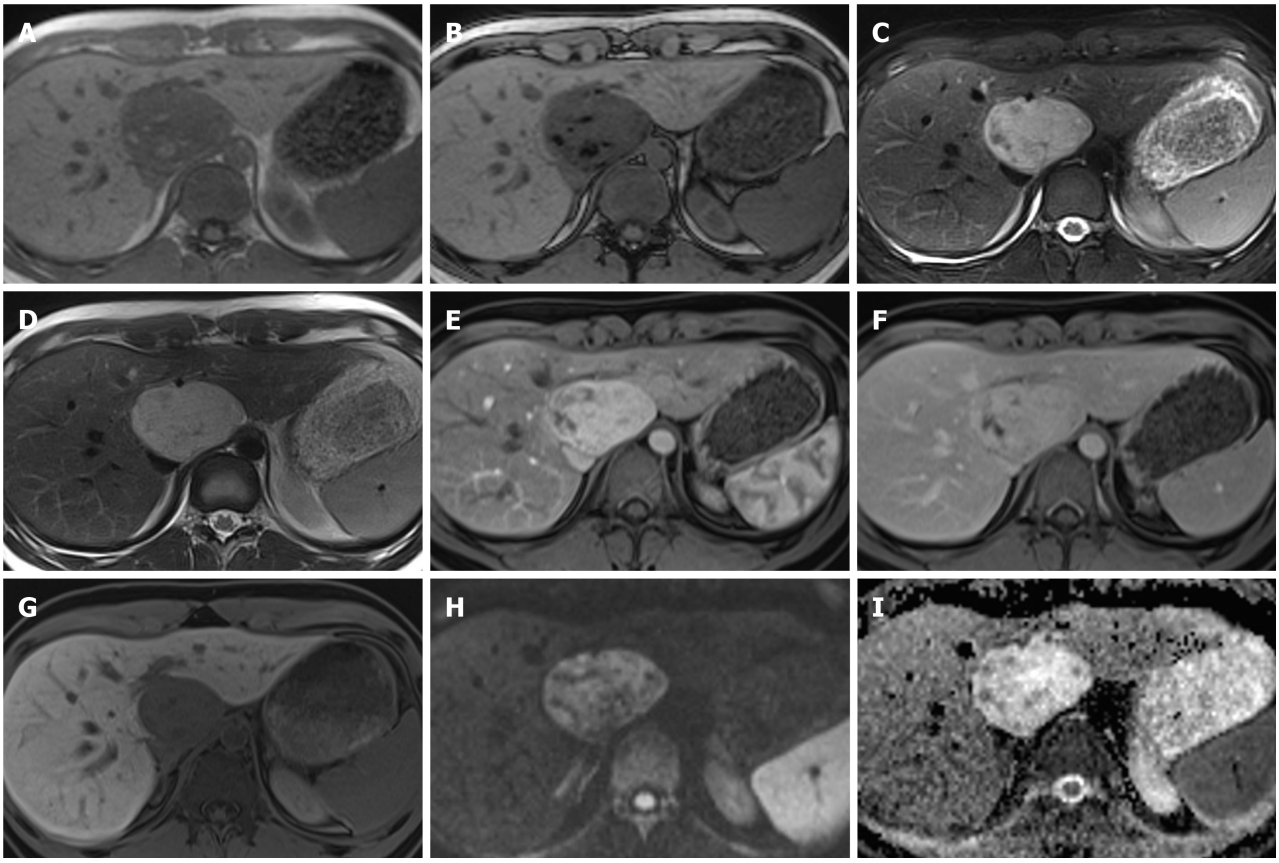


Figure 4 Hepatic angiomyolipoma. A 21-year-old man referred by general practitioner for ultrasound of liver due to 6-mo history of intermittent abdominal pain and isolated raised bilirubin, treated as Gilbert's syndrome. The patient had no prior medical history, no use of drugs or steroids and was not a heavy drinker. Incidental liver lesion was found and patient underwent subsequent magnetic resonance (MR) with gadoxetic acid to characterise this further. This was initially described as adenoma, but as the lesion increased in size on follow up imaging it was resected. Histology showed this to be an angiomyolipoma. A and B: MR demonstrates well-defined lesion with high signal foci on T1 in-phase (A) showing loss of signal on out-of-phase imaging (B); C and D: There are also hypointense foci on fat suppressed T2-weighted (C) when compared to T2-weighted imaging without fat suppression (D); E and F: The lesion shows enhancement on arterial phase (E) with no washout on equilibrium phase (F) and no pseudocapsule; G: There is no contrast uptake on hepatobiliary phase; H and I: No diffusion restriction as seen on diffusion-weighted imaging (H) and apparent diffusion coefficient (I) sequences.

presence of multiple lesions and evidence of haemorrhage and necrosis are considered atypical[15]. Rarely FNH may contain fat. Cases mimicking HCC, for example complete perfusion defect on HBP[16], and various enhancement patterns (Figure 3), such as a peripheral ring-like enhancement without a visible central scar, have also been described[16,17].

Hepatic angiomyolipoma

Hepatic angiomyolipoma (HAML) is a rare, hepatic mesenchymal neoplasm which more frequently occurs in the kidneys, with the liver representing the second most common site of involvement[18]. It is found in both males and females, and in a majority of cases is asymptomatic. The tumour consists of 3 components: fat, vascular and smooth muscle. These components can vary significantly within each lesion and it is this heterogeneity that proves the preoperative diagnosis by imaging difficult (Figure 4).

The presence of fatty areas and solid tissue components is considered typical, however due to a significant overlap of the imaging features, most HAMLs are misdiagnosed as HCC with fatty metamorphosis. Both of these lesions show comparable dynamic enhancement patterns during the AP, followed by low signal intensity on PVP or late dynamic phases[19,20]. Generally, HAMLs are lacking hepatocytes, whereas HCCs contain hepatocytes with various degrees of malignant change, which in turn leads to a more homogeneous hypointensity on HBP compared with that of the spleen and sharper margins in HAML, compared to heterogeneous signal intensity and the ill-defined margin of HCCs at the HBP[19].

In a study by Wang *et al*[21], absence of a pseudo capsule, presence of an early draining vein and tumour vessels, and a higher apparent diffusion coefficient (ADC) in the hypervascular hepatic tumour on the MRI were helpful to distinguish a HAML

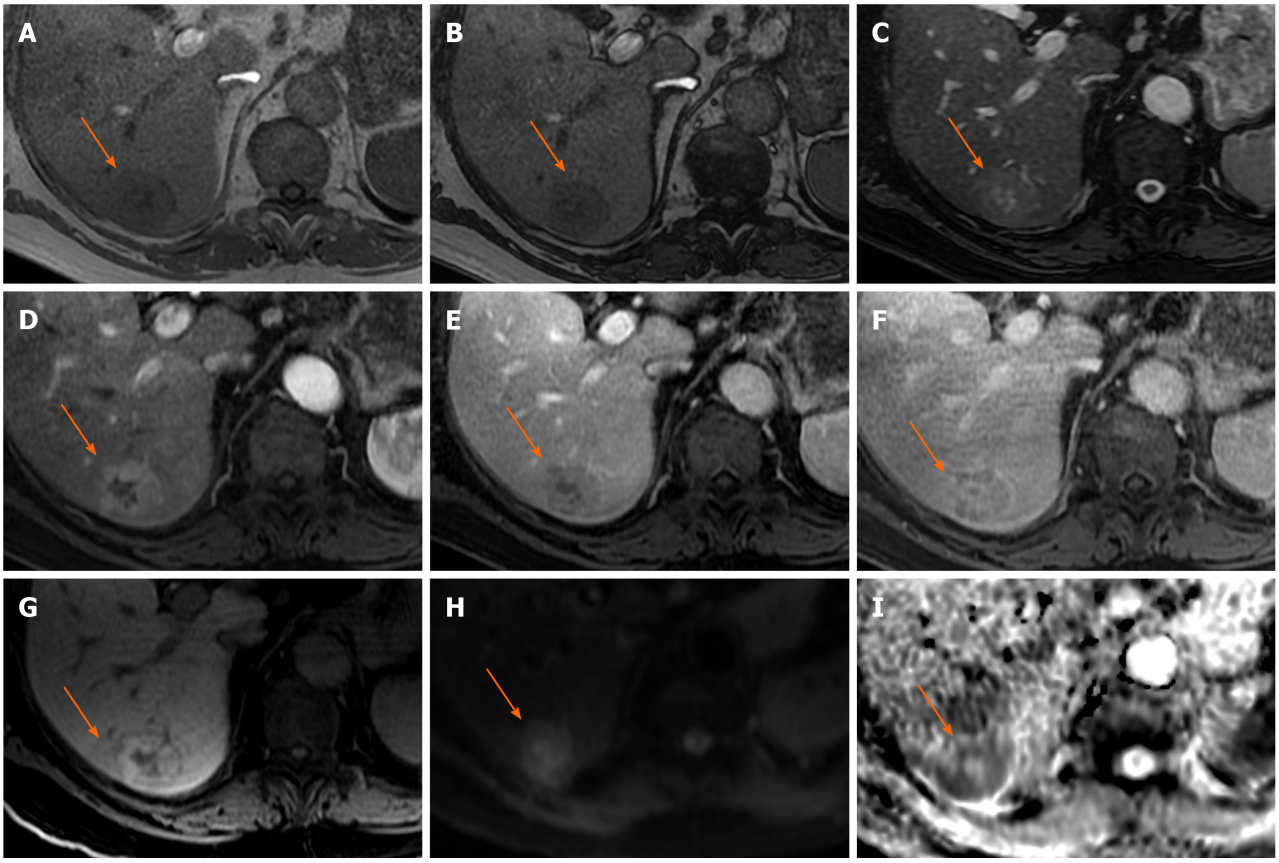


Figure 5 Hepatocellular carcinoma. A 74-year-old man presented with incidental liver lesion found on routine computed tomography colonography. He had normal liver function and alpha-fetoprotein levels. The lesion had undergone further characterisation with magnetic resonance. A and B: There is no evidence of intralesional fat on T1-weighted in-phase (A) and out-of-phase (B) sequences; C: On T2-weighted images, the lesion is nearly isointense to the background liver and shows a hyperintense central scar, which can sometimes be seen in focal nodular hyperplasia; D-F: The lesion then demonstrates enhancement on the arterial phase (D) with evidence of washout as compared to background liver parenchyma on the portal venous (E) and delayed phases (F); there is also subtle peripheral enhancement on the delayed phase, likely representing a capsule, but the central scar remains largely unenhanced throughout; G: Hepatobiliary phase sequence demonstrates uptake of contrast in the majority of the lesion, with no uptake in the central scar and rim; H and I: diffusion-weighted imaging 500 (H) and low apparent diffusion coefficient (I) images suggest areas of diffusion restriction. Due to patient's age, gender and indeterminate contrast characteristic, the lesion was resected. Histology showed the lesion was a well to moderately differentiated hepatocellular carcinoma. There was no background cirrhosis, but evidence of mild steatosis.

from fat-containing HCC. The presence of an early draining vein is considered a conspicuous dilated or non-dilated vessel originating from the tumour with draining to the portal vein, hepatic vein, or inferior vena cava. A tumour pseudo capsule is defined as a thin hyperintense rind in the equilibrium phase.

Although historically HAML is considered a benign lesion, few case reports have discovered a potential for malignant transformation with evidence of recurrence[20,22,23]. As such, the potential risk of malignant changes of HAML needs to be recognised and some authors suggest that these lesions should be followed up after surgery.

MALIGNANT LESIONS

HCC

HCC is the commonest primary hepatic malignancy, showing an increasing worldwide prevalence[24,25]. Cirrhosis constitutes a crucial risk factor for the development of HCC with the estimated prevalence of cirrhosis among patients with HCC of 80%-90%[26]. Having an underlying liver disease impacts the management and therapeutic options. Due to high rates of intrahepatic recurrence, the prognosis for patients with advanced HCC remains poor[27], however when diagnosed at an early stage, curative treatments such as surgical resection, liver transplantation, and radiofrequency ablation are possible. Hence, precise imaging diagnosis in patients with early-stage HCC is crucial.

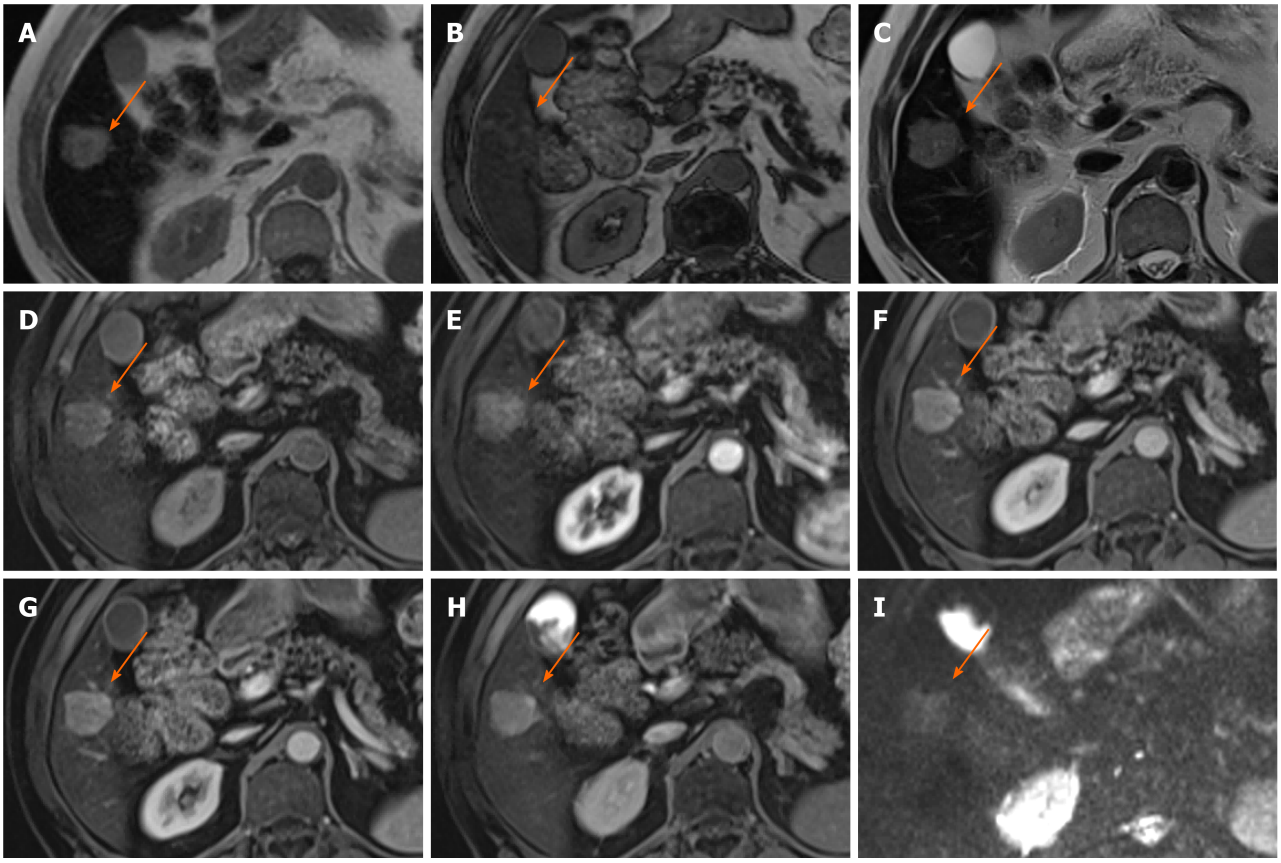


Figure 6 Hepatocellular carcinoma. A 80-year-old man presented with haematuria and was found to have an incidental liver lesion on computed tomography. His liver function tests were normal. A and B: Magnetic resonance demonstrates signal loss throughout the liver, with paradoxical increase in signal on out-of-phase (B) imaging when compared to in-phase (A), suggestive of underlying iron overload; C: Segment 5 liver lesion shows signal loss on out-of-phase sequences suggesting fat contents and is of high T1 and T2 signal; D: Pre-contrast images; E-G: Subtraction sequences were not performed, but allowing for this, there is some enhancement on arterial phase (E), which persists into portal venous (F) and delayed phases (G); H and I: There is contrast retention on hepatobiliary phase (H) and no diffusion restriction (I–b400). Further tests performed confirmed genetic hemochromatosis. Portal venous pressure measurement also showed portal hypertension. Lesional biopsy confirmed this to be a moderately differentiated hepatocellular carcinoma in a background of cirrhosis, which was subsequently ablated.

To address this, the Liver Imaging Reporting and Data System (LI-RADS) was created. It is a comprehensive system for standardising the terminology, technique, interpretation, reporting, and data collection of liver imaging. The primary blood supply of normal hepatocytes is *via* the portal venous system, in contrast to HCC which is supplied by abnormal hepatic arteries. Consequent imaging features are of a lesion which enhances during the late AP (non-rim) with subsequent progressive washout of contrast relative to background liver parenchyma and a peripheral rim of enhancement (pseudocapsule) on either PVP or delayed phase imaging[28,29]. Apparent hypointensity relative to liver in the transitional phase may potentially represent hyperenhancement of liver rather than reduced enhancement of the mass, therefore it is recommended that when gadoxetate disodium is administered as contrast media, washout is evaluated only in the PVP[30]. Additional major LI-RADS features include threshold growth (increase in size of 50% or more within 6-mo time during follow-up imaging) and size.

Hypointensity on HBP is considered an ancillary feature favouring malignancy and HBP isointensity an ancillary feature suggesting benignity[28]. However, hyperintensity on HBP phase has been demonstrated in 8.8%–13.6% of HCCs[31,32]. Such HCCs are rather difficult to differentiate from FNH on gadoxetic acid enhanced MR (Figures 5-9).

A study by Kitao *et al*[33] found that the washout pattern was observed in only 57% of HBP hyperintense HCCs at dynamic MRI *vs* 95.8% on dynamic computed tomography (CT). The reason for this is thought to be that gadoxetic acid is already taken up into tumour cells in the transitional phase by hyperintense HCCs. Therefore, the addition of CT may be helpful as AP enhancement and washout pattern at dynamic CT, as well as a decrease in ADC ratio, were shown to be independent predictors of hyperintense HCC[33]. Overall, hyperintense HCCs seem to have clinical and histologic features that might be related with more favourable outcomes[31].

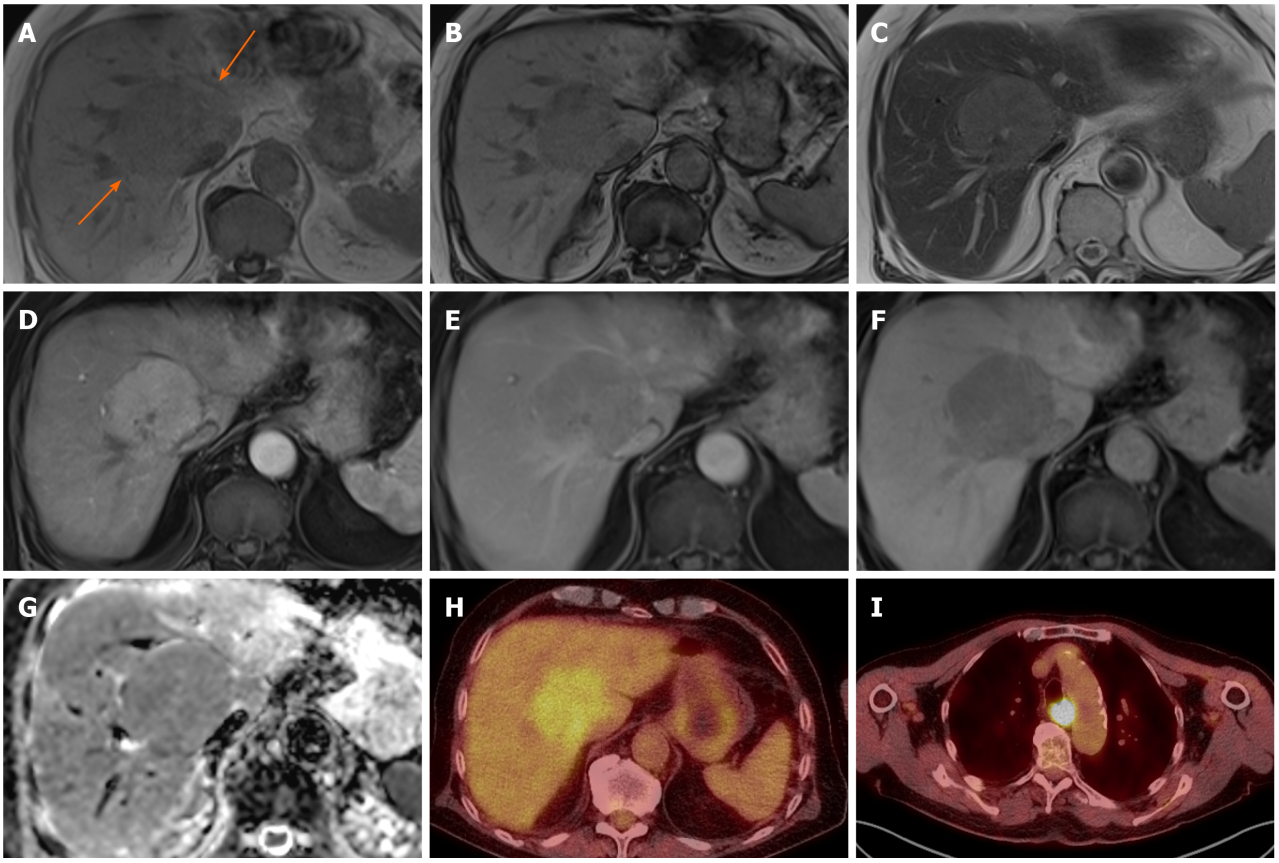


Figure 7 Hepatocellular carcinoma. A 79-year-old with previous prostate cancer has undergone a magnetic resonance (MR) pelvis and was found to have prostatic cancer recurrence and a liver mass. He has undergone staging computed tomography which showed a further area of oesophageal thickening. Endoscopy revealed oesophageal tumour and biopsy confirmed this to be a squamous cell carcinoma. MR liver and positron emission tomography (PET) scan were performed to characterise these and determine whether liver lesion is a metastasis from oesophageal or prostate primary. Alpha-fetoprotein value was 10 at time of diagnosis. A and B: In- (A) and out-of-phase (B) sequences show low T1 signal liver mass with no intratumoral fat; C: It is of mildly high signal on T2 sequences; D and E: There is homogenous arterial enhancement (D) with washout on portal venous (E) phase; F and G: No contrast retention on hepatobiliary phase (F) and isointense to low signal on apparent diffusion coefficient (G); H and I: PET scan shows tracer uptake within the liver lesion (H), however this is of lower standardized uptake value than the oesophageal cancer (I). Targeted liver lesion biopsy confirmed this to be a hepatocellular carcinoma.

An appearance of smooth hypointense rim in the HBP could also improve the detection of tumour capsule and the diagnosis of HCC[34].

Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma

Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma (ICC) is the second most common primary hepatic tumour. Although it accounts for only 3% of gastrointestinal malignancies, the incidence of ICC has been rising worldwide[35]. Risk factors include chemical exposure, liver flukes, biliary tract disease (primary sclerosing cholangitis, hepatolithiasis, Caroli's disease), viral hepatitis, metabolic syndrome, cirrhosis, smoking and alcohol[35,36]. Of note, a large proportion of ICC patients (38.9%) have no identifiable risk factors[36] and further studies are required to explore this.

ICC can be classified into three types according to the Liver Cancer Study Group of Japan classification based on morphologic features with each type demonstrating its characteristic imaging features: Mass-forming (the most common, definite mass in the liver parenchyma), periductal-infiltrating (extends longitudinally along the bile duct, often resulting in dilatation of the peripheral bile duct), and intraductal growth (proliferating towards the lumen of the bile duct like a papilla or tumour thrombus)[37]. As part of the focal liver lesions review, we will discuss the appearances of the mass-forming ICC on gadoxetic acid enhanced MRI.

The mass-forming ICC shows an irregular, but well-defined margin with hyperintensity at T2-WI and low signal at T1-WI. Capsular retraction, encasement of vessels without the formation of a grossly perceivable tumour thrombus, and presence of satellite nodules are often seen[38]. The usual enhancement pattern demonstrated by ICC is peripheral irregular enhancement in the AP and gradual centripetal enhancement on subsequent phases. Similarly to HCC, due to the pseudo-washout effect on gadoxetic acid-enhanced MRI, it is recommended that washout is assessed on

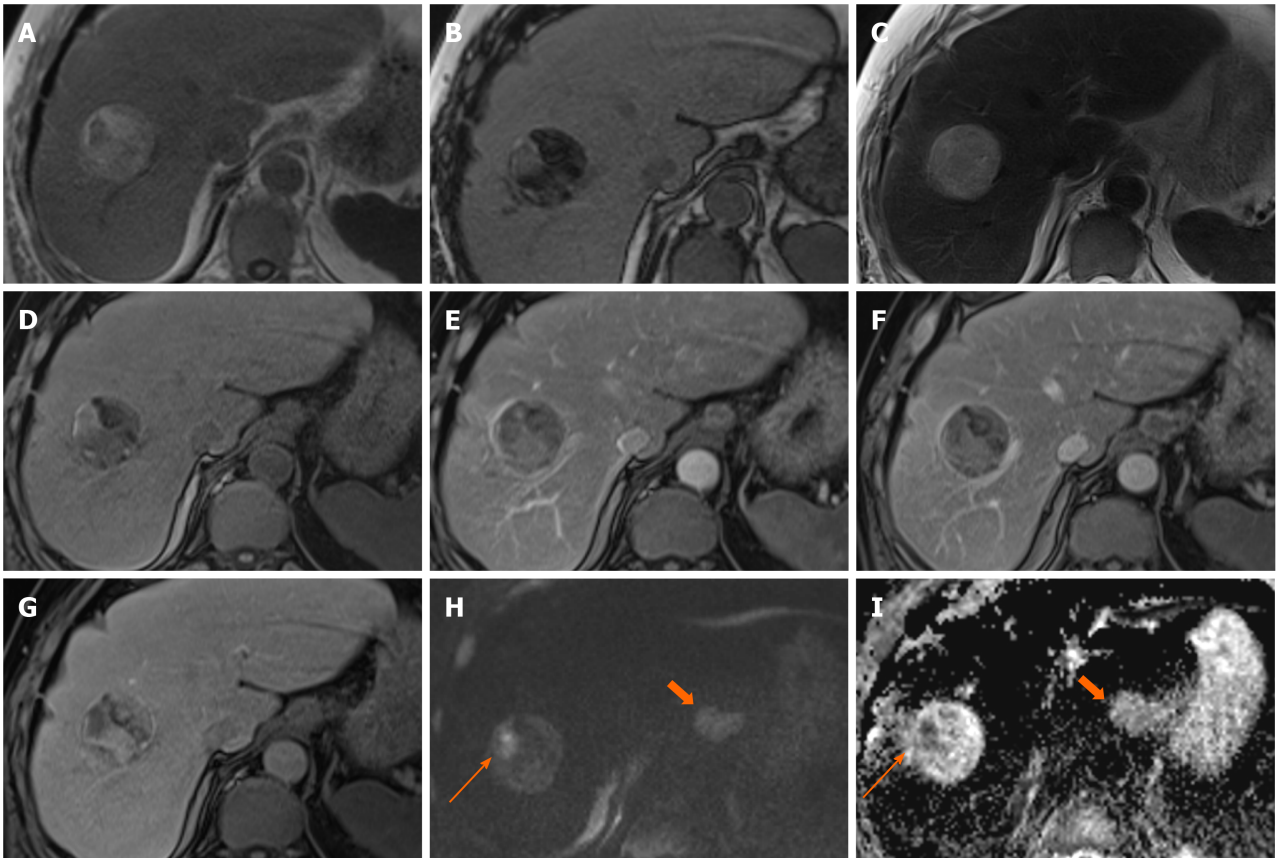


Figure 8 Hepatocellular carcinoma. A 71-year-old underwent computed tomography chest, abdomen and pelvis for anaemia which identified ascending colon thickening and a liver lesion. Colonoscopy confirmed malignant lesion in the ascending colon and histology showed this to be an adenocarcinoma. Magnetic resonance of liver was performed to characterise the liver mass. A and B: This demonstrates a well-defined lesion with the majority of it showing fat component [signal loss on out-of-phase (B) compared to in-phase (A)] except for a small part laterally; C: It is of mildly high signal on T2 sequences; D: Unenhanced sequence; E-G: There are areas of patchy enhancement on arterial (E) and portal venous (F) phases with heterogenous contrast retention on hepatobiliary phase (G); H and I: This part also shows marked diffusion restriction (long arrow, H–diffusion-weighted imaging b800, I–apparent diffusion coefficient). Diffusion sequences also identified a lymph node showing restricted diffusion (short arrow). Subsequent endoscopy was organised which demonstrated an oesophageal lesion, and biopsies of this, and the adjacent lymph node proved it to be a squamous cell carcinoma. Even with two other primaries, the liver lesion was not considered typical for a metastasis radiologically and targeted biopsy was performed. Histology showed well to moderately differentiated hepatocellular carcinoma.

PVP[39,40]. Histologically the viable tumour cells are often seen at the periphery of the tumour, while the central portion is composed of a variable degree of fibrosis. The majority of the tumours with severe fibrosis show delayed enhancement[38]. Intrahepatic mass-forming cholangiocarcinomas lack hepatocytes and in turn are often hypointense on HBP which helps to delineate the lesion itself, the satellite nodules and intrahepatic metastases due to strong enhancement of normal liver parenchyma on HBP[41]. Tumours with intermediate signal intensity on HBP tend to correlate with poor prognosis and histologically are shown to have more abundant fibrous stroma [42]. Therefore, imaging with gadoxetic acid could be used for prognostication. In a study by Choi *et al*[40] peritumoral bile duct dilatation and HBP target appearance (peripheral hypointense rim compared with the central area of the lesion) were independent factors suggestive of ICC (Figure 10).

Neuroendocrine tumours

Neuroendocrine tumours (NETs) consist of a vast heterogeneous group of malignancies which are derived from embryonic neural crest tissue found in various organs. The gastrointestinal tract accounts for 54.5%-73.7% of the tumours[43,44]. Within the gastrointestinal tract, the small intestine is the most common site, followed by the rectum, appendix, colon, and stomach. NETs comprise approximately 1%–2% of all gastrointestinal tumours. In the liver, NETs usually represent metastases from other sites, therefore other primary sites should be examined when a NET is suspected in the liver. Tumours with no identifiable primary site typically originate from unrecognised, small or "burned-out" gastroenteropancreatic NETs[45], however a primary hepatic location, while extremely rare, has been reported in the literature[46-48].

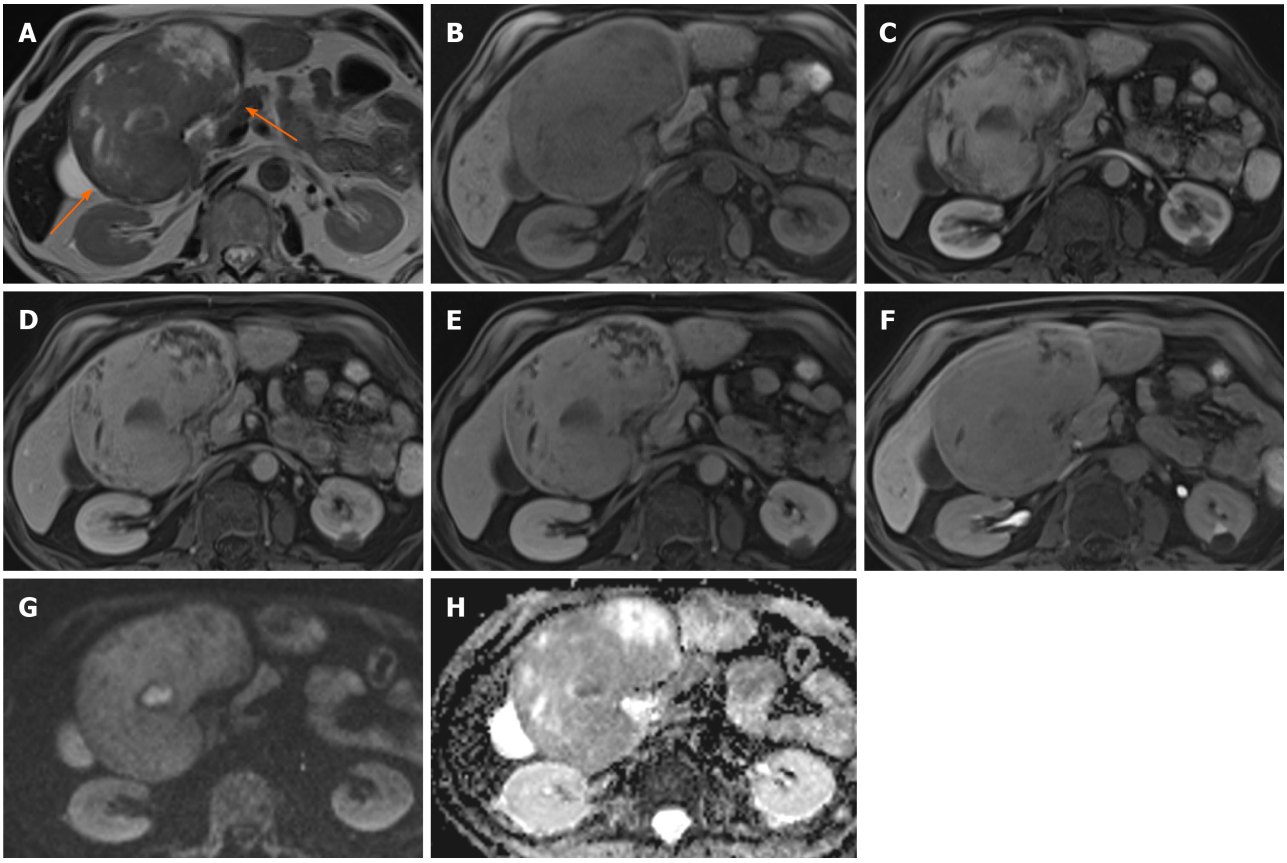


Figure 9 Hepatocellular carcinoma. A 70-year-old man with a transient episode of frank haematuria as part of the investigations into this, was incidentally found to have a large liver mass arising from the left lobe of the liver. He had previous history of tongue cancer. Liver function tests were normal and alpha-fetoprotein was 2 throughout. A: The lesion (arrowed) is mostly hypointense on T2-weighted sequence with heterogenous areas of high signal; B and C: On T1-weighted sequence (B) it shows iso- to hypointense signal and there is heterogenous arterial enhancement (C); D and E: There is some further filling in on portal venous phase (D) where the lesion is now isointense to the liver parenchyma, similarly to delayed phase (E); F: On hepatobiliary phase the mass is hypointense to background liver; G and H: Diffusion-weighted imaging sequence (G) at b value of 800 shows a focal nodule within the lesion that is markedly hyperintense and on apparent diffusion coefficient (H) hypointense in keeping with diffusion restriction. The lesion was resected and histology confirmed moderately differentiated hepatocellular carcinoma.

NET liver metastases generally are hyperintense on T2-WI. Hypervascular metastases regularly show heterogeneous intense enhancement in the AP and ring enhancement is also a frequent finding[49]. Hypovascular metastases are best appreciated on PVP, similar to CT, and appear as low-signal intensity lesions relative to the liver parenchyma (Figures 11 and 12). Perilesional enhancement is frequent in the venous phase. A peripheral low-signal intensity area may be observed on the delayed phase[49]. Because of high signal intensity on T2-WI, NET liver metastases may be difficult to distinguish from cavernous haemangioma, however, unlike NET metastases, haemangiomas do not typically washout and less commonly restrict diffusion. While variable lesion enhancement is seen with dynamic postcontrast images, NET liver metastases generally demonstrate hypoenhancement relative to liver parenchyma on HBP images[50] and HBP imaging is shown to improve detection of NET liver metastases[51,52].

Primary hepatic NETs (PHNETs) generally grow slowly and only become clinically evident at an advanced stage. They most often appear as an endocrinologically silent hepatic mass and are less frequently associated with typical carcinoid syndrome, unlike extrahepatic NETs[47]. In preoperative imaging, PHNETs are often misdiagnosed as HCC or cholangiocarcinoma. Radiological findings are similar for both primary and metastatic NETs[53]. Similarly to NET liver metastases, PHNETs tend to be hypervascular and markedly enhance, and while they are usually solid, cystic PHNETs have been described. Fluid-fluid levels have also been described in some cases[46,54] (Figure 13). Most lesions demonstrate delayed contrast wash-out due to hypervascularity and central necrosis, but progressive enhancement has also been reported[55]. ADC values typically show restricted diffusion.

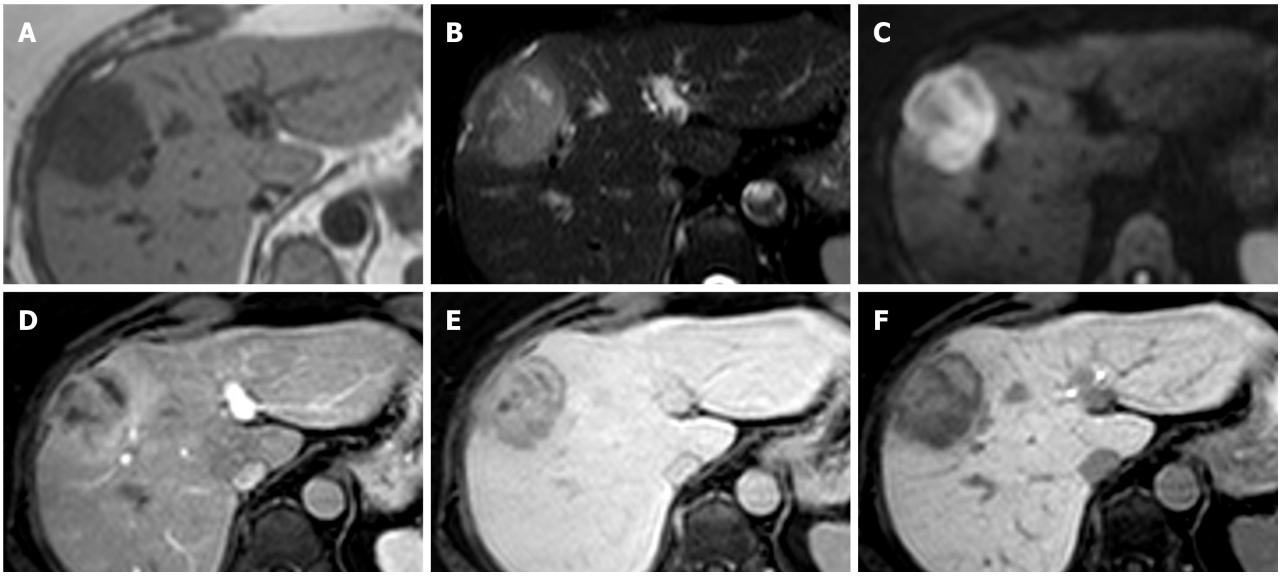


Figure 10 Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. A 64-year-old female with background of hepatitis C cirrhosis was found to have a liver lesion on surveillance ultrasound. Initial magnetic resonance (MR) with extracellular contrast material was reported as likely hepatocellular carcinoma or metastasis. Biopsy confirmed cholangiocarcinoma and gadoxetic acid enhanced MR was organised to exclude satellite lesions and intrahepatic metastases. A-C: MR shows a right liver lobe lesion which is hypointense on T1-weighted imaging (A), hyperintense on T2-weighted imaging (B) and shows diffusion restriction on b800 diffusion-weighted imaging (C); D and E: On arterial phase (D) there is peripheral enhancement with progressive centripetal enhancement on delayed phases (E); F: Hepatobiliary phase shows a hypointense rim with a cloud-like inhomogeneous central enhancement. No further malignant liver lesions demonstrated.

Liposarcoma

Liposarcoma is a rare malignant mesenchymal tumour usually located in the retroperitoneal space and the deep soft tissues of the extremities, particularly those of the thigh. Hepatic location is extremely rare, few cases have been reported in the literature[56]. Early diagnosis of primary liposarcoma of liver is difficult. In liver, they are often misdiagnosed as adenomas (Figure 14).

Generally minimal enhancement is seen in liposarcomas that are well-differentiated, and more so with round cell, pleomorphic, and dedifferentiated subtypes[56]. Associated non-adipose masses, thickened or nodular septa, prominent foci of high T2 signal, and areas of enhancement are all features suspicious for liposarcoma[57]. Higher grade liposarcomas commonly contain little to no macroscopic fat and may not confound the MRI diagnosis of predominantly fatty lesions. Areas of haemorrhage and necrosis can be seen.

CONCLUSION

The various types of liver lesions demonstrate diverse imaging appearances due to common and uncommon features as well as overlapping imaging findings. Familiarising with these entities and their characteristic appearances can help in making an accurate diagnosis.

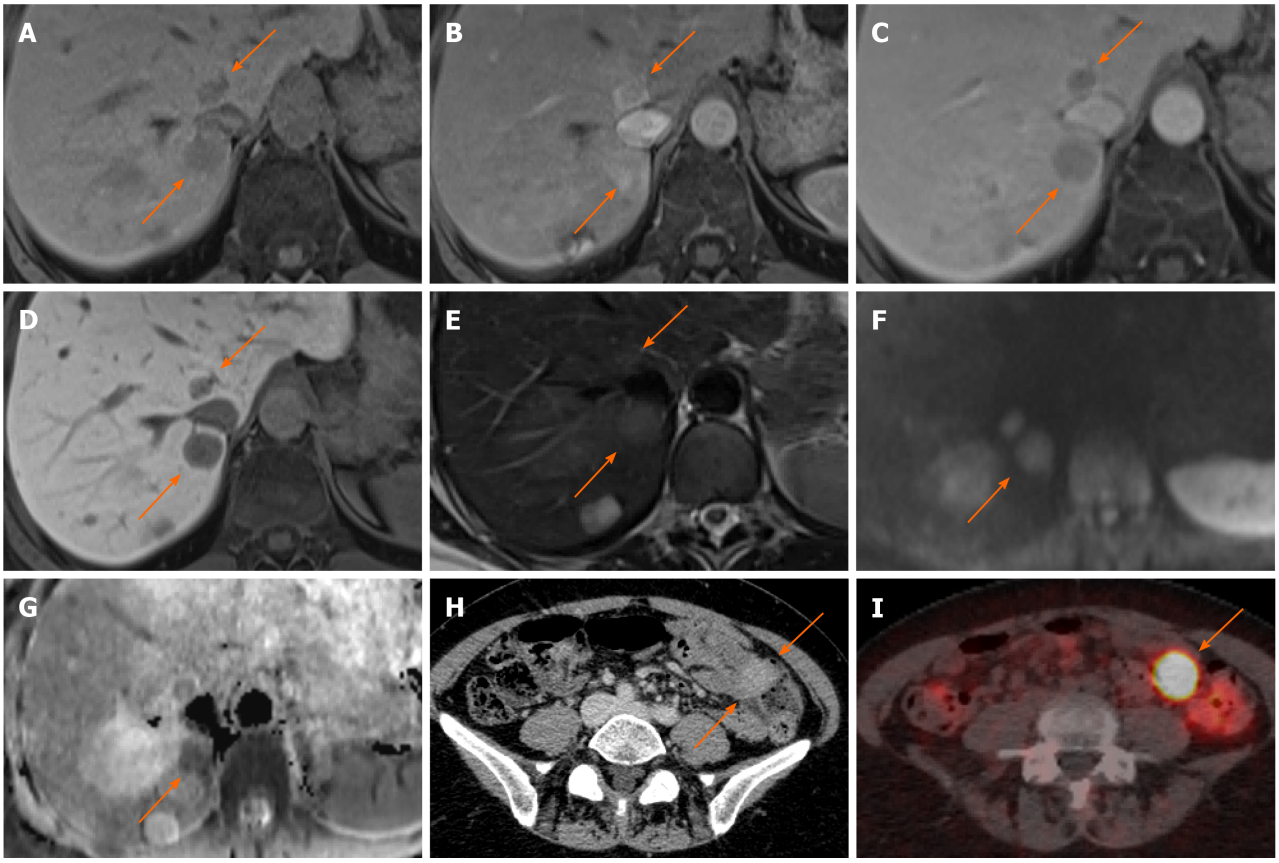


Figure 11 Neuroendocrine carcinoma metastases. A 55-year-old female with anaemia underwent computed tomography (CT) which identified multiple liver lesions. Magnetic resonance liver was performed and confirmed multiple haemangiomas and few other lesions, two of which are shown here, showing atypical appearances. A: Pre contrast phase sequence shows two lesions of low signal on either side of the inferior vena cava; B and C: On arterial phase (B) there is enhancement followed by prompt washout on portal venous (C) phase; D: There is no contrast retention on hepatobiliary phase; E: Lesions are nearly isointense to liver on T2-weighted sequence; F and G: Diffusion weighted imaging (F) at b800 shows hyperintense signal followed by low signal on apparent diffusion coefficient (G) in keeping with diffusion restriction. The nature of these was not clear, but they were suspicious for hypervascular metastases. The patient underwent a number of investigations including oesophago-gastro-duodenoscopy, colonoscopy, CT chest, abdomen and pelvis and an ultrasound scan of pelvis. None of these investigations have identified a primary source of the liver lesions. Targeted liver biopsy was performed and histology revealed well differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma (Ki-67 = 4%); H: In retrospect, there was an enhancing lesion within the small bowel also present on previous CT; I: Subsequent Ga68-Dotatoc positron emission tomography-CT was performed which confirmed uptake within the small bowel consistent with primary tumour.

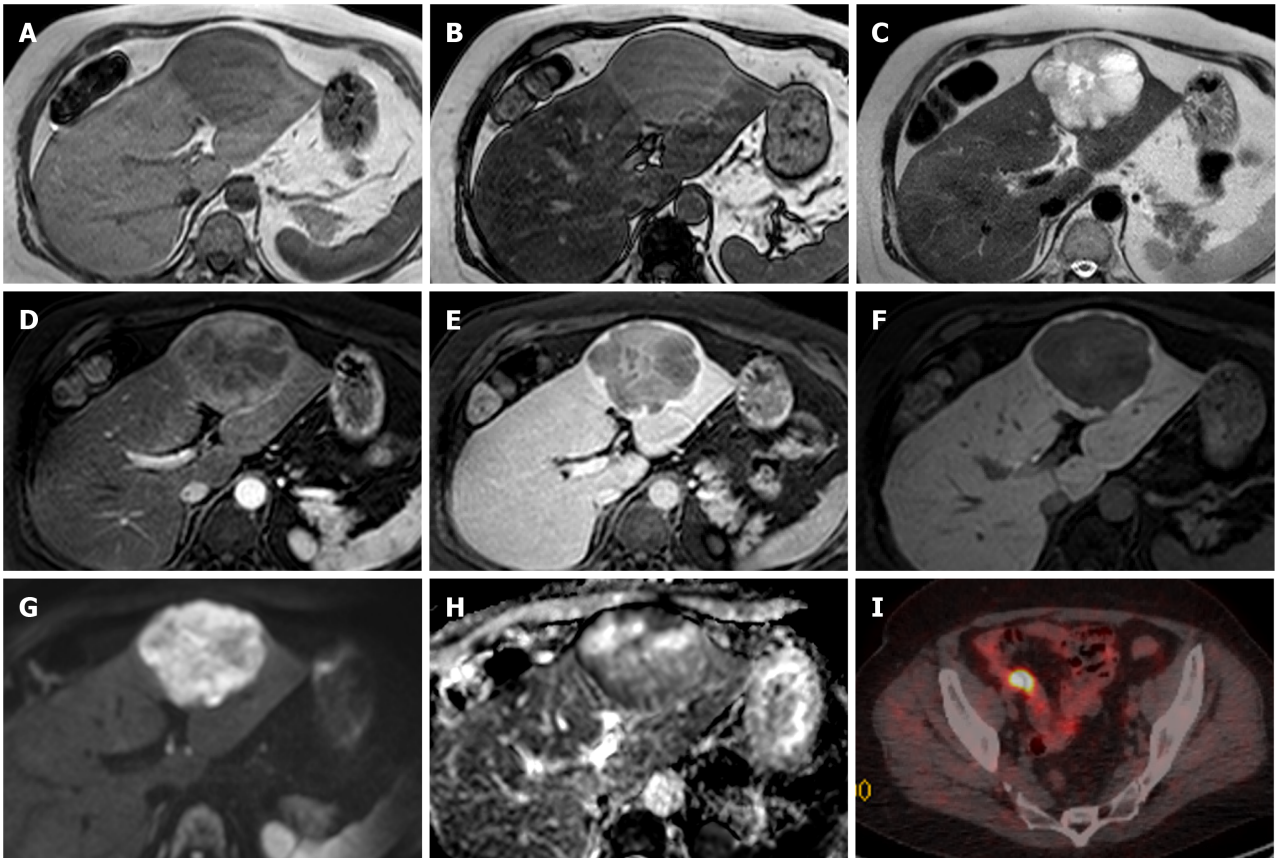


Figure 12 Neuroendocrine carcinoma metastases. A 59-year-old female was found to have a few liver lesions, the dominant lesion in the left lobe demonstrated here. A and B: In-phase (A) and out-of-phase (B) sequences show background hepatic steatosis, but no tumoral fat; C: The lesion shows heterogenous high T2 signal; D and E: There is mainly peripheral enhancement on the arterial phase (D) with washout on delayed phase (E). Delayed phase also shows an enhancing capsule; F: On hepatobiliary phase there is no contrast retention within the lesion except for the thin-rim of presumed capsule; G and H: There is high signal on diffusion weighted imaging b500 (G) with low signal seen on apparent diffusion coefficient (H), especially in the periphery. The other smaller lesions (not demonstrated here) showed similar signal characteristics. Initial staging computed tomography showed no primary tumour to suggest this is metastasis. The lesions were resected and histology confirmed low grade neuroendocrine tumour, with Ki-67 proliferation index of less than 1%; I: The patient underwent subsequent positron emission tomography scan that demonstrated the primary in the distal ileum.

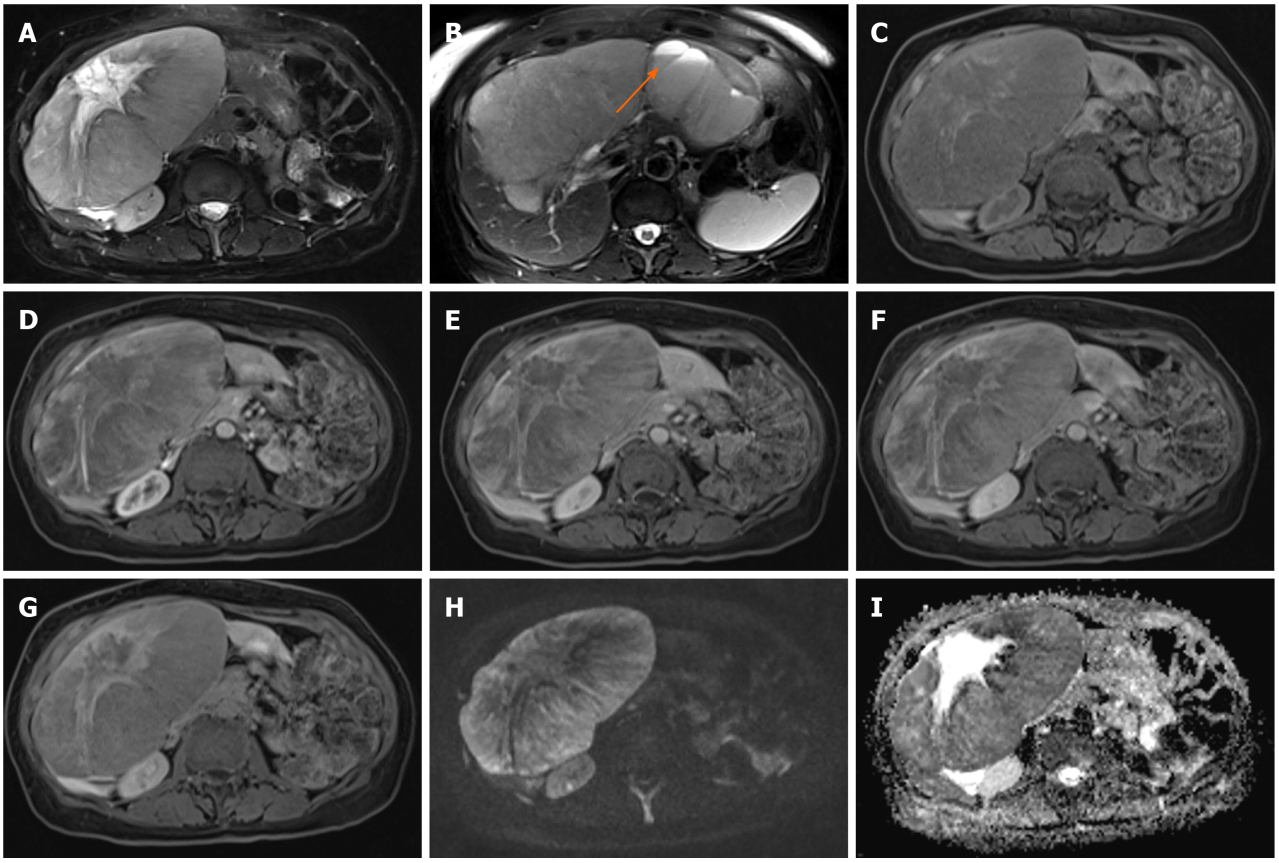


Figure 13 Neuroendocrine carcinoma. A 69-year-old female was found to have incidental large liver lesions in a non-cirrhotic liver while undergoing magnetic resonance (MR) pelvis for a uterine lesion, presumed to be fibroid. A: MR demonstrated large liver masses, the largest exophytic mass showing intermediate to high T2 signal with a high signal stellate scar; B: One of the lesions in the left liver lobe demonstrates a cystic component with fluid-fluid levels, which was presumed to represent previous haemorrhage; C: Majority of the lesions were of low T1 signal with a few hyperintense flecks surrounding the scar; D-F: There was heterogenous enhancement on arterial phase (D) with no washout demonstrated on portal venous (E) and delayed (F) phases; G: Hepatobiliary phase showed no contrast retention within the lesion except for the central scar; H and I: Diffusion weighted imaging at b800 (H) and apparent diffusion coefficient (I) show areas of diffusion restriction. These were biopsied and histology demonstrated well differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma. The origin of this was not determinable from the immunohistochemical pattern. Overall, this was favoured to represent a primary neuroendocrine tumour of the liver as further imaging did not reveal another primary (although admittedly biopsy of the uterine lesion, radiologically presumed fibroid, was never performed). The patient represented a month later with haemorrhagic brain metastases.

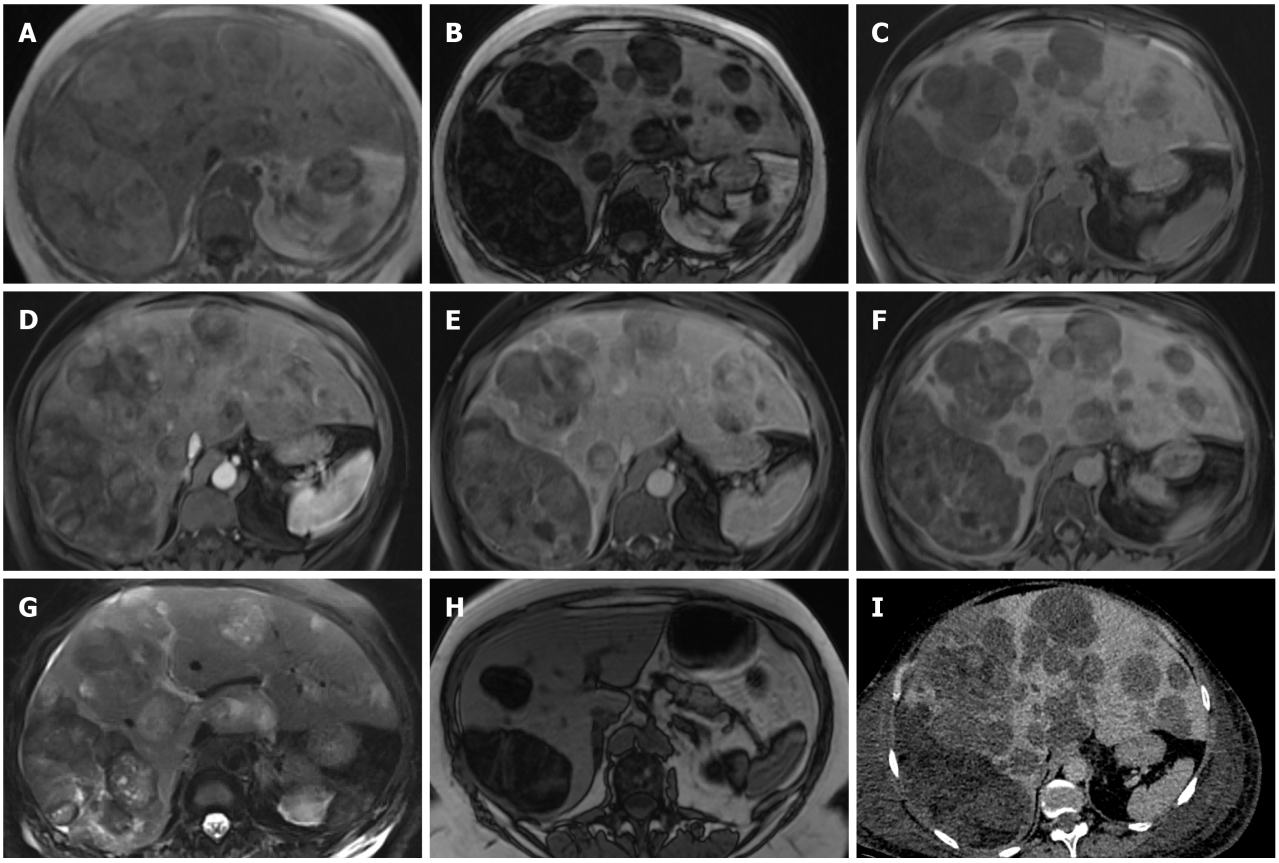


Figure 14 Pleomorphic liposarcoma. A 54-year-old underwent routine ultrasound for re-assessment of gallbladder polyps seen a year ago. Ultrasound revealed multiple liver lesions not present previously and magnetic resonance (MR) of the liver was organised. This showed multiple fat containing liver lesions favoured to represent adenomas. The patient was not on any steroid medication at the time and had no other risk factors for hepatocellular adenoma. A-G: She represented 3 mo later with right sided chest pain and computed tomography (CT) pulmonary angiogram demonstrated increase in the size and number of liver lesions, at which point a second MR liver with gadoxetic acid was performed and is shown here; A-C: MR shows multiple bilobar liver lesions of low T1 signal (C) and predominantly fat component as demonstrated by signal loss on out-of-phase sequence (B) when compared to in-phase (A); D and E: Arterial (D) and delayed phase (E) sequences show a few heterogenous areas of hyperenhancement some of which washout; F: Majority of the lesions did not retain contrast on hepatobiliary phase with only the larger lesions showing some areas of uptake, predominantly within septations; G: T2-weighted sequence (G) shows the lesions are heterogenous and of varied signal intensity; H: Image H demonstrated out-of-phase sequence on the MR performed 3 mo prior for comparison of lesion burden increase in the interim; I: demonstrates portal venous phase CT performed 1 mo since the second MR, again showing quick interval increase in size and number of the lesions. Targeted liver biopsy was performed which confirmed pleomorphic liposarcoma.

REFERENCES

1 **Piccinino F**, Sagnelli E, Pasquale G, Giusti G. Complications following percutaneous liver biopsy. A multicentre retrospective study on 68,276 biopsies. *J Hepatol* 1986; **2**: 165-173 [PMID: 3958472 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(86)80075-7]

2 **Takyar V**, Etzion O, Heller T, Kleiner DE, Rotman Y, Ghany MG, Fryzek N, Williams VH, Rivera E, Auh S, Liang TJ, Hoofnagle JH, Koh C. Complications of percutaneous liver biopsy with Klatskin needles: a 36-year single-centre experience. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 744-753 [PMID: 28074540 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13939]

3 **Huppertz A**, Balzer T, Blakeborough A, Breuer J, Giovagnoni A, Heinz-Peer G, Laniado M, Manfredi RM, Mathieu DG, Mueller D, Reimer P, Robinson PJ, Strotzer M, Taupitz M, Vogl TJ; European EOB Study Group. Improved detection of focal liver lesions at MR imaging: multicenter comparison of gadoxetic acid-enhanced MR images with intraoperative findings. *Radiology* 2004; **230**: 266-275 [PMID: 14695400 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2301020269]

4 **Kim HD**, Lim YS, Han S, An J, Kim GA, Kim SY, Lee SJ, Won HJ, Byun JH. Evaluation of early-stage hepatocellular carcinoma by magnetic resonance imaging with gadoxetic acid detects additional lesions and increases overall survival. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 1371-1382 [PMID: 25733098 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.02.051]

5 **Suh CH**, Kim KW, Kim GY, Shin YM, Kim PN, Park SH. The diagnostic value of Gd-EOB-DTPA-MRI for the diagnosis of focal nodular hyperplasia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Radiol* 2015; **25**: 950-960 [PMID: 25537979 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-014-3499-9]

6 **Liu X**, Zou L, Liu F, Zhou Y, Song B. Gadoxetic acid disodium-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging for the detection of hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e70896 [PMID: 23967130 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0070896]

7 **Renzulli M**, Clemente A, Tovoli F, Cappabianca S, Bolondi L, Golfieri R. Hepatocellular adenoma: An unsolved diagnostic enigma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 2442-2449 [PMID: 31171888 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i20.2442]

8 **McInnes MD**, Hibbert RM, Inácio JR, Schieda N. Focal Nodular Hyperplasia and Hepatocellular Adenoma: Accuracy of Gadoxetic Acid-enhanced MR Imaging--A Systematic Review. *Radiology* 2015; **277**: 413-423 [PMID: 26020440 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2015142986]

9 **Grazioli L**, Bondioni MP, Haradome H, Motosugi U, Tinti R, Frittoli B, Gambarini S, Donato F, Colagrande S. Hepatocellular adenoma and focal nodular hyperplasia: value of gadoxetic acid-enhanced MR imaging in differential diagnosis. *Radiology* 2012; **262**: 520-529 [PMID: 22282184 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.11101742]

10 **Grazioli L**, Ambrosini R, Frittoli B, Grazioli M, Morone M. Primary benign liver lesions. *Eur J Radiol* 2017; **95**: 378-398 [PMID: 28987695 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2017.08.028]

11 **Bioulac-Sage P**, Sempoux C, Balabaud C. Hepatocellular adenoma: Classification, variants and clinical relevance. *Semin Diagn Pathol* 2017; **34**: 112-125 [PMID: 28131467 DOI: 10.1053/j.semdp.2016.12.007]

12 **Ba-Ssalamah A**, Antunes C, Feier D, Bastati N, Hodge JC, Stift J, Cipriano MA, Wrba F, Trauner M, Herold CJ, Caseiro-Alves F. Morphologic and Molecular Features of Hepatocellular Adenoma with Gadoxetic Acid-enhanced MR Imaging. *Radiology* 2015; **277**: 104-113 [PMID: 25985059 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2015142366]

13 **Sciarra A**, Schmidt S, Pellegrinelli A, Maggioni M, Dondossola D, Pasquier J, Cigala C, Tosi D, Halkic N, Bulfamante G, Viale G, Bosari S, Balabaud C, Bioulac-Sage P, Sempoux C. OATPB1/B3 and MRP3 expression in hepatocellular adenoma predicts Gd-EOB-DTPA uptake and correlates with risk of malignancy. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 158-167 [PMID: 30218633 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13964]

14 **Buetow PC**, Pantongrag-Brown L, Buck JL, Ros PR, Goodman ZD. Focal nodular hyperplasia of the liver: radiologic-pathologic correlation. *Radiographics* 1996; **16**: 369-388 [PMID: 8966294 DOI: 10.1148/radiographics.16.2.8966294]

15 **Darai N**, Shu R, Gurung R, Zhang X, Teng G. Atypical CT and MRI Features of Focal Nodular Hyperplasia of Liver: A Study with Radiologic-Pathologic Correlation. *Open J Radiol* 2015; **05**: 131-41 [DOI: 10.4236/ojrad.2015.53020]

16 **Yoon JH**, Kim JY. Atypical Findings of Focal Nodular Hyperplasia with Gadoxetic Acid (Gd-EOB-DTPA)-Enhanced Magnetic Resonance Imaging. *Iran J Radiol* 2014; **11**: e9269 [PMID: 24693305 DOI: 10.5812/iranjradiol.9269]

17 **An HS**, Park HS, Kim YJ, Jung SI, Jeon HJ. Focal nodular hyperplasia: characterisation at gadoxetic acid-enhanced MRI and diffusion-weighted MRI. *Br J Radiol* 2013; **86**: 20130299 [PMID: 23873903 DOI: 10.1259/bjr.20130299]

18 **Petrolla AA**, Xin W. Hepatic angiomyolipoma. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2008; **132**: 1679-1682 [PMID: 18834230 DOI: 10.5858/2008-132-1679-HA]

19 **Kim R**, Lee JM, Joo I, Lee DH, Woo S, Han JK, Choi BI. Differentiation of lipid poor angiomyolipoma from hepatocellular carcinoma on gadoxetic acid-enhanced liver MR imaging. *Abdom Imaging* 2015; **40**: 531-541 [PMID: 25231411 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-014-0244-4]

20 **Liu J**, Zhang CW, Hong DF, Tao R, Chen Y, Shang MJ, Zhang YH. Primary hepatic epithelioid angiomyolipoma: A malignant potential tumor which should be recognized. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 4908-4917 [PMID: 27239117 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i20.4908]

21 **Wang SY**, Kuai XP, Meng XX, Jia NY, Dong H. Comparison of MRI features for the differentiation of hepatic angiomyolipoma from fat-containing hepatocellular carcinoma. *Abdom Imaging* 2014; **39**: 323-333 [PMID: 24389893 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-013-0070-0]

22 **Dalle I**, Sciot R, de Vos R, Aerts R, van Damme B, Desmet V, Roskams T. Malignant angiomyolipoma of the liver: a hitherto unreported variant. *Histopathology* 2000; **36**: 443-450 [PMID: 10792486 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2559.2000.00891.x]

23 **Nguyen TT**, Gorman B, Shields D, Goodman Z. Malignant hepatic angiomyolipoma: report of a case and review of literature. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2008; **32**: 793-798 [PMID: 18391749 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e3181607349]

24 **Clark T**, Maximin S, Meier J, Pokharel S, Bhargava P. Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Review of Epidemiology, Screening, Imaging Diagnosis, Response Assessment, and Treatment. *Curr Probl Diagn Radiol* 2015; **44**: 479-486 [PMID: 25979220 DOI: 10.1067/j.cpradiol.2015.04.004]

25 **Fattovich G**, Stroffolini T, Zagni I, Donato F. Hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhosis: incidence and risk factors. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S35-S50 [PMID: 15508101 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.09.014]

26 **Heimbach JK**, Kulik LM, Finn RS, Sirlin CB, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, Zhu AX, Murad MH, Marrero JA. AASLD guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 358-380 [PMID: 28130846 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29086]

27 **Imamura H**, Matsuyama Y, Tanaka E, Ohkubo T, Hasegawa K, Miyagawa S, Sugawara Y, Minagawa M, Takayama T, Kawasaki S, Makuuchi M. Risk factors contributing to early and late phase intrahepatic recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma after hepatectomy. *J Hepatol* 2003; **38**: 200-207 [PMID: 12547409 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(02)00360-4]

28 **ACR**. CT/MRI LI-RADS® v2018. [cited 3 February 2021]. Available from: https://www.acr.org/Clinical-Resources/Reporting-and-Data-Systems/LI-RADS/CT-MRI-LI-RADS-v2018

29 **Choi SH**, Byun JH, Lim YS, Yu E, Lee SJ, Kim SY, Won HJ, Shin YM, Kim PN. Diagnostic criteria

for hepatocellular carcinoma □3 cm with hepatocyte-specific contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: 1099-1107 [PMID: 26820629 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.01.018]

30 **Choi JY**, Lee JM, Sirlin CB. CT and MR imaging diagnosis and staging of hepatocellular carcinoma: part II. Extracellular agents, hepatobiliary agents, and ancillary imaging features. *Radiology* 2014; **273**: 30-50 [PMID: 25247563 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.14132362]

31 **Kim JY**, Kim MJ, Kim KA, Jeong HT, Park YN. Hyperintense HCC on hepatobiliary phase images of gadoxetic acid-enhanced MRI: correlation with clinical and pathological features. *Eur J Radiol* 2012; **81**: 3877-3882 [PMID: 22954410 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2012.07.021]

32 **Kitao A**, Matsui O, Yoneda N, Kozaka K, Shinmura R, Koda W, Kobayashi S, Gabata T, Zen Y, Yamashita T, Kaneko S, Nakanuma Y. The uptake transporter OATP8 expression decreases during multistep hepatocarcinogenesis: correlation with gadoxetic acid enhanced MR imaging. *Eur Radiol* 2011; **21**: 2056-2066 [PMID: 21626360 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-011-2165-8]

33 **Kitao A**, Matsui O, Yoneda N, Kita R, Kozaka K, Kobayashi S, Gabata T. Differentiation Between Hepatocellular Carcinoma Showing Hyperintensity on the Hepatobiliary Phase of Gadoxetic Acid-Enhanced MRI and Focal Nodular Hyperplasia by CT and MRI. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2018; **211**: 347-357 [PMID: 29708786 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.17.19341]

34 **An C**, Rhee H, Han K, Choi JY, Park YN, Park MS, Kim MJ, Park S. Added value of smooth hypointense rim in the hepatobiliary phase of gadoxetic acid-enhanced MRI in identifying tumour capsule and diagnosing hepatocellular carcinoma. *Eur Radiol* 2017; **27**: 2610-2618 [PMID: 27770230 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-016-4634-6]

35 **Gupta A**, Dixon E. Epidemiology and risk factors: intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr* 2017; **6**: 101-104 [PMID: 28503557 DOI: 10.21037/hbsn.2017.01.02]

36 **Shaib YH**, El-Serag HB, Davila JA, Morgan R, McGlynn KA. Risk factors of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma in the United States: a case-control study. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 620-626 [PMID: 15765398 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.12.048]

37 **Yamasaki S**. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: macroscopic type and stage classification. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2003; **10**: 288-291 [PMID: 14598147 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-002-0732-8]

38 **Chung YE**, Kim MJ, Park YN, Choi JY, Pyo JY, Kim YC, Cho HJ, Kim KA, Choi SY. Varying appearances of cholangiocarcinoma: radiologic-pathologic correlation. *Radiographics* 2009; **29**: 683-700 [PMID: 19448110 DOI: 10.1148/rg.293085729]

39 **Kim R**, Lee JM, Shin CI, Lee ES, Yoon JH, Joo I, Kim SH, Hwang I, Han JK, Choi BI. Differentiation of intrahepatic mass-forming cholangiocarcinoma from hepatocellular carcinoma on gadoxetic acid-enhanced liver MR imaging. *Eur Radiol* 2016; **26**: 1808-1817 [PMID: 26373763 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-015-4005-8]

40 **Choi SH**, Lee SS, Kim SY, Park SH, Kim KM, Hong SM, Yu E, Lee MG. Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma in Patients with Cirrhosis: Differentiation from Hepatocellular Carcinoma by Using Gadoxetic Acid-enhanced MR Imaging and Dynamic CT. *Radiology* 2017; **282**: 771-781 [PMID: 27797675 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2016160639]

41 **Kang Y**, Lee JM, Kim SH, Han JK, Choi BI. Intrahepatic mass-forming cholangiocarcinoma: enhancement patterns on gadoxetic acid-enhanced MR images. *Radiology* 2012; **264**: 751-760 [PMID: 22798225 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.12112308]

42 **Koh J**, Chung YE, Nahm JH, Kim HY, Kim KS, Park YN, Kim MJ, Choi JY. Intrahepatic mass-forming cholangiocarcinoma: prognostic value of preoperative gadoxetic acid-enhanced MRI. *Eur Radiol* 2016; **26**: 407-416 [PMID: 26002136 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-015-3846-5]

43 **Maggard MA**, O'Connell JB, Ko CY. Updated population-based review of carcinoid tumors. *Ann Surg* 2004; **240**: 117-122 [PMID: 15213627 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000129342.67174.67]

44 **Modlin IM**, Sandor A. An analysis of 8305 cases of carcinoid tumors. *Cancer* 1997; **79**: 813-829 [PMID: 9024720 DOI: 10.1002/(sici)1097-0142(19970215)79:4<813::aid-cncr19>3.0.co;2-2]

45 **Alattia L**, Molberg K, Lucas E. Pleomorphic neoplasm in a liver: A potential pitfall for misdiagnosis. *Cytojournal* 2020; **17**: 8 [PMID: 32547628 DOI: 10.25259/Cytojournal_81_2019]

46 **DeLuzio MR**, Barbieri AL, Israel G, Emre S. Two Cases of Primary Hepatic Neuroendocrine Tumors and a Review of the Current Literature. *Ann Hepatol* 2017; **16**: 621-629 [PMID: 28611270 DOI: 10.5604/01.3001.0010.0313]

47 **Song JE**, Kim BS, Lee CH. Primary hepatic neuroendocrine tumor: A case report and literature review. *World J Clin Cases* 2016; **4**: 243-247 [PMID: 27574614 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v4.i8.243]

48 **Nishino H**, Hatano E, Seo S, Shibuya S, Anazawa T, Iida T, Masui T, Taura K, Haga H, Uemoto S. Histological features of mixed neuroendocrine carcinoma and hepatocellular carcinoma in the liver: a case report and literature review. *Clin J Gastroenterol* 2016; **9**: 272-279 [PMID: 27384317 DOI: 10.1007/s12328-016-0669-0]

49 **Sundin A**, Arnold R, Baudin E, Cwikla JB, Eriksson B, Fanti S, Fazio N, Giammarile F, Hicks RJ, Kjaer A, Krenning E, Kwekkeboom D, Lombard-Bohas C, O'Connor JM, O'Toole D, Rockall A, Wiedenmann B, Valle JW, Vullierme MP; Antibes Consensus Conference participants. ENETS Consensus Guidelines for the Standards of Care in Neuroendocrine Tumors: Radiological, Nuclear Medicine & Hybrid Imaging. *Neuroendocrinology* 2017; **105**: 212-244 [PMID: 28355596 DOI: 10.1159/000471879]

50 **Morse B**, Jeong D, Thomas K, Diallo D, Strosberg JR. Magnetic Resonance Imaging of Neuroendocrine Tumor Hepatic Metastases: Does Hepatobiliary Phase Imaging Improve Lesion Conspicuity and Interobserver Agreement of Lesion Measurements? *Pancreas* 2017; **46**: 1219-1224

[PMID: 28902795 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000920]

51 **Hayoz R**, Vietti-Violi N, Duran R, Knebel JF, Ledoux JB, Dromain C. The combination of hepatobiliary phase with Gd-EOB-DTPA and DWI is highly accurate for the detection and characterization of liver metastases from neuroendocrine tumor. *Eur Radiol* 2020; **30**: 6593-6602 [PMID: 32601948 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-020-06930-6]

52 **Tirumani SH**, Jagannathan JP, Braschi-Amirfarzan M, Qin L, Balthazar P, Ramaiya NH, Shinagare AB. Value of hepatocellular phase imaging after intravenous gadoxetate disodium for assessing hepatic metastases from gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors: comparison with other MRI pulse sequences and with extracellular agent. *Abdom Radiol (NY)* 2018; **43**: 2329-2339 [PMID: 29470627 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-018-1496-1]

53 **Baek SH**, Yoon JH, Kim KW. Primary hepatic neuroendocrine tumor: gadoxetic acid (Gd-EOB-DTPA)-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging. *Acta Radiol Short Rep* 2013; **2**: 2047981613482897 [PMID: 23986857 DOI: 10.1177/2047981613482897]

54 **Wang LX**, Liu K, Lin GW, Jiang T. Primary hepatic neuroendocrine tumors: comparing CT and MRI features with pathology. *Cancer Imaging* 2015; **15**: 13 [PMID: 26272674 DOI: 10.1186/s40644-015-0046-0]

55 **Takayasu K**, Muramatsu Y, Sakamoto M, Mizuguchi Y, Moriyama N, Wakao F, Kosuge T, Takayama T, Hirohashi S. Findings in primary hepatic carcinoid tumor: US, CT, MRI, and angiography. *J Comput Assist Tomogr* 1992; **16**: 99-102 [PMID: 1729316 DOI: 10.1097/00004728-199201000-00018]

56 **Naik PR**, Kumar P, Kumar PV. Primary pleomorphic liposarcoma of liver: a case report and review of the literature. *Case Reports Hepatol* 2013; **2013**: 398910 [PMID: 25374715 DOI: 10.1155/2013/398910]

57 **Gaskin CM**, Helms CA. Lipomas, lipoma variants, and well-differentiated liposarcomas (atypical lipomas): results of MRI evaluations of 126 consecutive fatty masses. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2004; **182**: 733-739 [PMID: 14975977 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.182.3.1820733]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1098-1106

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1098

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Liver transplantation for benign liver tumors

Ana Ostojic, Anna Mrzljak, Danko Mikulic

ORCID number: Ana Ostojic 0000-0003-4234-4461; Anna Mrzljak 0000-0001-6270-2305; Danko Mikulic 0000-0001-8103-6045.

Author contributions: Ostojic A, Mrzljak A and Mikulic D made contributions to the conception and design of the study, collection of data and in drafting and revising the manuscript; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None of the authors have any conflict of interest to disclose.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Croatia

Ana Ostojic, Anna Mrzljak, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University Hospital Center Zagreb, Zagreb 10000, Croatia

Danko Mikulic, Department of Surgery, University Hospital Merkur, Zagreb 10000, Croatia

Corresponding author: Danko Mikulic, FEBS, MD, PhD, Surgeon, Department of Surgery, University Hospital Merkur, Zajceva 19, Zagreb 10000, Croatia. danko.mikulic@zg.t-com.hr

Abstract

Benign liver tumors are common lesions that are usually asymptomatic and are often found incidentally due to recent advances in imaging techniques and their widespread use. Although most of these tumors can be managed conservatively or treated by surgical resection, liver transplantation (LT) is the only treatment option in selected patients. LT is usually indicated in patients that present with life-threatening complications, when the lesions are diffuse in the hepatic parenchyma or when malignant transformation cannot be ruled out. However, due to the significant postoperative morbidity of the procedure, scarcity of available donor liver grafts, and the benign course of the disease, the indications for LT are still not standardized. Hepatic adenoma and adenomatosis, hepatic hemangioma, and hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma are among the most common benign liver tumors treated by LT. This article reviews the role of LT in patients with benign liver tumors. The indications for LT and long-term outcomes of LT are presented.

Key Words: Benign liver tumor; Liver transplantation; Hepatic adenoma; Liver adenomatosis; Hepatic hemangioma; Hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma

Core Tip: Liver transplantation (LT) is rarely performed for benign liver tumors. However, LT is a valid and efficient treatment option in selected patients with life-threatening complications or when surgical resection is impossible. The indications for LT for these lesions are still not well defined. This report focuses on the indications for LT and long-term LT outcomes in patients who underwent transplantation for benign liver tumors.

Citation: Ostojic A, Mrzljak A, Mikulic D. Liver transplantation for benign liver tumors. *World*

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 24, 2021
Peer-review started: February 24, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: May 12, 2021
Accepted: July 21, 2021
Article in press: July 21, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Hong SK
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Webster JR
P-Editor: Liu JH

J Hepatol 2021; 13(9): 1098-1106
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1098.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1098

INTRODUCTION

Malignant liver disease, namely hepatocellular carcinoma, currently makes up between one quarter and one-third of liver transplantation (LT) indications worldwide [1]. Patients with benign liver tumors, on the other hand, only exceptionally undergo transplantation. According to large European and United States registries, transplantations for benign liver tumors make up 1% of all LTs performed in Europe and the United States[2,3].

Benign liver tumors are relatively common, occurring in up to 20% of the general population[4]. Most are treated conservatively, and liver resection (LR) is only required in a minority of patients[5]. Despite their relative frequency, due to the generally benign behavior, there are no standardized treatment guidelines.

LT is occasionally reported in the treatment of benign liver lesions; however, due to the morbidity of the procedure, shortage of donor liver grafts, and benign course of the disease in most patients, only very selected cases may qualify for LT. Some of the indications for LT in patients with benign liver tumors include diagnostic uncertainty and/or possible malignant transformation (MT), premalignant lesions, metabolic liver disease, complications such as rupture or hemorrhage, and significant patient symptoms due to the mass-effects of the tumor[6].

Most of the literature dealing with the topic is limited to case reports or small case series. Both deceased donor and living donor (LD) options of LT are performed for benign liver lesions. However, most of the allocation systems used across the world prioritize the patients for cadaveric LT on the basis of their model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score[7]. Patients with benign liver lesions typically have low MELD scores and normal liver function. Therefore, LDLT is often the only option for a timely transplant before life-threatening complications develop. This is particularly the case in countries with low rates of cadaveric organ donation and advanced LDLT programs [8-10]. In this report we review the recent literature and analyze the most common indications and outcomes of LT in patients with benign liver tumors.

HEPATIC ADENOMA AND LIVER ADENOMATOSIS

Hepatic adenomas (HA) are rare benign tumors of the liver, with an incidence of 3-4 *per* 100000 women[11]. They predominantly occur in women of childbearing age, often in association with prolonged oral contraceptive use[12]. Since hormonal stimulation plays a significant role in the development of HA, anabolic steroid consumption is also a risk factor[13,14]. Other environmental factors associated with HA are obesity and non-alcoholic fatty disease of the liver (NAFLD)[15,16]. In recent years, due to low estrogen contraceptive formulations and an increasing prevalence of NAFLD and metabolic syndrome, the predominant etiology of HA is shifting from hormonal use towards metabolic liver disease[17]. Other genetic or developmental conditions associated with HA include glycogen storage diseases (especially Type 1a glycogenosis), maturity-onset diabetes of the young type 3, McCune-Albright syndrome, and abnormalities of hepatic vasculature such as absence of the portal vein and portosystemic venous shunts[18-21]. Liver adenomatosis (LA) is a particular entity, initially described by Flejou, defined as the presence of more than 10 adenomas in an otherwise normal liver[22]. However, during recent years, the term adenomatosis has been extended, and it is defined as a high number of liver tumors independent of an absence of underlying liver disease[23]. There are two types of LA. The massive type is characterized by an enlarged liver, deformed liver contour, and typically large and necrotic tumors. The second type is called multifocal, with preserved liver size and contour. This type has a less aggressive course, usually presenting with one or two larger adenomas that may cause complications[24].

Although usually asymptomatic, large-sized or multiple HA can present with abnormal liver function tests, abdominal pain and distention or signs of hemorrhage [25,26]. Hemorrhage is reported to occur in 20%-40% of adenomas, usually appearing in lesions larger than 5 cm[25-28]. It is usually intratumoral; however, the tumor can

also rupture, with resulting subcapsular or intraperitoneal hemorrhage.

MT is another potential complication of HA with an overall risk of about 5%. Male gender is a particular risk, while in women, MT is noted only in tumors larger than 7-8 cm. The existence of multiple lesions reportedly does not seem to confer a specific risk [26,29,30].

HA and LA do not constitute standard indications for LT and LT is only rarely performed. Larger adenomas and adenomas complicated by hemorrhage or MT should be treated with surgical resection. However, since both HA and LA can present with life-threatening complications not amenable to surgical resection due to size, number or localization, LT may be warranted. Sometimes progressive, symptomatic growth or MT occurs after previous hepatectomy, hastening LT. Underlying liver disease can also be the primary indication for LT, such as in glycogen storage disease or vascular malformations of the liver. According to the available literature, glycogen storage disease is considered a risk factor for MT of liver adenomas[31].

According to the 2018 European Liver Transplant Registry (ELTR) report, LA represents only 0.04% of all indications for LT in Europe. The outcomes are excellent, with 1- and 5- year survival rates of 88%[32]. In 2016, Chiche *et al*[33] analyzed 49 patients from the ELTR who underwent LT for LA between 1986 and 2013. Overall, 28 (57%) patients had the massive LA form, while 21 (43%) patients had the multifocal form. Sixteen patients had glycogen storage disease, and seven patients had underlying vascular disease, supporting the notion that the first definition of LA was too restrictive. Regarding the leading indications for LT, histologically proven MT (16 patients) and suspicion of MT (15 patients) were the primary indications, while only five patients underwent LT due to hemorrhage. Out of the 15 patients with a suspicion of MT, only one patient had hepatocellular carcinoma confirmed on the surgical specimen, making this indication debatable. In the analysis of risk factors for MT, age > 30 years and history of partial hepatectomy proved to be statistically significant. Based on the results of the study, Chiche *et al*[33] suggested that LT for LA should be considered when the patient has either a major criterion (histologically proven hepatocellular carcinoma) or at least 3 out of 5 minor criteria (more than two severe hemorrhages, more than two previous resections, beta-mutated or inflammatory adenomas, underlying liver disease - major steatosis or vascular abnormalities, age > 30 years)[33].

In conclusion, HA is only exceptionally accepted as an indication for LT. Also, multiple non-resectable adenomas in the context of LA are likely to remain stable and uncomplicated, so they do not require a major operation with inherent risks such as an LT, especially in the era of organ shortage. Exceptional circumstances when LT can be considered include treatment for an underlying disease such as glycogen storage disease or vascular malformations, multiple non-resectable adenomas in men, and cases with proven or suspected MT.

HEPATIC HEMANGIOMA

Hepatic hemangiomas (HH) are the most common primary tumors of the liver, with an incidence of 0.4%-20%[34]. They are most commonly found in women 30-50 years old (female-to-male ratio, 3:1), but they can be detected in all age groups[35]. Most hemangiomas are small in size (< 4 cm), solitary and asymptomatic[35,36]. HH that measure 10 cm and larger are called giant hemangiomas, and most of them are also asymptomatic[35,36]. Rarely, HH can present as multiple lesions, as a part of a systemic hemangiomatosis syndrome[37,38]. The diagnosis of hemangiomas is usually established incidentally on imaging studies, and owing to their benign course, HH are usually managed conservatively[34]. Larger hemangiomas can cause symptoms, usually abdominal pain or discomfort[37]. Occasionally, HH can present with hemorrhage or consumptive coagulopathy, a condition known as Kasabach-Merritt syndrome (KMS)[34]. HH treatment is rarely indicated, and therapeutic modalities include arterial embolization, surgical resection, and LT. Medical therapy with steroids, vincristine, interferon-alpha, antiplatelet agents, or sirolimus with high doses of propranolol is only indicated for HH that present with KMS[39,40]. However, there is no strong evidence in favor of any pharmacological agent[40]. Apart from KMS, indications for treatment of HH are rapidly growing tumors, persistent pain, hemorrhage, risk of rupture, and symptoms resulting from compression of adjacent organs and vessels[37].

HH are a sporadic indication for LT. Based on the ELTR data, only 71 patients with HH were transplanted from 1988 to 2016, and HH represents 0.1% of all indications for

LT[32]. HH is an even less frequent indication for LT in the United States, with only 25 patients having been transplanted from October 1988 through January 2013[41]. Patients diagnosed with HH who underwent LT have 1-year and 5-year survival rates of 80%-87.8% and 74.8%-77%, respectively[32,41].

To the best of our knowledge, only 18 reports (17 case reports and 1 case series) have been published in the English literature regarding LT for HH (Table 1)[42-59]. According to a recent systematic review that included 15 of the previously mentioned studies, patients' mean age was 39.93 ± 8.7 years. Abdominal distention, respiratory distress, upper abdominal pain, excessive bleeding, and coagulopathy were the most commonly reported symptoms. Twelve patients received grafts from a cadaveric donor, while four patients received LD grafts. All patients had abnormal liver function tests before LT, and they returned to normal within a few days postoperatively. Finally, all patients were alive 90 d after LT. One patient required re-transplantation following an acute liver rejection episode, and one patient was re-operated due to abdominal bleeding[60].

In summary, despite the high incidence of HH, LT is a very rare indication for HH. However, in unresectable HH or HH with life-threatening complications, LT can be considered a safe treatment option.

HEPATIC EPITHELIOID HEMANGIOENDOTHELIOMA

Hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma (HEHE) is a rare vascular tumor of the liver with an estimated incidence of less than 0.1 *per* 100000[61]. HEHE is usually diagnosed in adulthood with a mean age at diagnosis of 41.7 years (age range; 30-40 years), and a female predominance (female-to-male ratio 3:2)[62,63]. The etiology of HEHE is not well understood, although several factors have been implicated, including vinyl chloride and asbestos[63]. The hallmark of HEHE is its borderline behavior, described as the aggressiveness of the tumor graded between hemangioma and hepatic hemangiosarcoma. Tumors are often multiple or diffuse throughout the liver. Additionally, HEHE can metastasize beyond the liver. Mehrabi *et al*[63] conducted an extensive review of the literature that included 434 HEHE patients. In that study, 81% of patients had multifocal tumors while a solitary tumor was present in the remaining 19% of patients. Extrahepatic disease (EHD) was diagnosed in 36% of the patients[63]. Lungs, regional lymph nodes, peritoneum, bone, spleen, and diaphragm were the most common extrahepatic sites[63,64]. HEHEs tend to have a heterogeneous clinical presentation, ranging from asymptomatic tumors to lesions causing hepatic failure. The most frequent symptoms are right upper quadrant or epigastric pain (60%–70%), weight loss (20%), impaired general condition (20%), and jaundice (10%)[65]. Definitive diagnosis is often made through a synthesis of radiological signs and clinical features such as occurrence in young adults and longstanding clinical history[64]. Fluorodeoxyglucose-positron emission tomography imaging can be helpful in the staging of the disease before LT[66]. However, histologic examination of appropriate tissue obtained by biopsy is required for correct diagnosis. The most common misdiagnoses include angiosarcoma, cholangiocarcinoma, metastatic carcinoma, and hepatocellular carcinoma (sclerosing variant)[67].

Owing to the rarity and inconsistent behavior of these tumors, the treatment algorithm for HEHE is not standardized. The primary treatment modality is surgery, including LR and LT. It should be noted that HEHE is unresectable in most cases due to its nature, so LT is reserved for patients with multiple or diffuse tumors and/or EHD[67]. Chemo and radiotherapy regimens and transcatheter arterial chemoembolization are other therapeutic options[63,67]. In the previously mentioned study by Mehrabi *et al*[63], most patients had undergone LT (44.8%) followed by no treatment in 24.8%, chemotherapy or radiotherapy in 21%, and LR in 9.4%[63]. Surgical resection and LT had the best survival rates, with 5-year survival rates of 54.5% and 75%, respectively. 5-year survival rates were 30% after chemo or radiotherapy and 4.5% after no treatment[63]. A multicenter ELTR study which analyzed 59 patients who underwent LT for HEHE confirmed excellent results for LT[68]. Moreover, it was concluded that EHD presence is not necessarily a contraindication to LT[68]. In 2010, Grotz *et al*[69] analyzed overall survival (OS) and disease-free survival (DFS) in patients with HEHE treated with LR or LT. In both groups, there were 11 patients with comparable results. LR was associated with a 5-year OS of 86% and DFS of 62%, while LT was associated with a 5-year OS of 73% and DFS of 46%[69]. In a recent study, Noh *et al*[70] evaluated the management and prognosis of 79 HEHE patients from the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results program during the study period from

Table 1 List of the reported cases of liver transplantation for hepatic hemangioma

Ref.	Age (yr)/sex	Indication for LT	Type of donor	Follow-up	Condition
Klompmaker *et al*[42], 1989	27/M	KMS	LD	3 yr	Alive
Mora *et al*[43], 1995	42/F	KMS, respiratory distress	CD	16 d	Alive
Tepetes *et al*[44], 1995	4 wk/M	KMS	NA	8 d	Died, graft mal-function
Brouwers *et al*[45], 1997	4 cases	Pain (n = 2). Rupture (n = 1). KMS (n = 1)	NA	1 mo, 1 yr, 4 yr, 9 yr	Alive (n = 3). Died (n = 1)
Chui *et al*[46], 1996	33/F, 43/F	Bleeding (n = 1). Abdominal discomfort (n = 1)	CD	18 mo, 14 mo	Alive (n = 2)
Longeville *et al*[47], 1997	47/M	KMS	CD	12 mo	Alive
Russo *et al*[48], 1997	43/F	Huge mass	CD	14 d	Alive
Kumashiro *et al*[49], 2002	48/F	KMS, acute liver failure	LD	15 d	Alive
Ferraz *et al*[50], 2004	28/F	KMS, respiratory distress	CD	30 mo	Alive
Meguro *et al*[51], 2008	45/F	KMS	LD	10 mo	Alive
Aseni *et al*[52], 2010	46/M	Pulmonary embolism	CD	25 mo	
Vagefi *et al*[53], 2011	39/F	KMS	CD	NA	Alive
Unal *et al*[54], 2011	56/F	Upper abdominal pain	CD	6 mo	
Zhong *et al*[9], 2014	27/F	Diffuse mass	LD	50 mo	Alive
Yildiz *et al*[56], 2014	44/F	KMS, respiratory distress	CD	1 mo	Alive
Lange *et al*[57], 2015	46/F	Huge mass, portal vein thrombosis, ascites	CD	7 wk	Alive
Lee *et al*[8], 2018	51/F	Rapid growing tumor	LD	16 mo	Alive
Eghlimi *et al*[59], 2020	38/M	Huge mass	CD	8 mo	Alive

LT: Liver transplantation; M: Male; F: Female; LD: Living donor; CD: Cadaveric donor; KMS: Kasabach-Merritt Syndrome; NA: Non applicable.

1973 to 2014. Based on their results, patients who underwent surgical treatment (LR or LT) had significantly higher 5-year survival than those who underwent non-surgical treatment (88% *vs* 49%). In multivariate analysis, surgical therapy was the only independent prognostic factor for survival[70]. In the 2007 HEHE-ELTR report, the recurrence rate of HEHE after LT was 25%, while in the US survey that included 110 adults, the recurrence rate was 11%[68,71]. 149 patients from the ELTR registered between 1984 and 2014 were analyzed in order to identify the risk factors for post-LT recurrence of HEHE. Macrovascular invasion (HR 4.8), pre-LT waiting time of 120 d or less (HR 2.6), and hilar lymph node invasion (HR 2.2) were significant risk factors for recurrence, while EHD was confirmed not to be a risk factor[72]. A HEHE-LT score that stratified patients' risk of tumor recurrence was developed using these three risk factors. Patients with a score between 0 and 2 had a significantly better 5-year DFS than patients with a score of 6-10 (93.9% *vs* 38.5%; $P < 0.001$)[72]. This score can be used in the post-LT follow-up to decide on minimization and type of immunosuppression as well as for imaging surveillance. Furthermore, this study emphasizes the importance of routine extensive lymphadenectomy during LT. Also, mandatory waiting time should be set up in order to gain a better insight into the tumor biology and avoid futile LT[72].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, LT is rarely indicated for the treatment of benign liver tumors, mainly due to their benign nature. Most of the complications resulting from benign liver tumors can be managed with radiological intervention or surgical resection. However, when benign liver tumors present with life-threatening complications or MT cannot be ruled out, and tumors are unresectable, LT is a reasonable and safe treatment option.

Due to their rarity, there are no standardized transplantation guidelines for benign liver tumors. Considering satisfying long-term results, studies from Europe and the United States strengthen the role of LT for benign liver tumors. Finally, a worldwide registry of patients transplanted for benign liver tumors with details about patients' history, imaging studies, and the surgical pathology would help to define precise LT criteria for this rare indication.

REFERENCES

1 **Adam R**, Karam V, Delvart V, O'Grady J, Mirza D, Klempnauer J, Castaing D, Neuhaus P, Jamieson N, Salizzoni M, Pollard S, Lerut J, Paul A, Garcia-Valdecasas JC, Rodríguez FS, Burroughs A; All contributing centers (www. eltr.org); European Liver and Intestine Transplant Association (ELITA). Evolution of indications and results of liver transplantation in Europe. A report from the European Liver Transplant Registry (ELTR). *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 675-688 [PMID: 22609307 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.04.015]

2 **ELTR**. European Liver Transplant Registry (ELTR) Web site. [cited 1 February 2021]. Available from: www.eltr.org

3 **UNOS**. United Network of Organ Sharing (UNOS) database. [cited 1 February 2021]. Available from: www.unos.org

4 **Schwartz ME**, Roayaie S, Konstadoulakis MM, Gomatos IP, Miller CM. The Mount Sinai experience with orthotopic liver transplantation for benign tumors: brief report and literature review: case reports. *Transplant Proc* 2008; **40**: 1759-1762 [PMID: 18589189 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2008.02.076]

5 **Dimick JB**, Cowan JA Jr, Knol JA, Upchurch GR Jr. Hepatic resection in the United States: indications, outcomes, and hospital procedural volumes from a nationally representative database. *Arch Surg* 2003; **138**: 185-191 [PMID: 12578418 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.138.2.185]

6 **Ercolani G**, Grazi GL, Pinna AD. Liver transplantation for benign hepatic tumors: a systematic review. *Dig Surg* 2010; **27**: 68-75 [PMID: 20357454 DOI: 10.1159/000268628]

7 **Malinchoc M**, Kamath PS, Gordon FD, Peine CJ, Rank J, ter Borg PC. A model to predict poor survival in patients undergoing transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 864-871 [PMID: 10733541 DOI: 10.1053/he.2000.5852]

8 **Lee JH**, Yoon CJ, Kim YH, Han HS, Cho JY, Kim H, Jang ES, Kim JW, Jeong SH. Living-donor liver transplantation for giant hepatic hemangioma with diffuse hemangiomatosis in an adult: a case report. *Clin Mol Hepatol* 2018; **24**: 163-168 [PMID: 28719965 DOI: 10.3350/cmh.2017.0002]

9 **Zhong L**, Men TY, Yang GD, Gu Y, Chen G, Xing TH, Fan JW, Peng ZH. Case report: living donor liver transplantation for giant hepatic hemangioma using a right lobe graft without the middle hepatic vein. *World J Surg Oncol* 2014; **12**: 83 [PMID: 24708716 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-12-83]

10 **Di Sandro S**, Slim AO, Lauterio A, Giacomoni A, Mangoni I, Aseni P, Pirotta V, Aldumour A, Mihaylov P, De Carlis L. Liver adenomatosis: a rare indication for living donor liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2009; **41**: 1375-1377 [PMID: 19460563 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2009.03.021]

11 **Thomeer MG**, Broker M, Verheij J, Doukas M, Terkivatan T, Bijdevaate D, De Man RA, Moelker A, IJzermans JN. Hepatocellular adenoma: when and how to treat? *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2016; **9**: 898-912 [PMID: 27803743 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X16663882]

12 **Rosenberg L**. The risk of liver neoplasia in relation to combined oral contraceptive use. *Contraception* 1991; **43**: 643-652 [PMID: 1651205 DOI: 10.1016/0010-7824(91)90007-3]

13 **Nakao A**, Sakagami K, Nakata Y, Komazawa K, Amimoto T, Nakashima K, Isozaki H, Takakura N, Tanaka N. Multiple hepatic adenomas caused by long-term administration of androgenic steroids for aplastic anemia in association with familial adenomatous polyposis. *J Gastroenterol* 2000; **35**: 557-562 [PMID: 10905366 DOI: 10.1007/s005350070081]

14 **Socas L**, Zumbado M, Pérez-Luzardo O, Ramos A, Pérez C, Hernández JR, Boada LD. Hepatocellular adenomas associated with anabolic androgenic steroid abuse in bodybuilders: a report of two cases and a review of the literature. *Br J Sports Med* 2005; **39**: e27 [PMID: 15849280 DOI: 10.1136/bjsm.2004.013599]

15 **Bunchorntavakul C**, Bahirwani R, Drazek D, Soulen MC, Siegelman ES, Furth EE, Olthoff K, Shaked A, Reddy KR. Clinical features and natural history of hepatocellular adenomas: the impact of obesity. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 664-674 [PMID: 21762186 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04772.x]

16 **Chang CY**, Hernandez-Prera JC, Roayaie S, Schwartz M, Thung SN. Changing epidemiology of hepatocellular adenoma in the United States: review of the literature. *Int J Hepatol* 2013; **2013**: 604860 [PMID: 23509632 DOI: 10.1155/2013/604860]

17 **Heinemann LA**, Weimann A, Gerken G, Thiel C, Schlaud M, DoMinh T. Modern oral contraceptive use and benign liver tumors: the German Benign Liver Tumor Case-Control Study. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care* 1998; **3**: 194-200 [PMID: 10036602 DOI: 10.3109/13625189809167253]

18 **Reddy SK**, Kishnani PS, Sullivan JA, Koeberl DD, Desai DM, Skinner MA, Rice HE, Clary BM. Resection of hepatocellular adenoma in patients with glycogen storage disease type Ia. *J Hepatol* 2007; **47**: 658-663 [PMID: 17637480 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.05.012]

19 **Wang DQ**, Fiske LM, Carreras CT, Weinstein DA. Natural history of hepatocellular adenoma

formation in glycogen storage disease type I. *J Pediatr* 2011; **159**: 442-446 [PMID: 21481415 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2011.02.031]

20 **Kawakatsu M**, Vilgrain V, Belghiti J, Flejou JF, Nahum H. Association of multiple liver cell adenomas with spontaneous intrahepatic portohepatic shunt. *Abdom Imaging* 1994; **19**: 438-440 [PMID: 7950822 DOI: 10.1007/BF00206934]

21 **Pupulim LF**, Vullierme MP, Paradis V, Valla D, Terraz S, Vilgrain V. Congenital portosystemic shunts associated with liver tumours. *Clin Radiol* 2013; **68**: e362-e369 [PMID: 23537576 DOI: 10.1016/j.crad.2013.01.024]

22 **Flejou JF**, Barge J, Menu Y, Degott C, Bismuth H, Potet F, Benhamou JP. Liver adenomatosis. An entity distinct from liver adenoma? *Gastroenterology* 1985; **89**: 1132-1138 [PMID: 2412930]

23 **Frulio N**, Chiche L, Bioulac-Sage P, Balabaud C. Hepatocellular adenomatosis: what should the term stand for! *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2014; **38**: 132-136 [PMID: 24126236 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2013.08.004]

24 **Chiche L**, Dao T, Salamé E, Galais MP, Bouvard N, Schmutz G, Rousselot P, Bioulac-Sage P, Ségol P, Gignoux M. Liver adenomatosis: reappraisal, diagnosis, and surgical management: eight new cases and review of the literature. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 74-81 [PMID: 10636105 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200001000-00011]

25 **Cho SW**, Marsh JW, Steel J, Holloway SE, Heckman JT, Ochoa ER, Geller DA, Gamblin TC. Surgical management of hepatocellular adenoma: take it or leave it? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 2795-2803 [PMID: 18696154 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0090-0]

26 **Dokmak S**, Paradis V, Vilgrain V, Sauvanet A, Farges O, Valla D, Bedossa P, Belghiti J. A single-center surgical experience of 122 patients with single and multiple hepatocellular adenomas. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1698-1705 [PMID: 19664629 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.07.061]

27 **van Aalten SM**, de Man RA, IJzermans JN, Terkivatan T. Systematic review of haemorrhage and rupture of hepatocellular adenomas. *Br J Surg* 2012; **99**: 911-916 [PMID: 22619025 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8762]

28 **Marini P**, Vilgrain V, Belghiti J. Management of spontaneous rupture of liver tumours. *Dig Surg* 2002; **19**: 109-113 [PMID: 11978996 DOI: 10.1159/000052022]

29 **Stoot JH**, Coelen RJ, De Jong MC, Dejong CH. Malignant transformation of hepatocellular adenomas into hepatocellular carcinomas: a systematic review including more than 1600 adenoma cases. *HPB (Oxford)* 2010; **12**: 509-522 [PMID: 20887318 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2010.00222.x]

30 **Farges O**, Dokmak S. Malignant transformation of liver adenoma: an analysis of the literature. *Dig Surg* 2010; **27**: 32-38 [PMID: 20357449 DOI: 10.1159/000268405]

31 **Calderaro J**, Labrune P, Morcrette G, Rebouissou S, Franco D, Prévot S, Quaglia A, Bedossa P, Libbrecht L, Terracciano L, Smit GP, Bioulac-Sage P, Zucman-Rossi J. Molecular characterization of hepatocellular adenomas developed in patients with glycogen storage disease type I. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 350-357 [PMID: 23046672 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.09.030]

32 **Adam R**, Karam V, Cailliez V, O Grady JG, Mirza D, Cherqui D, Klempnauer J, Salizzoni M, Pratschke J, Jamieson N, Hidalgo E, Paul A, Andujar RL, Lerut J, Fisher L, Boudjema K, Fondevila C, Soubrane O, Bachellier P, Pinna AD, Berlakovich G, Bennet W, Pinzani M, Schemmer P, Zieniewicz K, Romero CJ, De Simone P, Ericzon BG, Schneeberger S, Wigmore SJ, Prous JF, Colledan M, Porte RJ, Yilmaz S, Azoulay D, Pirenne J, Line PD, Trunecka P, Navarro F, Lopez AV, De Carlis L, Pena SR, Kochs E, Duvoux C; all the other 126 contributing centers (www. eltr.org) and the European Liver and Intestine Transplant Association (ELITA). 2018 Annual Report of the European Liver Transplant Registry (ELTR) - 50-year evolution of liver transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2018; **31**: 1293-1317 [PMID: 30259574 DOI: 10.1111/tri.13358]

33 **Chiche L**, David A, Adam R, Oliverius MM, Klempnauer J, Vibert E, Colledan M, Lerut J, Mazzafero VV, Di-Sandro S, Laurent C, Scuderi V, Suc B, Troisi R, Bachelier P, Dumortier J, Gugenheim J, Mabrut JY, Gonzalez-Pinto I, Pruvot FR, Le-Treut YP, Navarro F, Ortiz-de-Urbina J, Salamé E, Spada M, Bioulac-Sage P. Liver transplantation for adenomatosis: European experience. *Liver Transpl* 2016; **22**: 516-526 [PMID: 26919265 DOI: 10.1002/lt.24417]

34 **European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL)**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines on the management of benign liver tumours. *J Hepatol* 2016; **65**: 386-398 [PMID: 27085809 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.04.001]

35 **Bahirwani R**, Reddy KR. Review article: the evaluation of solitary liver masses. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 953-965 [PMID: 18643922 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03805.x]

36 **Gandolfi L**, Leo P, Solmi L, Vitelli E, Verros G, Colecchia A. Natural history of hepatic haemangiomas: clinical and ultrasound study. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 677-680 [PMID: 2060877 DOI: 10.1136/gut.32.6.677]

37 **Bajenaru N**, Balaban V, Săvulescu F, Campeanu I, Patrascu T. Hepatic hemangioma -review-. *J Med Life* 2015; **8** Spec Issue: 4-11 [PMID: 26361504]

38 **Keegan MT**, Kamath GS, Vasdev GM, Findlay JY, Gores GJ, Steers JL, Plevak DJ. Liver transplantation for massive hepatic haemangiomatosis causing restrictive lung disease. *Br J Anaesth* 2001; **86**: 431-434 [PMID: 11573537 DOI: 10.1093/bja/86.3.431]

39 **Warren D**, Diaz L, Levy M. Diffuse Hepatic Hemangiomas Successfully Treated Using Sirolimus and High-Dose Propranolol. *Pediatr Dermatol* 2017; **34**: e286-e287 [PMID: 28730754 DOI: 10.1111/pde.13219]

40 **O'Rafferty C**, O'Regan GM, Irvine AD, Smith OP. Recent advances in the pathobiology and management of Kasabach-Merritt phenomenon. *Br J Haematol* 2015; **171**: 38-51 [PMID: 26123689

DOI: 10.1111/bjh.13557]
41 **Sundar Alagusundaramoorthy S**, Vilchez V, Zanni A, Sourianarayanane A, Maynard E, Shah M, Daily MF, Pena LR, Gedaly R. Role of transplantation in the treatment of benign solid tumors of the liver: a review of the United Network of Organ Sharing data set. *JAMA Surg* 2015; **150**: 337-342 [PMID: 25714928 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2014.3166]
42 **Klompmaker IJ**, Sloof MJ, van der Meer J, de Jong GM, de Bruijn KM, Bams JL. Orthotopic liver transplantation in a patient with a giant cavernous hemangioma of the liver and Kasabach-Merritt syndrome. *Transplantation* 1989; **48**: 149-151 [PMID: 2501918 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-198907000-00035]
43 **Mora A**, Cortés C, Roigé J, Noguer M, Camps MA, Margarit C. [Orthotopic liver transplant for giant cavernous hemangioma and Kasabach-Merritt syndrome]. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim* 1995; **42**: 71-74 [PMID: 7899656]
44 **Tepetes K**, Selby R, Webb M, Madariaga JR, Iwatsuki S, Starzl TE. Orthotopic liver transplantation for benign hepatic neoplasms. *Arch Surg* 1995; **130**: 153-156 [PMID: 7848084 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1995.01430020043005]
45 **Brouwers MA**, Peeters PM, de Jong KP, Haagsma EB, Klompmaker IJ, Bijleveld CM, Zwaveling JH, Slooff MJ. Surgical treatment of giant haemangioma of the liver. *Br J Surg* 1997; **84**: 314-316 [PMID: 9117293]
46 **Chui AK**, Vass J, McCaughan GW, Sheil AG. Giant cavernous haemangioma: a rare indication for liver transplantation. *Aust N Z J Surg* 1996; **66**: 122-124 [PMID: 8602810 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-2197.1996.tb01132.x]
47 **Longeville JH**, de la Hall P, Dolan P, Holt AW, Lillie PE, Williams JA, Padbury RT. Treatment of a giant haemangioma of the liver with Kasabach-Merritt syndrome by orthotopic liver transplant a case report. *HPB Surg* 1997; **10**: 159-162 [PMID: 9174860 DOI: 10.1155/1997/10136]
48 **Russo MW**, Johnson MW, Fair JH, Brown RS Jr. Orthotopic liver transplantation for giant hepatic hemangioma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92**: 1940-1941 [PMID: 9382077]
49 **Kumashiro Y**, Kasahara M, Nomoto K, Kawai M, Sasaki K, Kiuchi T, Tanaka K. Living donor liver transplantation for giant hepatic hemangioma with Kasabach-Merritt syndrome with a posterior segment graft. *Liver Transpl* 2002; **8**: 721-724 [PMID: 12149767 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2002.33689]
50 **Ferraz AA**, Sette MJ, Maia M, Lopes EP, Godoy MM, Petribú AT, Meira M, Borges Oda R. Liver transplant for the treatment of giant hepatic hemangioma. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10**: 1436-1437 [PMID: 15497149 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20250]
51 **Meguro M**, Soejima Y, Taketomi A, Ikegami T, Yamashita Y, Harada N, Itoh S, Hirata K, Maehara Y. Living donor liver transplantation in a patient with giant hepatic hemangioma complicated by Kasabach-Merritt syndrome: report of a case. *Surg Today* 2008; **38**: 463-468 [PMID: 18560973 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-007-3623-4]
52 **Aseni P**, Lauterio A, Slim AO, Giacomoni A, Lamperti L, De Carlis L. Life-saving super-urgent liver transplantation with replacement of retrohepatic vena cava by dacron graft. *HPB Surg* 2010; **2010** [PMID: 20811479 DOI: 10.1155/2010/828326]
53 **Vagefi PA**, Klein I, Gelb B, Hameed B, Moff SL, Simko JP, Fix OK, Eilers H, Feiner JR, Ascher NL, Freise CE, Bass NM. Emergent orthotopic liver transplantation for hemorrhage from a giant cavernous hepatic hemangioma: case report and review. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2011; **15**: 209-214 [PMID: 20549381 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-010-1248-1]
54 **Unal E**, Francis F, Aquino A, Xu R, Morgan G, Teperman L. Liver transplant for mixed capillary-cavernous hemangioma masquerading as hepatocellular carcinoma in a patient with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Exp Clin Transplant* 2011; **9**: 344-348 [PMID: 21967263]
55 **About I**, Capdeville J, Bernard P, Lazorthes F, Boneu B. [Unresectable giant hepatic hemangioma and Kasabach-Merritt syndrome]. *Rev Med Interne* 1994; **15**: 846-850 [PMID: 7863122 DOI: 10.1016/s0248-8663(05)82844-9]
56 **Yildiz S**, Kantarci M, Kizrak Y. Cadaveric liver transplantation for a giant mass. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: e10-e11 [PMID: 24269562 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.08.001]
57 **Lange UG**, Bucher JN, Schoenberg MB, Benzing C, Schmelzle M, Gradistanac T, Strocka S, Hau HM, Bartels M. Orthotopic liver transplantation for giant liver haemangioma: A case report. *World J Transplant* 2015; **5**: 354-359 [PMID: 26722664 DOI: 10.5500/wjt.v5.i4.354]
58 **Martínez-González MN**, Mondragón-Sánchez R, Mondragón-Sánchez A, Gómez-Gómez E, Garduño-López AL, Bernal-Maldonado R, Oñate-Ocaña LF, Ruiz-Molina JM. [Cavernous hemangioma of the liver and hepatic hemangiomatosis. Indications and results of the surgical resection]. *Rev Gastroenterol Mex* 2003; **68**: 277-282 [PMID: 15125330]
59 **Eghlimi H**, Arasteh P, Azade N. Orthotopic liver transplantation for Management of a Giant Liver Hemangioma: a case report and review of literature. *BMC Surg* 2020; **20**: 142 [PMID: 32600292 DOI: 10.1186/s12893-020-00801-z]
60 **Prodromidou A**, Machairas N, Garoufalia Z, Kostakis ID, Tsaparas P, Paspala A, Stamopoulos P, Sotiropoulos GC. Liver Transplantation for Giant Hepatic Hemangioma: A Systematic Review. *Transplant Proc* 2019; **51**: 440-442 [PMID: 30879561 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2019.01.018]
61 **Hertl M**, Cosimi AB. Liver transplantation for malignancy. *Oncologist* 2005; **10**: 269-281 [PMID: 15821247 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.10-4-269]
62 **Makhlouf HR**, Ishak KG, Goodman ZD. Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma of the liver: a clinicopathologic study of 137 cases. *Cancer* 1999; **85**: 562-582 [PMID: 10091730 DOI: 10.1002/(sici)1097-0142(19990201)85:3<562::aid-cncr7>3.0.co;2-t]

63 **Mehrabi A**, Kashfi A, Fonouni H, Schemmer P, Schmied BM, Hallscheidt P, Schirmacher P, Weitz J, Friess H, Buchler MW, Schmidt J. Primary malignant hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma: a comprehensive review of the literature with emphasis on the surgical therapy. *Cancer* 2006; **107**: 2108-2121 [PMID: 17019735 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.22225]

64 **Gurung S**, Fu H, Zhang WW, Gu YH. Hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma metastasized to the peritoneum, omentum and mesentery: a case report. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2015; **8**: 5883-5889 [PMID: 26191313]

65 **Lerut JP**, Weber M, Orlando G, Dutkowski P. Vascular and rare liver tumors: a good indication for liver transplantation? *J Hepatol* 2007; **47**: 466-475 [PMID: 17697721 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.07.005]

66 **Nguyen BD**. Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma of the liver with F-18 FDG PET imaging. *Clin Nucl Med* 2004; **29**: 828-830 [PMID: 15545895 DOI: 10.1097/00003072-200412000-00019]

67 **Virarkar M**, Saleh M, Diab R, Taggart M, Bhargava P, Bhosale P. Hepatic Hemangioendothelioma: An update. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2020; **12**: 248-266 [PMID: 32206176 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v12.i3.248]

68 **Lerut JP**, Orlando G, Adam R, Schiavo M, Klempnauer J, Mirza D, Boleslawski E, Burroughs A, Sellés CF, Jaeck D, Pfitzmann R, Salizzoni M, Söderdahl G, Steininger R, Wettergren A, Mazzaferro V, Le Treut YP, Karam V; European Liver Transplant Registry. The place of liver transplantation in the treatment of hepatic epitheloid hemangioendothelioma: report of the European liver transplant registry. *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 949-57; discussion 957 [PMID: 18043096 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31815c2a70]

69 **Grotz TE**, Nagorney D, Donohue J, Que F, Kendrick M, Farnell M, Harmsen S, Mulligan D, Nguyen J, Rosen C, Reid-Lombardo KM. Hepatic epithelioid haemangioendothelioma: is transplantation the only treatment option? *HPB (Oxford)* 2010; **12**: 546-553 [PMID: 20887322 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2010.00213.x]

70 **Noh OK**, Kim SS, Yang MJ, Lim SG, Hwang JC, Cho HJ, Cheong JY, Cho SW. Treatment and prognosis of hepatic epithelioid hemangioendothelioma based on SEER data analysis from 1973 to 2014. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2020; **19**: 29-35 [PMID: 31822393 DOI: 10.1016/j.hbpd.2019.11.006]

71 **Rodriguez JA**, Becker NS, O'Mahony CA, Goss JA, Aloia TA. Long-term outcomes following liver transplantation for hepatic hemangioendothelioma: the UNOS experience from 1987 to 2005. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2008; **12**: 110-116 [PMID: 17710508 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0247-3]

72 **Lai Q**, Feys E, Karam V, Adam R, Klempnauer J, Oliverius M, Mazzaferro V, Pascher A, Remiszewski P, Isoniemi H, Pirenne J, Foss A, Ericzon BG, Markovic S, Lerut JP; European Liver Intestine Transplant Association (ELITA). Hepatic Epithelioid Hemangioendothelioma and Adult Liver Transplantation: Proposal for a Prognostic Score Based on the Analysis of the ELTR-ELITA Registry. *Transplantation* 2017; **101**: 555-564 [PMID: 28212256 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000001603]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1107-1121

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1107

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Hepatocellular carcinoma in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A growing challenge

Ângelo Z Mattos, Jose D Debes, Renu Dhanasekaran, Jihane N Benhammou, Marco Arrese, André Luiz V Patrício, Amanda C Zilio, Angelo A Mattos

ORCID number: Ângelo Z Mattos 0000-0002-3063-0199; Jose D Debes 0000-0002-1512-2604; Renu Dhanasekaran 0000-0001-8819-7511; Jihane N Benhammou 0000-0003-2442-5145; Marco Arrese 0000-0002-0499-4191; André Luiz V Patrício 0000-0002-2622-9802; Amanda C Zilio 0000-0002-5657-1895; Angelo A Mattos 0000-0003-2417-9765.

Author contributions: Mattos AZ and Debes JD were involved in the manuscript conceptualization; Mattos AZ, Debes JD, Dhanasekaran R, Benhammou JN, Arrese M, Patrício ALV, Zilio AC, and Mattos AA were involved in literature review and writing of the original draft; Dhanasekaran R and Benhammou JN were involved in figure design; All authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

Supported by the European-South American Consortium to Assess Liver-Originated Neoplasia (the ESCALON consortium), the European Union's Horizon 2020 program, No. 825510; Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, Harold Amos Medical Faculty Development Program (to Debes JD); and Fondo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología de Chile, No. 1191145 (to Arrese M).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Dr.

Ângelo Z Mattos, Angelo A Mattos, Graduate Program in Medicine: Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90020-090, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Ângelo Z Mattos, André Luiz V Patrício, Amanda C Zilio, Angelo A Mattos, Gastroenterology and Hepatology Unit, Irmandade Santa Casa de Misericórdia de Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90020-090, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Jose D Debes, Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases and of Gastroenterology, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN 55455, United States

Jose D Debes, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Erasmus Medical Center, Rotterdam 3015 CN, South Holland, Netherlands

Renu Dhanasekaran, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Stanford University, Stanford, CA 94305, United States

Jihane N Benhammou, The Vatche and Tamar Manoukian Division of Digestive Diseases, University of California, Los Angeles, CA 90095, United States

Marco Arrese, Department of Gastroenterology, Pontificia Universidad Católica de Chile, Santiago 3580000, Chile

Corresponding author: Ângelo Z Mattos, MD, MSc, Professor, Graduate Program in Medicine: Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, 154, Professor Annes Dias St., office 1103, Porto Alegre 90020-090, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil. angmattos@hotmail.com

Abstract

Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is the most common cause of liver disease worldwide, and its prevalence increases continuously. As it predisposes to hepatocellular carcinoma both in the presence and in the absence of cirrhosis, it is not surprising that the incidence of NAFLD-related hepatocellular carcinoma would also rise. Some of the mechanisms involved in hepatocarcinogenesis are particular to individuals with fatty liver, and they help explain why liver cancer develops even in patients without cirrhosis. Genetic and immune-mediated mechanisms seem to play an important role in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in this population. Currently, it is consensual that patients with NAFLD-related cirrhosis should be surveilled with ultrasonography every 6 mo

Mattos reports grants from EU Horizon 2020 program, grants from Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, Harold Amos Medical Faculty Development Program (to Debes JD) , grants from Fondo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología de Chile and Comisión Nacional de Investigación, Ciencia y Tecnología (to Arrese M), during the conduct of the study.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Brazil

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: March 14, 2021
Peer-review started: March 14, 2021
First decision: April 6, 2021
Revised: April 21, 2021
Accepted: July 26, 2021
Article in press: July 26, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Demidem A, Menichelli D, Saha S, Tajiri K
S-Editor: Liu M
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Li X

(with or without alpha-fetoprotein), but it is known that they are less likely to follow this recommendation than individuals with other kinds of liver disease. Moreover, the performance of the methods of surveillance are lower in NAFLD than they are in other liver diseases. Furthermore, it is not clear which subgroups of patients without cirrhosis should undergo surveillance. Understanding the mechanisms of hepatocarcinogenesis in NAFLD could hopefully lead to the identification of biomarkers to be used in the surveillance for liver cancer in these individuals. By improving surveillance, tumors could be detected in earlier stages, amenable to curative treatments.

Key Words: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Hepatocarcinogenesis; Surveillance

Core Tip: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is a growing cause of hepatocellular carcinoma, and liver cancer is one of the leading causes of cancer-related death worldwide. There are particular genetic and immune-mediated mechanisms for hepatocarcinogenesis in NAFLD. Moreover, hepatocellular carcinoma can develop in NAFLD in the absence of cirrhosis. Finally, the characteristics of NAFLD and its high prevalence lead to important challenges regarding surveillance for liver cancer in this population. This review will approach the most important issues concerning NAFLD-related hepatocellular carcinoma.

Citation: Mattos ÂZ, Debes JD, Dhanasekaran R, Benhammou JN, Arrese M, Patrício ALV, Zilio AC, Mattos AA. Hepatocellular carcinoma in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A growing challenge. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1107-1121
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1107.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1107

INTRODUCTION

Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is rapidly becoming one of the most common causes of liver disease worldwide[1]. According to a meta-analytic assessment of 86 studies, the global prevalence of NAFLD is 25.24%[2]. Therefore, its association with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) also becomes increasingly important [3]. The relevance of this association is demonstrated by the fact that NAFLD was responsible for 36300 incident cases of HCC and 34700 HCC-related deaths in 2019[4].

Although cirrhosis is considered a predisposing condition for HCC in general, diverse disease-specific mechanisms are involved in the development of NAFLD-related HCC[3,5,6]. Moreover, the observation that HCC can occur in patients with NAFLD even in the absence of cirrhosis suggests that, as in the case of hepatitis B virus infection, NAFLD itself could be etiologically linked to HCC development[7]. Over the last few years, an array of studies has shed light on the diverse genetic and immune-related mechanisms that link NAFLD to the process of hepatocarcinogenesis. Nonetheless, much work is still needed to further understand this inter-relation.

Considering the association between NAFLD and HCC, surveillance for liver cancer among patients with fatty liver has become an important topic of discussion. However, the extremely high prevalence of NAFLD and the distinct risk levels for HCC in different patients make defining the target population for surveillance quite challenging[8].

The aim of this article is to review the epidemiology of NAFLD-related HCC, the genetic and immune mechanisms involved in hepatocarcinogenesis in individuals with NAFLD, the current knowledge related to HCC in patients with NAFLD without cirrhosis, and key aspects to consider for HCC surveillance in NAFLD.

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF NAFLD-RELATED HCC

In the last few decades, HCC-related mortality has steadily increased and since the 1980s has almost tripled in the United States, where it is the fastest-rising cause of cancer-related death[9]. Notably, this increase parallels the growth in NAFLD prevalence, which increased 2 to 3-fold in a similar period of time[10], turning it into a leading etiology of cirrhosis worldwide[11]. These coinciding trends and the fact that NAFLD has been noted as an increasingly common cause of HCC in several series[12] as well as the fastest-growing cause of HCC in liver transplant candidates and recipients in the United States[13] suggest that NAFLD is a prominent contributor to HCC burden worldwide and that the prevalence of HCC will likely increase concomitantly with the global obesity epidemic[12,14]. In this context, a recent study used Bayesian models to estimate that the age-standardized incidence rate of NAFLD-related liver cancer would increase from 0.92/100000 inhabitants in 2018 to 1.18/100000 inhabitants in 2030[15].

Estimates regarding the annual incidence of HCC in patients with NAFLD-related cirrhosis in the western hemisphere range from 0.5% to 2.6%[14,16]. With regard to data from eastern hemisphere countries, a prospective study from Japan reported similar figures, with an annual incidence of 2.26% in a cohort followed for more than 15 years[17]. Another study from India reported lower figures (annual incidence of HCC of 0.5% in patients with biopsy-proven NAFLD-related cirrhosis)[18]. It is worth mentioning, though, that most of these estimates originate from cohorts followed in tertiary centers or from liver transplant registries and that population-based cohort studies are not available. Importantly, existing data suggest that older age, male sex, alcohol intake, and especially diabetes are factors that may increase HCC incidence in NAFLD-related cirrhosis[19]. The annual incidence of HCC among individuals with NAFLD who do not have cirrhosis is much lower than that reported for patients with cirrhosis, as it will be reviewed later in this article.

GENETIC ASPECTS OF NAFLD-RELATED HCC

Considering the particular characteristics of NAFLD and NAFLD-related HCC as well as the fact that liver cancer also develops in individuals with NAFLD who do not have cirrhosis, the study of the genetic aspects of hepatocarcinogenesis in NAFLD has drawn substantial attention. The main genetic mechanisms involved in the development of NAFLD-related HCC will be discussed in this section and are summarized in Figure 1.

Genetic variants associated with NAFLD-related HCC

Early NAFLD studies have identified ethnic differences and evidence of familial clustering suggestive of a hereditary/genetic component to the disease[20]. The first study to demonstrate an association between genetic variants and NAFLD was published by Romeo *et al*[21] who conducted a genome wide association analysis using quantitative proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy to measure hepatic steatosis. The genome wide association analysis showed that carriers of the rs738409 variant of the patatin-like phospholipase domain containing protein 3 (*PNPLA3*) gene, most commonly found among Hispanics, had over a 2-fold increase in intrahepatic triglycerides[21]. Subsequent studies demonstrated the same variant to be associated with NAFLD-related HCC[22,23].

Following studies described conflicting evidence of an association between the transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2 (TM6SF2) rs58542926 polymorphism and NAFLD-related HCC, potentially from its low minor allele frequency[24,25]. The membrane bound O-acetyltransferase domain containing 7 rs641738 variant was posteriorly identified in a European cohort to be associated with NAFLD-related HCC [25-30]. Another European study focusing on the identification of rare variants in NAFLD-related HCC cases found, aside from PNPLA3 and TM6SF2, pathogenic variants in apolipoprotein B gene, among others[31]. As genetic association studies have mostly included patients of European ancestry, larger and more diverse cohorts are needed given the clinical observation that Hispanics are at higher risk for NAFLD-related HCC[32].

Molecular events in NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis

Association studies have provided a plethora of information regarding NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis, although mechanistic studies have yet to elucidate how

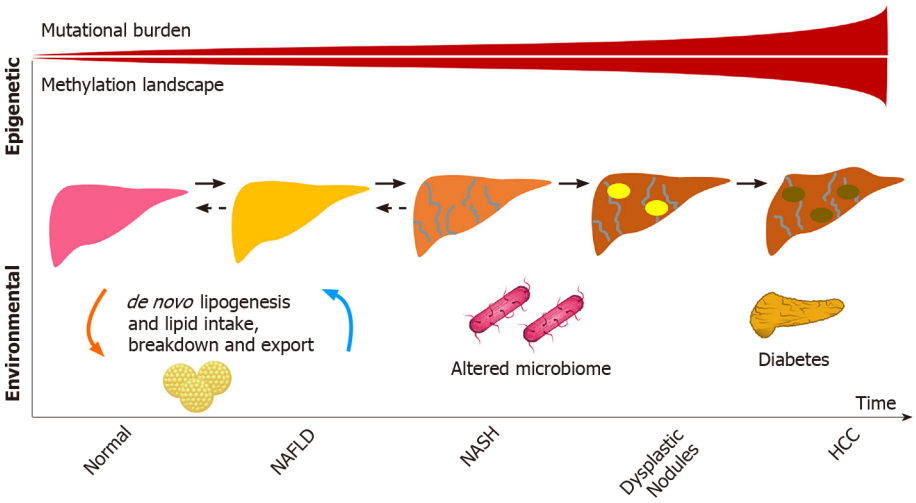


Figure 1 Main genetic factors determining nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-related hepatocarcinogenesis. HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH: Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis.

these variants cause disease. The observation that many of the polymorphisms involve lipid regulation raises the possibility that a lipid-rich dysregulated microenvironment may be key to HCC development. Although NAFLD-specific HCC studies are lacking, parallel mutations exist between NAFLD and other etiologies demonstrating a potential convergence in pathways that have previously been described in viral etiologies[33]. For instance, mutations in telomerase reverse transcriptase are known to play a role in the progression of dysplastic nodules and in the development of early HCC[34,35].

As hepatocyte damage increases from cirrhosis to dysplasia and eventually HCC, the mutational burden leading to cancer exponentially grows. This was well illustrated in a study by Brunner *et al*[36] who conducted whole genome sequencing of 100-500 hepatocytes from 5 healthy controls and 9 patients with cirrhosis. Structural variants and copy number variations were more commonly identified in those with cirrhosis compared to the normal controls, including in activin receptor type 2A, cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A, and AT-rich interaction domain 5A. Interestingly, similar signatures of somatic copy number variations were identified in a pilot study of 10 HCC cases in circulating tumor cells, raising the possibility of their use as biomarkers[37]. Other well described pathways include mutations in β-catenin, tumor antigen p53, and AKT/mechanistic target of rapamycin/mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling pathway, which includes tuberous sclerosis complex subunits 1 and 2, phosphatase and tensin homolog, and fibroblast growth factor 19[34].

Given the clinical and genetic heterogeneity in human HCCs, animal models have provided the pre-clinical tools to understand these pathways in NAFLD-related HCC [38]. Although NAFLD and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) mouse models have limitations in recapitulating the human NAFLD phenotype, these animal models have proven especially relevant when comparing "obese" and "lean" NAFLD-related HCCs. Using whole exome sequencing, Shen *et al*[39] demonstrated that obese and lean NAFLD-related HCCs in mice had a different mutational burden. For instance, they identified mutations in the carboxyl ester lipase gene that caused an increase in cholesterol esters mostly in the obese mice. Similarly, Grohmann *et al*[40] studied obese and lean mouse models to show that HCC and NASH development were dependent on divergent pathways, raising the possibility of variable mechanisms in non-cirrhotic HCC development. The non-fibrotic pathway contributions were also demonstrated in European cohorts (from Germany and the United Kingdom), in which polygenic risk scores (including PNPLA3, TM6SF2, membrane bound O-acetyl-transferase domain containing 7, and glucokinase regulator) predicted the risk of HCC in patients with NAFLD. This risk was associated with hepatic steatosis (adjusted hazard ratio of 1.35, $P < 0.01$), even after correcting for hepatic fibrosis ($P < 0.05$)[41].

The advent of single cell RNA sequencing has allowed for further understanding of the cell type proportions in HCC, which was a limitation of bulk RNA sequencing given tumor heterogeneity[42], including the understanding of the inflammatory microenvironment that may have effects on treatment responses[43]. Whether similar cell type proportions and mutational signatures will be identified in NAFLD-related HCC remains to be seen in populations with and without cirrhosis.

A summary of the genetic variants and mutations described in NAFLD-related HCC is presented in Tables 1 and 2.

Epigenetic changes

Epigenetic modifiers also play a role in HCC development and account for approximately 32% of mutations found in HCC[44,45]. Many of the genes involved in structural chromosomal changes (AT-rich interaction domain 1A, AT-rich interaction domain 2, histone-lysine N-methyltransferase 2A) may not be directly involved in the pathogenesis of the disease but could be proxies to mutational changes in other genes linked by chromosomal looping captured by assay of transposase-accessible chromatin [46,47], an avenue that has not been yet explored in HCC related to NAFLD or to other etiologies of liver disease. Methylation aberrations also play a role. Recent work by Hernandez-Meza *et al*[48] demonstrated the extensive methylation landscape of different etiologies of HCC in a European cohort, with a minority represented by NAFLD. Similar to the increase in mutational burden seen from normal liver to cirrhosis, the study demonstrated that patients with HCC were more likely to have hypermethylation patterns compared to controls. Interestingly, some of these differential methylation patterns involved key lipid genes, including the transcription factor, sterol regulatory element-binding protein 1.

Other factors

Serum metabolomic and microbiome studies have also identified signatures for poor NAFLD-related outcomes[49-51], although it remains to be seen whether these are surrogates for NASH progression or if they are involved in the pathways. The role of lipopolysaccharides has been studied in this context. The increase in lipopolysaccharides in NAFLD patients, as a surrogate for oxidative stress, is likely multifactorial and linked to the gut (bacterial overgrowth, increased permeability, among other factors), nutrients (including lipids), immune response, and hepatic injury, which adds another complexity to the NAFLD-related HCC spectrum of disease and potentially partly explains disease heterogeneity[52].

The use of metabolomics to identify signatures that are pathogenic in NAFLD-related HCC is also a novelty in the field. A recent study by Buchard *et al*[53] aimed to identify differences in metabolomics in tissues of patients with NAFLD-related HCC by stratifying the cohort according to the degree of liver fibrosis. Using ^{1}H-nuclear magnetic resonance-based assays of 52 paired samples of HCC and adjacent non-tumoral tissue, the authors identified that, independently of fibrosis stage, glucose metabolism was increased in tumors as were branched chain amino acids, potentially reflecting the activation of mechanistic target of rapamycin pathways, which parallels the genetic alternations of HCC discussed previously. This study also demonstrated that HCCs had lower levels of monounsaturated fatty acids, suggesting a lipid reprogramming in HCC. Similarly, HCCs developing in the setting of advanced fibrosis also had lower monounsaturated fatty acids compared to HCCs that originated in livers with no or mild fibrosis[53]. The differences observed in tumoral *vs* non-tumoral tissues as well as in no or mild fibrosis *vs* advanced fibrosis illustrate that tumorigenesis in NAFLD may have fibrosis-independent mechanisms as suggested by Grohmann *et al*[40]. On the other hand, most patients with NAFLD who develop HCC in the absence of cirrhosis have NASH and advanced liver fibrosis instead of simple fatty liver with no or mild fibrosis, which could imply an association between fibrosis and hepatocarcinogenesis as well as common mechanisms for NASH and NAFLD-related HCC[12]. In this regard, the lipotoxicity and the metabolic reprogramming associated with steatosis are examples of pathogenic factors involved in the development of both NASH and HCC, and the inflammatory microenvironment of NASH also favors hepatocarcinogenesis[3].

Other genetic alterations that are a focus of current interest in NAFLD-related HCC are non-coding RNAs. Depending on further studies, they may provide an additional layer of complexity in epigenetic changes[45].

IMMUNE ASPECTS OF NAFLD-RELATED HCC

The mechanisms underlying the initiation and progression of HCC in the background of NAFLD are not fully understood. A number of factors including hepatic lipotoxicity, chronic inflammation, progressive fibrosis, and changes in the microbiome have all been implicated in NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis. Recent studies have elegantly elucidated the role of the tumor microenvironment in this

Table 1 Summary of genetic variants described in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-related hepatocellular carcinoma

Ref.	SNP	Associated gene	Population/cohort
Sookoian *et al*[22]; Shen *et al*[23]	rs738409 C>G	PNPLA3	American cohort; Swedish cohort; Italian cohort; British, Swiss cohort
Liu *et al*[24]; Donati *et al*[25]	rs58542926 C>T	TM6SF2	American cohort
Donati *et al*[25]; Kozlitina *et al*[26]; Falleti *et al*[27]; Vespasiani-Gentilucci *et al*[28]; Luukkonen *et al*[29]; Mancina *et al*[30]	rs641738 C>T	MBOAT7	Italian cohort

MBOAT7: Membrane bound O-acetyltransferase domain containing 7; PNPLA3: Patatin-like phospholipase domain containing protein 3; SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism; TM6SF2: Transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2.

Table 2 Summary of genetic mutations described in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-related hepatocellular carcinoma

Ref.	Gene	Mechanism /pathway
Llovet *et al*[34]; Zucman-Rossi *et al*[35]	*TERT*	Telomere maintenance
Brunner *et al*[36]	*ACVR2A*	Transforming growth factor-β superfamily
Llovet *et al*[34]; Zucman-Rossi *et al*[35]	*ARID5A*	Chromatin remodeling
Llovet *et al*[34]	*CDKN2A*	Cell cycle
Llovet *et al*[34]; Zucman-Rossi *et al*[35]	*CTNNB1*	β-catenin and WNT pathway activation
Llovet *et al*[34]; Zucman-Rossi *et al*[35]	*TP53*	Cellular tumor antigen, cell cycle
Llovet *et al*[34]; Zucman-Rossi *et al*[35]	*FGF19*	AKT/mTOR
Shen *et al*[39]	*Cel*	Cholesterol and lipids ester hydrolysis and absorption
Llovet *et al*[34]	*TSC*	mTOR, Hippo pathway

ACVR2A: Activin receptor type 2A; ARID5A: AT-rich interaction domain 5A; CDKN2A: Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A; Cel: Carboxyl ester lipase; CTNNB1: β-catenin; TP53: Tumor antigen p53; FGF19: Fibroblast growth factor 19; mTOR: Mechanistic target of rapamycin; TERT: Telomerase reverse transcriptase; TSC: Tuberous sclerosis complex.

scenario[3,54-57]. Moreover, other authors have comprehensively discussed the role of cancer cell intrinsic factors that drive HCC in NAFLD[3,54,58,59]. Nevertheless, the role of the host immune system in NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis must also be highlighted.

The liver is considered an immunologically privileged organ. It is constantly exposed to metabolites, toxins, and microbial products from the intestine since it derives a large part of its blood supply from the portal vein. However, there are several immune mechanisms within the liver that prevent an inflammatory hyper-response to this physiological antigenic load, including reduced expression of major histocompatibility class proteins, suppressed antigen presentation by Kupffer cells and dendritic cells, and enrichment of immunosuppressive cells like the regulatory T cells [60-62]. These mechanisms are overwhelmed in the context of NAFLD, where progressive steatosis leads to lipotoxicity, mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and activation of cell death pathways, all of which trigger a state of chronic sterile inflammation. Unfortunately, a combination of the same factors that drive NASH progression also play mechanistic roles in the initiation of HCC in the background of this inflammatory milieu.

Progressive NASH influences both the innate and adaptive arms of the immune system, which together can enable cancer initiation and progression. The complex crosstalk among hepatocytes, adaptive immune cells, and cancer cells has been demonstrated by several studies. Wolf *et al*[54] found that infiltrating CD8+ T cells and natural killer cells contribute to NASH development and the subsequent transition to HCC. However, another study using a different mouse model of NASH showed that CD8+ T cells prevented HCC development and that a specific subset of immunosuppressive IgA+ plasma cells expressing programmed cell death ligand-1 and interleukin-10, which were abundant in NASH livers, directly suppressed liver

cytotoxic CD8+ T cells, leading to HCC development[56]. Subsequently, Ma *et al*[55] showed that the metabolic dysregulation in NAFLD causes selective loss of CD4+ T lymphocytes, thus contributing to accelerated hepatocarcinogenesis. Meanwhile, Gomes *et al*[57] have shown that T helper 17 cells are activated upon hepatocyte DNA damage in NASH and can promote HCC.

Innate immune cells like macrophages, dendritic cells and natural killer cells are also important in the pathogenesis of NAFLD-related HCC. Kupffer cells are resident macrophages that play a significant proinflammatory and profibrotic role during NASH progression. However, their role in HCC is not clear yet. Wu *et al*[63] showed that the activation of Kupffer cells positive for triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells-1 led to secretion of proinflammatory cytokines like interleukin-6, interleukin-1β, tumor necrosis factor, C-C motif chemokine ligand 2, and C-X-C motif chemokine ligand 10, which in turn promoted HCC. In general, though, protumorigenic M2-like macrophages that drive tumor progression *via* suppressing cytotoxic T cells and inducing angiogenesis appear to be recruited from circulating bone marrow derived monocytes rather than resident macrophages[64,65]. Other immune cells like neutrophils[66-68], monocytes[69], dendritic cells[70], and natural killer cells [71,72] have also been implicated in HCC progression in NASH, highlighting the complexity of the immune mechanisms of NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis (Figure 2).

HCC IN NAFLD WITHOUT CIRRHOSIS

Given some of the specificities involved in NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis, HCC in the setting of NAFLD is known to occur even in the absence of liver cirrhosis, an event previously related mostly to hepatitis B virus infection[12]. The prevalence of NAFLD-related HCC in the absence of cirrhosis varies dramatically according to the geographic location of the study and even among different studies performed in a similar region of the world. Most experts estimate that between 14% and 54% of NAFLD-related HCC cases occur in patients without cirrhosis. A study from the Veterans Affairs (VA) Health System in the United States by Mittal *et al*[73] found that 42% of veterans with NAFLD-related HCC had no evidence of cirrhosis. Interestingly, a similar study by the same group the following year found the prevalence of non-cirrhotic HCC related to NAFLD to be 13%[74]. In the latter study, however, the estimation of cirrhosis was separated by different levels of confidence. Small studies from Italy and Japan have also found that 50% and 48% of NAFLD-related HCC cases, respectively, occurred in the absence of cirrhosis, suggesting that the burden of non-cirrhotic HCC in NAFLD is also significant in other parts of the world[75,76]. Finally, a meta-analysis of 19 studies found the prevalence of non-cirrhotic HCC among NAFLD-related HCC to be approximately 38%[77].

Several issues help explain the variable results from multiple studies: (1) classifying patients as to whether or not they have cirrhosis through liver biopsy is possible mainly in small studies, while this classification is much less precise in larger studies that look at International Classification of Diseases codes or large commercial clinical databases; (2) most studies in the United States have been performed in the VA System, which is inevitably biased towards a large presence of male gender among the evaluated cohorts (> 90% in most studies[32,73,74,78]); and (3) the distinction between NAFLD and NASH is not completely clear in all the studies. In this regard, a study from the Netherlands looking at almost 100 non-cirrhotic NAFLD-related HCC cases found that most individuals had a low degree of or no steatohepatitis at all, suggesting a non-inflammatory carcinogenesis path towards HCC in this setting[79].

The lack of clarity on mechanisms leading to non-cirrhotic HCC with underlying NAFLD presents a difficult dilemma for practicing providers, as it is unclear who to screen for HCC. A retrospective cohort study of 271906 patients from the VA System (mean body mass index of 31.6 kg/m^2, 28.7% with diabetes, 70.3% with hypertension, 62.3% with hyperlipidemia) suggested that diabetes and hyperlipidemia increase the risk of HCC in NAFLD[80]. However, the overall proportion of people with diabetes and NAFLD is still elevated as a total number of individuals to screen. Indeed, between 40% to 70% of individuals with diabetes have evidence of NAFLD[81]. Furthermore, it is unclear if the correlation between diabetes and HCC in patients without cirrhosis applies to other populations, as a recent study from Europe, characterizing the differences between cirrhotic and non-cirrhotic HCC in NAFLD, found an inverse association between diabetes and HCC in the non-cirrhotic group. Interestingly, non-cirrhotic HCCs in this study tended to occur in older patients and with

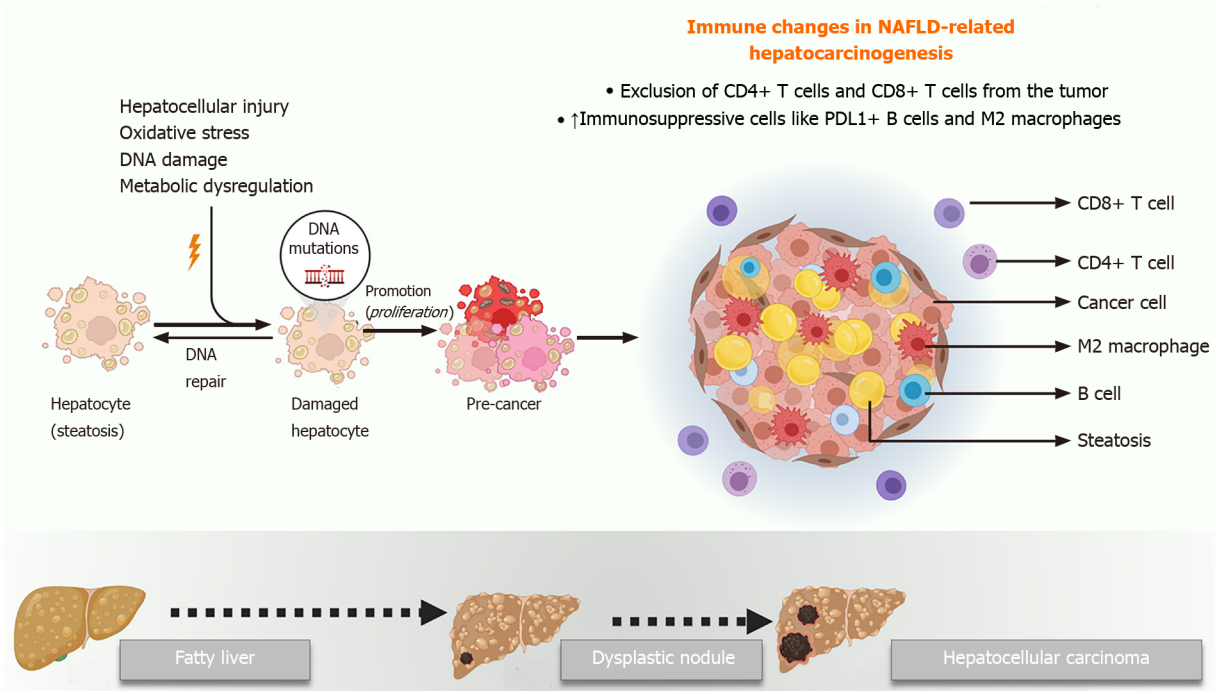


Figure 2 Main immune mechanisms of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-related hepatocarcinogenesis. NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; PD-L1: Programmed cell death ligand-1.

lower body mass index[82]. As described below, the understanding of how to surveil patients with NAFLD for HCC is in its infancy, and further studies are needed to better define those at risk.

SURVEILLANCE FOR HCC IN NAFLD

Surveillance programs aim at allowing for early detection of HCC among high-risk patients so that they have higher odds of being candidates for curative treatments. In fact, when HCC is diagnosed during surveillance, it is diagnosed in earlier stages[83-86], and patients have significantly higher survival rates[85,87]. Thus, it is of utmost importance to define which patients should be submitted to surveillance.

For individuals with an estimated annual incidence of HCC ≥ 1.5%, surveillance is considered cost-effective[8], but it is not always clear which subgroups of patients reach such a cutoff. The main risk factor for HCC in patients with NAFLD is cirrhosis, and therefore the most important international guidelines are consensual that individuals with NAFLD and cirrhosis should be surveilled for HCC with ultrasonography (US) every 6 mo[88-91]. It should be highlighted, though, that obesity and steatosis might impair the performance of US[8], and the American Gastroenterological Association recommends using either computed tomography scan or magnetic resonance imaging in cases in which US quality is deemed unacceptable[91]. Regarding the use of biomarkers, some guidelines make it optional to add alpha-fetoprotein to the surveillance program[89-91], but its performance is suboptimal, especially in NAFLD-related HCC[8], and new biomarkers should be pursued, such as those currently under study by the European-South American Consortium to Assess Liver-Originated Neoplasia.

Despite these recommendations, patients with NAFLD-related cirrhosis seem to be less likely to undergo surveillance than those with other underlying liver diseases[86,92]. In order to overcome the low adherence to surveillance, screening tools to identify individuals at higher risk for HCC could be useful. The GALAD score (gender, age, lectin-binding alpha-fetoprotein-3, alpha-fetoprotein, and des-gamma-carboxyprothrombin) has been studied in this context, and it has been recently validated in patients with NASH. In such patients, the GALAD score had sensitivity and specificity over 90% to identify individuals who would develop HCC as early as 1.5 years before the diagnosis[93].

However, some authors believe that in order to stratify patients according to their risk of developing HCC, different tools might be necessary depending on the underlying liver disease. Using data from the VA Health System database, a study evaluated 7068 patients with NAFLD and cirrhosis, with an annual incidence of HCC of 1.56%. A predictive model based on age, sex, platelet count, albumin levels, aspartate aminotransferase/alanine aminotransferase ratio, diabetes, and body mass index was developed, and it had an area under the receiver operating characteristic curve of 0.775 and 0.721 for predicting HCC in the derivation- and in the validation-cohorts, respectively. This model was able to classify patients as low-risk (< 1%/year), medium-risk (1%-3%/year), and high-risk (> 3%/year) for HCC. A classification such as this could be used, if further validated, to define subgroups that might spare surveillance[78].

As discussed above, there are subgroups of patients with NAFLD who do not have cirrhosis but are at risk of developing HCC. In a large retrospective cohort study including 296707 individuals with NAFLD and a similar number of matched controls from the VA Health System database, patients with NAFLD had 7.6-fold higher risk of developing HCC than their counterparts, and the risk was greater among men, older people, and Hispanics. However, in the NAFLD-group, the annual incidence of HCC was 10.6/1000 person-years for individuals with cirrhosis and 0.08/1000 person-years for those without it, which was considered insufficient for a general recommendation of surveillance to be made for patients without cirrhosis. The FIB-4 score was also evaluated, and, despite its association with the development of HCC, individuals with high FIB-4 scores (> 2.67) but without a diagnosis of cirrhosis were still considered to have a low risk of developing HCC[32].

Another large study evaluated four European primary care databases including over 18 million individuals and verified an incidence of HCC of 0.3/1000 person-years among patients with NAFLD, which was much higher than that of controls (hazard ratio of 3.51). When the NAFLD group was classified according to the FIB-4 score, it was possible to identify which patients were under higher risks. When compared to individuals with a FIB-4 score < 1.30, those with scores between 1.30 and 2.67 had a hazard ratio for HCC of 3.74, and the ones with scores > 2.67 had a hazard ratio of 25.2 [94]. Therefore, despite conflicting evidence, it is possible that the FIB-4 score could be used in order to select patients for surveillance.

Currently, guidelines are vague regarding surveillance for HCC in patients with NAFLD who do not have cirrhosis. The American Gastroenterological Association, in its position paper on surveillance for HCC in patients with NAFLD, recommends considering patients with NAFLD and advanced fibrosis for surveillance but recommends against routinely surveilling individuals with earlier stages of fibrosis [91]. While the position of the European Association for the Study of the Liver is similar to that[88], the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases considers the benefit of surveillance in individuals with NAFLD who do not have cirrhosis to be uncertain and does not support it[90].

DISCUSSION

NAFLD currently affects one fourth of the global population[2]. Its increasing prevalence and the fact that it is associated with the development of liver cancer, both in the setting of cirrhosis and in its absence, make NAFLD-related HCC a growing challenge[12]. It is likely that the growth in NAFLD-related HCC will offset a decrease in viral hepatitis-related liver cancer, which is expected for the near future due to vaccination against hepatitis B virus and to the highly effective treatments for hepatitis B and C[95]. NAFLD-related HCC is already responsible for an important burden on public health, being associated with 796000 disability-adjusted life years in 2019, an increase of 33.6%in comparison to 2010[4].

This article has highlighted important genetic and immune-mediated mechanisms involved in NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis. Understanding the role of certain genetic variants (especially those associated with genes such as *PNPLA3*[22,23], *TM6SF2*[24,25], and membrane bound O-acetyltransferase domain containing 7[25-30]) as well as the importance of epigenetic modifiers[44,45], the microenvironment of NAFLD, and the influences that this disease has on the innate and adaptive immune systems[54-57] will hopefully allow for a better knowledge of the clinical characteristics of NAFLD-related HCC, including the possibility of the development of liver cancer in the absence of cirrhosis. Moreover, this knowledge may help define more appropriate surveillance strategies, focusing not only in individuals with cirrhosis,

since over one third of NAFLD-related HCC cases are diagnosed in patients without this condition[77]. At present, surveillance with US every 6 mo is recommended for individuals with advanced liver fibrosis[91].

This review has limitations associated especially with the incomplete understanding of NAFLD-related HCC by the scientific community. The pathophysiology of this condition must be further studied, particularly the mechanisms leading to non-cirrhotic HCC. Moreover, there is a profound necessity for the identification of better biomarkers to detect subgroups of patients that could benefit from surveillance aside from those with cirrhosis[96].

CONCLUSION

The worldwide growing prevalence of NAFLD and its association with the development of HCC in patients either with or without cirrhosis make NAFLD-related HCC a growing challenge. Improving surveillance strategies is of the utmost importance in order for the early detection of HCC and for patients to have higher chances of being cured. Further understanding of the mechanisms leading to HCC in the setting of NAFLD will likely lead to novel molecular candidates that could be used as biomarkers to identify patients who will progress to develop a liver malignancy even in the absence of cirrhosis.

REFERENCES

1 **Cotter TG**, Rinella M. Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease 2020: The State of the Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1851-1864 [PMID: 32061595 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.01.052]

2 **Younossi ZM**, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D, Fazel Y, Henry L, Wymer M. Global epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-Meta-analytic assessment of prevalence, incidence, and outcomes. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 73-84 [PMID: 26707365 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28431]

3 **Anstee QM**, Reeves HL, Kotsiliti E, Govaere O, Heikenwalder M. From NASH to HCC: current concepts and future challenges. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 411-428 [PMID: 31028350 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0145-7]

4 **GBD 2019 Diseases and Injuries Collaborators**. Global burden of 369 diseases and injuries in 204 countries and territories, 1990-2019: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2019. *Lancet* 2020; **396**: 1204-1222 [PMID: 33069326 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30925-9]

5 **Levrero M**, Zucman-Rossi J. Mechanisms of HBV-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: S84-S101 [PMID: 27084040 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.02.021]

6 **Geh D**, Manas DM, Reeves HL. Hepatocellular carcinoma in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease-a review of an emerging challenge facing clinicians. *Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr* 2021; **10**: 59-75 [PMID: 33575290 DOI: 10.21037/hbsn.2019.08.08]

7 **Villanueva A**. Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **380**: 1450-1462 [PMID: 30970190 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1713263]

8 **Plaz Torres MC**, Bodini G, Furnari M, Marabotto E, Zentilin P, Strazzabosco M, Giannini EG. Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Patients with Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: Universal or Selective? *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32486355 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12061422]

9 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

10 **Lazo M**, Hernaez R, Eberhardt MS, Bonekamp S, Kamel I, Guallar E, Koteish A, Brancati FL, Clark JM. Prevalence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in the United States: the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1988-1994. *Am J Epidemiol* 2013; **178**: 38-45 [PMID: 23703888 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kws448]

11 **Moon AM**, Singal AG, Tapper EB. Contemporary Epidemiology of Chronic Liver Disease and Cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 2650-2666 [PMID: 31401364 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.07.060]

12 **Huang DQ**, El-Serag HB, Loomba R. Global epidemiology of NAFLD-related HCC: trends, predictions, risk factors and prevention. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **18**: 223-238 [PMID: 33349658 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-020-00381-6]

13 **Younossi Z**, Stepanova M, Ong JP, Jacobson IM, Bugianesi E, Duseja A, Eguchi Y, Wong VW, Negro F, Yilmaz Y, Romero-Gomez M, George J, Ahmed A, Wong R, Younossi I, Ziayee M, Afendy A; Global Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis Council. Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis Is the Fastest Growing Cause of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Liver Transplant Candidates. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **17**: 748-755.e3 [PMID: 29908364 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2018.05.057]

14 **Banini BA**, Sanyal AJ. NAFLD-related HCC. *Adv Cancer Res* 2021; **149**: 143-169 [PMID: 33579423 DOI: 10.1016/bs.acr.2020.11.001]

15 **Liu Z**, Xu K, Jiang Y, Cai N, Fan J, Mao X, Suo C, Jin L, Zhang T, Chen X. Global trend of aetiology-based primary liver cancer incidence from 1990 to 2030: a modelling study. *Int J Epidemiol* 2021; **50**: 128-142 [PMID: 33349860 DOI: 10.1093/ije/dyaa196]

16 **Ascha MS**, Hanouneh IA, Lopez R, Tamimi TA, Feldstein AF, Zein NN. The incidence and risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 1972-1978 [PMID: 20209604 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23527]

17 **Yatsuji S**, Hashimoto E, Tobari M, Taniai M, Tokushige K, Shiratori K. Clinical features and outcomes of cirrhosis due to non-alcoholic steatohepatitis compared with cirrhosis caused by chronic hepatitis C. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 248-254 [PMID: 19032450 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2008.05640.x]

18 **Amarapurkar DN**, Dharod M, Gautam S, Patel N. Risk of development of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with NASH-related cirrhosis. *Trop Gastroenterol* 2013; **34**: 159-163 [PMID: 24851525 DOI: 10.7869/tg.120]

19 **El-Serag HB**, Hampel H, Javadi F. The association between diabetes and hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review of epidemiologic evidence. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 369-380 [PMID: 16527702 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2005.12.007]

20 **Schwimmer JB**, Celedon MA, Lavine JE, Salem R, Campbell N, Schork NJ, Shiehmorteza M, Yokoo T, Chavez A, Middleton MS, Sirlin CB. Heritability of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1585-1592 [PMID: 19208353 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.01.050]

21 **Romeo S**, Kozlitina J, Xing C, Pertsemlidis A, Cox D, Pennacchio LA, Boerwinkle E, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH. Genetic variation in PNPLA3 confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nat Genet* 2008; **40**: 1461-1465 [PMID: 18820647 DOI: 10.1038/ng.257]

22 **Sookoian S**, Pirola CJ. Meta-analysis of the influence of I148M variant of patatin-like phospholipase domain containing 3 gene (PNPLA3) on the susceptibility and histological severity of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1883-1894 [PMID: 21381068 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24283]

23 **Shen JH**, Li YL, Li D, Wang NN, Jing L, Huang YH. The rs738409 (I148M) variant of the PNPLA3 gene and cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. *J Lipid Res* 2015; **56**: 167-175 [PMID: 25378656 DOI: 10.1194/jlr.M048777]

24 **Liu YL**, Reeves HL, Burt AD, Tiniakos D, McPherson S, Leathart JB, Allison ME, Alexander GJ, Piguet AC, Anty R, Donaldson P, Aithal GP, Francque S, Van Gaal L, Clement K, Ratziu V, Dufour JF, Day CP, Daly AK, Anstee QM. TM6SF2 rs58542926 influences hepatic fibrosis progression in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nat Commun* 2014; **5**: 4309 [PMID: 24978903 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms5309]

25 **Donati B**, Dongiovanni P, Romeo S, Meroni M, McCain M, Miele L, Petta S, Maier S, Rosso C, De Luca L, Vanni E, Grimaudo S, Romagnoli R, Colli F, Ferri F, Mancina RM, Iruzubieta P, Craxi A, Fracanzani AL, Grieco A, Corradini SG, Aghemo A, Colombo M, Soardo G, Bugianesi E, Reeves H, Anstee QM, Fargion S, Valenti L. MBOAT7 rs641738 variant and hepatocellular carcinoma in non-cirrhotic individuals. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 4492 [PMID: 28674415 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-04991-0]

26 **Kozlitina J**, Smagris E, Stender S, Nordestgaard BG, Zhou HH, Tybjærg-Hansen A, Vogt TF, Hobbs HH, Cohen JC. Exome-wide association study identifies a TM6SF2 variant that confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nat Genet* 2014; **46**: 352-356 [PMID: 24531328 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2901]

27 **Falleti E**, Cussigh A, Cmet S, Fabris C, Toniutto P. PNPLA3 rs738409 and TM6SF2 rs58542926 variants increase the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in alcoholic cirrhosis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2016; **48**: 69-75 [PMID: 26493626 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2015.09.009]

28 **Vespasiani-Gentilucci U**, Gallo P, Dell'Unto C, Volpentesta M, Antonelli-Incalzi R, Picardi A. Promoting genetics in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: Combined risk score through polymorphisms and clinical variables. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 4835-4845 [PMID: 30487694 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i43.4835]

29 **Luukkonen PK**, Zhou Y, Hyötyläinen T, Leivonen M, Arola J, Orho-Melander M, Orešič M, Yki-Järvinen H. The MBOAT7 variant rs641738 alters hepatic phosphatidylinositols and increases severity of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in humans. *J Hepatol* 2016; **65**: 1263-1265 [PMID: 27520876 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.07.045]

30 **Mancina RM**, Dongiovanni P, Petta S, Pingitore P, Meroni M, Rametta R, Borén J, Montalcini T, Pujia A, Wiklund O, Hindy G, Spagnuolo R, Motta BM, Pipitone RM, Craxì A, Fargion S, Nobili V, Käkelä P, Kärjä V, Männistö V, Pihlajamäki J, Reilly DF, Castro-Perez J, Kozlitina J, Valenti L, Romeo S. The MBOAT7-TMC4 Variant rs641738 Increases Risk of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease in Individuals of European Descent. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1219-1230 [PMID: 26850495 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.01.032]

31 **Pelusi S**, Baselli G, Pietrelli A, Dongiovanni P, Donati B, McCain MV, Meroni M, Fracanzani AL, Romagnoli R, Petta S, Grieco A, Miele L, Soardo G, Bugianesi E, Fargion S, Aghemo A, D'Ambrosio R, Xing C, Romeo S, De Francesco R, Reeves HL, Valenti LVC. Rare Pathogenic Variants Predispose to Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 3682 [PMID: 30842500 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-39998-2]

32 **Kanwal F**, Kramer JR, Mapakshi S, Natarajan Y, Chayanupatkul M, Richardson PA, Li L, Desiderio R, Thrift AP, Asch SM, Chu J, El-Serag HB. Risk of Hepatocellular Cancer in Patients With Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 1828-1837 [PMID: 30144434 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.08.024]

33 **Llovet JM**, Kelley RK, Villanueva A, Singal AG, Pikarsky E, Roayaie S, Lencioni R, Koike K,

Zucman-Rossi J, Finn RS. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2021; **7**: 6 [PMID: 33479224 DOI: 10.1038/s41572-020-00240-3]

34 **Llovet JM**, Zucman-Rossi J, Pikarsky E, Sangro B, Schwartz M, Sherman M, Gores G. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2016; **2**: 16018 [PMID: 27158749 DOI: 10.1038/nrdp.2016.18]

35 **Zucman-Rossi J**, Villanueva A, Nault JC, Llovet JM. Genetic Landscape and Biomarkers of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **149**: 1226-1239.e4 [PMID: 26099527 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.05.061]

36 **Brunner SF**, Roberts ND, Wylie LA, Moore L, Aitken SJ, Davies SE, Sanders MA, Ellis P, Alder C, Hooks Y, Abascal F, Stratton MR, Martincorena I, Hoare M, Campbell PJ. Somatic mutations and clonal dynamics in healthy and cirrhotic human liver. *Nature* 2019; **574**: 538-542 [PMID: 31645727 DOI: 10.1038/s41586-019-1670-9]

37 **Court CM**, Hou S, Liu L, Winograd P, DiPardo BJ, Liu SX, Chen PJ, Zhu Y, Smalley M, Zhang R, Sadeghi S, Finn RS, Kaldas FM, Busuttil RW, Zhou XJ, Tseng HR, Tomlinson JS, Graeber TG, Agopian VG. Somatic copy number profiling from hepatocellular carcinoma circulating tumor cells. *NPJ Precis Oncol* 2020; **4**: 16 [PMID: 32637655 DOI: 10.1038/s41698-020-0123-0]

38 **Febbraio MA**, Reibe S, Shalapour S, Ooi GJ, Watt MJ, Karin M. Preclinical Models for Studying NASH-Driven HCC: How Useful Are They? *Cell Metab* 2019; **29**: 18-26 [PMID: 30449681 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2018.10.012]

39 **Shen J**, Tsoi H, Liang Q, Chu ES, Liu D, Yu AC, Chan TF, Li X, Sung JJ, Wong VW, Yu J. Oncogenic mutations and dysregulated pathways in obesity-associated hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2016; **35**: 6271-6280 [PMID: 27132506 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2016.162]

40 **Grohmann M**, Wiede F, Dodd GT, Gurzov EN, Ooi GJ, Butt T, Rasmiena AA, Kaur S, Gulati T, Goh PK, Treloar AE, Archer S, Brown WA, Muller M, Watt MJ, Ohara O, McLean CA, Tiganis T. Obesity Drives STAT-1-Dependent NASH and STAT-3-Dependent HCC. *Cell* 2018; **175**: 1289-1306 [PMID: 30454647 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.09.053]

41 **Bianco C**, Jamialahmadi O, Pelusi S, Baselli G, Dongiovanni P, Zanoni I, Santoro L, Maier S, Liguori A, Meroni M, Borroni V, D'Ambrosio R, Spagnuolo R, Alisi A, Federico A, Bugianesi E, Petta S, Miele L, Vespasiani-Gentilucci U, Anstee QM, Stickel F, Hampe J, Fischer J, Berg T, Fracanzani AL, Soardo G, Reeves H, Prati D, Romeo S, Valenti L. Non-invasive stratification of hepatocellular carcinoma risk in non-alcoholic fatty liver using polygenic risk scores. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 775-782 [PMID: 33248170 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.11.024]

42 **Craig AJ**, von Felden J, Garcia-Lezana T, Sarcognato S, Villanueva A. Tumour evolution in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **17**: 139-152 [PMID: 31792430 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0229-4]

43 **Winograd P**, Hou S, Court CM, Lee YT, Chen PJ, Zhu Y, Sadeghi S, Finn RS, Teng PC, Wang JJ, Zhang Z, Liu H, Busuttil RW, Tomlinson JS, Tseng HR, Agopian VG. Hepatocellular Carcinoma-Circulating Tumor Cells Expressing PD-L1 Are Prognostic and Potentially Associated With Response to Checkpoint Inhibitors. *Hepatol Commun* 2020; **4**: 1527-1540 [PMID: 33024921 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1577]

44 **Schulze K**, Imbeaud S, Letouzé E, Alexandrov LB, Calderaro J, Rebouissou S, Couchy G, Meiller C, Shinde J, Soysouvanh F, Calatayud AL, Pinyol R, Pelletier L, Balabaud C, Laurent A, Blanc JF, Mazzaferro V, Calvo F, Villanueva A, Nault JC, Bioulac-Sage P, Stratton MR, Llovet JM, Zucman-Rossi J. Exome sequencing of hepatocellular carcinomas identifies new mutational signatures and potential therapeutic targets. *Nat Genet* 2015; **47**: 505-511 [PMID: 25822088 DOI: 10.1038/ng.3252]

45 **Fujimoto A**, Furuta M, Totoki Y, Tsunoda T, Kato M, Shiraishi Y, Tanaka H, Taniguchi H, Kawakami Y, Ueno M, Gotoh K, Ariizumi S, Wardell CP, Hayami S, Nakamura T, Aikata H, Arihiro K, Boroevich KA, Abe T, Nakano K, Maejima K, Sasaki-Oku A, Ohsawa A, Shibuya T, Nakamura H, Hama N, Hosoda F, Arai Y, Ohashi S, Urushidate T, Nagae G, Yamamoto S, Ueda H, Tatsuno K, Ojima H, Hiraoka N, Okusaka T, Kubo M, Marubashi S, Yamada T, Hirano S, Yamamoto M, Ohdan H, Shimada K, Ishikawa O, Yamaue H, Chayama K, Miyano S, Aburatani H, Shibata T, Nakagawa H. Whole-genome mutational landscape and characterization of noncoding and structural mutations in liver cancer. *Nat Genet* 2016; **48**: 500-509 [PMID: 27064257 DOI: 10.1038/ng.3547]

46 **Claussnitzer M**, Dankel SN, Kim KH, Quon G, Meuleman W, Haugen C, Glunk V, Sousa IS, Beaudry JL, Puviindran V, Abdennur NA, Liu J, Svensson PA, Hsu YH, Drucker DJ, Mellgren G, Hui CC, Hauner H, Kellis M. FTO Obesity Variant Circuitry and Adipocyte Browning in Humans. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 895-907 [PMID: 26287746 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1502214]

47 **Benhammou JN**, Ko A, Alvarez M, Kaikkonen MU, Rankin C, Garske KM, Padua D, Bhagat Y, Kaminska D, Kärjä V, Pihlajamäki J, Pisegna JR, Pajukanta P. Novel Lipid Long Intervening Noncoding RNA, Oligodendrocyte Maturation-Associated Long Intergenic Noncoding RNA, Regulates the Liver Steatosis Gene Stearoyl-Coenzyme A Desaturase As an Enhancer RNA. *Hepatol Commun* 2019; **3**: 1356-1372 [PMID: 31592021 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1413]

48 **Hernandez-Meza G**, von Felden J, Gonzalez-Kozlova EE, Garcia-Lezana T, Peix J, Portela A, Craig AJ, Sayols S, Schwartz M, Losic B, Mazzaferro V, Esteller M, Llovet JM, Villanueva A. DNA methylation profiling of human hepatocarcinogenesis. *Hepatology* 2020; epub ahead of print [PMID: 33237575 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31659]

49 **Jacobs JP**, Dong TS, Agopian V, Lagishetty V, Sundaram V, Noureddin M, Ayoub WS, Durazo F, Benhammou J, Enayati P, Elashoff D, Goodman MT, Pisegna J, Hussain S. Microbiome and bile acid profiles in duodenal aspirates from patients with liver cirrhosis: The Microbiome, Microbial Markers

and Liver Disease Study. *Hepatol Res* 2018; **48**: 1108-1117 [PMID: 29923681 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.13207]

50 **Muir K**, Hazim A, He Y, Peyressatre M, Kim DY, Song X, Beretta L. Proteomic and lipidomic signatures of lipid metabolism in NASH-associated hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: 4722-4731 [PMID: 23749645 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-3797]

51 **Wong CM**, Tsang FH, Ng IO. Non-coding RNAs in hepatocellular carcinoma: molecular functions and pathological implications. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **15**: 137-151 [PMID: 29317776 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.169]

52 **Ferro D**, Baratta F, Pastori D, Cocomello N, Colantoni A, Angelico F, Del Ben M. New Insights into the Pathogenesis of Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: Gut-Derived Lipopolysaccharides and Oxidative Stress. *Nutrients* 2020; **12**: 2762 [PMID: 32927776 DOI: 10.3390/nu12092762]

53 **Buchard B**, Teilhet C, Abeywickrama Samarakoon N, Massoulier S, Joubert-Zakeyh J, Blouin C, Reynes C, Sabatier R, Biesse-Martin AS, Vasson MP, Abergel A, Demidem A. Two Metabolomics Phenotypes of Human Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease According to Fibrosis Severity. *Metabolites* 2021; **11**: 54 [PMID: 33466889 DOI: 10.3390/metabo11010054]

54 **Wolf MJ**, Adili A, Piotrowitz K, Abdullah Z, Boege Y, Stemmer K, Ringelhan M, Simonavicius N, Egger M, Wohlleber D, Lorentzen A, Einer C, Schulz S, Clavel T, Protzer U, Thiele C, Zischka H, Moch H, Tschöp M, Tumanov AV, Haller D, Unger K, Karin M, Kopf M, Knolle P, Weber A, Heikenwalder M. Metabolic activation of intrahepatic CD8+ T cells and NKT cells causes nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and liver cancer *via* cross-talk with hepatocytes. *Cancer Cell* 2014; **26**: 549-564 [PMID: 25314080 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2014.09.003]

55 **Ma C**, Kesarwala AH, Eggert T, Medina-Echeverz J, Kleiner DE, Jin P, Stroncek DF, Terabe M, Kapoor V, ElGindi M, Han M, Thornton AM, Zhang H, Egger M, Luo J, Felsher DW, McVicar DW, Weber A, Heikenwalder M, Greten TF. NAFLD causes selective CD4(+) T lymphocyte loss and promotes hepatocarcinogenesis. *Nature* 2016; **531**: 253-257 [PMID: 26934227 DOI: 10.1038/nature16969]

56 **Shalapour S**, Lin XJ, Bastian IN, Brain J, Burt AD, Aksenov AA, Vrbanac AF, Li W, Perkins A, Matsutani T, Zhong Z, Dhar D, Navas-Molina JA, Xu J, Loomba R, Downes M, Yu RT, Evans RM, Dorrestein PC, Knight R, Benner C, Anstee QM, Karin M. Inflammation-induced IgA+ cells dismantle anti-liver cancer immunity. *Nature* 2017; **551**: 340-345 [PMID: 29144460 DOI: 10.1038/nature24302]

57 **Gomes AL**, Teijeiro A, Burén S, Tummala KS, Yilmaz M, Waisman A, Theurillat JP, Perna C, Djouder N. Metabolic Inflammation-Associated IL-17A Causes Non-alcoholic Steatohepatitis and Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cancer Cell* 2016; **30**: 161-175 [PMID: 27411590 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2016.05.020]

58 **Takakura K**, Oikawa T, Nakano M, Saeki C, Torisu Y, Kajihara M, Saruta M. Recent Insights Into the Multiple Pathways Driving Non-alcoholic Steatohepatitis-Derived Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Front Oncol* 2019; **9**: 762 [PMID: 31456946 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2019.00762]

59 **Kutlu O**, Kaleli HN, Ozer E. Molecular Pathogenesis of Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis- (NASH-) Related Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **2018**: 8543763 [PMID: 30228976 DOI: 10.1155/2018/8543763]

60 **Li F**, Tian Z. The liver works as a school to educate regulatory immune cells. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2013; **10**: 292-302 [PMID: 23604044 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2013.7]

61 **Knolle PA**. Staying local-antigen presentation in the liver. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2016; **40**: 36-42 [PMID: 26974478 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2016.02.009]

62 **Doherty DG**. Immunity, tolerance and autoimmunity in the liver: A comprehensive review. *J Autoimmun* 2016; **66**: 60-75 [PMID: 26358406 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2015.08.020]

63 **Wu J**, Li J, Salcedo R, Mivechi NF, Trinchieri G, Horuzsko A. The proinflammatory myeloid cell receptor TREM-1 controls Kupffer cell activation and development of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: 3977-3986 [PMID: 22719066 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-0938]

64 **Glavind E**, Gotthardt DN, Pfeiffenberger J, Sandahl TD, Bashlekova T, Willemoe GL, Hasselby JP, Weiss KH, Møller HJ, Vilstrup H, Lee WM, Schilsky ML, Ott P, Grønbæk H. The macrophage activation marker soluble CD163 is elevated and associated with liver disease phenotype in patients with Wilson's disease. *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 2020; **15**: 173 [PMID: 32615997 DOI: 10.1186/s13023-020-01452-2]

65 **Dhanasekaran R**, Baylot V, Kim M, Kuruvilla S, Bellovin DI, Adeniji N, Rajan Kd A, Lai I, Gabay M, Tong L, Krishnan M, Park J, Hu T, Barbhuiya MA, Gentles AJ, Kannan K, Tran PT, Felsher DW. *MYC* and *Twist1* cooperate to drive metastasis by eliciting crosstalk between cancer and innate immunity. *Elife* 2020; **9**: e50731 [PMID: 31933479 DOI: 10.7554/eLife.50731]

66 **van der Windt DJ**, Sud V, Zhang H, Varley PR, Goswami J, Yazdani HO, Tohme S, Loughran P, O'Doherty RM, Minervini MI, Huang H, Simmons RL, Tsung A. Neutrophil extracellular traps promote inflammation and development of hepatocellular carcinoma in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2018; **68**: 1347-1360 [PMID: 29631332 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29914]

67 **Kuang DM**, Zhao Q, Wu Y, Peng C, Wang J, Xu Z, Yin XY, Zheng L. Peritumoral neutrophils link inflammatory response to disease progression by fostering angiogenesis in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 948-955 [PMID: 21145847 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.08.041]

68 **Zhou SL**, Zhou ZJ, Hu ZQ, Huang XW, Wang Z, Chen EB, Fan J, Cao Y, Dai Z, Zhou J. Tumor-Associated Neutrophils Recruit Macrophages and T-Regulatory Cells to Promote Progression of Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Resistance to Sorafenib. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1646-1658.e17

[PMID: 26924089 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.02.040]

69 **Kuang DM**, Zhao Q, Peng C, Xu J, Zhang JP, Wu C, Zheng L. Activated monocytes in peritumoral stroma of hepatocellular carcinoma foster immune privilege and disease progression through PD-L1. *J Exp Med* 2009; **206**: 1327-1337 [PMID: 19451266 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20082173]

70 **Henning JR**, Graffeo CS, Rehman A, Fallon NC, Zambirinis CP, Ochi A, Barilla R, Jamal M, Deutsch M, Greco S, Ego-Osuala M, Bin-Saeed U, Rao RS, Badar S, Quesada JP, Acehan D, Miller G. Dendritic cells limit fibroinflammatory injury in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in mice. *Hepatology* 2013; **58**: 589-602 [PMID: 23322710 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26267]

71 **Cai L**, Zhang Z, Zhou L, Wang H, Fu J, Zhang S, Shi M, Zhang H, Yang Y, Wu H, Tien P, Wang FS. Functional impairment in circulating and intrahepatic NK cells and relative mechanism in hepatocellular carcinoma patients. *Clin Immunol* 2008; **129**: 428-437 [PMID: 18824414 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2008.08.012]

72 **Hoechst B**, Voigtlaender T, Ormandy L, Gamrekelashvili J, Zhao F, Wedemeyer H, Lehner F, Manns MP, Greten TF, Korangy F. Myeloid derived suppressor cells inhibit natural killer cells in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma *via* the NKp30 receptor. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 799-807 [PMID: 19551844 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23054]

73 **Mittal S**, Sada YH, El-Serag HB, Kanwal F, Duan Z, Temple S, May SB, Kramer JR, Richardson PA, Davila JA. Temporal trends of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-related hepatocellular carcinoma in the veteran affairs population. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 594-601.e1 [PMID: 25148760 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.08.013]

74 **Mittal S**, El-Serag HB, Sada YH, Kanwal F, Duan Z, Temple S, May SB, Kramer JR, Richardson PA, Davila JA. Hepatocellular Carcinoma in the Absence of Cirrhosis in United States Veterans is Associated With Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **14**: 124-131 [PMID: 26196445 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.07.019]

75 **Piscaglia F**, Svegliati-Baroni G, Barchetti A, Pecorelli A, Marinelli S, Tiribelli C, Bellentani S; HCC-NAFLD Italian Study Group. Clinical patterns of hepatocellular carcinoma in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A multicenter prospective study. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 827-838 [PMID: 26599351 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28368]

76 **Yasui K**, Hashimoto E, Komorizono Y, Koike K, Arii S, Imai Y, Shima T, Kanbara Y, Saibara T, Mori T, Kawata S, Uto H, Takami S, Sumida Y, Takamura T, Kawanaka M, Okanoue T; Japan NASH Study Group, Ministry of Health, Labour, and Welfare of Japan. Characteristics of patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis who develop hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **9**: 428-433 [PMID: 21320639 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.01.023]

77 **Stine JG**, Wentworth BJ, Zimmet A, Rinella ME, Loomba R, Caldwell SH, Argo CK. Systematic review with meta-analysis: risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis without cirrhosis compared to other liver diseases. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 696-703 [PMID: 30136293 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14937]

78 **Ioannou GN**, Green P, Kerr KF, Berry K. Models estimating risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with alcohol or NAFLD-related cirrhosis for risk stratification. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 523-533 [PMID: 31145929 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.05.008]

79 **van Meer S**, van Erpecum KJ, Sprengers D, Klümpen HJ, Jansen PL, Ijzermans JN, Siersema PD, de Man RA, Verheij J. Hepatocellular carcinoma in noncirrhotic livers is associated with steatosis rather than steatohepatitis: potential implications for pathogenesis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **28**: 955-962 [PMID: 27196679 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000641]

80 **Kanwal F**, Kramer JR, Li L, Dai J, Natarajan Y, Yu X, Asch SM, El-Serag HB. Effect of Metabolic Traits on the Risk of Cirrhosis and Hepatocellular Cancer in Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Hepatology* 2020; **71**: 808-819 [PMID: 31675427 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31014]

81 **Debes JD**, Boonstra A, de Knegt RJ. NAFLD-Related Hepatocellular Carcinoma and the Four Horsemen of the Apocalypse. *Hepatology* 2020; **71**: 774-776 [PMID: 32039490 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31170]

82 **Bengtsson B**, Stål P, Wahlin S, Björkström NK, Hagström H. Characteristics and outcome of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with NAFLD without cirrhosis. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 1098-1108 [PMID: 30829446 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14087]

83 **Fassio E**, Díaz S, Santa C, Reig ME, Martínez Artola Y, Alves de Mattos A, Míguez C, Galizzi J, Zapata R, Ridruejo E, de Souza FC, Hernández N, Pinchuk L; Multicenter Group for Study of Hepatocarcinoma in Latin America; Asociación Latinoamericana para el Estudio del Hígado (ALEH). Etiology of hepatocellular carcinoma in Latin America: a prospective, multicenter, international study. *Ann Hepatol* 2010; **9**: 63-69 [PMID: 20332549]

84 **Appel-da-Silva MC**, Miozzo SA, Dossin IA, Tovo CV, Branco F, de Mattos AA. Incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in outpatients with cirrhosis in Brazil: A 10-year retrospective cohort study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 10219-10225 [PMID: 28028370 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i46.10219]

85 **Piñero F**, Rubinstein F, Marciano S, Fernández N, Silva J, Zambelo Y, Anders M, Zerega A, Ridruejo E, Miguez C, Ameigeiras B, D'Amico C, Gaite L, Bermúdez C, Rosales C, Romero G, McCormack L, Reggiardo V, Colombato L, Gadano A, Silva M. Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Does the Place Where Ultrasound Is Performed Impact Its Effectiveness? *Dig Dis Sci* 2019; **64**: 718-728 [PMID: 30511199 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-018-5390-z]

86 **Aby E**, Phan J, Truong E, Grotts J, Saab S. Inadequate Hepatocellular Carcinoma Screening in Patients With Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis Cirrhosis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2019; **53**: 142-146 [PMID: 29912761 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000001075]

87 **Debes JD**, Chan AJ, Balderramo D, Kikuchi L, Gonzalez Ballerga E, Prieto JE, Tapias M, Idrovo V, Davalos MB, Cairo F, Barreyro FJ, Paredes S, Hernandez N, Avendaño K, Diaz Ferrer J, Yang JD, Carrera E, Garcia JA, Mattos AZ, Hirsch BS, Gonçalves PT, Carrilho FJ, Roberts LR. Hepatocellular carcinoma in South America: Evaluation of risk factors, demographics and therapy. *Liver Int* 2018; **38**: 136-143 [PMID: 28640517 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13502]

88 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 182-236 [PMID: 29628281 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.03.019]

89 **Heimbach JK**, Kulik LM, Finn RS, Sirlin CB, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, Zhu AX, Murad MH, Marrero JA. AASLD guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 358-380 [PMID: 28130846 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29086]

90 **Marrero JA**, Kulik LM, Sirlin CB, Zhu AX, Finn RS, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, Heimbach JK. Diagnosis, Staging, and Management of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: 2018 Practice Guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology* 2018; **68**: 723-750 [PMID: 29624699 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29913]

91 **Loomba R**, Lim JK, Patton H, El-Serag HB. AGA Clinical Practice Update on Screening and Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Patients With Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: Expert Review. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1822-1830 [PMID: 32006545 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.12.053]

92 **Wolf E**, Rich NE, Marrero JA, Parikh ND, Singal AG. Use of Hepatocellular Carcinoma Surveillance in Patients With Cirrhosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Hepatology* 2021; **73**: 713-725 [PMID: 32383272 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31309]

93 **Best J**, Bechmann LP, Sowa JP, Sydor S, Dechêne A, Pflanz K, Bedreli S, Schotten C, Geier A, Berg T, Fischer J, Vogel A, Bantel H, Weinmann A, Schattenberg JM, Huber Y, Wege H, von Felden J, Schulze K, Bettinger D, Thimme R, Sinner F, Schütte K, Weiss KH, Toyoda H, Yasuda S, Kumada T, Berhane S, Wichert M, Heider D, Gerken G, Johnson P, Canbay A. GALAD Score Detects Early Hepatocellular Carcinoma in an International Cohort of Patients With Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 728-735 [PMID: 31712073 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.11.012]

94 **Alexander M**, Loomis AK, van der Lei J, Duarte-Salles T, Prieto-Alhambra D, Ansell D, Pasqua A, Lapi F, Rijnbeek P, Mosseveld M, Waterworth DM, Kendrick S, Sattar N, Alazawi W. Risks and clinical predictors of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma diagnoses in adults with diagnosed NAFLD: real-world study of 18 million patients in four European cohorts. *BMC Med* 2019; **17**: 95 [PMID: 31104631 DOI: 10.1186/s12916-019-1321-x]

95 **McGlynn KA**, Petrick JL, El-Serag HB. Epidemiology of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2021; **73** Suppl 1: 4-13 [PMID: 32319693 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31288]

96 **Debes JD**, Carrera E, Mattos AZ, Prieto JE, Boonstra A; ESCALON investigators. Hepatocellular carcinoma, a unique tumor with a lack of biomarkers. *Ann Hepatol* 2019; **18**: 786-787 [PMID: 31494068 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2019.07.009]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1122-1131

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1122

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Addressing hepatic metastases in ovarian cancer: Recent advances in treatment algorithms and the need for a multidisciplinary approach

Konstantina Adamopoulou, Athanasia M Gkamprana, Konstantinos Patsouras, Evgenia Halkia

ORCID number: Konstantina Adamopoulou 0000-0002-2772-8881; Athanasia M Gkamprana 0000-0002-4241-2260; Konstantinos Patsouras 0000-0003-1384-3376; Evgenia Halkia 0000-0002-1828-9565.

Author contributions: Halkia E initially conceived of and designed the study and provided coordination and supervision throughout the project; Adamopoulou K and Gkamprana AM performed the literature review, data collection and prioritization, and drafted the manuscript; Halkia E and Patsouras K revised the manuscript for scientific content; Spelling and grammatical corrections were made by Halkia E; Adamopoulou K and Gkamprana AM contributed equally and share first authorship; All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors report that they have no conflicting interests.

Konstantina Adamopoulou, Athanasia M Gkamprana, Konstantinos Patsouras, Evgenia Halkia, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Tzaneio General Hospital, Pireaus 18536, Greece

Corresponding author: Evgenia Halkia, MD, MSc, Consultant Physician-Scientist, Surgical Oncologist, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Tzaneio General Hospital, Zanni and Afentouli 1, Pireaus 18536, Greece. evgeniahalkia@gmail.com

Abstract

The lifetime risk for ovarian cancer incidence is 1.39% and the lifetime risk of death is 1.04%. Most ovarian cancer patients are diagnosed at advanced stages (III, IV) because there were no specific symptoms or existing screening tests. Liver metastases have been found in up to 50% of patients dying of advanced ovarian cancer. Recent studies indicate the need for a multidisciplinary approach from initial diagnosis to oncologic surgery and chemotherapy treatment, mandating the involvement of gynecologic oncologists, surgical oncologist, medical oncologists, hepatobiliary surgeons, and interventional radiologists.

Key Words: Cancer; Metastases; Ovarian; Hepatic; Multidisciplinary

Core Tip: Each year more than 295000 women are diagnosed with and 185000 die from ovarian cancer, which remains the most lethal of all gynecologic malignancies worldwide. The management of advanced ovarian cancer has evolved over the past two decades. Surgical excision and with different minimally invasive techniques are available options for treating hepatic metastasis. A multidisciplinary approach is essential to achieve optimal treatment outcomes.

Citation: Adamopoulou K, Gkamprana AM, Patsouras K, Halkia E. Addressing hepatic metastases in ovarian cancer: Recent advances in treatment algorithms and the need for a multidisciplinary approach. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1122-1131

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1122.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1122

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Greece

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: April 8, 2021
Peer-review started: April 8, 2021
First decision: July 8, 2021
Revised: July 21, 2021
Accepted: August 11, 2021
Article in press: August 11, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Li CG, Plagens-Rotman K
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Li X

INTRODUCTION

Each year more than 295000 women are diagnosed with and 185000 die from ovarian cancer, which remains the most lethal of all gynecologic malignancies, worldwide[1,2]. There is currently no screening test for ovarian cancer and early symptoms are usually misleading and scarce, resulting in an advanced stage at diagnosis. As a result, about two-thirds of cases are diagnosed at a late metastatic stage, and 12%-33% are International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) stage IV[3]. Ovarian cancer metastatic patterns include peritoneal and lymph node dissemination as well as hematogenous spread[4]. Peritoneal dissemination is the most common pattern of spread in FIGO stage III ovarian cancer, usually in a form of miliary tumor foci, with possible involvement of the hepatic capsule and right hemidiaphragm. According to the FIGO classification, perihepatic metastases are considered as stage III, while liver parenchymal metastases are stage IV[5]. Up to 50% of women dying of some sort of gynecologic cancer had concurrent liver metastatic disease at autopsy[6,7]. Staging, optimal cytoreductive surgery, and platinum-based chemotherapy are historically considered the standard of care for newly diagnosed advanced stage ovarian cancer. However, up to 90% of women who were optimally debulked and had adjuvant chemotherapy eventually relapse with disease progression[8]. An alternative treatment for initially inoperable disease consists of neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by cytoreduction[9,10]. The strongest predictor of disease progression in any case is the level of cytoreduction, even in the interval setting, and it usually determines overall survival[11-13]. Complete cytoreduction is important, and exceptional surgical skill is required to achieve "no visual tumor" throughout the abdominal cavity, especially in difficult-to-treat areas, such as the upper abdomen during the operation. Complete cytoreduction may require procedures, such as peritonectomy, diaphragmatic resection, and multiple visceral resections[14-19]. Liver metastases of ovarian cancer are considered for surgical therapy, but with controversial indications and patient selection criteria. Addressing liver metastases of ovarian cancer origin still represents a barrier to complete cytoreduction. Several studies have reported the feasibility and efficacy of hepatic resection in the setting of advanced ovarian cancer [20-22]. There are several other treatment modalities of liver metastases, such as thermal radiofrequency (RFA) or microwave (MWA) ablation, cryoablation, laser induced thermotherapy (LITT), transarterial chemoembolization (TACE), computed tomography-guided high dose-rate brachytherapy (CT-HDRBT) and stereotactic body radiation therapy (SBRT). In this review, we aim to summarize recent advances in the management of ovarian cancer liver metastases. The value of the involvement of different medical and surgical specialties and subspecialties is discussed. A multidisciplinary approach to advanced ovarian cancer is essential to achieve optimal treatment outcomes.

METHODOLOGY

A review of literature on the management of liver metastases of ovarian cancer was performed. A comprehensive search of the National Library of Medicine MEDLINE/PubMed database was performed for articles published in the last two decades. The date of the last search was February 28, 2021. The search strategy included the keywords "ovarian," "cancer," "hepatic," "liver," "metastasis, -es," and "multidisciplinary." Articles relevant to the subject in the citations of each report were additionally included. Articles that were written in non-Latin alphabets were excluded for translational reasons.

SURGICAL PROCEDURES

Radical surgical resection plus postoperative treatment of liver metastases of colorectal origin have gradually evolved as a standard of care in many cancer centers, with reports of 5-year overall survival of such patients reaching 50% or more[23,24]. Results of recent studies treating patients with liver metastases of neuroendocrine origin, report a 5-year overall survival exceeding 65%[25]. Generally, recent data show a better prognosis with liver metastases originating from the genital system than with those from other non-colorectal, non-neuroendocrine primaries[26,27]. Recent trends of treatment of advanced ovarian cancer are based on the application of cytoreductive surgery; hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, omentectomy, and radical

excision of all intraperitoneal disease, including the upper abdomen, with a curative intent and a clear survival benefit[28-30]. About 40% of women diagnosed with advanced stage ovarian cancer present with a concurrent bulky tumor load in the upper abdomen (*i.e.* the diaphragm, stomach, or liver), requiring cytoreductive surgery[31].

Liver mobilization, hepatic capsular metastases resection, liver segmentectomy, and diaphragmatectomy are surgical treatment procedures described by Wang *et al*[32]. Specifically, they recommend wedge excision or at least 1 cm of ablation depth for hepatic capsular metastases, rather than superficial excision. Diaphragmatic resection and repair rather than diaphragmatic peritoneal dissection should be applied for metastatic tumors located between the right hemidiaphragm and liver capsule. In case an anatomical resection is performed, a resection margin of more than 2 cm is required. If the metastatic disease involves porta hepatis, hepatic portal skeletonization, portal lymph node dissection should be performed.

In a study by Kamel *et al*[33] in 2011, a significant survival benefit was demonstrated for patients with ovarian cancer liver metastases treated with surgical resection *vs* patients with a similar tumor burden who had biopsy only. Median overall survival from the time of the diagnosis of liver metastatic disease was 53 mo *vs* 21 mo. Similar results were reported by a multicenter study of 2655 patients with ovarian cancer liver metastases who underwent cytoreduction in the upper abdomen[29]. The median overall survival was 54.6 mon for patients who were completely debulked. The importance of complete cytoreduction (R0) not only in the lower abdomen, but also with liver involvement was discussed by Bristow *et al*[34]. They reported an overall survival of 50.1 mo for patients who had undergone R0 Liver resection and R0 cytoreduction, *vs* a 20-mo overall survival of patients treated with an R0 cytoreduction and a non-R0 liver resection. Bolton and Fuhrman[35] conducted a study on a group of patients who had fewer than three liver metastases and another group having more than four lesions at the time of liver resection. Surprisingly, the investigators reported no difference in survival when complete excision of the hepatic tumors was achieved.

Several studies have reported on the safety and efficacy of upper abdominal cytoreductive including diaphragmatic and hepatobiliary resection[22,31,36-38], but others have reported major complications linked with that kind of surgical treatment[39]. Chi *et al*[36] reported the most common postoperative complications in a group of 141 patients treated with upper abdominal cytoreduction of liver metastases. They included pancreatic leaks, intraperitoneal ascitic fluid accumulation, and symptomatic pleural effusions. The reported overall morbidity and mortality were 22% and 1.4% respectively. A review by Gasparri *et al*[22] included studies in which liver resection was performed at either the time of primary treatment or the time of recurrence. The investigators reported no complications attributed to liver resection in the first category and only minimal complications in the second, including bilioma and transient liver function test abnormalities. The most important prognostic factors were the extent of residual disease and patient performance status. Similar perioperative outcomes and rates of complications were reported in cases of cytoreduction including either both upper and lower abdomen or solely the lower abdomen[22,40]. A major survival benefit may be safely achieved with surgical removal of liver tumor deposits during primary, secondary, tertiary and even quaternary cytoreduction[22,31]. According to Neuman *et al*[41], tumor dissemination pattern, cancer antigen (CA)-125 value, age, and initial stage of disease or level of resectability of the tumor did not seem to affect outcome. However, the presence of ascites and the location of tumor aggregates in both liver lobes ere associated with a worse prognosis.

THERMAL ABLATION TECHNIQUES

Thermal ablation techniques in liver surgery include RFA, MWA, cryoablation, and LITT. Locoregional ablation is effectively applied in patients with liver metastases considered inoperable because of surgical or anesthetic contraindications. In cases where liver lesions are parenchymal and not localized on the surface or Glisson's capsule, percutaneous local ablation is feasible and effective without the use of anesthesia. Such patients recover treatment sooner and are fit to receive adjuvant chemotherapy. Usually, hepatic metastases of ovarian cancer origin are superficial, and can only be ablated intraoperatively to protect surrounding tissues from thermal injury. Contraindications to such locoregional ablative intraoperative treatment include tumor location near the hepatic hilum, porta hepatis, or near large bile ducts. Compared with surgical removal of tumors, local ablation is usually associated with a

higher rate of recurrence, while lesions greater than 3 cm are usually not satisfactorily ablated[22]. Another obvious limitation of thermal ablation procedures compared with surgical resection is the lack of a surgical margin, as simple post ablation radiographic findings are used to determine efficacy. Only highly selected patients undergo such treatment procedures, and the local control and long-term survival benefits are still pending from large multicenter prospective studies.

RFA

RFA is a minimally invasive procedure in which high frequency alternating current is delivered through an electrode directly to the tumor, providing ablation and eventually cell death while sparing surrounding tissues from unnecessary damage. Low morbidity and mortality are attributed to this minimally invasive technique with a therapeutic intent. Many studies report a morbidity rate from 2%-5.7% and a mortality rate of less than 1% associate with RFA treatment. Patient safety is clearly greater with RFA than with liver resection, which has a reported treatment-associated morbidity of 25% and mortality of less than 5%[42-44]. RFA is indicated in selected patients with ovarian cancer liver metastases, numerous metastases, large metastases, or with foci located deep within the liver parenchyma[45-47]. Effective local tumor control has been reported in several studies of RFA in liver metastases, with a limited number of reported complications, such as bleeding, liver abscess, and rare cases of bile leakage. In 2014, Liu *et al*[47] reported no serious complications after the application of RFA in ovarian cancer liver metastases, with 1-, 3-, and 5-year overall survival rates of 100%, 61%, and 61% respectively. In 2005, Mateo *et al*[48] reported the outcomes achieved with RFA combined with excisional surgery for hepatic metastases. Prospective randomized controlled studies are eagerly awaited in order to get a better idea of the therapeutic benefit provided by the application of either RFA and/or liver resection in the treatment of hepatic metastases originating from ovarian cancer.

MWA

MWA is a minimally invasive method of thermal ablation. It uses electromagnetic energy in the microwave spectrum to increase intratumoral temperature and achieve large ablation volume[49,50]. Zhuo *et al*[51] reported that MWA (50 w × 10 min) achieved acceptable perioperative morbidity and mortality and reduced blood loss, transfusion volume, and cost compared with surgical resection of metastatic lesions. However, patients treated with MWA had a significantly higher mortality in terms of overall survival.

LITT

LITT uses neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet laser light to induce therapeutic coagulation. This laser technique uses thin flexible fibers and a water-cooled applicator. A sphere of necrosis is produced from a bare fiber, while a diffuser fiber accomplishes ablation in an elliptical shape. In the multi-applicator mode, a single lesion can be ablated with the simultaneous use of up to five laser applicators [52].

Cryoablation

This ablation technique induces cell death in a target lesion by alternate freezing and thawing[53]. Gao *et al*[54] investigated the efficacy and safety of cryoablation in the treatment of ovarian cancer hepatic metastases. The post ablation local tumor progression rate was 7.14%, and the 1-year overall survival was over 90%. No serious complications (*e.g.*, liver bleeding, cryo-shock, hepatic failure, abscess, biliary fistula, renal insufficiency or others) were reported. A constellation of post ablation symptoms was observed in about half the patients, including low grade fever and malaise, and abdominal pain and was described as "postcryoablation syndrome". Elevated transaminases and right-side pleural effusion were noted in a few patients. Goering *et al*[55] found similar relapse-free rates in patients treated with cryoablation combined with hepatic resection surgery and those with surgery alone. They suggested that cryoablation could increase the number of patients eligible to surgery.

TACE

TACE has been historically used to treat primary and metastatic liver tumors. It consists of local arterial infusion of chemotherapy drugs plus embolization particles [50]. TACE is recommended for the treatment of hepatocellular cancer and liver

metastases, especially those originating from colorectal or neuroendocrine malignancies[24,56-61]. Ovarian cancer patients usually undergo cytoreductive surgery and may then receive adjuvant treatment by chemoembolization of secondary liver lesions. TACE indications for the treatment of hepatic metastases include tumors that do not respond to chemotherapy, unresectable tumors, or toxicity of chemotherapeutic agents. Generally, it is used as a last attempt to control intrahepatic metastases while preserving good liver function[62].

SBRT

SBRT, also known as stereotactic ablative radiotherapy (SABR) is a form of external beam radiotherapy that delivers a high dose of radiation in a single or a few fractions, with accuracy sufficient to hit a target and at the same time minimize the induced injury to surrounding tissues[63]. In the phase II SABR-COMET trial[64], 99 patients with hepatic oligometastases of one to five lesions from a variety of primary tumors including breast, colorectal, lung, and prostate were included. They were randomized to two groups based on whether they had received SBRT or standard palliative treatment. The authors reported a higher median overall survival in the SBRT group, 41 mo *vs* 28 mo. Toxicities greater than grade 2 were reported more often in the SBRT group (29% *vs* 9%). Three treatment related deaths (4.5%) were reported. Because of the paucity of randomized studies, the efficacy of SBRT in ovarian cancer remains elusive.

Yegya-Raman *et al*[65] conducted a systematic review of the role of SBRT in the treatment of oligometastatic gynecologic malignancies, primarily ovarian cancer. Seven of eight studies reported response rates > 75%, and 14 of 16 reported local tumor control rates of > 80%. No toxicities greaten than grade 3 were documented in 56% of the studies. In ten studies, the median progression-free survival was between 3.3 and 9.7 mo. Disease progression was usually observed outside the SBRT field. The efficacy of SBRT for management of liver metastases was similar to that of RFA, as indicated by the reported 2-year overall survival[66]. Systemic therapy is usually combined with SBRT, as it has been observed that the therapeutic combination addresses the tendency for distant progression, with less toxicity. Kunos *et al*[67] reported on the almost concurrent use of SBRT and systemic chemotherapy. The grade 3-4 toxicities that were documented were mainly hematologic and metabolic and were most likely chemotherapy related. Another combination therapy includes SBRT plus immunotherapy and has had positive results. In conclusion, the use of SBRT should be seriously considered as an alternative to surgery or chemotherapy, especially in patients with low performance status, already overtreated, or not suited for more aggressive procedures.

COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY-GUIDED HIGH DOSE-RATE BRACHYTHERAPY

In 2004, Ricke *et al*[68,69] described the use of computed tomography-guided high dose-rate brachytherapy (CT-HDRBT) in clinical practice. CT-HDRBT is a locally applied radioablation technique administers iridium-192 through catheters into the tumor for a short time under CT guidance. The technique doe not require cooling of adjacent large vessels, and tumor size is not a burden. CT-HDRBT is recommended as an effective and feasible way to treat unresectable primary and secondary hepatic tumors. It has excellent local tumor control, time to disease progression, and overall survival outcomes[70,71]. A small study by Collettini *et al*[72] investigated the efficacy and safety of HDRBT in the treatment of ovarian cancer hepatic oligometastases. They reported that the method was safe and had an excellent local control rate. The overall 12-mo survival rate for a 12-mo period was 100%. CT-HDRBT can be effectively used to treat advanced ovarian cancer synchronous and metachronous liver metastases as a combined therapeutic approach with primary cytoreductive surgery or interval debulking.

MULTIDISCIPLINARY APPROACH

Building a multidisciplinary team (MDT) is essential for the optimal treatment of patients with advanced ovarian cancer and liver metastases. National Comprehensive Cancer Network guideline algorithms of ovarian cancer management recommend the involvement of gynecologic oncologists, pathologists if a biopsy is available, radiologists, interventional radiologists, anesthesiologists, hepatobiliary surgeons, and physicians certified to perform cytoreductive surgery[73]. All cancers should be discussed at MDT committee meetings, which time the treatment algorithms are chosen. The presence of an anesthesiologist is recommended in order to discuss the eligibility for surgery of each patient[74]. A Cochrane Review found that centralization of ovarian cancer surgical oncology services improved overall survival[75]. Management of patients by MDTs is more likely to lead to correct staging[76], evidence-based management, appropriate, and well-timed treatment[77]. As for the surgical subspecialties, intraoperative collaboration of gynecologic oncologists with colorectal and hepatobiliary surgeons is more likely to achieve a complete cytoreduction[78]. As radiographic findings, especially CT, are essential for preoperative evaluation as well as postoperative follow-up, participation of competent radiologists is valuable in patient management and decision making[79]. Interventional radiologists use a variety of techniques to perform the above mentioned minimally invasive procedures. It is clear that the involvement of different disciplines improves the quality of care and shows professionalism in gynecological cytoreductive surgery.

CONCLUSION

The management of advanced ovarian cancer has evolved over the past decade. Parenchymal hepatic metastases are no longer considered as an exclusion criterion when deciding whether a patient is eligible for optimal debulking. Various surgical and minimally invasive procedures with acceptable local control and toxicity profiles, represent valid options for treating liver metastases. Further investigation, ideally by randomized controlled trials, is needed to identify the subset of patients that will most likely benefit from each therapeutic modality. Building a MDT is of outmost importance when treating ovarian cancer liver metastases and will enhance therapeutic outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

2 **Torre LA**, Trabert B, DeSantis CE, Miller KD, Samimi G, Runowicz CD, Gaudet MM, Jemal A, Siegel RL. Ovarian cancer statistics, 2018. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 284-296 [PMID: 29809280 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21456]

3 **Ataseven B**, Chiva LM, Harter P, Gonzalez-Martin A, du Bois A. FIGO stage IV epithelial ovarian, fallopian tube and peritoneal cancer revisited. *Gynecol Oncol* 2016; **142**: 597-607 [PMID: 27335253 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2016.06.013]

4 **Nakayama K**, Nakayama N, Katagiri H, Miyazaki K. Mechanisms of ovarian cancer metastasis: biochemical pathways. *Int J Mol Sci* 2012; **13**: 11705-11717 [PMID: 23109879 DOI: 10.3390/ijms130911705]

5 **Prat J**; FIGO Committee on Gynecologic Oncology. Staging classification for cancer of the ovary, fallopian tube, and peritoneum. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2014; **124**: 1-5 [PMID: 24219974 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2013.10.001]

6 **Chi DS**, Fong Y, Venkatraman ES, Barakat RR. Hepatic resection for metastatic gynecologic carcinomas. *Gynecol Oncol* 1997; **66**: 45-51 [PMID: 9234920 DOI: 10.1006/gyno.1997.4727]

7 **Rose PG**, Piver MS, Tsukada Y, Lau TS. Metastatic patterns in histologic variants of ovarian cancer. An autopsy study. *Cancer* 1989; **64**: 1508-1513 [PMID: 2776109 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19891001)64:7<1508::aid-cncr2820640725>3.0.co;2-v]

8 **Hoffman BL**, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, Hamid C, Corton M, Schaffer JI. Williams gynecology. 4 th ed. Mc Graw Hill, New York, 2020: 732-733

9 **Vergote I**, Tropé CG, Amant F, Kristensen GB, Ehlen T, Johnson N, Verheijen RH, van der Burg ME, Lacave AJ, Panici PB, Kenter GG, Casado A, Mendiola C, Coens C, Verleye L, Stuart GC, Pecorelli S, Reed NS; European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer-Gynaecological Cancer Group; NCIC Clinical Trials Group. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy or primary surgery in stage IIIC or IV ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 943-953 [PMID: 20818904 DOI:

10.1056/NEJMoa0908806]
10 **Kehoe S**, Hook J, Nankivell M, Jayson GC, Kitchener H, Lopes T, Luesley D, Perren T, Bannoo S, Mascarenhas M, Dobbs S, Essapen S, Twigg J, Herod J, McCluggage G, Parmar M, Swart AM. Primary chemotherapy *vs* primary surgery for newly diagnosed advanced ovarian cancer (CHORUS): an open-label, randomised, controlled, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet* 2015; **386**: 249-257 [PMID: 26002111 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)62223-6]
11 **Chi DS**, McCaughty K, Diaz JP, Huh J, Schwabenbauer S, Hummer AJ, Venkatraman ES, Aghajanian C, Sonoda Y, Abu-Rustum NR, Barakat RR. Guidelines and selection criteria for secondary cytoreductive surgery in patients with recurrent, platinum-sensitive epithelial ovarian carcinoma. *Cancer* 2006; **106**: 1933-1939 [PMID: 16572412 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.21845]
12 **Harter P**, du Bois A, Hahmann M, Hasenburg A, Burges A, Loibl S, Gropp M, Huober J, Fink D, Schröder W, Muenstedt K, Schmalfeldt B, Emons G, Pfisterer J, Wollschlaeger K, Meerpohl HG, Breitbach GP, Tanner B, Sehouli J; Arbeitsgemeinschaft Gynaekologische Onkologie Ovarian Committee; AGO Ovarian Cancer Study Group. Surgery in recurrent ovarian cancer: the Arbeitsgemeinschaft Gynaekologische Onkologie (AGO) DESKTOP OVAR trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2006; **13**: 1702-1710 [PMID: 17009163 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-006-9058-0]
13 **Zang RY**, Harter P, Chi DS, Sehouli J, Jiang R, Tropé CG, Ayhan A, Cormio G, Xing Y, Wollschlaeger KM, Braicu EI, Rabbitt CA, Oksefjell H, Tian WJ, Fotopoulou C, Pfisterer J, du Bois A, Berek JS. Predictors of survival in patients with recurrent ovarian cancer undergoing secondary cytoreductive surgery based on the pooled analysis of an international collaborative cohort. *Br J Cancer* 2011; **105**: 890-896 [PMID: 21878937 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2011.328]
14 **Merideth MA**, Cliby WA, Keeney GL, Lesnick TG, Nagorney DM, Podratz KC. Hepatic resection for metachronous metastases from ovarian carcinoma. *Gynecol Oncol* 2003; **89**: 16-21 [PMID: 12694649 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-8258(03)00004-0]
15 **Eisenkop SM**, Spirtos NM, Lin WC. Splenectomy in the context of primary cytoreductive operations for advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2006; **100**: 344-348 [PMID: 16202446 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2005.08.036]
16 **Magtibay PM**, Adams PB, Silverman MB, Cha SS, Podratz KC. Splenectomy as part of cytoreductive surgery in ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2006; **102**: 369-374 [PMID: 16631919 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2006.03.028]
17 **Aletti GD**, Podratz KC, Jones MB, Cliby WA. Role of rectosigmoidectomy and stripping of pelvic peritoneum in outcomes of patients with advanced ovarian cancer. *J Am Coll Surg* 2006; **203**: 521-526 [PMID: 17000396 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2006.06.027]
18 **Papadia A**, Morotti M. Diaphragmatic surgery during cytoreduction for primary or recurrent epithelial ovarian cancer: a review of the literature. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2013; **287**: 733-741 [PMID: 23341061 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-013-2715-1]
19 **Chi DS**, Eisenhauer EL, Zivanovic O, Sonoda Y, Abu-Rustum NR, Levine DA, Guile MW, Bristow RE, Aghajanian C, Barakat RR. Improved progression-free and overall survival in advanced ovarian cancer as a result of a change in surgical paradigm. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **114**: 26-31 [PMID: 19395008 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.03.018]
20 **Bacalbaşa N**, Balescu I, Dima S, Popescu I. Long-term Survivors After Liver Resection for Ovarian Cancer Liver Metastases. *Anticancer Res* 2015; **35**: 6919-6923 [PMID: 26637917]
21 **Kolev V**, Pereira EB, Schwartz M, Sarpel U, Roayaie S, Labow D, Momeni M, Chuang L, Dottino P, Rahaman J, Zakashansky K. The role of liver resection at the time of secondary cytoreduction in patients with recurrent ovarian cancer. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2014; **24**: 70-74 [PMID: 24356412 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000026]
22 **Gasparri ML**, Grandi G, Bolla D, Gloor B, Imboden S, Panici PB, Mueller MD, Papadia A. Hepatic resection during cytoreductive surgery for primary or recurrent epithelial ovarian cancer. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2016; **142**: 1509-1520 [PMID: 26660323 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-015-2090-3]
23 **Tomlinson JS**, Jarnagin WR, DeMatteo RP, Fong Y, Kornprat P, Gonen M, Kemeny N, Brennan MF, Blumgart LH, D'Angelica M. Actual 10-year survival after resection of colorectal liver metastases defines cure. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 4575-4580 [PMID: 17925551 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.11.0833]
24 **Nordlinger B**, Sorbye H, Glimelius B, Poston GJ, Schlag PM, Rougier P, Bechstein WO, Primrose JN, Walpole ET, Finch-Jones M, Jaeck D, Mirza D, Parks RW, Mauer M, Tanis E, Van Cutsem E, Scheithauer W, Gruenberger T; EORTC Gastro-Intestinal Tract Cancer Group; Cancer Research UK; Arbeitsgruppe Lebermetastasen und–tumoren in der Chirurgischen Arbeitsgemeinschaft Onkologie (ALM-CAO); Australasian Gastro-Intestinal Trials Group (AGITG); Fédération Francophone de Cancérologie Digestive (FFCD). Perioperative FOLFOX4 chemotherapy and surgery *vs* surgery alone for resectable liver metastases from colorectal cancer (EORTC 40983): long-term results of a randomised, controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 1208-1215 [PMID: 24120480 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70447-9]
25 **Yu X**, Gu J, Wu H, Fu D, Li J, Jin C. Resection of Liver Metastases: A Treatment Provides a Long-Term Survival Benefit for Patients with Advanced Pancreatic Neuroendocrine Tumors: *A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis*. *J Oncol* 2018; **2018**: 6273947 [PMID: 30538745 DOI: 10.1155/2018/6273947]
26 **Fitzgerald TL**, Brinkley J, Banks S, Vohra N, Englert ZP, Zervos EE. The benefits of liver resection for non-colorectal, non-neuroendocrine liver metastases: a systematic review. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2014; **399**: 989-1000 [PMID: 25148767 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-014-1241-3]
27 **Takemura N**, Saiura A. Role of surgical resection for non-colorectal non-neuroendocrine liver

metastases. *World J Hepatol* 2017; **9**: 242-251 [PMID: 28261381 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v9.i5.242]

28 **Zivanovic O**, Eisenhauer EL, Zhou Q, Iasonos A, Sabbatini P, Sonoda Y, Abu-Rustum NR, Barakat RR, Chi DS. The impact of bulky upper abdominal disease cephalad to the greater omentum on surgical outcome for stage IIIC epithelial ovarian, fallopian tube, and primary peritoneal cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **108**: 287-292 [PMID: 17996927 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.10.001]

29 **Rodriguez N**, Miller A, Richard SD, Rungruang B, Hamilton CA, Bookman MA, Maxwell GL, Horowitz NS, Krivak TC. Upper abdominal procedures in advanced stage ovarian or primary peritoneal carcinoma patients with minimal or no gross residual disease: an analysis of Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG) 182. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **130**: 487-492 [PMID: 23791702 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.06.017]

30 **Eisenhauer EL**, Abu-Rustum NR, Sonoda Y, Levine DA, Poynor EA, Aghajanian C, Jarnagin WR, DeMatteo RP, D'Angelica MI, Barakat RR, Chi DS. The addition of extensive upper abdominal surgery to achieve optimal cytoreduction improves survival in patients with stages IIIC-IV epithelial ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2006; **103**: 1083-1090 [PMID: 16890277 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2006.06.028]

31 **Luna-Abanto J**, García Ruiz L, Laura Martinez J, Álvarez Larraondo M, Villoslada Terrones V. Liver Resection as Part of Cytoreductive Surgery for Ovarian Cancer. *J Gynecol Surg* 2020; **36**: 70-75 [PMID: 32292262 DOI: 10.1089/gyn.2019.0074]

32 **Wang M**, Zhou J, Zhang L, Zhao Y, Zhang N, Wang L, Zhu W, He X, Zhu H, Xu W, Pan Q, Mao A, Li Q. Surgical treatment of ovarian cancer liver metastasis. *Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr* 2019; **8**: 129-137 [PMID: 31098360 DOI: 10.21037/hbsn.2018.12.06]

33 **Kamel SI**, de Jong MC, Schulick RD, Diaz-Montes TP, Wolfgang CL, Hirose K, Edil BH, Choti MA, Anders RA, Pawlik TM. The role of liver-directed surgery in patients with hepatic metastasis from a gynecologic primary carcinoma. *World J Surg* 2011; **35**: 1345-1354 [PMID: 21452068 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-011-1074-y]

34 **Bristow RE**, Tomacruz RS, Armstrong DK, Trimble EL, Montz FJ. Survival effect of maximal cytoreductive surgery for advanced ovarian carcinoma during the platinum era: a meta-analysis. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 1248-1259 [PMID: 11870167 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2002.20.5.1248]

35 **Bolton JS**, Fuhrman GM. Survival after resection of multiple bilobar hepatic metastases from colorectal carcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 743-751 [PMID: 10767796 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200005000-00015]

36 **Chi DS**, Zivanovic O, Levinson KL, Kolev V, Huh J, Dottino J, Gardner GJ, Leitao MM Jr, Levine DA, Sonoda Y, Abu-Rustum NR, Brown CL, Barakat RR. The incidence of major complications after the performance of extensive upper abdominal surgical procedures during primary cytoreduction of advanced ovarian, tubal, and peritoneal carcinomas. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **119**: 38-42 [PMID: 20609464 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.05.031]

37 **Halkia E**, Spiliotis J, Sugarbaker P. Diagnosis and management of peritoneal metastases from ovarian cancer. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 541842 [PMID: 22888339 DOI: 10.1155/2012/541842]

38 **Halkia E**, Efstathiou E, Spiliotis J, Romanidis K, Salmas M. Management of diaphragmatic peritoneal carcinomatosis: surgical anatomy guidelines and results. *J BUON* 2014; **19**: 29-33 [PMID: 24659639]

39 **Benedetti Panici P**, Di Donato V, Fischetti M, Casorelli A, Perniola G, Musella A, Marchetti C, Palaia I, Berloco P, Muzii L. Predictors of postoperative morbidity after cytoreduction for advanced ovarian cancer: Analysis and management of complications in upper abdominal surgery. *Gynecol Oncol* 2015; **137**: 406-411 [PMID: 25824857 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2015.03.043]

40 **Eng OS**, Raoof M, Blakely AM, Yu X, Lee SJ, Han ES, Wakabayashi MT, Yuh B, Lee B, Dellinger TH. A collaborative surgical approach to upper and lower abdominal cytoreductive surgery in ovarian cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2018; **118**: 121-126 [PMID: 29878375 DOI: 10.1002/jso.25120]

41 **Neumann UP**, Fotopoulou C, Schmeding M, Thelen A, Papanikolaou G, Braicu EI, Neuhaus P, Sehouli J. Clinical outcome of patients with advanced ovarian cancer after resection of liver metastases. *Anticancer Res* 2012; **32**: 4517-4521 [PMID: 23060580]

42 **Fong Y**, Cohen AM, Fortner JG, Enker WE, Turnbull AD, Coit DG, Marrero AM, Prasad M, Blumgart LH, Brennan MF. Liver resection for colorectal metastases. *J Clin Oncol* 1997; **15**: 938-946 [PMID: 9060531 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.1997.15.3.938]

43 **Fonseca AZ**, Santin S, Gomes LG, Waisberg J, Ribeiro MA Jr. Complications of radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors: Frequency and risk factors. *World J Hepatol* 2014; **6**: 107-113 [PMID: 24672640 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.107]

44 **Scaife CL**, Curley SA. Complication, local recurrence, and survival rates after radiofrequency ablation for hepatic malignancies. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am* 2003; **12**: 243-255 [PMID: 12735142 DOI: 10.1016/s1055-3207(02)00088-1]

45 **Bleicher RJ**, Allegra DP, Nora DT, Wood TF, Foshag LJ, Bilchik AJ. Radiofrequency ablation in 447 complex unresectable liver tumors: lessons learned. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 52-58 [PMID: 12513961 DOI: 10.1245/aso.2003.03.018]

46 **Bojalian MO**, Machado GR, Swensen R, Reeves ME. Radiofrequency ablation of liver metastasis from ovarian adenocarcinoma: case report and literature review. *Gynecol Oncol* 2004; **93**: 557-560 [PMID: 15099981 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2004.01.041]

47 **Liu B**, Huang G, Jiang C, Xu M, Zhuang B, Lin M, Tian W, Xie X, Kuang M. Ultrasound-Guided Percutaneous Radiofrequency Ablation of Liver Metastasis From Ovarian Cancer: A Single-Center Initial Experience. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2017; **27**: 1261-1267 [PMID: 28640176 DOI:

10.1097/IGC.0000000000000939]
48 **Mateo R**, Singh G, Jabbour N, Palmer S, Genyk Y, Roman L. Optimal cytoreduction after combined resection and radiofrequency ablation of hepatic metastases from recurrent malignant ovarian tumors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2005; **97**: 266-270 [PMID: 15790474 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2004.12.038]
49 **Shibata T**, Iimuro Y, Yamamoto Y, Maetani Y, Ametani F, Itoh K, Konishi J. Small hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison of radio-frequency ablation and percutaneous microwave coagulation therapy. *Radiology* 2002; **223**: 331-337 [PMID: 11997534 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2232010775]
50 **Vogl TJ**, Mack MG, Balzer JO, Engelmann K, Straub R, Eichler K, Woitaschek D, Zangos S. Liver metastases: neoadjuvant downsizing with transarterial chemoembolization before laser-induced thermotherapy. *Radiology* 2003; **229**: 457-464 [PMID: 14500854 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2292021329]
51 **Zhuo S**, Zhou J, Ruan G, Zeng S, Ma H, Xie C, An C. Percutaneous microwave ablation *vs* surgical resection for ovarian cancer liver metastasis. *Int J Hyperthermia* 2020; **37**: 28-36 [PMID: 31918591 DOI: 10.1080/02656736.2019.1706767]
52 **Vogl TJ**, Emam A, Naguib NN, Eichler K, Zangos S. How Effective Are Percutaneous Liver-Directed Therapies in Patients with Non-Colorectal Liver Metastases? *Viszeralmedizin* 2015; **31**: 406-413 [PMID: 26889144 DOI: 10.1159/000440677]
53 **Rubinsky B**. Cryosurgery. *Annu Rev Biomed Eng* 2000; **2**: 157-187 [PMID: 11701510 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.bioeng.2.1.157]
54 **Gao W**, Guo Z, Zhang X, Wang Y, Zhang W, Yang X, Yu H. Percutaneous cryoablation of ovarian cancer metastasis to the liver: initial experience in 13 patients. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2015; **25**: 802-808 [PMID: 25793465 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000420]
55 **Goering JD**, Mahvi DM, Niederhuber JE, Chicks D, Rikkers LF. Cryoablation and liver resection for noncolorectal liver metastases. *Am J Surg* 2002; **183**: 384-389 [PMID: 11975925 DOI: 10.1016/s0002-9610(02)00806-1]
56 **Russell JS**, Sawhney R, Monto A, Nanavati S, Davoren JB, Aslam R, Corvera CU. Periprocedural complications by Child-Pugh class in patients undergoing transcatheter arterial embolization or chemoembolization to treat unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma at a VA medical center. *Am J Surg* 2010; **200**: 659-664 [PMID: 21056149 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2010.07.021]
57 **Heinzow HS**, Meister T, Nass D, Köhler M, Spieker T, Wolters H, Domschke W, Domagk D. Outcome of supraselective transarterial chemoembolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 201-210 [PMID: 20969491 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2010.525256]
58 **Vogl TJ**, Gruber T, Naguib NN, Hammerstingl R, Nour-Eldin NE. Liver metastases of neuroendocrine tumors: treatment with hepatic transarterial chemotherapy using two therapeutic protocols. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2009; **193**: 941-947 [PMID: 19770314 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.08.1879]
59 **Albert M**, Kiefer MV, Sun W, Haller D, Fraker DL, Tuite CM, Stavropoulos SW, Mondschein JI, Soulen MC. Chemoembolization of colorectal liver metastases with cisplatin, doxorubicin, mitomycin C, ethiodol, and polyvinyl alcohol. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 343-352 [PMID: 20830766 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25387]
60 **Del Freo A**, Fiorentini G, Sanguinetti F, Muttini MP, Pennucci C, Mambrini A, Pacetti P, Della Seta R, Lombardi M, Torri T, Cantore M. Hepatic arterial chemotherapy with oxaliplatin, folinic acid and 5-fluorouracil in pre-treated patients with liver metastases from colorectal cancer. *In Vivo* 2006; **20**: 743-746 [PMID: 17203759]
61 **Ho AS**, Picus J, Darcy MD, Tan B, Gould JE, Pilgram TK, Brown DB. Long-term outcome after chemoembolization and embolization of hepatic metastatic lesions from neuroendocrine tumors. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2007; **188**: 1201-1207 [PMID: 17449759 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.06.0933]
62 **Vogl TJ**, Naguib NN, Lehnert T, Nour-Eldin NE, Eichler K, Zangos S, Gruber-Rouh T. Initial experience with repetitive transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) as a third line treatment of ovarian cancer metastasis to the liver: indications, outcomes and role in patient's management. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 225-229 [PMID: 22079359 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.11.001]
63 **Potters L**, Kavanagh B, Galvin JM, Hevezi JM, Janjan NA, Larson DA, Mehta MP, Ryu S, Steinberg M, Timmerman R, Welsh JS, Rosenthal SA; American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology; American College of Radiology. American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology (ASTRO) and American College of Radiology (ACR) practice guideline for the performance of stereotactic body radiation therapy. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2010; **76**: 326-332 [PMID: 20117285 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2009.09.042]
64 **Palma DA**, Olson R, Harrow S, Gaede S, Louie AV, Haasbeek C, Mulroy L, Lock M, Rodrigues GB, Yaremko BP, Schellenberg D, Ahmad B, Griffioen G, Senthi S, Swaminath A, Kopek N, Liu M, Moore K, Currie S, Bauman GS, Warner A, Senan S. Stereotactic ablative radiotherapy *vs* standard of care palliative treatment in patients with oligometastatic cancers (SABR-COMET): a randomised, phase 2, open-label trial. *Lancet* 2019; **393**: 2051-2058 [PMID: 30982687 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)32487-5]
65 **Yegya-Raman N**, Cao CD, Hathout L, Girda E, Richard SD, Rosenblum NG, Taunk NK, Jabbour SK. Stereotactic body radiation therapy for oligometastatic gynecologic malignancies: A systematic review. *Gynecol Oncol* 2020; **159**: 573-580 [PMID: 32917412 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2020.08.010]
66 **Jackson WC**, Tao Y, Mendiratta-Lala M, Bazzi L, Wahl DR, Schipper MJ, Feng M, Cuneo KC, Lawrence TS, Owen D. Comparison of Stereotactic Body Radiation Therapy and Radiofrequency Ablation in the Treatment of Intrahepatic Metastases. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2018; **100**: 950-958 [PMID: 29485074 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2017.12.014]
67 **Kunos CA**, Sherertz TM, Mislmani M, Ellis RJ, Lo SS, Waggoner SE, Zanotti KM, Herrmann K,

Debernardo RL. Phase I Trial of Carboplatin and Gemcitabine Chemotherapy and Stereotactic Ablative Radiosurgery for the Palliative Treatment of Persistent or Recurrent Gynecologic Cancer. *Front Oncol* 2015; **5**: 126 [PMID: 26097831 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2015.00126]

68 **Ricke J**, Wust P, Wieners G, Beck A, Cho CH, Seidensticker M, Pech M, Werk M, Rosner C, Hänninen EL, Freund T, Felix R. Liver malignancies: CT-guided interstitial brachytherapy in patients with unfavorable lesions for thermal ablation. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2004; **15**: 1279-1286 [PMID: 15525748 DOI: 10.1097/01.RVI.0000141343.43441.06]

69 **Ricke J**, Wust P, Stohlmann A, Beck A, Cho CH, Pech M, Wieners G, Spors B, Werk M, Rosner C, Hänninen EL, Felix R. CT-guided interstitial brachytherapy of liver malignancies alone or in combination with thermal ablation: phase I-II results of a novel technique. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2004; **58**: 1496-1505 [PMID: 15050329 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2003.09.024]

70 **Ricke J**, Mohnike K, Pech M, Seidensticker M, Rühl R, Wieners G, Gaffke G, Kropf S, Felix R, Wust P. Local response and impact on survival after local ablation of liver metastases from colorectal carcinoma by computed tomography-guided high-dose-rate brachytherapy. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2010; **78**: 479-485 [PMID: 20304566 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2009.09.026]

71 **Mohnike K**, Wieners G, Schwartz F, Seidensticker M, Pech M, Ruehl R, Wust P, Lopez-Hänninen E, Gademann G, Peters N, Berg T, Malfertheiner P, Ricke J. Computed tomography-guided high-dose-rate brachytherapy in hepatocellular carcinoma: safety, efficacy, and effect on survival. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2010; **78**: 172-179 [PMID: 20056348 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2009.07.1700]

72 **Collettini F**, Poellinger A, Schnapauff D, Denecke T, Wust P, Braicu IE, Sehouli J, Hamm B, Gebauer B. CT-guided high-dose-rate brachytherapy of metachronous ovarian cancer metastasis to the liver: initial experience. *Anticancer Res* 2011; **31**: 2597-2602 [PMID: 21778310]

73 **Armstrong DK**, Alvarez RD, Bakkum-Gamez JN, Barroilhet L, Behbakht K, Berchuck A, Berek JS, Chen LM, Cristea M, DeRosa M, ElNaggar AC, Gershenson DM, Gray HJ, Hakam A, Jain A, Johnston C, Leath CA III, Liu J, Mahdi H, Matei D, McHale M, McLean K, O'Malley DM, Penson RT, Percac-Lima S, Ratner E, Remmenga SW, Sabbatini P, Werner TL, Zsiros E, Burns JL, Engh AM. NCCN Guidelines Insights: Ovarian Cancer, Version 1.2019. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2019; **17**: 896-909 [PMID: 31390583 DOI: 10.6004/jnccn.2019.0039]

74 **Soukup T**, Lamb BW, Arora S, Darzi A, Sevdalis N, Green JS. Successful strategies in implementing a multidisciplinary team working in the care of patients with cancer: an overview and synthesis of the available literature. *J Multidiscip Healthc* 2018; **11**: 49-61 [PMID: 29403284 DOI: 10.2147/JMDH.S117945]

75 **Woo YL**, Kyrgiou M, Bryant A, Everett T, Dickinson HO. Centralisation of services for gynaecological cancers - a Cochrane systematic review. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **126**: 286-290 [PMID: 22507534 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.04.012]

76 **Pillay B**, Wootten AC, Crowe H, Corcoran N, Tran B, Bowden P, Crowe J, Costello AJ. The impact of multidisciplinary team meetings on patient assessment, management and outcomes in oncology settings: A systematic review of the literature. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2016; **42**: 56-72 [PMID: 26643552 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2015.11.007]

77 **Taylor C**, Munro AJ, Glynne-Jones R, Griffith C, Trevatt P, Richards M, Ramirez AJ. Multidisciplinary team working in cancer: what is the evidence? *BMJ* 2010; **340**: c951 [PMID: 20332315 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.c951]

78 **Mulligan KM**, Glennon K, Donohoe F, O'Brien Y, Mc Donnell BC, Bartels HC, Vermeulen C, Walsh T, Shields C, McCormack O, Conneely J, Boyd WD, Mc Vey R, Mulsow J, Brennan DJ. Multidisciplinary Surgical Approach to Increase Complete Cytoreduction Rates for Advanced Ovarian Cancer in a Tertiary Gynecologic Oncology Center. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2021; **28**: 4553-4560 [PMID: 33423175 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-020-09494-3]

79 **Heudel PE**, Devouassoux-Shisheboran M, Taieb S, Genestie C, Selle F, Morice P, Rouzier R, Ray-Coquard I. Multidisciplinary management of advanced ovarian cancer for an optimal therapeutic strategy. *Eur J Gynaecol Oncol* 2017; **38**: 175-180 [PMID: 29953774]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1132-1142

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1132

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Atezolizumab and bevacizumab as first line therapy in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: Practical considerations in routine clinical practice

Ankit Jain, Shivakumar Chitturi, Geoffrey Peters, Desmond Yip

ORCID number: Ankit Jain 0000-0001-9498-380X; Shivakumar Chitturi 0000-0002-2367-9859; Geoffrey Peters 0000-0003-2869-289X; Desmond Yip 0000-0002-2806-2401.

Author contributions: Jain A and Yip D contributed concept and design, analysis and interpretation of data; Jain A, Chitturi S, Peters G and Yip D wrote the manuscript, and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None of the authors report any conflict-of-interest.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Ankit Jain, Geoffrey Peters, Desmond Yip, Department of Medical Oncology, The Canberra Hospital, Garran 2605, ACT, Australia

Ankit Jain, Shivakumar Chitturi, Geoffrey Peters, Desmond Yip, ANU Medical School, Australian National University, Canberra 0200, ACT, Australia

Shivakumar Chitturi, Gastroenterology and Hepatology Unit, Canberra Hospital, Canberra 2605, ACT, Australia

Corresponding author: Ankit Jain, DM, DNB, FRACP, MBBS, MCLAM, MD, Staff Specialist, Department of Medical Oncology, The Canberra Hospital, Building 19, Level 5, Yamba Drive, Garran 2605, ACT, Australia. ankit.jain@anu.edu.au

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common primary liver cancer. For advanced HCC, sorafenib was considered the standard of care for more than ten years. Recently the atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination has become standard of care for these patients without contraindications to either immune checkpoint inhibitors or antiangiogenic therapy. We now review the practical aspects of the atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination, including current evidence, indications, contraindications, management of adverse events, sequencing of this combination, areas of current knowledge gaps and future areas of active clinical research of this combination for busy clinicians in clinical practice.

Key Words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Atezolizumab; Bevacizumab; Immunotherapy; Child Pugh cirrhosis; Anti-angiogenic therapy

Core Tip: There are several articles about the role of atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination in advanced unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. However, this mini review focuses on practical issues for clinicians using this combination in hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients with focus on indications, data from recent trials,

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Australia

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: April 7, 2021
Peer-review started: April 7, 2021
First decision: June 15, 2021
Revised: June 27, 2021
Accepted: August 9, 2021
Article in press: August 9, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Kwee S
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Li X

criteria for selection of appropriate patients for this combination, sequencing strategies, overlapping toxicities, issues with Child Pugh B cirrhosis patients, future role in adjuvant settings and dealing with special subsets of HCC population.

Citation: Jain A, Chitturi S, Peters G, Yip D. Atezolizumab and bevacizumab as first line therapy in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: Practical considerations in routine clinical practice. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1132-1142
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1132.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1132

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the sixth most common cancer worldwide and leading cause of cancer related death[1]. Early-stage HCC can be treated by resection, liver transplantation or ablation. Unfortunately, most patients present with an intermediate or advanced-stage disease with limited systemic options and a dismal prognosis. The multikinase inhibitor sorafenib was initially approved more than a decade ago for the management of advanced HCC[2]. Recently, four additional targeted therapies were approved for advanced HCC based on positive phase III randomised controlled trials (RCTs): Lenvatinib in the first-line setting and regorafenib, cabozantinib and ramucirumab, all in the second line after the failure of sorafenib therapy[2-5].

The recent publication of successful results of Phase III RCT IMbrave 150 has established the combination of atezolizumab and bevacizumab (Atezo and Beva) as first line therapy for advanced treatment naïve HCC with Child Pugh A cirrhosis[6]. We now review the pharmacological rationale, evolution, results, practical issues in clinical practice, current knowledge gaps and future possibilities of this combination therapy. This is an expert review based on our current clinical knowledge of this combination.

PHARMACOLOGICAL RATIONALE OF THIS COMBINATION

Atezolizumab is a monoclonal antibody against programmed cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1). PD-L1 receptors are expressed on tumour cells. The programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1) is present on cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) and tumour cells. The interaction of PD-1 and PD-L1 is an immune inhibitory pathway. Atezolizumab reverses T cell suppression by preventing interaction between the inhibitory immune checkpoint molecules PD-1 and PD-L1. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) induces tumour angiogenesis. In addition to inducting tumour angiogenesis, VEGF also mediates immunosuppression within the tumour microenvironment by promoting immunosuppressive cells such as regulatory T cells (Treg), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) and tumour associated macrophages. VEGF also suppresses antigen-presenting cells and CTLs. In summary, bevacizumab not only inhibits tumour growth by inhibiting angiogenesis but also augments the immune agonistic effects of atezolizumab by reversing the immune suppressive mechanisms of VEGF pathways[7].

EVOLUTION OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB COMBINATION IN THE MANA-GEMENT OF ADVANCED HCC

Phase Ib GO30140 study

In this phase I B study, there were four cohorts of various malignancies. In the HCC cohort, arm A received the combination of atezolizumab and bevacizumab in patients with unresectable HCC. The primary endpoint for this arm was overall response rates (ORR). Arm F of the same study randomised patients with unresectable HCC to atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination *vs* atezolizumab monotherapy arm. The

primary endpoint of Arm F was progression-free survival in the intention-to-treat population. The dose of atezolizumab in both the arms with or without combination was 1200 mg I.V. every three weeks. In the combination arm, the bevacizumab dose was 15 mg/kg. The critical results of the trial are summarized in Table 1[8].

Kudo[7] have comprehensively reviewed these results. As per Kudo[7], the 12% C.R. rates in arm A is very impressive as this group had patients with advanced HCC with poor prognostic factors such as α-fetoprotein (AFP) ≥ 400 ng/mL, extrahepatic spread (EHS), major vascular invasion. These results were never achieved in the tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI) era. The other important finding was the ORR of 62% (8/13) in intermediate stage disease with a high tumour burden.

As per Kudo[7], the Arm F is an essential proof of concept study that demonstrates the favourable results obtained in Arm A are not solely due to the efficacy of atezolizumab monotherapy but precisely due to a combination of atezolizumab and bevacizumab. The Arm F scientifically reinforces the synergistic combination of antiangiogenic therapy and immunotherapy.

In Arm A, The most common grade 3-4 treatment-related adverse events were hypertension (13%) and proteinuria (7%). Treatment-related adverse events occurred in 25 (24%) patients. There were three (3%) treatment-related deaths due to abnormal hepatic function, hepatic cirrhosis and pneumonitis.

IMBrave 150 trial

IMbrave 150 was a global, open-label, randomised phase III trial comparing atezolizumab plus bevacizumab *vs* sorafenib in systemic treatment-naive unresectable HCC [6]. Patients were randomly assigned in a 2:1 ratio either to atezolizumab plus bevacizumab or sorafenib until unacceptable toxic effects occurred or loss of clinical benefit[7]. The coprimary endpoints were overall survival and progression free survival in the intent to treat population, as assessed at an independent review facility according to Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid tumours, version 1.1 (RECIST 1.1).

The main inclusion criteria for the study were unresectable or metastatic HCC patients with ECOG-PS (Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group-Performance Status) of 0 or 1, Child-Pugh A cirrhosis. Patients with disease not amenable to curative surgical and or locoregional therapies or progressive disease after surgical or locoregional therapies were eligible. For patients with active hepatitis B virus (HBV), the trial requirement was quantitative HBV DNA < 500 IU/mL obtained within 28 d before initiation of therapy, and patients who have taken at least two weeks of anti-HBV treatment and willing to continue throughout the study duration.

The key exclusion criteria were a history of autoimmune disease and untreated or incompletely treated oesophageal or gastric varices (assessed with esophagogastroduodenoscopy) with bleeding or higher risk of bleeding. The trial required mandatory assessment of oesophageal or gastric varices within six months of initiation of trial therapy.

The most important autoimmune diseases in the exclusion criteria were myasthenia gravis, myositis, autoimmune hepatitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, Wegener granulomatosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Guillain-Barre syndrome or multiple sclerosis. Patient with known fibrolamellar variant, sarcomatoid HCC or mixed cholangiocarcinoma and HCC were excluded from the study.

The patients were stratified by geographical region (Asia excluding Japan *vs* the rest of the world), macrovascular invasion or EHS of disease (presence *vs* absence), baseline alfa fetoprotein levels of (< 400 ng/mL *vs* > 400 ng/mL), ECOG of 0 or 1.

Patients assigned to the atezolizumab -bevacizumab group received 1200mg of atezolizumab plus 15mg/kg of body weight of bevacizumab intravenously every three weeks. Dose modifications were not permitted in the atezolizumab group but were allowed in the sorafenib group. Patients who transiently or permanently discontinued either atezolizumab or bevacizumab because of an adverse event were allowed to continue taking the single-agent therapy as long as the investigator determined that there was a clinical benefit. Table 2 describes the confirmed response rates, progression-free survival, overall survival and disease control rate in the IMBrave 150 trial.

Quality of life: Atezolizumab-bevacizumab delayed deterioration of patient-reported quality of life (median time to deterioration), 11.2 mo with atezolizumab- bevacizumab combination *vs* 3.6 mo with sorafenib arm. The deterioration in physical functioning and role functioning were also delayed in the experimental arm by an additional 8.2 mo and 5.5 mo, respectively.

Table 1 Results of phase Ib GO30140 study

	Arm A	Arm F	
	Atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination (*n* = 104), median follow up 12.4 mo	Atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination (*n* = 60), median follow up 6.6 mo	Atezolizumab monotherapy (*n* = 59), median follow up 6.7 mo
ORR, *n* (%)	37 (36)	12 (20)	10 (17)
CR, *n* (%)	12 (12)	1 (2)	3 (5)
DCR, *n* (%)	78 (75)	40 (67)	29 (49)
Median PFS, mo	7.4 (5.6-10.7)	5.6 (3.6-2.4)	3.4 (1.9-5.2)
HR (80%CI)	-	0.55 (0.40-0.74), *P* value (0.0108)	
12 mo PFS (%)	38		
12 mo OS (%)	63		

ORR: Over all response rates; CR: Complete response; DCR: Disease control rate; PFS: Progression free survival; HR: Hazard ratio; OS: Overall survival.

Table 2 Results of IMBrave 150 trial

Results	Atezolizumab and bevacizumab arm	Sorafenib arm	Statistically significant
Estimated OS at 6 mo (%)	84.8	72.2	
Estimated OS at 12 mo (%)	67.2	54.6	
PFS (mo)	6.8	4.3	HR for progression or death was 0.59 (0.47-0.76) *P* < 0.0001
Confirmed ORR as per independent mRECIST assessment (%)	27.3	11.9	
As per HCC specific mRECIST CR (%)	5.5	-	
Disease Control Rate (ORR + SD) (%)	73.6	55.3	

HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; OS: Overall survival; PFS: Progression free survival; ORR: Objective response rate; mRECIST: Modified response evaluation criteria in solid tumours.

IMBrave 150 investigators have recently published the patient reported outcomes (PROs) of this study. The PROs were prespecified exploratory endpoints of the study. The study showed clinically meaningful benefit in terms of patient reported quality of life, functioning and disease symptoms with atezolizumab and bevacizumab as compared to sorafenib. The patients completed the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer quality-of-life questionnaire for cancer (QLQ-30) and quality of life questionnaire for HCC (QLQ-HCC18). As compared to sorafenib, atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination reduced the risk of deterioration for appetite loss, diarrhoea, fatigue and pain. The benefits for fatigue and pain were maintained in QLQ-HCC18 scale too[9].

Safety: Adverse events of any grade were reported in 323 patients (98.2%) who received the atezolizumab- bevacizumab and 154 patients (98.7%) who received sorafenib. Grade 5 events occurred in 15 patients (4.6%) in the experimental group and in 9 patients (5.8%) in the sorafenib group. Table 3 tabulates the number of Grade 5 events in both arms.

The most common grade 3 or 4 adverse event with atezolizumab-bevacizumab was hypertension (15.2%). Grade III HTN is defined as Stage II HTN with blood pressure (≥ 160/≥ 100 mmHg). Serious adverse events occurred more frequently with atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination 125 patients (38%) than with sorafenib 48 patients (30.8%).

Table 3 Grade 5 events in both the arms IMBrave 150 trial

Atezolizumab and bevacizumab (*n* = 15), grade 5 adverse events	Sorafenib (*n* = 9), grade 5 adverse events
Gastrointestinal Haemorrhage (3)	Death (2)
Pneumonia (2)	Hepatic cirrhosis (2)
Empyema, gastric ulcer perforation, abnormal hepatic function, liver injury, multi-organ dysfunction syndrome, esophageal varices haemorrhage, subarachnoid haemorrhage, respiratory distress, sepsis and cardiac arrest (1 in each patient)	Cardiac arrest, cardiac failure, general physical health deterioration, hepatitis E, peritoneal haemorrhage (1 in each patient)

SELECTING APPROPRIATE PATIENTS FOR THE ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB COMBINATION

It will be crucial for multidisciplinary teams (MDTs) to cautiously choose the most suitable patients for this combination. Patients with locally advanced unresectable tumours not suitable for locoregional therapies such as transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) and metastatic HCC with Child-Pugh A liver disease will be the most appropriate patients provided they have no other major contraindications to immunotherapy or VEGF inhibition therapy. The patients not amenable to locoregional therapies will be patients with severely impaired main portal vein flow (resulting from occlusive thrombus, tumour invasion or hepatofugal blood flow) because of dependence on the arterial inflow to adequately supply the liver[10].

TACE has not shown any survival benefit in patients with extensive bilobar involvement, so these patient will need upfront consideration of systemic therapy[11].

Stopping rules for TACE

TACE sessions are scheduled more often performed on-demand than on a predetermined time line. Decisions to continue or cease TACE are based on repeat liver imaging and the tumour response to treatment. Many algorithms have been developed to help with these decisions but are not universally validated[12]. In general, the appearance of extrahepatic metastases, vascular invasion or worsening clinical status would usually lead to ceasing further TACE procedures. Further, the concept of TACE-'refractoriness' is also to be considered. First proposed by the Japanese Society of Hepatology, the primary definition includes lack of objective response to 2 sessions of TACE (viable lesion > 50% or two or more consecutive increases in tumour number), the continuous elevation of tumour markers after TACE, vascular invasion and metastasis.

Repeated TACE procedures can lead to worsening liver function due to hepatic devascularisation[13]. This can preclude effective systemic therapies.

OPTIMIS was an international prospective observational study enrolling patients with unresectable HCC who were being considered for TACE. The authors noted that over 90% of patients continued to receive TACE despite an inadequate response. Those who transitioned to sorafenib earlier at the time of TACE-'refractoriness' had longer overall survival rates than those who were treated later. A recent Korean retrospective study also reiterated early transitioning to systemic therapy in patients without an objective response to 2 consecutive TACE procedures[14].

These patients need discussion at MDT meetings for consideration of alternative treatment options such as the atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination if there are no contraindications for this protocol.

SYSTEMATIC REVIEW AND META-ANALYSIS SUPPORTING ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB IN FIRST LINE SETTINGS FOR MANAGEMENT OF ADVANCED HCC

In the most recent systematic review and network meta-analysis of eight first line trials with a total of 6290 patients, the combination of atezolizumab and bevacizumab was superior to lenvatinib [hazard ratio (HR) 0.63], sorafenib (HR 0.58) and nivolumab (0.68)[15].

ROLE OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB IN COMBINATION WITH LOCOREGIONAL THERAPIES

Locoregional therapies such as radiofrequency ablation, TACE and cryoablation can induce multiple immunogenic effects. These procedures have multiple mechanisms to stimulate the immune system. These mechanisms are: (1) Inhibiting immunosuppressive cells like MDSC and Tregs; (2) PD-L1 upregulation; (3) Increased effector immune cells like dendritic cells, natural killer cells and T cells; and (4) Increased release of tumour antigens like glypican 1, AFP.

Several trials are examining combinations of various locoregional modalities with different immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI). Multiple biomarkers will be evaluated in these studies including AFP, cell death biomarkers like sRAGE and circulating GPC3 cytotoxic lymphocytes[16].

TACE-induced tissue hypoxia leads to upregulation of hypoxia-inducible factor-1a, which facilitates VEGF and platelet derived growth factor expression[17]. The latter promotes neoangiogenesis and tumour revascularisation. These diverse mechanisms provide a rationale for combining atezolizumab and bevacizumab with locoregional therapies.

Currently NCT04224636 trial is recruiting patients for treatment with TACE in combination with atezolizumab and bevacizumab. There are many unanswered questions about sequencing of locoregional therapies and various ICIs.

ROLE OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB IN ADJUVANT SETTINGS

Up to 70% of patients can develop recurrence in 5 years after curative intent resection for early stage HCC[18]. There is high rate of intrahepatic recurrences in patients with large tumour size, an incomplete tumour capsule, venous or microvascular invasion. There are multiple mechanisms by which surgery or radiofrequency ablation can alter the immune microenvironment of liver[19]: (1) More MDSC accumulates, leading to the immunosuppressive microenvironment; (2) The balance of proinflammatory phenotype 1 helper T cell is altered to a more immunosuppressive T-helper 2 phenotype; and (3) Tumour macrophages are polarized to an immunosuppressive M2 phenotype during postoperative wound healing. So, there is a solid rationale for considering immunotherapy in the postoperative adjuvant setting for HCC.

The major success of atezolizumab and bevacizumab in the metastatic setting has led to new trials of this combination in the adjuvant setting and in combination with other locoregional therapies. IMbrave050 (NCT0410298) is testing atezolizumab and bevacizumab *vs* active surveillance as adjuvant therapy in patients with HCC at high risk of recurrence after surgical resection or ablation. The primary outcome of the study is recurrence-free survival. The Supplementary material, Appendix 1 provides information on currently listed trials of this combination in various settings at clinical trial.gov website.

BIOMARKERS WITH THE PROGNOSTIC AND PREDICTIVE ROLE FOR THE USE OF A COMBINATION OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB IN ADVANCED HCC

In the phase Ib exploratory analysis, higher expression of PD-L1 in tumour tissue, higher expression of VEGF receptor 2, and higher T-regulatory cells immunophenotype were associated with better survival[8]. Currently, this analysis is pending for the IMBrave phase III trial. In this trial, the combination showed more benefits in patients with AFP of < 400 ng/mL, viral aetiology (HBV and HCV associated HCC) had more benefits than non-viral aetiology[6]. This can be due to the immune stimulatory environment due to chronic inflammation associated with viral aetiology associated with HCC. The prevalence of microsatellite instability (MSI)-high disease and TMB is very low in HCC. In a study of 755 patients out of 542 cases assessed for MSI, only one patient (0.2%) was MSI-high and TMB-high[20].

At this stage, aetiology (viral or non-viral) should not be used in triaging the types of systemic treatments in advanced HCC. There are preclinical and clinical signals that the atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination may not be very effective in patients with HCC associated with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). There is

preclinical evidence that NAFLD decreases CD4+T cells and induces tumour promoting functions in CD8+T cells, natural killer cells and Th17 cells[21,22]. More than 50% of patients with NAFLD are obese, and obesity may increase the resistance to VEGF therapy[23]. In the IMbrave 150 trial, the combination of atezolizumab and bevacizumab was less effective in patients with non-viral *vs* viral etiology with a HR of 0.91 as compared to sorafenib[6].

There is emerging evidence that WNT/B-Catenin signaling is associated with a lack of T cell infiltrates and predict resistance to immunotherapy like atezolizumab[24]. There is a proposed immunological classification in HCC, which divides HCC into three subclasses: (1) Immune (30%); (2) Immune intermediate (45%); and (3) Immune excluded class (25%). There is preclinical and clinical data of activation of WNT/B-catenin pathway leading to resistance to immunotherapy in immune excluded subtype of HCC.

In summary, there are currently no proven biomarkers that can be used to select patients for this particular combination.

COMMON OVERLAPPING TOXICITIES IN CIRRHOTIC PATIENTS TREATED WITH IMMUNOTHERAPY

Meriggi and Graffeo[25] have comprehensively reviewed the toxicities due to cirrhosis but overlap with immunotherapy agents and TKI. Due to the secretion of gastrin and vasoactive peptides, diarrhoea or loose stools can be a common symptom in patients with cirrhosis. Both immunotherapy and TKI can worsen diarrhoea. It is essential to adequately investigate the diarrhoea with stool culture, Clostridium difficile toxin assessment and standard biochemical tests. Diarrhoea associated with abdominal pain and signs of colonic inflammation is most likely related to immune-mediated colitis. It is helpful to do a baseline calprotectin when patients are admitted with diarrhoea to rule out immune-mediated colitis. Titrating the dose of lactulose used to prevent encephalopathy may be necessary to control the diarrhoea. Adequate doses of loperamide and steroids should be used to manage patients with possible immune-mediated colitis, once the common causes of diarrhoea are ruled out. Colonoscopy should be reserved for patients with severe diarrhoea with a high index of suspicion for immune-mediated colitis or those who remain steroid refractory. For those patients with steroid-resistant or refractory colitis, the use of infliximab will be challenging, given it can cause liver injury in susceptible patients.

Cancer-related fatigue is also one of the symptoms common to cirrhotic patients and can worsen with ICI therapy. Education about exercise and physical activity is crucial at the start of treatment. According to Meriggi and Graffeo[25], profound asthenia is common in HCC patients and can be multifactorial due to electrolyte imbalance, thyroid dysfunction, increased cytokine production, serotonin imbalances and vagal response activation[25]. Baseline assessment of thyroid function can dictate the need to initiate the thyroxine therapy before starting ICIs as autoimmune thyroiditis is a common side effect in the first 3-6 mo after initiation of ICIs.

Pruritis is also an overlapping symptom in HCC patients treated with ICIs. It is a common symptom of chronic liver disease and can be exacerbated by ICIs and potentially impact the quality of life.

Adrenal insufficiency caused by ICI therapy will usually pose challenges in patients with HCC. The hemodynamic changes in cirrhosis, hyponatremia due to hemodilution and use of diuretics can pose a significant challenge will mask the diagnosis of adrenal insufficiency in these patients[26].

CHILD PUGH B CIRRHOSIS AND COMBINATION OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB

The IMBrave 150 trial excluded the patients with Child-Pugh B cirrhosis. Currently, the data for the use of individualized care plans, in general, is scarce in patients with HCC. The largest retrospective series of 18 patients assessed the role of nivolumab in patients with Child-Pugh B cirrhosis after progression on sorafenib. In this study cohort, > 60% of patients had ascites, and 28% of patients had a Child-Pugh B score of 9. There were higher rates of adverse events, but the frequency of irAEs (immune-related adverse events) was similar to patients with Child-Pugh A cirrhosis in the CheckMate 40 trial. Interestingly there was no significant increase in aminotrans-

ferases, which is the anticipated side effect in this subset of patients[27].

There is a single case report of the combination of lenvatinib and pembrolizumab in a patient with advanced HCC with Child-Pugh B 8 with an overall survival of 22 mo at the time of initial presentation[28]. It will be essential to see the effect of atezolizumab and bevacizumab in patients with Child-Pugh B cirrhosis. Patients with ascites will be of interest, as bevacizumab can reduced ascites in patients with various gynaecological malignancies.

ICI INDUCED HEPATITIS IN PATIENTS OF HCC

ICI induced hepatitis is a vital complication that needs particular emphasis in patients with HCC. Patients with HCC have mild hepatic dysfunction due to underlying cirrhosis, and this can make the diagnosis of ICI induced hepatitis more challenging. In the IMBrave 150 trial, 14% of patients in the atezolizumab bevacizumab arm developed a rise in ALT with 3.6% developing grade 3 or 4 increase[6]. In a large multicentre retrospective analysis of 164 patients with ICI induced hepatitis, 30.5% and 45.7% of patients developed grade 2 and grade 3 hepatitis, respectively, with a median time of onset of 61 d. The most common presentation was asymptomatic laboratory abnormalities. In patients with symptomatic presentations, flu-like symptoms like fatigue/anorexia, nausea, emesis, abdominal/back pain and arthralgia/myalgia were the most common. Steroids were used in 92.1% of patients and second-line immunosuppression was required in 22.6% of patients. On rechallenge, there was a modest risk of hepatitis recurrence. Out of 164 patients, only one had HCC and only two patients received atezolizumab as one of the ICIs[29].

ROLE OF ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB IN MANAGEMENT OF ADVANCED HCC IN SPECIAL SUBSETS OF PATIENTS

Multifocal HCC or advanced HCC can occur in a special subgroup of patients like patients with a history of autoimmune hepatitis, pre-existing autoimmune disease, solid organ transplants, inflammatory bowel disease, significant cardiovascular disease, patients on haemodialysis, active human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection or patients living with HIV disease. These patients provide unique challenges during the management of advanced HCC. Pinter *et al*[24] and Rimassa *et al*[30] comprehensively review the challenges in managing these patients. Table 4 summaries the most suitable lines of therapy for these subsets of patients.

FUTURE CONSIDERATION FOR CHANGE IN THERAPEUTIC LANDSCAPE FOR SECOND LINE SETTINGS IN ADVANCED HCC FOR PATIENTS PROGRESSED ON THE ATEZOLIZUMAB AND BEVACIZUMAB COMBINATION

The choice of second-line therapies for patients developing progressive disease on atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination is uncertain. The regorafenib and cabozantinib studies included prior VEGF exposure and 3% of patient in the CELESTIAL trial received prior immunotherapy[3,4]. Sonbol *et al*[15] in their network meta-analysis speculate that cabozantinib and regorafenib may be more suitable second-line therapies as compared to sorafenib and lenvatinib as they were only used in VEGF naïve patients. The efficacy of the VEGF directed antibody ramucirumab and single-agent checkpoint inhibitors such as nivolumab and pembrolizumab is also questionable in second-line settings for patients treated with this combination. It will be important to consider trials with dual checkpoint blockade, such as the combination of the anti-CTLA-4 antibody line ipilimumab and PD-1 inhibitor nivolumab or PD-1 inhibitors with TKIs like cabozantinib and regorafenib in second-line settings for patients who have progressed on the atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination[15].

Table 4 Advanced hepatocellular carcinoma in special subset of population with absolute and relative contraindication for atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination

Special population	Absolute contraindication for atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination	Relative contraindication for atezolizumab and bevacizumab combination	Comments
Solid organ transplantation	Yes	N/A	If HCC in patients with liver transplant, transplant rejection can be potentially lethal. Sorafenib or lenvatinib are preferred first line options
HIV patients	N/A	No data	This was an exclusion criteria in IMBrave150 trial. The NCT04487067 AMETHISTA study of atezolizumab and bevacizumab in HCC is including patients with HIV disease who are stable on HAART, with CD4+T cell count ≥ 200/μL, and an undetectable viral load
Prior or active autoimmune disease (AID)	Yes, in patients when AID including autoimmune hepatitis, reactivation can be life threatening, neurological or neuromuscular disorders, poorly controlled AID on high dose immunosuppression	Can be used after discussion with patients and care givers about risk and benefit if do not fall in subgroups described in absolute contraindications	Patients with symptomatic AID are at higher risk for flare. Sorafenib or lenvatinib are preferred first line options in such patients
Inflammatory bowel disease	Bevacizumab can increase complication risk in patients with Crohn's disease with fistula	Can be used after discussion with patients and care givers about risk and benefit in patients with quiescent disease	Selective immunosuppressants like vedolizumab may be better before considering the ICP therapy
Significant cardiovascular/thromboembolic disease	N/A	Bevacizumab increases risk of HTN, thromboembolic and cardiovascular events	Can be used after discussion with patients and care givers and treating hypertension
Haemodialysis	N/A	No data available, can be considered after discussing risk and benefit and limited evidence	A recent study of 55 patients with metastatic RCC on haemodialysis showed relative safety of sorafenib, nivolumab and atezolizumab in small subgroup of patients [33]

N/A: Not applicable; HTN: Hypertension; RCC: Renal cell carcinoma; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; ICP: Individualized care plan.

CONCLUSION

Atezolizumab and bevacizumab is the current first-line standard of care systemic therapy option for patients with advanced or unresectable HCC unsuitable for locoregional therapy with Child-Pugh A cirrhosis with no contraindication to either atezolizumab and bevacizumab. Current ESMO and NCCN guidelines support this recommendation[31,32]. The ESMO guidelines report the substantial benefit with this combination with estimated ESMO magnitude of clinical benefit score of 5 with an absolute survival gain of additional 9.6 mo as compared to sorafenib[31].

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Colombet M, Soerjomataram I, Mathers C, Parkin DM, Piñeros M, Znaor A, Bray F. Estimating the global cancer incidence and mortality in 2018: GLOBOCAN sources and methods. *Int J Cancer* 2019; **144**: 1941-1953 [PMID: 30350310 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.31937]

2 **Kudo M**, Finn RS, Qin S, Han KH, Ikeda K, Piscaglia F, Baron A, Park JW, Han G, Jassem J, Blanc JF, Vogel A, Komov D, Evans TRJ, Lopez C, Dutcus C, Guo M, Saito K, Kraljevic S, Tamai T, Ren M, Cheng AL. Lenvatinib *vs* sorafenib in first-line treatment of patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised phase 3 non-inferiority trial. *Lancet* 2018; **391**: 1163-1173 [PMID: 29433850 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)30207-1]

3 **Bruix J**, Qin S, Merle P, Granito A, Huang YH, Bodoky G, Pracht M, Yokosuka O, Rosmorduc O, Breder V, Gerolami R, Masi G, Ross PJ, Song T, Bronowicki JP, Ollivier-Hourmand I, Kudo M, Cheng AL, Llovet JM, Finn RS, LeBerre MA, Baumhauer A, Meinhardt G, Han G; RESORCE Investigators. Regorafenib for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma who progressed on sorafenib treatment (RESORCE): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2017; **389**: 56-66 [PMID: 27932229 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(16)32453-9]

4 **Abou-Alfa GK**, Meyer T, Cheng AL, El-Khoueiry AB, Rimassa L, Ryoo BY, Cicin I, Merle P, Chen

Y, Park JW, Blanc JF, Bolondi L, Klümpen HJ, Chan SL, Zagonel V, Pressiani T, Ryu MH, Venook AP, Hessel C, Borgman-Hagey AE, Schwab G, Kelley RK. Cabozantinib in Patients with Advanced and Progressing Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2018; **379**: 54-63 [PMID: 29972759 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1717002]

5 **Zhu AX**, Kang YK, Yen CJ, Finn RS, Galle PR, Llovet JM, Assenat E, Brandi G, Pracht M, Lim HY, Rau KM, Motomura K, Ohno I, Merle P, Daniele B, Shin DB, Gerken G, Borg C, Hiriart JB, Okusaka T, Morimoto M, Hsu Y, Abada PB, Kudo M; REACH-2 study investigators. Ramucirumab after sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma and increased α-fetoprotein concentrations (REACH-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2019; **20**: 282-296 [PMID: 30665869 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30937-9]

6 **Finn RS**, Qin S, Ikeda M, Galle PR, Ducreux M, Kim TY, Kudo M, Breder V, Merle P, Kaseb AO, Li D, Verret W, Xu DZ, Hernandez S, Liu J, Huang C, Mulla S, Wang Y, Lim HY, Zhu AX, Cheng AL; IMbrave150 Investigators. Atezolizumab plus Bevacizumab in Unresectable Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 1894-1905 [PMID: 32402160 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1915745]

7 **Kudo M**. A New Era in Systemic Therapy for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Atezolizumab plus Bevacizumab Combination Therapy. *Liver Cancer* 2020; **9**: 119-137 [PMID: 32399427 DOI: 10.1159/000505189]

8 **Lee MS**, Ryoo BY, Hsu CH, Numata K, Stein S, Verret W, Hack SP, Spahn J, Liu B, Abdullah H, Wang Y, He AR, Lee KH; GO30140 investigators. Atezolizumab with or without bevacizumab in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma (GO30140): an open-label, multicentre, phase 1b study. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 808-820 [PMID: 32502443 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30156-X]

9 **Galle PR**, Finn RS, Qin S, Ikeda M, Zhu AX, Kim TY, Kudo M, Breder V, Merle P, Kaseb A, Li D, Mulla S, Verret W, Xu DZ, Hernandez S, Ding B, Liu J, Huang C, Lim HY, Cheng AL, Ducreux M. Patient-reported outcomes with atezolizumab plus bevacizumab *vs* sorafenib in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma (IMbrave150): an open-label, randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2021; **22**: 991-1001 [DOI: 10.1016/s1470-2045(21)00151-0]

10 **Eipel C**, Abshagen K, Vollmar B. Regulation of hepatic blood flow: the hepatic arterial buffer response revisited. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 6046-6057 [PMID: 21182219 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i48.6046]

11 **Cardarelli-Leite L**, Hadjivassiliou A, Klass D, Chung J, Ho SGF, Lim HJ, Kim PTW, Mujoomdar A, Liu DM. Current locoregional therapies and treatment strategies in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Curr Oncol* 2020; **27**: S144-S151 [PMID: 33343208 DOI: 10.3747/co.27.7171]

12 **Han G**, Berhane S, Toyoda H, Bettinger D, Elshaarawy O, Chan AWH, Kirstein M, Mosconi C, Hucke F, Palmer D, Pinato DJ, Sharma R, Ottaviani D, Jang JW, Labeur TA, van Delden OM, Pirisi M, Stern N, Sangro B, Meyer T, Fateen W, García-Fiñana M, Gomaa A, Waked I, Rewisha E, Aithal GP, Travis S, Kudo M, Cucchetti A, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Takkenberg RB, Chan SL, Vogel A, Johnson PJ. Prediction of Survival Among Patients Receiving Transarterial Chemoembolization for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: A Response-Based Approach. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 198-212 [PMID: 31698504 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31022]

13 **Miksad RA**, Ogasawara S, Xia F, Fellous M, Piscaglia F. Liver function changes after transarterial chemoembolization in US hepatocellular carcinoma patients: the LiverT study. *BMC Cancer* 2019; **19**: 795 [PMID: 31409405 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-019-5989-2]

14 **Choi J**, Lee D, Shim JH, Kim KM, Lim YS, Lee YS, Lee HC. Evaluation of transarterial chemoembolization refractoriness in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *PLoS One* 2020; **15**: e0229696 [PMID: 32130270 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0229696]

15 **Sonbol MB**, Riaz IB, Naqvi SAA, Almquist DR, Mina S, Almasri J, Shah S, Almader-Douglas D, Uson Junior PLS, Mahipal A, Ma WW, Jin Z, Mody K, Starr J, Borad MJ, Ahn DH, Murad MH, Bekaii-Saab T. Systemic Therapy and Sequencing Options in Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma: A Systematic Review and Network Meta-analysis. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: e204930 [PMID: 33090186 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2020.4930]

16 **Singh P**, Toom S, Avula A, Kumar V, Rahma OE. The Immune Modulation Effect of Locoregional Therapies and Its Potential Synergy with Immunotherapy in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *J Hepatocell Carcinoma* 2020; **7**: 11-17 [PMID: 32104669 DOI: 10.2147/JHC.S187121]

17 **Wang B**, Xu H, Gao ZQ, Ning HF, Sun YQ, Cao GW. Increased expression of vascular endothelial growth factor in hepatocellular carcinoma after transcatheter arterial chemoembolization. *Acta Radiol* 2008; **49**: 523-529 [PMID: 18568538 DOI: 10.1080/02841850801958890]

18 **Llovet JM**, Zucman-Rossi J, Pikarsky E, Sangro B, Schwartz M, Sherman M, Gores G. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2016; **2**: 16018 [PMID: 27158749 DOI: 10.1038/nrdp.2016.18]

19 **Brown ZJ**, Greten TF, Heinrich B. Adjuvant Treatment of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Prospect of Immunotherapy. *Hepatology* 2019; **70**: 1437-1442 [PMID: 30927283 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30633]

20 **Piñero F**, Dirchwolf M, Pessôa MG. Biomarkers in Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Diagnosis, Prognosis and Treatment Response Assessment. *Cells* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32492896 DOI: 10.3390/cells9061370]

21 **Anstee QM**, Reeves HL, Kotsiliti E, Govaere O, Heikenwalder M. From NASH to HCC: current concepts and future challenges. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 411-428 [PMID: 31028350 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0145-7]

22 **Ma C**, Kesarwala AH, Eggert T, Medina-Echeverz J, Kleiner DE, Jin P, Stroncek DF, Terabe M, Kapoor V, ElGindi M, Han M, Thornton AM, Zhang H, Egger M, Luo J, Felsher DW, McVicar DW, Weber A, Heikenwalder M, Greten TF. NAFLD causes selective CD4(+) T lymphocyte loss and

promotes hepatocarcinogenesis. *Nature* 2016; **531**: 253-257 [PMID: 26934227 DOI: 10.1038/nature16969]

23 **Younossi ZM**, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D, Fazel Y, Henry L, Wymer M. Global epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-Meta-analytic assessment of prevalence, incidence, and outcomes. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 73-84 [PMID: 26707365 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28431]

24 **Pinter M**, Scheiner B, Peck-Radosavljevic M. Immunotherapy for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a focus on special subgroups. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 204-214 [PMID: 32747413 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321702]

25 **Meriggi F**, Graffeo M. Clinical Characterisation and Management of the Main Treatment-Induced Toxicities in Patients with Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Cirrhosis. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 33540870 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13030584]

26 **Tovoli F**, De Lorenzo S, Trevisani F. Immunotherapy with Checkpoint Inhibitors for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Where Are We Now? *Vaccines (Basel)* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33023131 DOI: 10.3390/vaccines8040578]

27 **Kambhampati S**, Bauer KE, Bracci PM, Keenan BP, Behr SC, Gordan JD, Kelley RK. Nivolumab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma and Child-Pugh class B cirrhosis: Safety and clinical outcomes in a retrospective case series. *Cancer* 2019; **125**: 3234-3241 [PMID: 31154669 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.32206]

28 **Liu Z**, Li X, He X, Xu Y, Wang X. Complete response to the combination of Lenvatinib and Pembrolizumab in an advanced hepatocellular carcinoma patient: a case report. *BMC Cancer* 2019; **19**: 1062 [PMID: 31703571 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-019-6287-8]

29 **Patrinely JR Jr**, McGuigan B, Chandra S, Fenton SE, Chowdhary A, Kennedy LB, Mooradian MJ, Palmeri M, Portal D, Horst SN, Scoville EA, Long GV, Shi C, Mehnert JM, Sullivan RJ, Salama AK, Sosman JA, Menzies AM, Johnson DB. A multicenter characterization of hepatitis associated with immune checkpoint inhibitors. *Oncoimmunology* 2021; **10**: 1875639 [PMID: 33628621 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2021.1875639]

30 **Rimassa L**, Personeni N, Czauderna C, Foerster F, Galle P. Systemic treatment of HCC in special populations. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 931-943 [PMID: 33248171 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.11.026]

31 **Vogel A**, Martinelli E; ESMO Guidelines Committee. Updated treatment recommendations for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) from the ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Ann Oncol* 2021; **32**: 801-805 [PMID: 33716105 DOI: 10.1016/j.annonc.2021.02.014]

32 **Benson AB**, D'Angelica MI, Abbott DE, Anaya DA, Anders R, Are C, Bachini M, Borad M, Brown D, Burgoyne A, Chahal P, Chang DT, Cloyd J, Covey AM, Glazer ES, Goyal L, Hawkins WG, Iyer R, Jacob R, Kelley RK, Kim R, Levine M, Palta M, Park JO, Raman S, Reddy S, Sahai V, Schefter T, Singh G, Stein S, Vauthey JN, Venook AP, Yopp A, McMillian NR, Hochstetler C, Darlow SD. Hepatobiliary Cancers, Version 2.2021, NCCN Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2021; **19**: 541-565 [PMID: 34030131]

33 **Klajer E**, Garnier L, Goujon M, Schlurmann-Constans F, Mery B, Nguyen Tan Hon T, Mouillet G, Calcagno F, Thiery-Vuillemin A. Targeted and immune therapies among patients with metastatic renal carcinoma undergoing hemodialysis: A systemic review. *Semin Oncol* 2020; **47**: 103 [PMID: 32522380 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminoncol.2020.05.001]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1143-1153

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1143

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Drug-induced liver injury and COVID-19: A review for clinical practice

Gabriela Xavier Ortiz, Gabriele Lenhart, Matheus William Becker, Karin Hepp Schwambach, Cristiane Valle Tovo, Carine Raquel Blatt

ORCID number: Gabriela Xavier Ortiz 0000-0002-7895-5742; Gabriele Lenhart 0000-0003-3312-1995; Matheus William Becker 0000-0002-0190-3688; Karin Hepp Schwambach 0000-0003-3271-2566; Cristiane Valle Tovo 0000-0002-7932-5937; Carine Raquel Blatt 0000-0001-5935-1196.

Author contributions: Ortiz GX, Lenhart G, Becker MW and Schwambach KH collected the data and wrote the paper; Blatt CR wrote and revised the paper; Tovo CV performed the final review of the manuscript with significant contributions; all authors approved the final version of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Gabriela Xavier Ortiz, Matheus William Becker, Karin Hepp Schwambach, Graduate Program in Medicine Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90050-170, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Gabriele Lenhart, Multiprofessional Residency Integrated in Health, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90050-170, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Cristiane Valle Tovo, Internal Medicine Department, Graduate Program in Medicine-Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90050-170, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Carine Raquel Blatt, Pharmacoscience Department, Graduate Program in Medicine-Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre 90050-170, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Corresponding author: Matheus William Becker, MSc, Pharmacist, Research Scientist, Graduate Program in Medicine Hepatology, Federal University of Health Sciences of Porto Alegre, Sarmento Leite, 245 Street, Porto Alegre 90050-170, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil. matheuswbecker@gmail.com

Abstract

Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) consists of a systemic disease that can present many complications. The infection presents broad clinical symptoms and a high rate of transmissibility. In addition to severe acute respiratory syndrome, the patients manifest complications beyond the respiratory system. The frequency of liver damage in COVID-19 patients ranges from 14.8% to 53% of patients. One should pay attention to drug-induced liver injury (DILI) in patients with COVID-19, especially considering the off-label use of drugs in prophylactic and therapeutic regimens applied on large scales. This review aims to present relevant information on the medication used so far in COVID-19 patients and its possible hepatotoxicity. We reviewed liver damage in patients with COVID-19 on PubMed and Virtual Health Library to investigate DILI cases. Four studies were selected, involving the medicines remdesivir, tocilizumab and a pharmacovigilance analysis study. The hepatotoxicity profile of drugs presented in the literature considers use in accordance to usual posology standards for treatment. However, drugs currently used in the management of COVID-19 follow different dosages and posology than those tested by the pharmaceutical industry. The deficiency of

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Brazil

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: May 8, 2021
Peer-review started: May 8, 2021
First decision: May 13, 2021
Revised: May 18, 2021
Accepted: August 18, 2021
Article in press: August 18, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Kurniawan A
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Guo X

uniformity and standardization in the assessment of hepatotoxicity cases hinders the publication of information and the possibility of comparing information among healthcare professionals. It is suggested that severe liver injury in COVID-19 patients should be reported in pharmacovigilance institutions, and physicians should pay attention to any considerable abnormal liver test elevation as it can demonstrate unknown drug hepatotoxicity. Liver disorders in COVID-19 patients and the use of several concomitant off-label medications — with a potential risk of further damaging the liver - should at least be a warning sign for rapid identification and early intervention, thus preventing liver damage from contributing to severe impairment in patients.

Key Words: Liver injury; Chemical and drug-induced liver injury; COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2; Pharmacovigilance

Core Tip: Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) is a multisystemic disease, and liver manifestations are an important aspect to be considered. One should pay attention to drug-induced liver injury, especially considering the off-label use of drugs in prophylactic and therapeutic regimens applied on large scales. A review of liver damage in patients with COVID-19 returned three studies involving remdesivir, tocilizumab, and a pharmacovigilance study. Liver disorders in COVID-19 patients and the use of several concomitant off-label drugs - potentially causing further liver damage - should be a warning sign for rapid identification and early intervention, thus preventing severe impairment in patients.

Citation: Ortiz GX, Lenhart G, Becker MW, Schwambach KH, Tovo CV, Blatt CR. Drug-induced liver injury and COVID-19: A review for clinical practice. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1143-1153
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1143.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1143

INTRODUCTION

In December 2019, the world watched severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) spread from an epidemic in China to a pandemic with global catastrophic effects[1]. The virus causing the syndrome has been identified as severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), a new pathogen in the coronavirus family, and the disease is called coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19)[2]. On January 31, 2021, COVID-19 was already present in 223 countries/territories, with over one hundred million confirmed cases and two million deaths. The United States presents more than 40% of confirmed cases worldwide, followed by India and Brazil[2].

The infection presents broad clinical symptoms and a high rate of transmissibility. The overall signs can vary from fever, cough, shortness of breath, body pain, and diarrhea to severe pneumonia[3]. COVID-19 is a multifactorial systemic disease with rapid progression, leading a patient to the intensive care unit (ICU) in a matter of days [4]. In mild cases of the disease, symptomatic treatment is indicated. In moderate to severe cases, support measures and the use of experimental/off-label treatments should be performed[5].

In addition to SARS, patients with COVID-19 manifest complications beyond the respiratory system[6]. The virus hosts the angiotensin-converting enzyme receptor 2 (ACE-2), which despite being expressed in 80% of lung cells, it is also located in tissues such as vascular endothelium, gastrointestinal tract, squamous epithelium of the nasal, oral mucosa, and nasopharynx[7,8]. Therefore, COVID-19 consists of a systemic disease that can present complications such as thromboembolic episodes, arrhythmias, and myocardial dysfunction, prolongation of the QT interval, acute coronary syndrome, kidney injury, hepatocellular damage, hyperglycemia, and ketoacidosis, neurological symptoms, sepsis and, in more severe cases, multiple organ failure[9].

The frequency of liver damage in COVID-19 patients ranges from 14.8% to 53% of patients[10]. In a systematic review analyzing 12882 hospitalized patients, 41.1% had elevated aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and 29.1% increased alanine aminotransferase (ALT). Elevation of AST and ALT three times above the normal upper limit is significantly associated with greater chances of unfavorable clinical outcomes [11]. Other publications demonstrate the increase in ALT/AST ratio in 16% to 62% of cases and elevated total bilirubin by 5% to 21% of the patients. Elevation of AST and ALT presented is about two times above the normal upper limit[12]. Studies suggest that aminotransferase elevations occur more frequently in severe patients[9].

The liver injury pattern consists of increased AST/ALT and less frequently decreased serum albumin, increase total bilirubin, gamma-glutamyltransferase (GT range), and alkaline phosphatase[13,14]. Liver histopathological alterations demonstrated microvesicular steatosis, portal fibrosis, inflammatory infiltration in the hepatic and ductular lobe, and multifactorial acute liver necrosis[9]. The high transmissibility of the virus and the absence of protocols for the protection of health professionals at the beginning of the pandemic made it difficult to perform autopsies and liver biopsies of patients with COVID-19 — leading to scarce histopathological data in the literature[15]. Another difficulty in establishing a liver injury pattern is the scarcity of publications reporting liver signs and symptoms in addition to laboratory findings such as jaundice, hepatomegaly, and ascites.

Liver involvement in patients with COVID-19 is currently limited to moderate to severe cases, and its damage may be transient, with liver tests returning to normal without the need for specific treatment[9,15]. The occurrence of acute or chronic liver failure is yet to be investigated. Nevertheless, the higher the serum level of AST/ALT and total bilirubin, the severer the disease, the higher the risk of a patient requiring admission to the ICU or prolonged hospital stay[16], and the greater the mortality risk [14].

Reasons for the occurrence of liver damage in COVID-19 patients are multifactorial [9]. The first hypothesis was the cytopathic injury caused directly by the virus[9]. Although the liver damage pattern found in COVID-19 patients suggests hepatocellular damage, ACE-2 is expressed in only 2.6% of hepatocytes, in contrast to the relevant expression in cholangiocytes (59%), which would suggest cholestatic damage [13]. However, the bile duct has a role in liver regeneration and immune response, and direct damage to cholangiocytes can impair this function. The presence of the virus in the vascular endothelium causes a state of hypercoagulation; thus, there is the possibility of liver damage caused by thrombosis in the porta-hepatic system[9,11].

The manifestation of hypoxemia due to pneumonia may cause liver damage due to hypoxia-reoxygenation[13]. In cardiac, circulatory or respiratory distress passive congestion and decreased blood flow to the liver may occur. Theoretically, hypoxia rescue and reperfusion of organs cause the availability of a large amount of oxygen suddenly increases the presence of reactive oxygen species, causing the release of pro-inflammatory factors and thus facilitating the occurrence of blood hyperviscosity, which aggravates microvascular lesions in the liver[13]. Septic shock is a common complication in severe COVID-19 patients and functional imbalance may be responsible for liver damage[17].

It is a consensus among experts that functional changes caused by SARS-CoV-2 in patients with moderate to severe disease may be related to systemic inflammatory response syndrome[9]. The development of an uncontrolled immune-mediated inflammatory reaction occurs by the increase in plasma cytokines and other inflammatory reagents [interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, IL-10, and tumor necrosis factor]. This mechanism affects several organs and has supported the clinical use of anti-inflammatory corticosteroids[8].

The role of chronic liver disease (CLD) in COVID-19 patients is still controversial. Cirrhosis is a risk factor for mortality in general, with clinical complications such as sepsis and respiratory stress[18]. The prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is increasing worldwide, and the patient's profile is similar to the SARS-CoV-2 risk group: advanced age and presence of comorbidities such as hypertension, diabetes, obesity, and cardiovascular distress[19]. CLD may interfere with the findings of liver enzyme alterations to some extent in COVID-19 — if not directly responsible, acting together with the virus to worsen liver function. Despite this scenario, liver damage might occur regardless of liver disease's previous existence[18].

One should pay attention to drug-induced liver injury (DILI) in patients with COVID-19, especially considering the off-label use of drugs in prophylactic and therapeutic regimens applied on large scales. DILI is an adverse reaction to medications, and patients using five or more drugs - for example, critically ill ICU patients with COVID-19 - are more likely to experience this type of reaction[20].

Although rare, often ranging from 1 case in 10000-100000[21], physicians and pharmacists should monitor the occurrence of this event in COVID-19 patients since the side-effect prolongs hospital stay, a critical situation in a hospital bed shortage moment[22].

Finally, the DILI adverse event can play a crucial role in COVID-19 patients. This review aims to present relevant information on the medication used so far in COVID-19 patients and its possible hepatotoxicity. We intend to condense information that supports decision-making and patient management in clinical practice in the hospital environment and make remarks on liver manifestations in light of the DILI subject.

LITERATURE REVIEW

Review of liver damage in patients with COVID-19

A review of liver damage in patients with COVID-19 on PubMed for general information on hepatic manifestations in SARS-CoV-2 was performed using the terms ("Liver Diseases" [MeSH]) AND ("sars cov 2" [MeSH]). Secondly, PubMed and VHL (Virtual Health Library) were used to explore DILI cases in COVID-19. VHL was used to expand the search for Latin American cases. The search strategy for PubMed combined the descriptors as follows ("Chemical and Drug Induced Liver Injury"[MeSH]) AND ("sars-cov-2"[MeSH]) AND ("covid-19"[MeSH]). There was no limitation by language, year of publication, or study design. The search strategy for VHL combined the descriptors as "Chemical and Drug Induced Liver Injury" AND "coronavirus infections". The first search was performed on January 6th, 2021, and was then updated on April 17, 2021.

The studies' eligibility was defined by identifying DILI cases due to medications used to treat patients with COVID-19. The studies' selection was performed by two independent reviewers, MWB and KHS, and in three sequential stages — title, abstract, and full-text readings. A third reviewer, CRB, resolved the disagreements. The following variables were analyzed: Drug, patient characteristics, assessment of liver enzymes, DILI diagnosis criteria.

The search returned 53 articles — 22 articles from the VHL and 31 articles from the PubMed database. After excluding duplicate articles and review articles, 10 available abstracts and full texts were assessed. One excluded article assessed adverse drug reactions but did not mention DILI. Another two excluded articles assessed liver injury but no mention to the medication used; a retrospective study analyzing antiviral treatment was excluded since no causality was assessed. Six studies were selected — five case reports and a pharmacovigilance analysis study of VigiBase, the World Health Organization's individual case safety reports database, as summarized in Table 1.

The results found are related to the attempt to treat critically ill patients, either by eliminating the virus or by decreasing the inflammatory manifestations developed. Tocilizumab is an IL-6 receptor antagonist and has been proposed to treat severe forms of COVID-19. IL-6 plays an important role in COVID-19-induced cytokine storm[23]. Remdesivir is a nucleotide analogue RNA polymerase inhibitor, originally developed and tested for Ebola virus disease. The drug showed antiviral activity against a broad spectrum of human coronaviruses in cell cultures and mouse models, including SARS. Recently, the Food and Drug Agency recommended Remdesivir for the treatment of patients hospitalized with severe coronavirus disease[24,26,28].

Risk of hepatotoxicity of medicines on COVID-19 patients

It is challenging to find data on hepatotoxicity. This data includes clinical trials, observational studies, series and case reports. In the case of DILI, clinical trials do not focus on assessing causality, so it is not accurate in this identification, even because it is not the objective of this study design. Retrospective observational studies have a known bias regarding data collection. However, prospective observational studies and case series are essential for the detection and understanding of DILI. In this context, the analysis of the evidence synthesis is a difficult task to perform. In terms of access, the LiverTox© database[29] website is a valuable reference for a quick consultation[30]. It classifies medicines according to the following scale: Category A (over 50 published reports), B (over 12 but less than 50), C (over four but less than 12), and D (one to three cases).

Some reservations emerged concerning the frequencies of risk of hepatotoxicity when confronted with a large series of prospective cases — mainly related to drugs presenting a risk of hepatotoxicity when it was impossible to rule out other

Table 1 Reports of drug-induced liver injury in patients with coronavirus disease 2019 (PubMed/Virtual Health Library)

Ref.	Study/site	Patient profile	Medication	DILI	Outcome
Muhović *et al*[23]	Case report; Montenegro	Man, 52-yr-old	Chloroquine, lopinavir/ritonavir, methylprednisolone, ceftriaxone and azithromycin. After 6 d: methylprednisolone, ceftriaxone, azithromycin	CIOMS/RUCAM: scored 8 points for a 'probable' cause of DILI by TCZ. Hepatocellular form of DILI diagnosed using the EASL guidelines	TCZ had a positive effect on clinical and laboratory parameters, with transaminases values normalizing in 10 d
Zampino *et al*[24]	Case series; Naples, Italy	None of the 5 treated patients had history of liver disease, visceral obesity, viral hepatitis, or prior hepatotoxic medication or alcohol intake. Liver ultrasound did not show signs of advanced liver disease. Patient 1 and 2 had history of hypertension and asthma	Before and during RDV treatment, 4 of 5 patients alsoreceived hydroxychloroquine patient 2 and 4 received ceftazidime–avibactam plus daptomycin and patient 3 meropenem and linezolid	Significant increase in AST/ALT	Adverse effect neither progressed to severe liver damage nor induced liver failure. In no cases, RDV was discontinued because of liver injury
Durante-Mangoni *et al*[25]	Case series; Naples, Italy	Four patients	All patients had been previously treated with LPV/r or darunavir/cobicistat (DRV/c) and also received hydroxychloroquine	3 patients experienced ALT and AST increase (5 times to 8 times the upper normal limit)	RDV was prematurely discontinued in patient 1 because of a *torsade de pointes* requiring cardiac resuscitation and in patient 3 because of death due to multiple organ failure. The study suggests a significant burden of adverse events
Montastruc *et al*[26]	Cross-sectional study; United States, Europe	387 reports with RDV side effects in VigiBase; 130 hepatic adverse effects, 87 from the United States; 43 from Europe; mostly men (81, 62%), mean age of 54.9 yr	In the majority of cases (122, 94%), RDV was the sole suspected drug	Increased hepatic enzymes (114, 88%), involving AST and ALT in 79 cases (61%) and bilirubin in 4 cases (3%). Other cases were reported as hepatic failure or hepatitis	Most cases were serious (94, 72%), resulting in hospitalization or prolongation of hospital stay. The use of RDV was associated with an increased risk of reporting hepatic disorders
Yamazaki *et al*[27]	Case reported; Japan	73-yr-old man. History of hypertension, hyperlipidemia, gastric ulcer, benign prostatic hyperplasia, and alcoholic hepatitis	Favipiravir was the suspected drug. Dosage was 6000 mg on day 1 and 2400 mg/d from day 2 onward, for a total of 14 d. Patient was using previously lopinavir/ritonavir combined with interferon β-1b, vancomycin and antithrombin III. After started fapinavir two more drugs were added Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and micafungin	Transaminases were elevated until day 4: Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) from 70 U/L (day 0) to 112 U/L (day 4) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT) from 37 U/L to 59 U/L, respectively. Total bilirubin (T-BiL) increased until day 3 from 5.2 mg/dL to 12.6 mg/dL. On day 11, however, transaminases peaked again (AST, 268 U/L; ALT, 115 U/L) and total bilirubin was also rising	A case of cholestatic liver injury in the early stages of favipiravir treatment for COVID-19. Based on the CIMOS/RUCAM scoring system, it was classified as a cholestatic liver injury, with a score of 6 (possible)
Leegwater *et al*[28]	Case report; The Netherlands	A 64-yr-old male patient. History of hypertension and hypercholesterolemia	Remdesivir	5 d after start of remdesivir ALT was 1305 IU/L, AST 1461 U/L, alkaline phosphatase 269 U/L, total bilirubin 8 μmol/L, gammaglutamyltransferase 227 U/L and creatine kinase 103 U/L	Remdesivir toxicity was suspected based on the time-relation, the positive dechallenge, the known *in vitro* toxicity of remdesivir and the absence of alternative causes of hepatotoxicity. After stop of remdesivir the ALT/AST ratio reached normal values

CIOMS/RUCAM: Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences/Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method; DILI: Drug induce liver injury; EASL: European Association for the Study of the Liver; TCZ: Tocilizumab; RDV: Remdesivir.

hypotheses. Publication bias and lack of updating can also affect the assessment of the LiverTox© database[29] when considering a drug as low risk[21]. New drugs may also

go unnoticed, as the data is generally related to internal reports by regulatory agencies. Despite this bias, the LiverTox© database is still the most practical way of obtaining information on hepatotoxicity. The expansion of its use and knowledge can improve the quality of publications and more accurate detection and assessment of DILI's causality.

The evidence of hepatotoxicity available in the LiverTox© database[29] was organized considering drugs for COVID-19 treatment. Table 2 presents some of the most studied drugs for the COVID-19 treatment according to hepatotoxicity information and DILI case probability. Table 3 presents drugs that enhance the effectiveness of medical treatment.

DISCUSSION

Healthcare professionals must consider DILI in COVID-19 patients when: (1) There is an elevation of ALT five times above the upper limit of normal (ULN); and (2) Increase in ALT > 3 × ULN with an increase in bilirubin > 2 × ULN with or without alteration of alkaline phosphatase levels or with hepatic signs[31]. DILI may be present when total bilirubin is > 2.5 mg/dL in the presence of AST and ALT elevation or when international normalized ratio > 1.5 with a concomitant increase in AST and ALT[32]. DILI can be classified as hepatocellular, cholestatic or mixed, as indicated by ALT and the alkaline phosphatase test[33]. Moreover, DILI can be mild, moderate, severe, or fatal; the worst outcomes are liver transplant or death[20]. Although there are three known types of DILI, there is no consensus of what type is the most common in COVID-19 patients.

Abnormal levels for aminotransferase in DILI without other signs and symptoms should only be monitored. If the patient presents ALT 5 × > ULN with jaundice, hepatomegaly, hyperbilirubinemia, or right-upper-quadrant pain, consider further clinical investigation and interruption of suspected DILI drug[9]. Patients under off-label drugs use and investigational treatments should be longitudinally monitored for liver tests. If resources are available, monitor liver tests of patients discharged from ICU to ensure no secondary damage will occur, and liver function will be fully restored[9,13]. Most DILI cases do not need drug therapy, and patients recover after drug discontinuance. Ursodeoxycholic acid 500 mg daily use is described in the literature for hepatic protection for elevated transaminases and serum total bilirubin in non-alcoholic liver disease, however its mechanism of action remain unclear[18].

Causality algorithms should be used in the assessment of adverse drug reactions. For DILI related to COVID-19 treatment, we strongly encourage using the Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method (RUCAM) due to its specificity for liver injury [34]. Briefly, the RUCAM scale assigns points to seven domains, including temporal evolution of the liver injury, risk factors (age, alcohol use, and pregnancy), concomitant use of drugs that may be hepatotoxic, and the development of repeated liver damage after the new drug is administered[35]. RUCAM may also help in the differential diagnosis of other COVID-19 related etiologies that cause AST/ALT elevation, such as myositis, ischemia, cytokine-release syndrome, and previous CLD [9].

The mortality of COVID-19 relates to SARS. Nevertheless, extrapulmonary manifestations such as liver injury may contribute to a negative clinical prognosis. There is no sufficient data to consider liver injury caused by DILI as a risk factor for mortality, but it is a safety concern since it is related to severe cases of COVID-19[9, 36], and it may increase hospital length of stay and expose patients to other comorbidities such as nosocomial infection. From a social and economic perspective, it also pressures the health system, as hospital bed shortages are a major concern in the pandemic, since resources are scarce worldwide.

The hepatotoxicity profile of drugs available in the literature considers approved therapeutic schemes applied in the medical routine. However, drugs currently used in the management of COVID-19 do not follow previously established therapies and posology when considering those tested by the pharmaceutical industry[37]. For example, in Brazil, reports of hepatotoxicity caused by ivermectin use 18 mg/d for a week as prophylaxis for COVID-19 are published in non-scientific media. Despite the small number of published cases according to Table 2, overdose — in the case of administration of non-studied dosage — may, over time, modify the risk of ivermectin hepatotoxicity. A similar situation may occur with several other drugs, leading to the need to review the frequency of adverse reactions described in the package leaflet. This scenario can be confusing in identifying DILI even when using well-established

Table 2 Hepatotoxicity of the most common drugs used to treat coronavirus disease 2019

Drug	Evidence of hepatotoxicity	Probability
Azithromycin	Liver damage is usually self-limited cholestatic hepatitis, which appears 1 wk to 3 wk after starting treatment. It may also appear after some time following medicine discontinuance. Cholestasis and elevated transaminases can persist for up to 6 mo. Despite presenting the hepatocellular and cholestatic forms of injury, cholestatic is more often related to acute liver failure, death, or liver transplantation	A
Lopinavir/ritonavir	Clinically apparent liver disease occurs in 3% to 10% of patients. The onset of symptoms or jaundice is usually 1 wk to 8 wk, and the pattern of elevations in serum enzymes varies from hepatocellular to cholestatic or mixed. The injury is usually self-limiting; however, fatal cases have been reported	D
Hydroxy-chloroquine	It has not been associated with significant elevations in serum enzymes during therapy for rheumatic diseases. When used in relatively high doses, it can trigger an acute liver injury with a sudden onset of fever and marked elevation of serum enzymes. Post COVID-19 data have not been assessed	C
Tocilizumab	It has been associated with several cases of clinically apparent liver injury with jaundice. Although the liver injury was severe, it was usually self-limiting, with complete recovery within 2 mo to 3 mo. In at least one case, however, the affected patient died of liver failure. Current recommendations are patient monitoring by routine liver tests before medication. In registration trials, serum aminotransferase elevations occurred in a high proportion (10% to 50%) of patients	C
Remdesivir	Between 10% and 50% of patients treated developed transient, mild-to-moderate serum ALT and AST elevations within 1 d to 5 d of starting therapy without changes in serum bilirubin or alkaline phosphatase levels. Elevations above 5 times ULN were reported in up to 9% of patients in several clinical trials, but the abnormalities resolved with discontinuance and were not associated with a clinically apparent injury	D
Nevirapine	Associated with significant elevations in ALT (above 5 times the ULN) in 4% to 20% of patients and symptomatic elevations in 1% to 5%	A
Ivermectin	Associated with minor, self-limiting elevations in serum aminotransferase and sporadic cases of clinically apparent liver damage. Post COVID-19 data have not been assessed	D

Adapted from LiverTox© database[27]. A: Well know hepatotoxicity; B: Highly likely hepatotoxicity; C: Probably hepatotoxicity; D: Possible hepatotoxicity; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ULN: Upper limit of normal.

Table 3 Hepatoxicity of adjuvant therapy medications for coronavirus disease 2019 treatment

Drug	Evidence of hepatotoxicity	Probability
Heparin	Associated with a transient elevation of 10% to 60%, but the values are generally less than 5 times the upper limit of normal and are rarely associated with symptoms or jaundice. Values above 5 times the upper limit of normal occur around 2% of those receiving high heparin doses	NR
Enoxaparin	Associated with elevations in serum aminotransferases in 4% to 13% of patients, but values greater than 5 times the upper limit of normal are not common and occur in higher doses. The typical liver injury in patients receiving low molecular weight heparins occurred with rapid onset (within 3 d to 5 d of onset), rapid recovery (from 1 wk to 4 wk), and the absence of symptoms and jaundice. Some patients have mild increases in serum bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase but generally remain within the normal range	E
Cortico-steroids	The use of glucocorticoids can result in hepatomegaly and steatosis. They can trigger or worsen non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Long-term use can also exacerbate chronic viral hepatitis. High doses of intravenous corticosteroids, mainly methylprednisolone, have been associated with acute liver damage resulting in acute liver failure and death. Symptoms and jaundice develop 2 wk to 6 wk after discontinuance. Some cases have progressed to acute liver failure, resulting in death or the need for emergency liver transplantation	A
Voriconazole	Transient elevations in serum aminotransferase levels occur in 11% to 19% of patients on voriconazole. These elevations are generally asymptomatic and self-limited, but approximately 1% of patients require voriconazole discontinuance due to ALT elevations. Cases of acute liver failure have been described. Testing for serum bilirubin and aminotransferase levels is recommended at the time of initiation and weekly during the first month of therapy and monthly thereafter	B
Anidulafungin	Transient elevation of transaminases from 2% to 15%. There are rarely serious cases. Monitoring of liver tests during therapy is recommended, especially in patients with previous liver disease	D
Colchicine	It is rarely associated with elevations in serum aminotransferase or alkaline phosphatase. The cases of acute liver injury attributed to the overdose of colchicine were self-limiting, and the other toxicities of this agent, such as rhabdomyolysis, generally overshadowed the liver injury. No convincing cases of liver failure have been reported	C

Adapted from LiverTox© database[27]. A: Well know hepatotoxicity; B: Highly likely hepatotoxicity; C: Probably hepatotoxicity; D: Possible hepatotoxicity; E: Unlikely hepatotoxicity; NR: Not reported; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase.

causality algorithms, leading to sub notification, as drugs are used in non-previous indications.

When we analyzed Azithromycin and Hydroxychloroquine, we found that Azithromycin has a greater potential for hepatotoxicity, according to table 2.

Nevertheless, the Brazilian clinical trial 'Coalition' found a curious fact: Hydroxychloroquine alone or in addition with Azithromycin increased the levels of aminotransferases. Azithromycin was therefore not a confounder, but its interaction further increased the frequency of liver damage[38].

Besides azithromycin, many antimicrobial agents applied in the treatment of respiratory infections may cause hepatotoxicity. Fluoroquinolones, especially ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin, are responsible for frequent causes of clinically apparent liver injury and bile duct paucity[39]. Amoxicillin-clavulanate is LiverTox© A category and the most common documented cause of non-acetaminophen idiosyncratic DILI in the United States and Spain[40]. The drug causes cholestasis or mixed pattern of liver injury with significant increased alkaline phosphatase and gamma glutamyl transpeptidase markers[40-42]. Antituberculosis agents such as isoniazid are well known for their hepatotoxicity[43]; in developing countries, patients with COVID-19 and tuberculosis might be at increased risk of poor respiratory outcomes and DILI occurrence. Physicians should be aware of the available date on general antimicrobial hepatotoxicity to evaluate risk-benefit of adjuvant drug therapy.

COVID-19 is a condition yet to be duly clarified as to its extent and consequences. Despite the evidence showing the benefits of dexamethasone for the treatment, its use also made conditions such as aspergillosis pneumonia more frequent. This increase has been associated with the increased use of corticosteroids. Therefore, the treatment protocol of some antifungal drugs is associated with respiratory conditions. With the increase in the use of antifungals, known to affect the liver, it is necessary to be aware of the increased frequency of DILI associated with these drugs that were not so often used before[44].

After Ivermectin, Nevirapine, and Hydroxychloroquine, now Colchicine is under study for the treatment of COVID-19[45]. Pre-pandemic, the concept of hepatotoxicity was reported as an unlikely or even non-existent cause. Nevertheless, COVID-19 has taught us that we need to be aware of possible new adverse effects when treating new pathologies — especially those stemming from new and dosage regimens.

Most DILI reports are concentrated in a hospital environment due to the availability of diagnostic resources[46]. In a non-pandemic context when most cases are identified in a hospital environment, 50% of DILI cases are poorly diagnosed[47]. In patients with COVID-19, this situation may be even more precarious since the off-label drug use in outpatient settings — drugs such as azithromycin, hydroxychloroquine, and ivermectin — will only alert to hepatotoxicity in severe cases when a patient already requires hospitalization.

Healthcare professionals must be aware of self-medication practices with over-the-counter medicines in the treatment of COVID-19 fever and pain, such as nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs[48]. Acetaminophen overdoses cause harmful acute hepatocellular injury and even in adequate doses it can slightly elevate serum aminotransferases[49]. Liver injury can occur when acetaminophen is taken for several days in supratherapeutic doses[42]. Hepatotoxicity is worsened if the patient is critically ill, presents alcoholism, malnutrition or preexisting CLD[49]. Moreover, chronic use of diclofenac can increase ALT levels; nimesulide has been described in acute liver failure and ibuprofen is associated with cholestatic DILI[41].

Studies describe the increase in AST/ALT as a synonym for liver damage and hepatotoxicity in patients with COVID-19. However, for a relevant outcome in clinical practice, it is necessary to clarify the presence of signs and symptoms in those cases. The deficiency of uniformity and standardization in the assessment of hepatotoxicity cases hinders the publication of information and the possibility of comparing information among healthcare professionals[50]. In that scenario, RUCAM may help to guide more consistent and complete data on DILI, including COVID-19 cases, undergoing clinical features, treatments used, and current diseases. The World Health Organization strengthened the report of any drug adverse event and so, DILI should also be monitored and reported to local pharmacovigilance institutions to compose the VigiBase dataset. Physicians should pay attention to any considerable abnormal liver test elevation as it can demonstrate unknown drug hepatotoxicity. The only certainty that we have is that after COVID-19, knowledge about drug use and abuse will be updated. For that, we should pay attention to increasing DILI reports.

CONCLUSION

COVID-19 is a multisystemic disease, and liver manifestations are a crucial aspect to be considered. The pandemic moment experienced presents new clinical situations

that need different perspectives and approaches. It is important to verify the occurrence of hepatic manifestation in different populations, as there may be a relationship with the different therapeutic schemes used to treat the disease.

Pharmacovigilance actions using validated tools such as the RUCAM algorithm can establish a causal relationship between drugs and DILI and disseminate relevant information for clinical decision-making. The set of liver disorders in COVID-19 patients and the use of several concomitant off-label drugs should be at least a warning sign of potential further liver damage. Rapid identification and early intervention can prevent liver damage contributing to severe impairment in patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Zhou P**, Yang XL, Wang XG, Hu B, Zhang L, Zhang W, Si HR, Zhu Y, Li B, Huang CL, Chen HD, Chen J, Luo Y, Guo H, Jiang RD, Liu MQ, Chen Y, Shen XR, Wang X, Zheng XS, Zhao K, Chen QJ, Deng F, Liu LL, Yan B, Zhan FX, Wang YY, Xiao GF, Shi ZL. A pneumonia outbreak associated with a new coronavirus of probable bat origin. *Nature* 2020; **579**: 270-273 [PMID: 32015507 DOI: 10.1038/s41586-020-2012-7]

2 **World Health Organization**. WHO Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) Dashboard 2021. [cited 31 Jan 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://covid19.who.int/

3 **Wu Z**, McGoogan JM. Characteristics of and Important Lessons From the Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) Outbreak in China: Summary of a Report of 72 314 Cases From the Chinese Center for Disease Control and Prevention. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1239-1242 [PMID: 32091533 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.2648]

4 **CDC COVID-19 Response Team**. Severe Outcomes Among Patients with Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) - United States, February 12-March 16, 2020. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2020; **69**: 343-346 [PMID: 32214079 DOI: 10.15585/mmwr.mm6912e2]

5 **World Health Organization**. Clinical management of Covid-19: interim guidance, 27 May 2020. [cited 31 Jan 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/332196

6 **Thakur V**, Ratho RK, Kumar P, Bhatia SK, Bora I, Mohi GK, Saxena SK, Devi M, Yadav D, Mehariya S. Multi-Organ Involvement in COVID-19: Beyond Pulmonary Manifestations. *J Clin Med* 2021; **10** [PMID: 33498861 DOI: 10.3390/jcm10030446]

7 **Chai X**, Hu L, Zhang Y, Han W, Lu Z, Ke A. Specific ACE2 expression in cholangiocytes may cause liver damage after 2019-nCoV infection. 2020 Preprint. Available from: bioRxiv:2020.02.03.931766

8 **Metawea MI**, Yousif WI, Moheb I. COVID 19 and liver: An A-Z literature review. *Dig Liver Dis* 2021; **53**: 146-152 [PMID: 32988758 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2020.09.010]

9 **Gupta A**, Madhavan MV, Sehgal K, Nair N, Mahajan S, Sehrawat TS, Bikdeli B, Ahluwalia N, Ausiello JC, Wan EY, Freedberg DE, Kirtane AJ, Parikh SA, Maurer MS, Nordvig AS, Accili D, Bathon JM, Mohan S, Bauer KA, Leon MB, Krumholz HM, Uriel N, Mehra MR, Elkind MSV, Stone GW, Schwartz A, Ho DD, Bilezikian JP, Landry DW. Extrapulmonary manifestations of COVID-19. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 1017-1032 [PMID: 32651579 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0968-3]

10 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]

11 **Sharma A**, Jaiswal P, Kerakhan Y, Saravanan L, Murtaza Z, Zergham A, Honganur NS, Akbar A, Deol A, Francis B, Patel S, Mehta D, Jaiswal R, Singh J, Patel U, Malik P. Liver disease and outcomes among COVID-19 hospitalized patients - A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Hepatol* 2021; **21**: 100273 [PMID: 33075578 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.10.001]

12 **Brito CA**, Barros FM, Lopes EP. Mechanisms and consequences of COVID-19 associated liver injury: What can we affirm? *World J Hepatol* 2020; **12**: 413-422 [PMID: 32952870 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i8.413]

13 **Yang RX**, Zheng RD, Fan JG. Etiology and management of liver injury in patients with COVID-19. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 4753-4762 [PMID: 32921955 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i32.4753]

14 **Wu Y**, Li H, Guo X, Yoshida EM, Mendez-Sanchez N, Levi Sandri GB, Teschke R, Romeiro FG, Shukla A, Qi X. Incidence, risk factors, and prognosis of abnormal liver biochemical tests in COVID-19 patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 621-637 [PMID: 32710250 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10074-6]

15 **Xu L**, Liu J, Lu M, Yang D, Zheng X. Liver injury during highly pathogenic human coronavirus infections. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 998-1004 [PMID: 32170806 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14435]

16 **Portincasa P**, Krawczyk M, Machill A, Lammert F, Di Ciaula A. Hepatic consequences of COVID-19 infection. Lapping or biting? *Eur J Intern Med* 2020; **77**: 18-24 [PMID: 32507608 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2020.05.035]

17 **Li J**, Fan JG. Characteristics and Mechanism of Liver Injury in 2019 Coronavirus Disease. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 13-17 [PMID: 32274341 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00019]

18 **Hanafy AS**, Abd-Elsalam S. Challenges in COVID-19 drug treatment in patients with advanced liver diseases: A hepatology perspective. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 7272-7286 [PMID: 33362383 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i46.7272]

19 **Leoni S**, Tovoli F, Napoli L, Serio I, Ferri S, Bolondi L. Current guidelines for the management of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A systematic review with comparative analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 3361-3373 [PMID: 30122876 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i30.3361]

20 **Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences**. Drug-induced liver injury (DILI): Current status and future directions for drug development and the post-market setting. A consensus by a CIOMS Working Group. Geneva, Switzerland: Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences (CIOMS), 2020

21 **Björnsson ES**, Bergmann OM, Björnsson HK, Kvaran RB, Olafsson S. Incidence, presentation, and outcomes in patients with drug-induced liver injury in the general population of Iceland. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1419-1425, 1425.e1 [PMID: 23419359 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.02.006]

22 **Ranzani OT**, Bastos LSL, Gelli JGM, Marchesi JF, Baião F, Hamacher S, Bozza FA. Characterisation of the first 250,000 hospital admissions for COVID-19 in Brazil: a retrospective analysis of nationwide data. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; **9**: 407-418 [PMID: 33460571 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30560-9]

23 **Muhović D**, Bojović J, Bulatović A, Vukčević B, Ratković M, Lazović R, Smolović B. First case of drug-induced liver injury associated with the use of tocilizumab in a patient with COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1901-1905 [PMID: 32478465 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14516]

24 **Zampino R**, Mele F, Florio LL, Bertolino L, Andini R, Galdo M, De Rosa R, Corcione A, Durante-Mangoni E. Liver injury in remdesivir-treated COVID-19 patients. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 881-883 [PMID: 32725454 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10077-3]

25 **Durante-Mangoni E**, Andini R, Bertolino L, Mele F, Florio LL, Murino P, Corcione A, Zampino R. Early experience with remdesivir in SARS-CoV-2 pneumonia. *Infection* 2020; **48**: 779-782 [PMID: 32418190 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-020-01448-x]

26 **Montastruc F**, Thuriot S, Durrieu G. Hepatic Disorders With the Use of Remdesivir for Coronavirus 2019. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 2835-2836 [PMID: 32721580 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.07.050]

27 **Yamazaki S**, Suzuki T, Sayama M, Nakada TA, Igari H, Ishii I. Suspected cholestatic liver injury induced by favipiravir in a patient with COVID-19. *J Infect Chemother* 2021; **27**: 390-392 [PMID: 33402301 DOI: 10.1016/j.jiac.2020.12.021]

28 **Leegwater E**, Strik A, Wilms EB, Bosma LBE, Burger DM, Ottens TH, van Nieuwkoop C. Drug-induced Liver Injury in a Patient With Coronavirus Disease 2019: Potential Interaction of Remdesivir With P-Glycoprotein Inhibitors. *Clin Infect Dis* 2021; **72**: 1256-1258 [PMID: 32594120 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciaa883]

29 LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2012– [PMID: 31643176]

30 **Hoofnagle JH**, Serrano J, Knoben JE, Navarro VJ. LiverTox: a website on drug-induced liver injury. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 873-874 [PMID: 23456678 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26175]

31 **Real M**, Barnhill MS, Higley C, Rosenberg J, Lewis JH. Drug-Induced Liver Injury: Highlights of the Recent Literature. *Drug Saf* 2019; **42**: 365-387 [PMID: 30343418 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-018-0743-2]

32 **Hunt CM**, Papay JI, Stanulovic V, Regev A. Drug rechallenge following drug-induced liver injury. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 646-654 [PMID: 28295448 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29152]

33 **Danan G**, Teschke R. RUCAM in Drug and Herb Induced Liver Injury: The Update. *Int J Mol Sci* 2015; **17** [PMID: 26712744 DOI: 10.3390/ijms17010014]

34 **Teschke R**, Frenzel C. Drug induced liver injury: do we still need a routine liver biopsy for diagnosis today? *Ann Hepatol* 2013; **13**: 121-126 [PMID: 24378275]

35 **Teschke R**, Danan G. Prospective Indian Study of DILI with Confirmed Causality Using the Roussel Uclaf Causality Assessment Method (RUCAM): A report of Excellence. *Ann Hepatol* 2017; **16**: 324-325 [PMID: 28425398 DOI: 10.5604/16652681.1235471]

36 **Wong YJ**, Tan M, Zheng Q, Li JW, Kumar R, Fock KM, Teo EK, Ang TL. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the COVID-19 associated liver injury. *Ann Hepatol* 2020; **19**: 627-634 [PMID: 32882393 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.08.064]

37 **Peng Y**, Tao H, Satyanarayanan SK, Jin K, Su H. A Comprehensive Summary of the Knowledge on COVID-19 Treatment. *Aging Dis* 2021; **12**: 155-191 [PMID: 33532135 DOI: 10.14336/AD.2020.1124]

38 **Cavalcanti AB**, Zampieri FG, Rosa RG, Azevedo LCP, Veiga VC, Avezum A, Damiani LP, Marcadenti A, Kawano-Dourado L, Lisboa T, Junqueira DLM, de Barros E Silva PGM, Tramujas L, Abreu-Silva EO, Laranjeira LN, Soares AT, Echenique LS, Pereira AJ, Freitas FGR, Gebara OCE, Dantas VCS, Furtado RHM, Milan EP, Golin NA, Cardoso FF, Maia IS, Hoffmann Filho CR, Kormann APM, Amazonas RB, Bocchi de Oliveira MF, Serpa-Neto A, Falavigna M, Lopes RD, Machado FR, Berwanger O; Coalition Covid-19 Brazil I Investigators. Hydroxychloroquine with or without Azithromycin in Mild-to-Moderate Covid-19. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **383**: 2041-2052 [PMID: 32706953 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2019014]

39 **Björnsson ES**. Hepatotoxicity by Drugs: The Most Common Implicated Agents. *Int J Mol Sci* 2016; **17**: 224 [PMID: 26861310 DOI: 10.3390/ijms17020224]

40 **Bunchorntavakul C**, Reddy KR. Drug Hepatotoxicity: Newer Agents. *Clin Liver Dis* 2017; **21**: 115-134 [PMID: 27842767 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2016.08.009]

41 **David S**, Hamilton JP. Drug-induced Liver Injury. *US Gastroenterol Hepatol Rev* 2010; **6**: 73-80 [PMID: 21874146]

42 **Lee WM**. Drug-induced hepatotoxicity. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **349**: 474-485 [PMID: 12890847 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra021844]

43 **Metushi I**, Uetrecht J, Phillips E. Mechanism of isoniazid-induced hepatotoxicity: then and now. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2016; **81**: 1030-1036 [PMID: 26773235 DOI: 10.1111/bcp.12885]

44 **Warris A**, Schwartz I. Editorial MMCR special issue 'Covid-19 associated pulmonary aspergillosis'. *Med Mycol Case Rep* 2021; **31**: 1 [PMID: 33589872 DOI: 10.1016/j.mmcr.2021.02.003]

45 **Lopes MI**, Bonjorno LP, Giannini MC, Amaral NB, Menezes PI, Dib SM, Gigante SL, Benatti MN, Rezek UC, Emrich-Filho LL, Sousa BAA, Almeida SCL, Luppino Assad R, Veras FP, Schneider A, Rodrigues TS, Leiria LOS, Cunha LD, Alves-Filho JC, Cunha TM, Arruda E, Miranda CH, Pazin-Filho A, Auxiliadora-Martins M, Borges MC, Fonseca BAL, Bollela VR, Del-Ben CM, Cunha FQ, Zamboni DS, Santana RC, Vilar FC, Louzada-Junior P, Oliveira RDR. Beneficial effects of colchicine for moderate to severe COVID-19: a randomised, double-blinded, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *RMD Open* 2021; **7** [PMID: 33542047 DOI: 10.1136/rmdopen-2020-001455]

46 **Becker MW**, Lunardelli MJM, Tovo CV, Blatt CR. Drug and herb-induced liver injury: A critical review of Brazilian cases with proposals for the improvement of causality assessment using RUCAM. *Ann Hepatol* 2019; **18**: 742-750 [PMID: 31130470 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2019.03.010]

47 **Meier Y**, Cavallaro M, Roos M, Pauli-Magnus C, Folkers G, Meier PJ, Fattinger K. Incidence of drug-induced liver injury in medical inpatients. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2005; **61**: 135-143 [PMID: 15726344 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-004-0888-z]

48 **Quispe-Cañari JF**, Fidel-Rosales E, Manrique D, Mascaró-Zan J, Huamán-Castillón KM, Chamorro-Espinoza SE, Garayar-Peceros H, Ponce-López VL, Sifuentes-Rosales J, Alvarez-Risco A, Yáñez JA, Mejia CR. Self-medication practices during the COVID-19 pandemic among the adult population in Peru: A cross-sectional survey. *Saudi Pharm J* 2021; **29**: 1-11 [PMID: 33519270 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsps.2020.12.001]

49 **National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases**. LiverTox: Clinical and Research Information on Drug-Induced Liver Injury [Internet]. Acetaminophen. [Updated 2016 Jan 28]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, 2016. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK548162/

50 **Andrade RJ**, Chalasani N, Björnsson ES, Suzuki A, Kullak-Ublick GA, Watkins PB, Devarbhavi H, Merz M, Lucena MI, Kaplowitz N, Aithal GP. Drug-induced liver injury. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2019; **5**: 58 [PMID: 31439850 DOI: 10.1038/s41572-019-0105-0]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1154-1166

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1154

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Probiotics in hepatology: An update

Roman Maslennikov, Vladimir Ivashkin, Irina Efremova, Elena Poluektova, Elena Shirokova

ORCID number: Roman Maslennikov 0000-0001-7513-1636; Vladimir Ivashkin 0000-0002-6815-6015; Irina Efremova 0000-0002-4112-0426; Elena Poluektova 0000-0002-9038-3732; Elena Shirokova 0000-0002-6819-0889.

Author contributions: The idea of the manuscript is by Ivashkin V and Maslennikov R; each author wrote specific sections of the manuscript; all authors took part in the editing of the final manuscript and approved it.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Dr. Maslennikov reports a grant from by Biocodex Microbiota Foundation (National Research Grant Russia 2019) outside the submitted work.

Manuscript source: Invited

Roman Maslennikov, Vladimir Ivashkin, Irina Efremova, Elena Poluektova, Elena Shirokova, Department of Internal Medicine, Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Sechenov University, Moscow 119435, Russia

Roman Maslennikov, Vladimir Ivashkin, Elena Poluektova, Scientific Community for Human Microbiome Research, Moscow 119435, Russia

Roman Maslennikov, Department of Internal Medicine, Consultative and Diagnostic Center of the Moscow City Health Department, Moscow 107564, Russia

Corresponding author: Roman Maslennikov, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Sechenov University, Pogodinsckays str. 1-1, Moscow 119435, Russia. mmmm00@yandex.ru

Abstract

The gut–liver axis plays an important role in the pathogenesis of various liver diseases. Probiotics are living bacteria that may be used to correct disorders of this axis. Notable progress has been made in the study of probiotic drugs for the treatment of various liver diseases in the last decade. It has been proven that probiotics are useful for hepatic encephalopathy, but their effects on other symptoms and syndromes of cirrhosis are poorly studied. Their effectiveness in the treatment of metabolic associated fatty liver disease has been shown both in experimental models and in clinical trials, but their effect on the prognosis of this disease has not been described. The beneficial effects of probiotics in alcoholic liver disease have been shown in many experimental studies, but there are very few clinical trials to support these findings. The effects of probiotics on the course of other liver diseases are either poorly studied (such as primary sclerosing cholangitis, chronic hepatitis B and C, and autoimmune hepatitis) or not studied at all (such as primary biliary cholangitis, hepatitis A and E, Wilson's disease, hemochromatosis, storage diseases, and vascular liver diseases). Thus, despite the progress in the study of probiotics in hepatology over the past decade, there are many unexplored and unclear questions surrounding this topic.

Key Words: Gut-liver axis; Pathogenesis; Gut dysbiosis; Gut microbiota; Gut microbiome; Liver disease; Probiotics; Hepatic encephalopathy; Cirrhosis; Metabolic associated fatty liver disease; Alcoholic liver disease; Primary sclerosing cholangitis

manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Russia

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: May 19, 2021
Peer-review started: May 19, 2021
First decision: June 4, 2021
Accepted: August 16, 2021
Article in press: August 16, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Chen F
S-Editor: Yan JP
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Guo X

Core Tip: Probiotics are useful for hepatic encephalopathy, but their effects on other symptoms and syndromes of cirrhosis are poorly studied. Their effectiveness in the treatment of metabolic associated fatty liver disease has been shown both in experimental models and in clinical trials, but their effect on the prognosis of this disease has not been described. The beneficial effects of probiotics in alcoholic liver disease have been shown in many experimental studies, but there are very few clinical trials to support these findings. The effects of probiotics on the course of other liver diseases are either poorly studied or not studied at all.

Citation: Maslennikov R, Ivashkin V, Efremova I, Poluektova E, Shirokova E. Probiotics in hepatology: An update. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1154-1166
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1154.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1154

INTRODUCTION

It has been 10 years since the *World Journal of Gastroenterology* published an article titled "Probiotics in Hepatology"[1]. The following decade was marked by tremendous progress in the study of the gut-liver axis[2,3]. It was shown that the gut microbiota plays an important role in the development of various liver diseases. Probiotics are drugs that target it[4]. The aim of this review is to describe the current data on the use of probiotics for the treatment of liver diseases.

SCIENTIFIC BASIS FOR THE USE OF PROBIOTICS IN LIVER DISEASES

Gut dysbiosis[5-7], small intestinal bacterial overgrowth[8,9] and an increase in the permeability of the intestinal wall[10] leads to bacterial translocation in cirrhosis[11,12]. The latter leads to systemic and liver inflammatory reaction, as well as hemodynamic changes[13], and contributes to the development of complications of cirrhosis, such as ascites, esophageal varices, and hepatorenal syndrome[2,11,12]. In addition, the gut microbiota produces a variety of neuroactive products of protein metabolism, which are normally removed by the liver and abundantly enter the bloodstream, leading to the development of hepatic encephalopathy, in cirrhosis[14].

The gut microbiota plays an important role in the regulation of metabolism in our body. It modifies bile acids (deconjugation, conversion of primary into secondary), which through their receptors [farnesoid X receptor (FXR) and Takeda G-protein receptor 5], have a variety of effects on the metabolism[15,16]. In addition, the gut microbiota forms short-chain fatty acids (SCFA), which through their receptors, also have a complex effect on metabolism and maintain intestinal barrier integrity[17]. Gut dysbiosis leads to disorders of these regulatory functions, which can result in metabolic changes.

Alterations in gut microbiota and increased intestinal permeability were also described in alcoholic liver disease[18,19], metabolic associated fatty liver disease (MAFLD)[20], primary sclerosing cholangitis[21,22], and autoimmune hepatitis[23]. Gut dysbiosis was also reported in primary biliary cholangitis[24], Wilson's disease [25], hepatitis B[26] and hepatitis C[27] recently.

At the same time, probiotics have shown their ability to correct gut dysbiosis[28], increase production of SCFA[29], and reduce the increased permeability of the intestinal barrier[30]. All this constitutes the scientific basis for their use in the treatment of liver diseases.

A simplified diagram of the gut-liver axis is shown in Figure 1.

PROBIOTICS FOR CIRRHOSIS

According to the latest meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials (RCT), the use of probiotics is effective in the treatment of minimal hepatic encephalopathy and prevents the development of overt hepatic encephalopathy. Probiotics are as effective

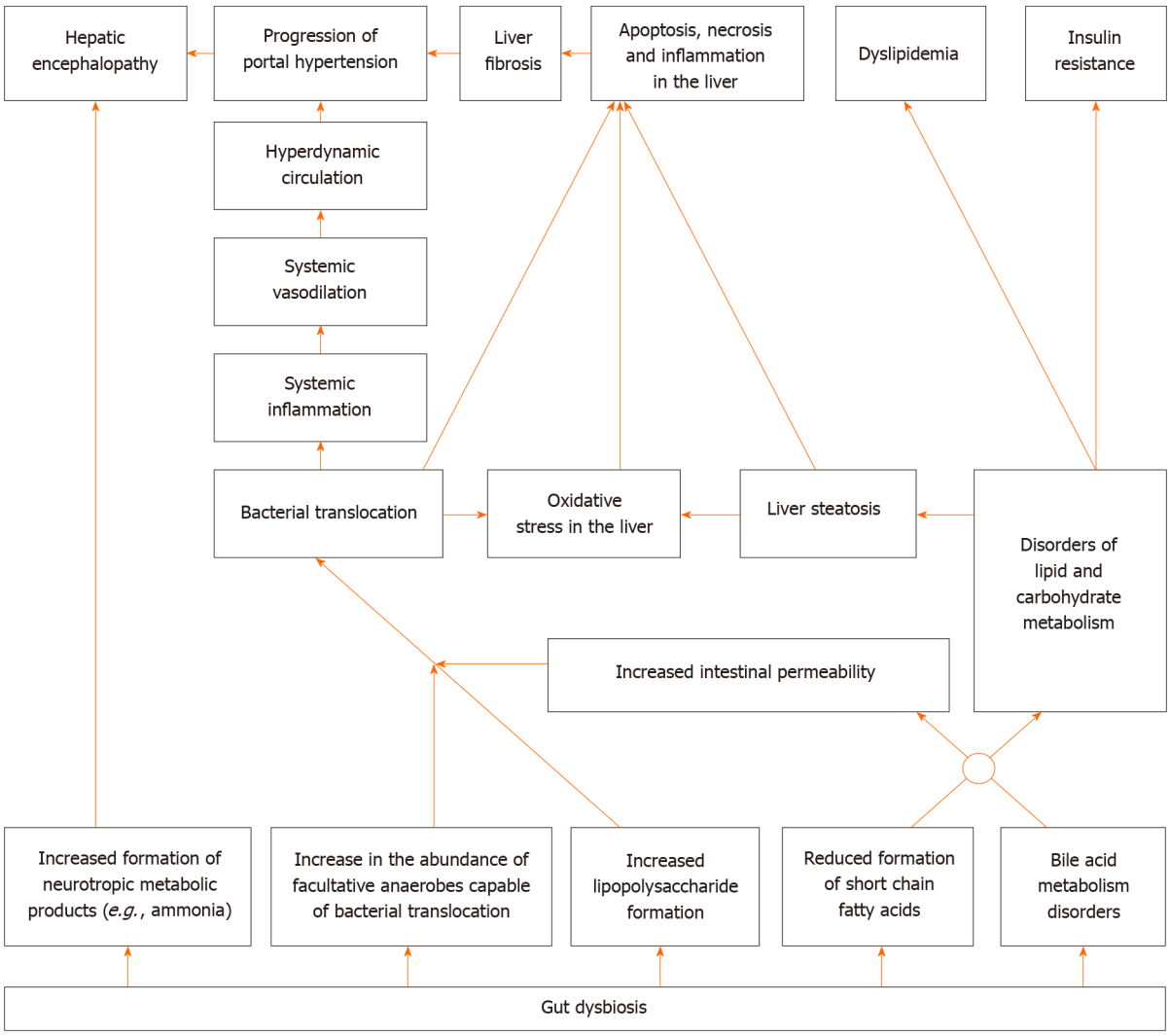


Figure 1 Simplified diagram of the gut-liver axis.

in treating minimal hepatic encephalopathy as rifaximin, lactulose, and L-orinithin-L-aspartate. There was no effect of probiotics on mortality. The addition of lactulose to probiotics did not significantly affect the effectiveness of the treatment. Probiotics lower blood ammonium levels more than lactulose. The addition of lactulose to probiotics paradoxically increases blood ammonium levels. The use of probiotics was not accompanied by the development of significant side effects[31]. Other recent meta-analyses have reached similar conclusions[32,33].

Several RCTs that studied the effect of probiotics on other indicators in cirrhosis been published.

The use of probiotics (*Clostridium butyricum* combined with *Bifidobacterium infantis*) in minimal hepatic encephalopathy led to a decrease in the abundance of harmful Enterococcus and Enterobacteriaceae in the gut microbiome. The blood levels of markers of bacterial translocation [lipopolysaccharide (LPS)], intestinal permeability (D-lactate) and damage to the intestinal epithelium (diamine oxidase) also decreased in these patients[34]. The use of probiotic beverage Yakult 400 also led to a decrease in the abundance of Enterobacteriaceae in the gut microbiome[35]. In another RCT, administration of Lactobacillus GG for 8 wk led to an increase in the proportion of beneficial bacteria (*Lachnospiracea* and *Clostridia XIV*) and a decrease in the proportion of harmful ones (*Enterobacteriaceae*). Moreover, this was accompanied by a decrease in endotoxemia and systemic inflammation[36].

Administration of a probiotic for cirrhosis leads to an improvement in cognitive functions and an increase in gait speed, but does not significantly affect the risk of falling and the hand grip muscular strength[37].

A recent meta-analysis showed that administration of probiotics for cirrhosis does not significantly affect C-reactive protein (CRP) and interleukin (IL)-6 Levels, but leads to a decrease in tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) level[38].

Probiotic *Lactobacillus casei* (*L. casei*) Shirota application for 6 mo did not have a significant effect on neutrophil function, the blood level of LPS and most cytokines, frequency of bacterial DNA detection in blood, intestinal permeability (but it was baseline normal), quality of life, indicators of the complete blood count, or liver and kidney function in non-severe cirrhosis (Child-Pugh scores < 11)[39].

The use of a multi-strain probiotic containing several species of *Bifidobacterium* and *Lactobacillus* for non-severe cirrhosis (Child-Pugh scores < 12) showed similar results [40]. However, the intake of this probiotic led to an increase in the abundance of *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Syntrophococcus sucromutans*, *Bacteroidetes vulgatus*, *Prevotella*, and *Alistipes shahii* in the fecal microbiome. At the same time, the abundance of *Bifidobacterium bifidum*, *Lactobacillus acidophilus* (*L. acidophilus*), and *L. casei* remained unchanged[41].

One of the most studied probiotics for cirrhosis is VSL#3, a mixture containing eight bacterial strains. Its use for 6 mo led to a decrease in the Child-Pugh and MELD scale values, the blood level of IL-1b and IL-6, TNF-α, aldosterone, renin, brain natriuretic peptide, ammonia, and indole, as well as the risk of hospitalization, but did not significantly affect mortality[42]. Its use for 2 mo in patients with large esophageal varices without a history of bleeding improves their response to propanolol[43]. Administration of this probiotic for 28 d did not lead to any significant change in the blood content of the plasminogen activator inhibitor and vascular endothelial growth factor, but led to an increase in the blood levels of large endothelin and nitric oxide and a decrease in the blood levels of thromboxane B2[44]. In addition, the use of this probiotic for 6 wk led to a decrease in the hepatic venous pressure gradient, cardiac output, and heart rate and an increase in systemic vascular resistance and sodium levels in the blood, but did not significantly affect the mean pulmonary artery pressure [45]. However, the last two studies were not controlled. VSL#3 also prevents the development of endothelial dysfunction in experimental models of cirrhosis[46].

Probiotics reduce the risk of development of re-bleeding from esophageal varices after endoscopic treatment in cirrhosis according to a retrospective study. Moreover, the larger the dose of the probiotic, the more pronounced the effect[47].

The probiotic tolerance was excellent and there were no significant side effects in any of the cited studies. However, cases of the development of spontaneous bacterial periotinitis[48] and fatal endocarditis[49] caused by probiotic strains, which was consumed by a patient with cirrhosis for a long time, are described.

Summarizing these data, we can deduce the aforementioned facts. The effectiveness of probiotics in the treatment of minimal hepatic encephalopathy and in the prevention of development of overt hepatic encephalopathy has been confirmed by a series of meta-analyses and is beyond doubt. In addition, most studies have shown an improvement in the profile of the gut microbiota after following administration. At the same time, the influence of probiotics on other characteristics of patients with cirrhosis (intestinal permeability, bacterial translocation, systemic inflammation and others) differs from study to study. Perhaps this is due to the fact that different probiotic strains were used, which had different effects on these indicators. It would be helpful to conduct studies that directly compare probiotics that have shown and not shown an effect on these biomarkers.

The suggested mechanism of action of probiotics in cirrhosis is shown in Figure 2.

PROBIOTICS FOR ALCOHOLIC LIVER DISEASE

The use of probiotics led to a decrease in the level of steatosis, inflammation, oxidative stress, and cell death in the liver, a decrease in the level of biomarkers of systemic inflammation, bacterial translocation, gut dysbiosis, dyslipidemia, damage to the intestinal epithelium, and intestinal permeability in experimental alcoholic liver disease (Table 1)[50-54]. Probiotics restore the alcohol-damaged epithelial barrier in the intestines by epidermal growth factor receptor activation[55]. Functioning of this receptor is also required for the protective effect of probiotics in alcoholic liver disease [55]. Probiotics suppress alcohol-induced apoptosis of hepatocytes[56].

These effects are not just due to the living bacteria themselves, which are part of the probiotics, but also the supernatant of their culture[57].

However, unlike many published experimental results, there are very few clinical trials on the effectiveness of probiotics in alcoholic liver disease. There was no effect of the probiotics (*Lactobacillus subtilis* and *Streptococcus faecium*) on total protein, cholesterol, or IL-1b levels in the blood according to RCT. The probiotics blocked the growth of blood LPS level in alcoholic hepatitis, but only in the cirrhosis subgroup.

Table 1 Effects of probiotics on different disorders in experimental alcoholic liver disease

Disorder	Biomarker changes	Ref.
Liver steatosis	↓ Liver mass, ↓ content of triglycerides, free fatty acids, and cholesterol in the liver tissues	[50-52, 54]
Liver inflammation	↓ Myeloperoxidase activity, expression of tumor necrosis factor alpha gene and neutrophil infiltration in the liver	[54]
Oxidative stress in liver	↓ Level of nitric oxide and malondialdehyde and ↑ level of glutathione and catalase in the liver tissue	[50,51, 54]
Death of hepatocytes	↓ Serum aminotransferases	[50-54]
Systemic inflammation	↓ Serum IL-6 and tumor necrosis factor alpha	[51-53]
Bacterial translocation	↓ Serum lipopolysaccharide	[51-54]
Gut dysbiosis	↑ Firmicutes, Clostridiales and Lactobacillales; ↓ Proteobacteria and Campylobacterales	[51,53]
Damage to the intestinal epithelium	↓ Serum diamine oxidase	[53]
Increased intestinal permeability	↓ Serum D-lactate, ↑ the amount of occludin and other protein of tight junction in the gut epithelium, ↓ intestinal permeability for dyes	[50,52-54]
Dyslipidemia	↓ Serum cholesterol and triglycerides	[50,52-54]

The number of *Escherichia coli* decreased in the feces in the probiotics groups. Changes in the levels of other biomarkers were not compared between the probiotic and placebo groups in this RCT[58].

It was shown that probiotics led to a more pronounced decrease in the activity of transaminases in the blood than standard therapy while significantly having no effects on the level of total bilirubin and GGT in alcoholic steatohepatitis in an earlier RCT [59].

Thus, the encouraging results of the use of probiotics in the treatment of alcoholic liver disease, obtained in experimental models, need to be confirmed by a large number of clinical trials.

PROBIOTICS FOR METABOLIC ASSOCIATED FATTY LIVER DISEASE

The use of probiotics led to a decrease in the level of steatosis, lipogenesis, oxidative stress, and inflammation in the liver, a decrease in the level of biomarkers of insulin resistance, bacterial translocation, gut permeability, and systemic inflammation and a decrease in blood level of lipids and glucose and in expression of the inflammation activator receptor genes (toll-like receptors 4 and 9, and NLRP3) in the liver in experimental MAFLD (Table 2)[60-66]. It also leads to a decrease in the LPS content and an increase in the bile acid content in feces[62,67], increases the content of cholesterol 7α-hydroxylase, which converts cholesterol to bile acids, and transporters of bile acids into bile in the liver[62], enhances the transfer of Nrf2 (transcription factor of antioxidant defense genes) to the nucleus[66], transfers metabolism from carbohydrate utilization to fat utilization[63], increases the acetate and butyrate level in feces[68], improves gut microbiome structure by increasing the abundance of gram-positive bacteria such as Firmicutes and decreasing gram-negative bacteria such as Bacteroidetes, Proteobacteria, and Fusobacteria[69], but does not affect the degree of cholesterol reabsorption[63].

Some of these effects can be achieved using the supernatants of the cultures of live probiotics[70].

Butarate, formed by probiotic strains, enhances the formation of tight junction proteins, as well as activates 5' adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase (inhibits lipogenesis) and increases the lifetime of Nrf2 in cell culture[71].

Consuming yogurt four times or more per week reduces the risk of developing MAFLD[72].

A number of systematic reviews with meta-analyses describing the effect of probiotics on the course of MAFLD were published recently. The meta-analysis, including 105 studies of patients with MAFLD and/or its underlying disorders (obesity and/or diabetes), showed that administration of probiotics leads to a decrease

Table 2 Effects of probiotics on different disorders in experimental metabolic associated fatty liver disease

Disorder	Biomarker changes	Ref.
Liver steatosis	↓ Liver mass, the size and number of lipid droplets, the content of triglycerides, free fatty acids, and cholesterol in the liver tissues	[60-66]
Obesity	↓ Body mass, subcutaneous fat	[61-63, 65,66]
Intensified lipogenesis	↓ Expression of the genes of sterol regulatory element-binding protein 1c (SREBP-1c), 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-CoA reductase, acetyl-CoA carboxylase 1, acetyl-CoA acetyltransferase 2, and fatty acid synthase, ↑ activated 5' adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase (SREBP-1c inhibitor)	[60,62, 65,66]
Reduced lipolysis	↑ Expression of the gene of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha (fatty acid catabolism enhancer) and acyl-CoA oxidase	[60,62]
Bile acid metabolism disorders	↑ Expression of the gene of bile salt export pump, farnesoid X recetor, cholesterol 7a-hydroxylase, sodium taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide, ↓ the content of bile acids in the liver tissues	[62]
Oxidative stress	↓ Total reactive oxygen species, lipid peroxidates, and malondialdehyde and ↑ glutathione, superoxide dismutase, and catalase in the liver tissue	[60,61, 65,66]
Liver inflammation	↓ Expression of the genes of tumor necrosis factor alpha, interleukin 1-beta and 6 and the content of NF-κB in the liver	[60]
Death of hepatocytes	↓ Serum aminotransferases	[60,61, 65]
Insulin resistance	↓ HOMA-IR, insulin, resistin	[63,64]
Systemic inflammation	↓ Serum tumor necrosis factor alpha, interleukin 1-beta and 6	[60,64]
Bacterial translocation	↓ Serum lipopolysaccharide	[64]
Increased gut permeability	↑ Amount of proteins of tight junction in the gut	[64]
Disorders of the metabolism of carbohydrates and lipids	↓ Serum total cholesterol, low density lipoprotein cholesterol, glucose, triglycerides, and free fatty acids, ↑ expression of the gene of low-density lipoprotein receptor	[60-62, 65,66]

in body weight, body mass index, waist circumference, body fat mass, visceral and subcutaneous adipose tissue mass, fasting glucose, glycated hemoglobin, insulin, HOMA-IR, ALT, AST, triglycerides and CRP[73]. A meta-analysis that included 22 studies of patients with MAFLD showed that probiotics lower weight, body mass index, ALT, AST, GGT, ALP, total cholesterol, LDL-C, triglycerides, glucose, insulin, TNF-α, leptin, and liver steatosis and do not significantly affect waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio, fat mass, serum albumin, HDL-C, HOMA-IR, CRP, or IL-6[74]. Other meta-analysis came to broadly similar conclusions[75]. The fourth meta-analysis showed that administration of probiotics for MAFLD resulted in a decrease in liver fibroscan stiffness[76].

Several new RCTs have been published following these meta-analyses.

The use of a multi-strain probiotic for 1 year in patients with metabolic associated steatohepatitis (MASH) resulted in a decrease in the severity of ballooning necrosis and fibrosis, without significantly affecting steatosis and inflammatory infiltration of liver compared to the placebo. Moreover, the level of bilirubin, ALT, ALP, leptin, TNF-α, IL-1b, IL-6, and LPS decreased in the blood, without significant difference in HOMA-IR and body weight[77].

The use of another multi-strain probiotic for 12 wk led to, among other things, a decrease in liver fat content according to MRI data and an increase in the *Bacteroidetes/Firmicutes* ratio[78].

A combined probiotic (Bifidobacterium, Lactobacillus and Enterococcus, 1 g two times per day, 3 mo) in histologically verified MAFLD lowered the serum levels of ALT, AST, GGT, total cholesterol, triglycerides, and HOMA-IR and the value of the histological scale of steatohepatitis activity NAS, and proportion of patients with dysbiosis, but did not significantly affect the serum levels of total bilirubin and high density lipoprotein cholesterol[79].

The use of a probiotic (*L. casei, L. rhamnosus, L. acidophilus, Bifidobacterium longum*, and *B. breve*) for MASH led to a decrease in the serum levels of triglycerides, ALT, AST, GGT, and ALP, but did not significantly affect fasting blood sugar, the serum levels of cholesterol and its fractions, CRP, weight, body mass index, percent body fat, waist circumference, and waist-to-hip ratio[80].

In general, it can be argued that RCTs and their meta-analyses have confirmed most of the results obtained in experimental models of MAFLD. However, we did not find

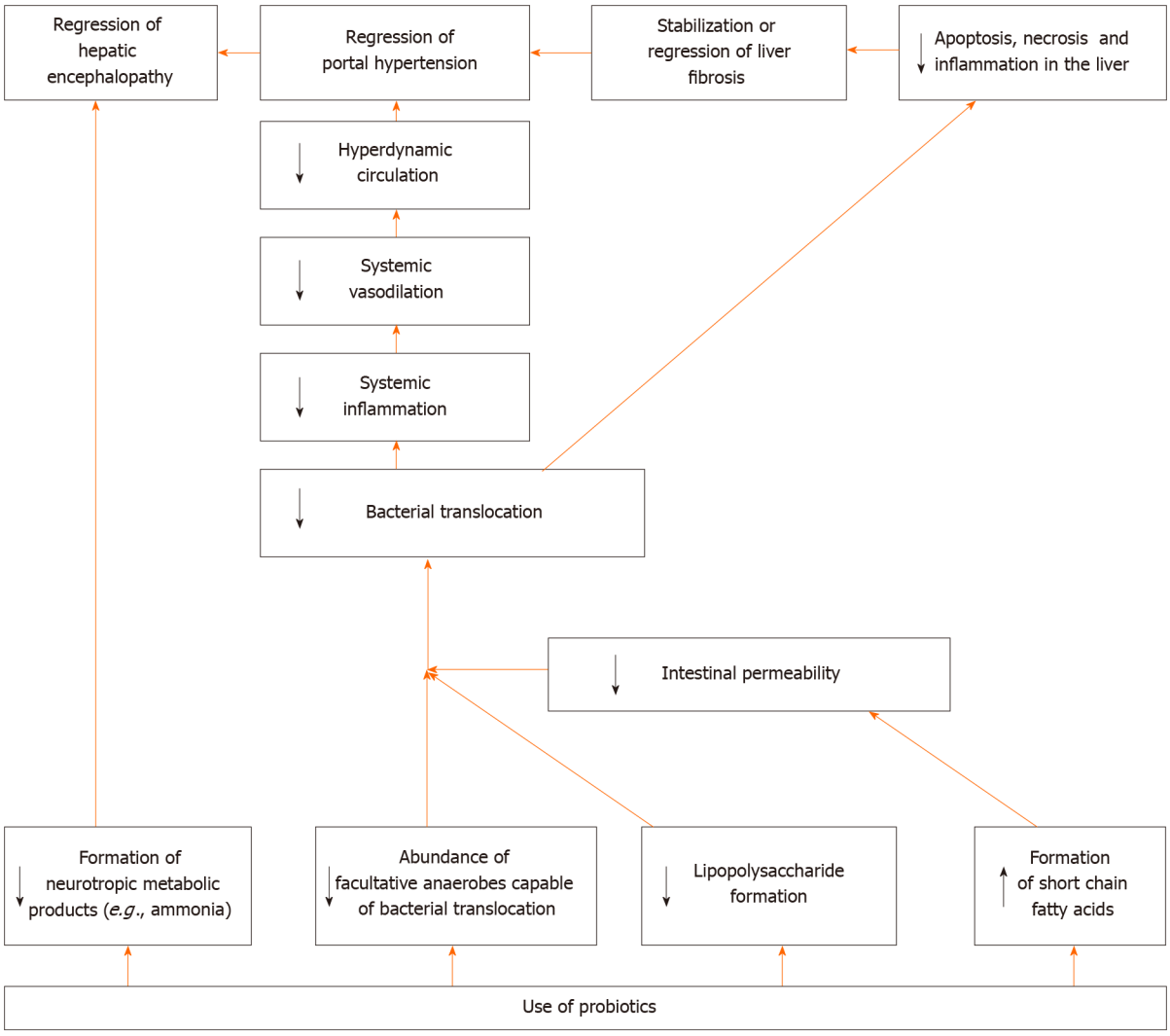


Figure 2 Suggested mechanism of action of probiotics in cirrhosis.

any studies that described the effect of probiotics on prognosis in this disease, which is a challenge for future researchers. Based on the data obtained, the following mechanism of the development of positive effect of probiotics in MAFLD can be assumed (Figure 3).

PROBIOTICS FOR VIRAL HEPATITIS

Unlike for cirrhosis, alcoholic and MAFLD, probiotics have hardly been researched as drugs for viral hepatitis. Perhaps this is due to the fact that, unlike these diseases, effective therapy for viral hepatitis already exists.

Long-term use of a probiotic *Enterococcus fecalis* strain FK-23 in chronic viral hepatitis C led to a decrease in ALT and AST levels, with no significant effect on viral load, blood total protein, urea and hemoglobin levels, and platelet count in an uncontrolled clinical study[81].

Bifidobacterium adolescentis SPM0212 showed antiviral effects against hepatitis B virus in cell culture[82].

PROBIOTICS FOR CHOLESTATIC DISEASES

The use of *L. rhamnosus* GG reduced the biochemical and histological signs of hepatitis, cholestasis, and fibrosis after ligation of the common biliary duct in mice. Perhaps the reason for this is that probiotics increases the activity of FXR in the intestine. This receptor enhances the formation of fibroblast growth factor 15 (FGF15) in response to

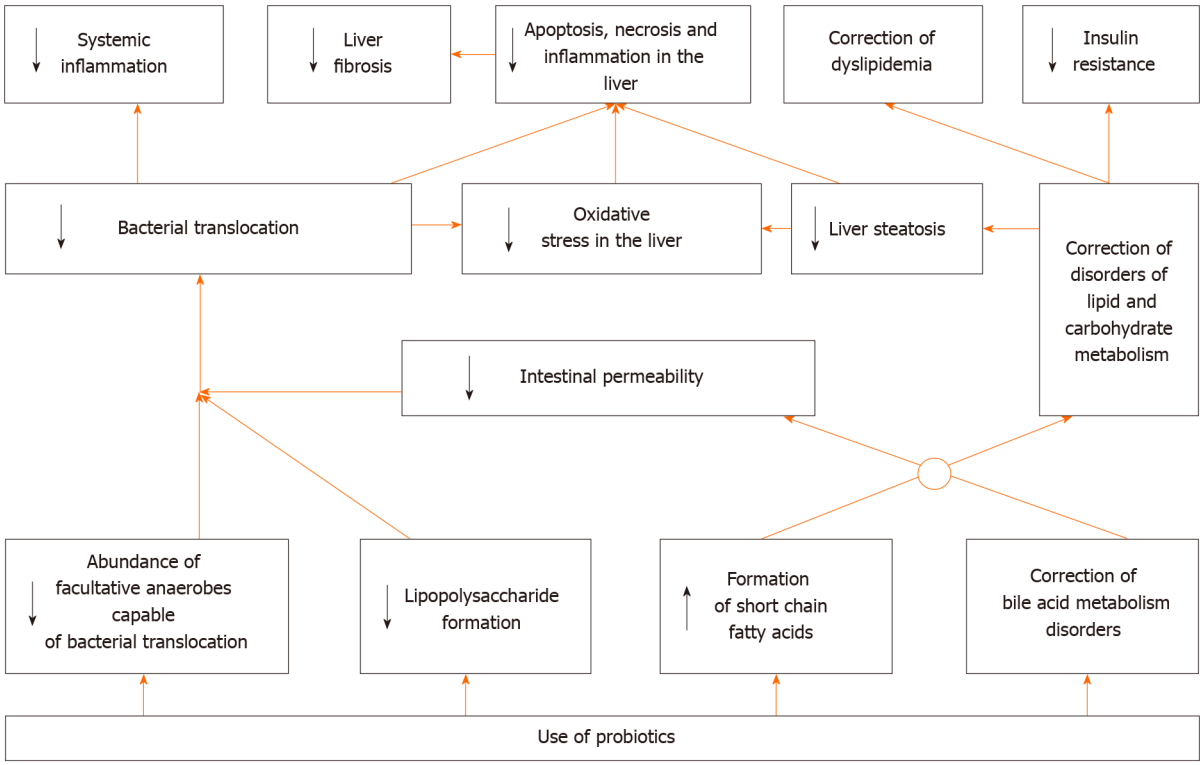


Figure 3 Suggested mechanism of action of probiotics in metabolic associated fatty liver disease.

stimulation with bile acids. FGF15 reduces the production of bile acids in the liver due to negative feedback. With cholestasis, few bile acids enter the intestine, this receptor is not activated enough, the FGF15 content in the blood decreases, and the formation of bile acids in the liver increases. The latter, with cholestasis, have a toxic effect on the liver, which is manifested by its inflammation and fibrosis. The intake of this probiotic led to an increase in the activity of FXR in the intestine and FGF15 in the blood, which close this feedback, protecting the liver from autointoxication with bile acids. This hypothesis is supported by the fact that the use of powerful antagonists of FXR blocks the positive effect of the probiotic in this case and the culture supernatant of this probiotic increases the activity of this receptor in tissue cultures[83].

In addition, *L. rhamnosus* GG increases the content of Firmicutes and Actinobacteria in the gut microbiota, which convert primary bile acids into secondary ones, which are poorly absorbed, and therefore, removed with feces. There is a significant increase in the content of bile acids due to secondary ones, with an absolute and relative decrease in the content of primary bile acids in the feces of such animals. That is, administration of this probiotic for cholestasis leads not only to a decrease in the formation of new bile acids, but also to an increase in the removal of already formed ones with the feces[83].

L. rhamnosus GG has a similar protective effect in another model of cholestatic liver damage, in which the excretion of bile acids is blocked due to the knockout of the gene of their transporter multidrug resistance protein 2[83]. The use of *L. casei rhamnosus* was as effective as neomycin in preventing cholangitis in patients with biliary atresia who underwent Kasai operation[84].

The use of probiotics for primary sclerosing cholangitis combined with inflammatory bowel diseases did not have a significant effect on pruritus, fatigue, serum level of bilirubin, ALP, GGT, AST, ALT, prothrombin, albumin, and bile salts in a very small RCT that included 14 patients[85].

We did not find any other clinical trial of probiotics in chronic cholestatic diseases. Given the very encouraging results of the experimentary study, a large RCT on this topic seems to be very interesting.

PROBIOTICS FOR AUTOIMMUNE HEPATITIS

We found only one study describing the effect of probiotics on liver condition in experimental autoimmune hepatitis. It was shown that they lead to a decrease in the

formation of TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-1b in the liver, as well as in the proportion of Th-17 cells among CD4+ lymphocytes in the liver and spleen[86]. Further experimental studies and clinical trials are needed to clarify the usefulness of probiotics in the treatment of this disease.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the study of probiotics in hepatology is uneven. It has been proven that they are useful in hepatic encephalopathy, but their effect on other symptoms and syndromes of cirrhosis is poorly studied. Their effectiveness in the treatment of MAFLD has been proven both in experimental models and in clinical trials, but their effect on the prognosis of this disease has not been described. The beneficial effects of probiotics in alcoholic liver disease have been well shown in many experimental studies, but there are very few clinical trials to support them. The effect of probiotics on the course of other liver diseases is either poorly studied (primary sclerosing cholangitis, chronic hepatitis B and C, autoimmune hepatitis), or not studied at all (primary biliary cholangitis, hepatitis A and E, Wilson's disease, hemochromatosis, storage diseases, vascular liver diseases, *etc*.).

REFERENCES

1 **Lata J**, Jurankova J, Kopacova M, Vitek P. Probiotics in hepatology. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 2890-2896 [PMID: 21734800 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i24.2890]

2 **Albillos A**, de Gottardi A, Rescigno M. The gut-liver axis in liver disease: Pathophysiological basis for therapy. *J Hepatol* 2020; **72**: 558-577 [PMID: 31622696 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.10.003]

3 **Simbrunner B**, Mandorfer M, Trauner M, Reiberger T. Gut-liver axis signaling in portal hypertension. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 5897-5917 [PMID: 31660028 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i39.5897]

4 **Trush EA**, Poluektova EA, Beniashvilli AG, Shifrin OS, Poluektov YM, Ivashkin VT. The Evolution of Human Probiotics: Challenges and Prospects. *Probiotics Antimicrob Proteins* 2020; **12**: 1291-1299 [PMID: 31907861 DOI: 10.1007/s12602-019-09628-4]

5 **Maslennikov R**, Ivashkin V, Efremova I, Alieva A, Kashuh E, Tsvetaeva E, Poluektova E, Shirokova E, Ivashkin K. Gut dysbiosis is associated with poorer long-term prognosis in cirrhosis. World J Hepatol 2021; 13: 557-570 [PMID: 34131470 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i5.557]

6 **Bajaj JS**, Heuman DM, Hylemon PB, Sanyal AJ, White MB, Monteith P, Noble NA, Unser AB, Daita K, Fisher AR, Sikaroodi M, Gillevet PM. Altered profile of human gut microbiome is associated with cirrhosis and its complications. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 940-947 [PMID: 24374295 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.12.019]

7 **Kakiyama G**, Pandak WM, Gillevet PM, Hylemon PB, Heuman DM, Daita K, Takei H, Muto A, Nittono H, Ridlon JM, White MB, Noble NA, Monteith P, Fuchs M, Thacker LR, Sikaroodi M, Bajaj JS. Modulation of the fecal bile acid profile by gut microbiota in cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 949-955 [PMID: 23333527 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.01.003]

8 **Maslennikov R**, Pavlov C, Ivashkin V. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth in cirrhosis: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2018; **12**: 567-576 [PMID: 30284684 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-018-9898-2]

9 **Maslennikov R**, Pavlov C, Ivashkin V. Is small intestinal bacterial overgrowth a cause of hyperdynamic circulation in cirrhosis? *Turk J Gastroenterol* 2019; **30**: 964-975 [PMID: 31767551 DOI: 10.5152/tjg.2019.18551]

10 **Nicoletti A**, Ponziani FR, Biolato M, Valenza V, Marrone G, Sganga G, Gasbarrini A, Miele L, Grieco A. Intestinal permeability in the pathogenesis of liver damage: From non-alcoholic fatty liver disease to liver transplantation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 4814-4834 [PMID: 31543676 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i33.4814]

11 **Tsiaoussis GI**, Assimakopoulos SF, Tsamandas AC, Triantos CK, Thomopoulos KC. Intestinal barrier dysfunction in cirrhosis: Current concepts in pathophysiology and clinical implications. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 2058-2068 [PMID: 26301048 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i17.2058]

12 **Wiest R**, Lawson M, Geuking M. Pathological bacterial translocation in liver cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 197-209 [PMID: 23993913 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.07.044]

13 **Maslennikov R**, Driga A, Ivashkin K, Ivashkin V. NT-proBNP as a biomarker for hyperdynamic circulation in decompensated cirrhosis. *Gastroenterol Hepatol Bed Bench* 2018; **11**: 325-332 [PMID: 30425812]

14 **Jaffe A**, Lim JK, Jakab SS. Pathophysiology of Hepatic Encephalopathy. *Clin Liver Dis* 2020; **24**: 175-188 [PMID: 32245525 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2020.01.002]

15 **Winston JA**, Theriot CM. Diversification of host bile acids by members of the gut microbiota. *Gut Microbes* 2020; **11**: 158-171 [PMID: 31595814 DOI: 10.1080/19490976.2019.1674124]

16 **Agus A**, Clément K, Sokol H. Gut microbiota-derived metabolites as central regulators in metabolic

disorders. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 1174-1182 [PMID: 33272977 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-323071]
17 **Xiao S**, Jiang S, Qian D, Duan J. Modulation of microbially derived short-chain fatty acids on intestinal homeostasis, metabolism, and neuropsychiatric disorder. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* 2020; **104**: 589-601 [PMID: 31865438 DOI: 10.1007/s00253-019-10312-4]
18 **Bajaj JS**. Alcohol, liver disease and the gut microbiota. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 235-246 [PMID: 30643227 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-018-0099-1]
19 **Zhou Z**, Zhong W. Targeting the gut barrier for the treatment of alcoholic liver disease. *Liver Res* 2017; **1**: 197-207 [PMID: 30034913 DOI: 10.1016/j.livres.2017.12.004]
20 **Safari Z**, Gérard P. The links between the gut microbiome and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2019; **76**: 1541-1558 [PMID: 30683985 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-019-03011-w]
21 **Little R**, Wine E, Kamath BM, Griffiths AM, Ricciuto A. Gut microbiome in primary sclerosing cholangitis: A review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2768-2780 [PMID: 32550753 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i21.2768]
22 **Dhillon AK**, Kummen M, Trøseid M, Åkra S, Liaskou E, Moum B, Vesterhus M, Karlsen TH, Seljeflot I, Hov JR. Circulating markers of gut barrier function associated with disease severity in primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 371-381 [PMID: 30269440 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13979]
23 **Lin R**, Zhou L, Zhang J, Wang B. Abnormal intestinal permeability and microbiota in patients with autoimmune hepatitis. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2015; **8**: 5153-5160 [PMID: 26191211]
24 **Tang R**, Wei Y, Li Y, Chen W, Chen H, Wang Q, Yang F, Miao Q, Xiao X, Zhang H, Lian M, Jiang X, Zhang J, Cao Q, Fan Z, Wu M, Qiu D, Fang JY, Ansari A, Gershwin ME, Ma X. Gut microbial profile is altered in primary biliary cholangitis and partially restored after UDCA therapy. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 534-541 [PMID: 28213609 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2016-313332]
25 **Cai X**, Deng L, Ma X, Guo Y, Feng Z, Liu M, Guan Y, Huang Y, Deng J, Li H, Sang H, Liu F, Yang X. Altered diversity and composition of gut microbiota in Wilson's disease. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 21825 [PMID: 33311635 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-78988-7]
26 **Yun Y**, Chang Y, Kim HN, Ryu S, Kwon MJ, Cho YK, Kim HL, Cheong HS, Joo EJ. Alterations of the Gut Microbiome in Chronic Hepatitis B Virus Infection Associated with Alanine Aminotransferase Level. *J Clin Med* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30717396 DOI: 10.3390/jcm8020173]
27 **Inoue T**, Nakayama J, Moriya K, Kawaratani H, Momoda R, Ito K, Iio E, Nojiri S, Fujiwara K, Yoneda M, Yoshiji H, Tanaka Y. Gut Dysbiosis Associated With Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2018; **67**: 869-877 [PMID: 29718124 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciy205]
28 **Li C**, Niu Z, Zou M, Liu S, Wang M, Gu X, Lu H, Tian H, Jha R. Probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics regulate the intestinal microbiota differentially and restore the relative abundance of specific gut microorganisms. *J Dairy Sci* 2020; **103**: 5816-5829 [PMID: 32418689 DOI: 10.3168/jds.2019-18003]
29 **Markowiak-Kopeć P**, Śliżewska K. The Effect of Probiotics on the Production of Short-Chain Fatty Acids by Human Intestinal Microbiome. *Nutrients* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32316181 DOI: 10.3390/nu12041107]
30 **Liu Q**, Yu Z, Tian F, Zhao J, Zhang H, Zhai Q, Chen W. Surface components and metabolites of probiotics for regulation of intestinal epithelial barrier. *Microb Cell Fact* 2020; **19**: 23 [PMID: 32024520 DOI: 10.1186/s12934-020-1289-4]
31 **Dhiman RK**, Thumburu KK, Verma N, Chopra M, Rathi S, Dutta U, Singal AK, Taneja S, Duseja A, Singh M. Comparative Efficacy of Treatment Options for Minimal Hepatic Encephalopathy: A Systematic Review and Network Meta-Analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 800-812.e25 [PMID: 31476436 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2019.08.047]
32 **Cao Q**, Yu CB, Yang SG, Cao HC, Chen P, Deng M, Li LJ. Effect of probiotic treatment on cirrhotic patients with minimal hepatic encephalopathy: A meta-analysis. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2018; **17**: 9-16 [PMID: 29428113 DOI: 10.1016/j.hbpd.2018.01.005]
33 **Dalal R**, McGee RG, Riordan SM, Webster AC. Probiotics for people with hepatic encephalopathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017; 2: CD008716 [PMID: 28230908 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008716.pub3]
34 **Xia X**, Chen J, Xia J, Wang B, Liu H, Yang L, Wang Y, Ling Z. Role of probiotics in the treatment of minimal hepatic encephalopathy in patients with HBV-induced liver cirrhosis. *J Int Med Res* 2018; **46**: 3596-3604 [PMID: 29806520 DOI: 10.1177/0300060518776064]
35 **Koga H**, Tamiya Y, Mitsuyama K, Ishibashi M, Matsumoto S, Imaoka A, Hara T, Nakano M, Ooeda K, Umezaki Y, Sata M. Probiotics promote rapid-turnover protein production by restoring gut flora in patients with alcoholic liver cirrhosis. *Hepatol Int* 2013; **7**: 767-774 [PMID: 26201812 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-012-9408-x]
36 **Bajaj JS**, Heuman DM, Hylemon PB, Sanyal AJ, Puri P, Sterling RK, Luketic V, Stravitz RT, Siddiqui MS, Fuchs M, Thacker LR, Wade JB, Daita K, Sistrun S, White MB, Noble NA, Thorpe C, Kakiyama G, Pandak WM, Sikaroodi M, Gillevet PM. Randomised clinical trial: Lactobacillus GG modulates gut microbiome, metabolome and endotoxemia in patients with cirrhosis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 1113-1125 [PMID: 24628464 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12695]
37 **Román E**, Nieto JC, Gely C, Vidal S, Pozuelo M, Poca M, Juárez C, Guarner C, Manichanh C, Soriano G. Effect of a Multistrain Probiotic on Cognitive Function and Risk of Falls in Patients With Cirrhosis: A Randomized Trial. *Hepatol Commun* 2019; **3**: 632-645 [PMID: 31061952 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1325]

38 **Kazemi A**, Soltani S, Ghorabi S, Keshtkar A, Daneshzad E, Nasri F, Mazloomi SM. Effect of probiotic and synbiotic supplementation on inflammatory markers in health and disease status: A systematic review and meta-analysis of clinical trials. *Clin Nutr* 2020; **39**: 789-819 [PMID: 31060892 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2019.04.004]

39 **Macnaughtan J**, Figorilli F, García-López E, Lu H, Jones H, Sawhney R, Suzuki K, Fairclough S, Marsden J, Moratella A, Cox IJ, Thomas L, Davies N, Williams R, Mookerjee R, Wright G, Jalan R. A Double-Blind, Randomized Placebo-Controlled Trial of Probiotic *Lactobacillus casei* Shirota in Stable Cirrhotic Patients. *Nutrients* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32498372 DOI: 10.3390/nu12061651]

40 **Horvath A**, Durdevic M, Leber B, di Vora K, Rainer F, Krones E, Douschan P, Spindelboeck W, Durchschein F, Zollner G, Stauber RE, Fickert P, Stiegler P, Stadlbauer V. Changes in the Intestinal Microbiome during a Multispecies Probiotic Intervention in Compensated Cirrhosis. *Nutrients* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32585997 DOI: 10.3390/nu12061874]

41 **Horvath A**, Leber B, Schmerboeck B, Tawdrous M, Zettel G, Hartl A, Madl T, Stryeck S, Fuchs D, Lemesch S, Douschan P, Krones E, Spindelboeck W, Durchschein F, Rainer F, Zollner G, Stauber RE, Fickert P, Stiegler P, Stadlbauer V. Randomised clinical trial: the effects of a multispecies probiotic vs. placebo on innate immune function, bacterial translocation and gut permeability in patients with cirrhosis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **44**: 926-935 [PMID: 27593544 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13788]

42 **Dhiman RK**, Rana B, Agrawal S, Garg A, Chopra M, Thumburu KK, Khattri A, Malhotra S, Duseja A, Chawla YK. Probiotic VSL#3 reduces liver disease severity and hospitalization in patients with cirrhosis: a randomized, controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **147**: 1327-37.e3 [PMID: 25450083 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.08.031]

43 **Gupta N**, Kumar A, Sharma P, Garg V, Sharma BC, Sarin SK. Effects of the adjunctive probiotic VSL#3 on portal haemodynamics in patients with cirrhosis and large varices: a randomized trial. *Liver Int* 2013; **33**: 1148-1157 [PMID: 23601333 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12172]

44 **Marlicz W**, Wunsch E, Mydlowska M, Milkiewicz M, Serwin K, Mularczyk M, Milkiewicz P, Raszeja-Wyszomirska J. The effect of short term treatment with probiotic VSL#3 on various clinical and biochemical parameters in patients with liver cirrhosis. *J Physiol Pharmacol* 2016; **67**: 867-877 [PMID: 28195067]

45 **Rincón D**, Vaquero J, Hernando A, Galindo E, Ripoll C, Puerto M, Salcedo M, Francés R, Matilla A, Catalina MV, Clemente G, Such J, Bañares R. Oral probiotic VSL#3 attenuates the circulatory disturbances of patients with cirrhosis and ascites. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 1504-1512 [PMID: 24661740 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12539]

46 **Rashid SK**, Idris-Khodja N, Auger C, Alhosin M, Boehm N, Oswald-Mammosser M, Schini-Kerth VB. Probiotics (VSL#3) prevent endothelial dysfunction in rats with portal hypertension: role of the angiotensin system. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e97458 [PMID: 24832090 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0097458]

47 **Zhang Q**, Gao F, Yang X, Hu Y, Liu Y, Hou Y, Li Y, Zhu B, Niu S, Huang Y, Wang X. Protective Effect of Probiotics against Esophagogastric Variceal Rebleeding in Patients with Liver Cirrhosis after Endoscopic Therapy. *Med Sci Monit* 2020; **26**: e924040 [PMID: 32769964 DOI: 10.12659/MSM.924040]

48 **Ramachandran L**, Dontaraju VS, Patel K. Lactobacillus-Associated Spontaneous Bacterial Peritonitis in a Liver Cirrhosis Patient on Probiotics. *Cureus* 2020; **12**: e11896 [PMID: 33415048 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.11896]

49 **Naqvi SSB**, Nagendra V, Hofmeyr A. Probiotic related *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* endocarditis in a patient with liver cirrhosis. *IDCases* 2018; **13**: e00439 [PMID: 30155406 DOI: 10.1016/j.idcr.2018.e00439]

50 **Tsai YS**, Lin SW, Chen YL, Chen CC. Effect of probiotics *Lactobacillus paracasei* GKS6, *L. plantarum* GKM3, and *L. rhamnosus* GKLC1 on alleviating alcohol-induced alcoholic liver disease in a mouse model. *Nutr Res Pract* 2020; **14**: 299-308 [PMID: 32765811 DOI: 10.4162/nrp.2020.14.4.299]

51 **Gu Z**, Wu Y, Wang Y, Sun H, You Y, Piao C, Liu J. *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* Granules Dose-Dependently Balance Intestinal Microbiome Disorders and Ameliorate Chronic Alcohol-Induced Liver Injury. *J Med Food* 2020; **23**: 114-124 [PMID: 31747353 DOI: 10.1089/jmf.2018.4357]

52 **Zheng TX**, Pu SL, Tan P, Du YC, Qian BL, Chen H, Fu WG, Huang MZ. Liver Metabolomics Reveals the Effect of *Lactobacillus reuteri* on Alcoholic Liver Disease. *Front Physiol* 2020; **11**: 595382 [PMID: 33281626 DOI: 10.3389/fphys.2020.595382]

53 **Huang H**, Lin Z, Zeng Y, Lin X, Zhang Y. Probiotic and glutamine treatments attenuate alcoholic liver disease in a rat model. *Exp Ther Med* 2019; **18**: 4733-4739 [PMID: 31777560 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2019.8123]

54 **Kim BK**, Lee IO, Tan PL, Eor JY, Hwang JK, Kim SH. Protective Effect of *Lactobacillus fermentum* LA12 in an Alcohol-Induced Rat Model of Alcoholic Steatohepatitis. *Korean J Food Sci Anim Resour* 2017; **37**: 931-939 [PMID: 29725216 DOI: 10.5851/kosfa.2017.37.6.931]

55 **Shukla PK**, Meena AS, Manda B, Gomes-Solecki M, Dietrich P, Dragatsis I, Rao R. Lactobacillus plantarum prevents and mitigates alcohol-induced disruption of colonic epithelial tight junctions, endotoxemia, and liver damage by an EGF receptor-dependent mechanism. *FASEB J* 2018; fj201800351R [PMID: 29912589 DOI: 10.1096/fj.201800351R]

56 **Zhu J**, Ren T, Zhou M, Cheng M. The combination of blueberry juice and probiotics reduces apoptosis of alcoholic fatty liver of mice by affecting SIRT1 pathway. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2016; **10**:

1649-1661 [PMID: 27274198 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S102883]
57 **Wang Y**, Liu Y, Sidhu A, Ma Z, McClain C, Feng W. Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG culture supernatant ameliorates acute alcohol-induced intestinal permeability and liver injury. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **303**: G32-G41 [PMID: 22538402 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00024.2012]
58 **Han SH**, Suk KT, Kim DJ, Kim MY, Baik SK, Kim YD, Cheon GJ, Choi DH, Ham YL, Shin DH, Kim EJ. Effects of probiotics (cultured Lactobacillus subtilis/Streptococcus faecium) in the treatment of alcoholic hepatitis: randomized-controlled multicenter study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **27**: 1300-1306 [PMID: 26302024 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000458]
59 **Kirpich IA**, Solovieva NV, Leikhter SN, Shidakova NA, Lebedeva OV, Sidorov PI, Bazhukova TA, Soloviev AG, Barve SS, McClain CJ, Cave M. Probiotics restore bowel flora and improve liver enzymes in human alcohol-induced liver injury: a pilot study. *Alcohol* 2008; **42**: 675-682 [PMID: 19038698 DOI: 10.1016/j.alcohol.2008.08.006]
60 **Yan Y**, Liu C, Zhao S, Wang X, Wang J, Zhang H, Wang Y, Zhao G. Probiotic Bifidobacterium lactis V9 attenuates hepatic steatosis and inflammation in rats with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *AMB Express* 2020; **10**: 101 [PMID: 32472368 DOI: 10.1186/s13568-020-01038-y]
61 **Azarang A**, Farshad O, Ommati MM, Jamshidzadeh A, Heydari R, Abootalebi SN, Gholami A. Protective Role of Probiotic Supplements in Hepatic Steatosis: A Rat Model Study. *Biomed Res Int* 2020; **2020**: 5487659 [PMID: 33299871 DOI: 10.1155/2020/5487659]
62 **Chen M**, Guo WL, Li QY, Xu JX, Cao YJ, Liu B, Yu XD, Rao PF, Ni L, Lv XC. The protective mechanism of Lactobacillus plantarum FZU3013 against non-alcoholic fatty liver associated with hyperlipidemia in mice fed a high-fat diet. *Food Funct* 2020; **11**: 3316-3331 [PMID: 32226996 DOI: 10.1039/c9fo03003d]
63 **Naudin CR**, Maner-Smith K, Owens JA, Wynn GM, Robinson BS, Matthews JD, Reedy AR, Luo L, Wolfarth AA, Darby TM, Ortlund EA, Jones RM. Lactococcus lactis Subspecies cremoris Elicits Protection Against Metabolic Changes Induced by a Western-Style Diet. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 639-651.e5 [PMID: 32169430 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.03.010]
64 **Zhao Z**, Chen L, Zhao Y, Wang C, Duan C, Yang G, Niu C, Li S. Lactobacillus plantarum NA136 ameliorates nonalcoholic fatty liver disease by modulating gut microbiota, improving intestinal barrier integrity, and attenuating inflammation. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* 2020; **104**: 5273-5282 [PMID: 32335723 DOI: 10.1007/s00253-020-10633-9]
65 **Park EJ**, Lee YS, Kim SM, Park GS, Lee YH, Jeong DY, Kang J, Lee HJ. Beneficial Effects of *Lactobacillus plantarum* Strains on Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease in High Fat/High Fructose Diet-Fed Rats. *Nutrients* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32093158 DOI: 10.3390/nu12020542]
66 **Zhao Z**, Wang C, Zhang L, Zhao Y, Duan C, Zhang X, Gao L, Li S. Lactobacillus plantarum NA136 improves the non-alcoholic fatty liver disease by modulating the AMPK/Nrf2 pathway. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* 2019; **103**: 5843-5850 [PMID: 31115630 DOI: 10.1007/s00253-019-09703-4]
67 **Lee NY**, Joung HC, Kim BK, Kim BY, Park TS, Suk KT. *Lactobacillus lactis* CKDB001 ameliorate progression of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease through of gut microbiome: addendum. *Gut Microbes* 2020; **12**: 1829449 [PMID: 33131411 DOI: 10.1080/19490976.2020.1829449]
68 **Li H**, Liu F, Lu J, Shi J, Guan J, Yan F, Li B, Huo G. Probiotic Mixture of *Lactobacillus plantarum* Strains Improves Lipid Metabolism and Gut Microbiota Structure in High Fat Diet-Fed Mice. *Front Microbiol* 2020; **11**: 512 [PMID: 32273874 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2020.00512]
69 **Wang W**, Li Q, Chai W, Sun C, Zhang T, Zhao C, Yuan Y, Wang X, Liu H, Ye H. *Lactobacillus paracasei* Jlus66 extenuate oxidative stress and inflammation *via* regulation of intestinal flora in rats with non alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Food Sci Nutr* 2019; **7**: 2636-2646 [PMID: 31428351 DOI: 10.1002/fsn3.1118]
70 **Liu Q**, Liu Y, Li F, Gu Z, Liu M, Shao T, Zhang L, Zhou G, Pan C, He L, Cai J, Zhang X, Barve S, McClain CJ, Chen Y, Feng W. Probiotic culture supernatant improves metabolic function through FGF21-adiponectin pathway in mice. *J Nutr Biochem* 2020; **75**: 108256 [PMID: 31760308 DOI: 10.1016/j.jnutbio.2019.108256]
71 **Endo H**, Niioka M, Kobayashi N, Tanaka M, Watanabe T. Butyrate-producing probiotics reduce nonalcoholic fatty liver disease progression in rats: new insight into the probiotics for the gut-liver axis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63388 [PMID: 23696823 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063388]
72 **Zhang S**, Fu J, Zhang Q, Liu L, Lu M, Meng G, Yao Z, Wu H, Xia Y, Bao X, Gu Y, Sun S, Wang X, Zhou M, Jia Q, Song K, Wu Y, Xiang H, Niu K. Association between habitual yogurt consumption and newly diagnosed non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Eur J Clin Nutr* 2020; **74**: 491-499 [PMID: 31477797 DOI: 10.1038/s41430-019-0497-7]
73 **Koutnikova H**, Genser B, Monteiro-Sepulveda M, Faurie JM, Rizkalla S, Schrezenmeir J, Clément K. Impact of bacterial probiotics on obesity, diabetes and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease related variables: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *BMJ Open* 2019; **9**: e017995 [PMID: 30928918 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2017-017995]
74 **Tang Y**, Huang J, Zhang WY, Qin S, Yang YX, Ren H, Yang QB, Hu H. Effects of probiotics on nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2019; **12**: 1756284819878046 [PMID: 31598135 DOI: 10.1177/1756284819878046]
75 **Sharpton SR**, Maraj B, Harding-Theobald E, Vittinghoff E, Terrault NA. Gut microbiome-targeted therapies in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review, meta-analysis, and meta-regression. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2019; **110**: 139-149 [PMID: 31124558 DOI: 10.1093/ajcn/nqz042]
76 **Khan MY**, Mihali AB, Rawala MS, Aslam A, Siddiqui WJ. The promising role of probiotic and synbiotic therapy in aminotransferase levels and inflammatory markers in patients with nonalcoholic

fatty liver disease - a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **31**: 703-715 [PMID: 31009401 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001371]

77 **Duseja A**, Acharya SK, Mehta M, Chhabra S; Shalimar, Rana S, Das A, Dattagupta S, Dhiman RK, Chawla YK. High potency multistrain probiotic improves liver histology in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD): a randomised, double-blind, proof of concept study. *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2019; **6**: e000315 [PMID: 31423319 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2019-000315]

78 **Ahn SB**, Jun DW, Kang BK, Lim JH, Lim S, Chung MJ. Randomized, Double-blind, Placebo-controlled Study of a Multispecies Probiotic Mixture in Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 5688 [PMID: 30952918 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-42059-3]

79 **Cai GS**, Su H, Zhang J. Protective effect of probiotics in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e21464 [PMID: 32769877 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000021464]

80 **Behrouz V**, Aryaeian N, Zahedi MJ, Jazayeri S. Effects of probiotic and prebiotic supplementation on metabolic parameters, liver aminotransferases, and systemic inflammation in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A randomized clinical trial. *J Food Sci* 2020; **85**: 3611-3617 [PMID: 32885440 DOI: 10.1111/1750-3841.15367]

81 **Oo KM**, Lwin AA, Kyaw YY, Tun WM, Fukada K, Goshima A, Shimada T, Okada S. Safety and long-term effect of the probiotic FK-23 in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. *Biosci Microbiota Food Health* 2016; **35**: 123-128 [PMID: 27508113 DOI: 10.12938/bmfh.2015-024]

82 **Lee DK**, Kang JY, Shin HS, Park IH, Ha NJ. Antiviral activity of Bifidobacterium adolescentis SPM0212 against Hepatitis B virus. *Arch Pharm Res* 2013; **36**: 1525-1532 [PMID: 23657805 DOI: 10.1007/s12272-013-0141-3]

83 **Liu Y**, Chen K, Li F, Gu Z, Liu Q, He L, Shao T, Song Q, Zhu F, Zhang L, Jiang M, Zhou Y, Barve S, Zhang X, McClain CJ, Feng W. Probiotic Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG Prevents Liver Fibrosis Through Inhibiting Hepatic Bile Acid Synthesis and Enhancing Bile Acid Excretion in Mice. *Hepatology* 2020; **71**: 2050-2066 [PMID: 31571251 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30975]

84 **Lien TH**, Bu LN, Wu JF, Chen HL, Chen AC, Lai MW, Shih HH, Lee IH, Hsu HY, Ni YH, Chang MH. Use of Lactobacillus casei rhamnosus to Prevent Cholangitis in Biliary Atresia After Kasai Operation. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2015; **60**: 654-658 [PMID: 25534776 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000676]

85 **Vleggaar FP**, Monkelbaan JF, van Erpecum KJ. Probiotics in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a randomized placebo-controlled crossover pilot study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **20**: 688-692 [PMID: 18679073 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3282f5197e]

86 **Zhang H**, Liu M, Liu X, Zhong W, Li Y, Ran Y, Guo L, Chen X, Zhao J, Wang B, Zhou L. *Bifidobacterium animalis* ssp. Lactis 420 Mitigates Autoimmune Hepatitis Through Regulating Intestinal Barrier and Liver Immune Cells. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 569104 [PMID: 33123141 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.569104]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1167-1180

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1167

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Clinical and Translational Research

Development of a risk score to guide targeted hepatitis C testing among human immunodeficiency virus patients in Cambodia

Anja De Weggheleire, Jozefien Buyze, Sokkab An, Sopheak Thai, Johan van Griensven, Sven Francque, Lutgarde Lynen

ORCID number: Anja De Weggheleire 0000-0001-9377-4766; Jozefien Buyze 0000-0001-6780-380X; Sokkab An 0000-0001-8546-3597; Sopheak Thai 0000-0002-3165-1952; Johan van Griensven 0000-0001-6581-2964; Sven Francque 0000-0002-7527-4714; Lutgarde Lynen 0000-0001-7183-4895.

Author contributions: De Weggheleire A designed and coordinated the study, and drafted the initial manuscript; An S and Thai S participated in the acquisition and review of the data; Buyze J reviewed the statistical analysis plan and data analysis; van Griensven J, Francque S and Lynen L reviewed the study design and analysis plan; Lynen L was the guarantor of the study; all authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of the Institute of Tropical Medicine Antwerp (Approval No. IRB 925/14), the Ethics Committee of the Antwerp University Hospital (Belgium) (Approval No. 14/39/405), and the Cambodian National Ethics Committee for Health Research (Approval No.

Anja De Weggheleire, Jozefien Buyze, Johan van Griensven, Lutgarde Lynen, Department of Clinical Sciences, Institute of Tropical Medicine Antwerp, Antwerp 2000, Belgium

Sokkab An, Sopheak Thai, Infectious Diseases Department, Sihanouk Hospital Center of Hope, Phnom Penh 12101, Cambodia

Sven Francque, Department of Gastroenterology Hepatology, Antwerp University Hospital, Antwerp 2000, Belgium

Sven Francque, Laboratory of Experimental Medicine and Paediatrics, University of Antwerp, Antwerp 2000, Belgium

Corresponding author: Anja De Weggheleire, MD, MSc, Doctor, Senior Researcher, Department of Clinical Sciences, Institute of Tropical Medicine Antwerp, Nationalestraat 155, Antwerp 2000, Belgium. adeweggheleire@itg.be

Abstract

BACKGROUND

The World Health Organization recommends testing all human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) patients for hepatitis C virus (HCV). In resource-constrained contexts with low-to-intermediate HCV prevalence among HIV patients, as in Cambodia, targeted testing is, in the short-term, potentially more feasible and cost-effective.

AIM

To develop a clinical prediction score (CPS) to risk-stratify HIV patients for HCV coinfection (HCV RNA detected), and derive a decision rule to guide prioritization of HCV testing in settings where 'testing all' is not feasible or unaffordable in the short term.

METHODS

We used data of a cross-sectional HCV diagnostic study in the HIV cohort of Sihanouk Hospital Center of Hope in Phnom Penh. Key populations were very rare in this cohort. Score development relied on the Spiegelhalter and Knill-Jones method. Predictors with an adjusted likelihood ratio ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67 were retained, transformed to natural logarithms, and rounded to integers as score items. CPS performance was evaluated by the area-under-the-ROC curve (AUROC) with 95%

0309).

Clinical trial registration statement: This study was registered in ClinicalTrials.gov, identifier NCT02361541.

Informed consent statement: Written informed consent was provided for all participants.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest to declare.

Data sharing statement: The data underlying this study are available upon request because the applied informed consent did not inform participants about the possibility of non-restricted data sharing. Data are available from the corresponding author (adeweggheleire@itg.be) for researchers who meet the criteria for access to confidential anonymized data.

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Belgium

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

confidence intervals (CI), and diagnostic accuracy at the different cut-offs. For the decision rule, HCV coinfection probability ≥1% was agreed as test-threshold.

RESULTS

Among the 3045 enrolled HIV patients, 106 had an HCV coinfection. Of the 11 candidate predictors (from history-taking, laboratory testing), seven had an adjusted likelihood ratio ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67: ≥ 50 years (+1 point), diabetes mellitus (+1), partner/household member with liver disease (+1), generalized pruritus (+1), platelets < 200 × 10^9/L (+1), aspartate transaminase (AST) < 30 IU/L (-1), AST-to-platelet ratio index (APRI) ≥ 0.45 (+1), and APRI < 0.45 (-1). The AUROC was 0.84 (95%CI: 0.80-0.89), indicating good discrimination of HCV/HIV coinfection and HIV mono-infection. The CPS result ≥0 best fits the test-threshold (negative predictive value: 99.2%, 95%CI: 98.8-99.6). Applying this threshold, 30% (n = 926) would be tested. Sixteen coinfections (15%) would have been missed, none with advanced fibrosis.

CONCLUSION

The CPS performed well in the derivation cohort, and bears potential for other contexts of low-to-intermediate prevalence and little onward risk of transmission (*i.e.* cohorts without major risk factors as injecting drug use, men having sex with men), and where available resources do not allow to test all HIV patients as recommended by WHO. However, the score requires external validation in other patient cohorts before any wider use can be considered.

Key Words: Hepatitis C virus; Hepatitis C/human immunodeficiency virus coinfection; Clinical prediction rule; Targeted screening; Cambodia; Development prediction model

Core Tip: We developed and internally validated a clinical prediction score to stratify human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) patients for risk of hepatitis C (HCV) coinfection, and derived a decision rule to guide prioritization of HCV testing. The score incorporates readily available clinical and laboratory predictors, and had, in the Cambodian derivation cohort, a good ability to discriminate between HCV/HIV coinfection and HIV mono-infection. Key populations were rare in the Cambodian HIV cohort.

Citation: De Weggheleire A, Buyze J, An S, Thai S, van Griensven J, Francque S, Lynen L. Development of a risk score to guide targeted hepatitis C testing among human immunodeficiency virus patients in Cambodia. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1167-1180
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1167.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1167

INTRODUCTION

Interferon-free antiviral treatment has replaced the combination of pegylated interferon and ribavirin as standard-of-care for chronic hepatitis C[1]. These new treatments are highly efficacious, short in duration, well-tolerated and hold, as becoming increasingly affordable, real promise of worldwide scalability[2]. On the other hand, less than 5% of people living with hepatitis C virus (HCV) in low and middle income countries (LMIC) were aware of their status end of 2016[3]. To boost identification of HCV infected individuals, particularly in LMIC, the World Health Organization (WHO) launched a first set of HCV testing guidelines in 2017[4]. Routine testing throughout the whole population is recommended where HCV seroprevalence is of intermediate (≥ 2%) or high (≥ 5%) level, and targeted testing in all other settings. Clinical suspects, people who inject drugs (PWID), men having sex with men (MSM), people in prisons, birth cohorts, and people living with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (PLWH) are the main targets for this latter.

Received: April 25, 2021
Peer-review started: April 25, 2021
First decision: June 4, 2021
Revised: June 27, 2021
Accepted: August 24, 2021
Article in press: August 24, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Kishida Y, Sachu A, Voulgaris T
S-Editor: Gong ZM
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Guo X

Though feasibility in resource-limited settings was considered when formulating the WHO recommendations, it is unlikely that many LMIC will be able to implement them at full-scale in the short-term, due to operational (human resources, diagnostic capacity, stigma), but also financial constraints[5]. There are no large global financing initiatives in the pipeline for viral hepatitis at the short-to-medium term, and countries are in the meantime left to find their own financial solutions[6]. This seriously impacts the scale of what can be implemented.

In this regard, and based on the prevalence we registered in Cambodia, and even lower rates of HCV/HIV coinfection found in several HIV cohorts in Sub-Saharan Africa[7-10], we anticipate that some LMIC with large, primarily heterosexually-infected, HIV cohorts (and little forward transmission risk) may opt not to offer HCV testing to all HIV patients, at least in the short-to-medium term. Applying 'screen all' strategies in such cohorts is resource demanding and yields low positivity. To preserve resources, countries may rather choose to prioritize testing, in first instance, only for those at higher risk.

With the possibility of very successful treatment and growing availability of cheap WHO prequalified screening tests[11], the threshold to offer testing should, however, be low enough, to avoid maximally that HCV/HIV coinfected are denied treatment because of restrictive testing strategies. The critical question is thus whether it is possible to identify accurately, and in a simple manner, a subgroup of HIV patients in which the 'probability of being HCV infected and having to be treated in the short-term' is so low that it would be reasonable not to offer them HCV testing or postpone it until more resources become available. Or phrased differently, to preserve the limited budget for testing and treating those with a higher risk of being HCV co-infected.

Easy-to-use tools to guide such targeted HCV testing in HIV populations, other than prioritization of key populations or older birth cohorts, do not exist. Though many LMIC have some birth cohort effect in their epidemics, it is generally less neat than in North-America and Europe, as drivers of generalized HCV exposure were removed at much later date or only partially[12-14]. Birth-cohort testing might thus be too restrictive. In our previous study in Cambodia, 55% of HCV/HIV coinfections would have been missed if only PLWH older than 50 years would have been tested[7].

As for other pathologies and conditions[15-18], diagnostic prediction models combining several readily available elements from patient history, physical examination, and lab tests may more accurately risk- stratify HIV patients and support clinical decisions regarding the need to prioritize HCV testing.

Using data from our HCV diagnostic study in Cambodia, we developed and internally validated a clinical prediction score (CPS) to risk-stratify HIV patients for HCV coinfection, and derived a decision rule to guide prioritization of HCV testing. In addition to the full CPS, we also explored alternative risk scores, one with only socio-demographic/clinical predictors and another primarily lab-based.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Source of data, study site and participants

For developing the score, we used data of a cross-sectional HCV diagnostic study conducted in the HIV cohort of Sihanouk Hospital Center of Hope (SHCH) in Phnom Penh, Cambodia (clinical trials.gov NCT02361541). It is one of the largest primary care HIV cohorts in Cambodia with, as most other Cambodian HIV cohorts, primarily heterosexually-infected HIV patients. Key populations (history/current injecting drug use: 0.2%, history/currently engaged in sex work: 0.2%, self-identified MSM: 0.6%) were rare. Data were prospectively collected following a pre-specified protocol for HCV diagnostic work-up and predictors. The information on predictors (by history-taking, physical examination and laboratory tests) was collected without knowledge of the results of HCV diagnostic testing. Details of the study and diagnostic results have been published previously[7].

In brief, all consecutive adult HIV patients without history of HCV treatment and visiting the HIV clinic of SHCH between November 2014 and May 2016 underwent, if consenting, a structured health and HCV risk factor screening immediately followed by lab testing (hepatitis C, hepatitis B, CD4, platelets and liver tests (transaminases). HCV testing was done according to the classic two-test algorithm; initial testing for HCV antibodies followed by confirmatory HCV-RNA testing in case of HCV antibody positive or borderline results. In total, 3045 (out of 3562 in the cohort) adult HIV patients were enrolled, of whom 106 had a current HCV infection (*i.e.* HCV-RNA

detected).

Approval for this study was provided by the Institutional Review Board of the Institute of Tropical Medicine Antwerp, the Ethics Committee of the Antwerp University Hospital (Belgium), and the Cambodian National Ethics Committee for Health Research. All enrolled participants provided written informed consent. The statistical methods and analysis of this study were reviewed by Jozefien Buyze from the Institute of Tropical Medicine, Antwerp, Belgium.

Development of the clinical prediction score

Outcome of interest: The outcome event was having a current HCV infection, which was defined as having a detectable HCV-RNA viral load as measured by the quantitative COBAS® AmpliPrep/COBAS® TaqMan® HCV PCR Test, v2.0, on the COBAS® TaqMan® 48 Analyzer (Roche Diagnostics Ltd, Mannheim, Germany). The lower limit of detection was 15 IU/mL. Further in this paper, we refer to 'current HCV infection' as 'HCV infection or coinfection'.

Candidate predictor variables: The clinical variables we explored as predictors were selected based on the distribution of the variables in our study data[7], reported associations in the literature and clinical plausibility, with preference for readily available and objective parameters. Potential predictors considered were: age (years), gender (female/male), platelet count ($\times 10^9$ cells/L), aspartate aminotransferase (AST, IU/L), alanine aminotransferase (ALT, IU/L), AST-to-platelet ratio index (APRI), having diabetes mellitus (yes/no), any of the following symptoms: fatigue, myalgia/arthralgia, anorexia/weight loss (yes/no), presenting generalized pruritus without obvious skin lesions (yes/no), having a household member and/or partner with liver disease (yes/no), and poor CD4 recovery on antiretroviral treatment (ART), *i.e.* CD4 below 200 after 3 years or more on ART (yes/no). Known major risk factors for HCV infection (history/current injecting drug use, sex work, being homosexual) were not considered as they were very uncommon in this cohort[7]. As we were mainly interested in the joint effects of the different variables to predict the probability of HCV infection and less to get an idea of the individual contribution of each variable, we did not exclude potentially correlated variables as long as they validly contributed to improving the predictive ability of the model[19,20].

Derivation cohort and sample size: We did not calculate a formal sample size for this CPS development study. We included the data of all 3,045 adult HIV patients enrolled in the cross-sectional study in the data set for derivation of the score to allow an adequate assessment of the potential predictors following the rule of thumb to have 10 outcome events per explored predictor variable[21].

Score development: We used the Spiegelhalter and Knill-Jones method adapted by Berkley *et al*[22] and Stéphan *et al*[23] to develop the score. The continuous candidate predictors (age, platelets, AST, ALT, APRI) were dichotomized guided by Receiver Operating Characteristic (ROC) curves at the point with the highest sum of sensitivity and specificity, and rounded to values that are easy to use in clinical practice. Crude likelihood ratios (LHR) were calculated for all candidate predictors. Candidate predictors with a crude LHR ≥ 2 or ≤ 0.5 were, in a next step, used in a multivariable logistic regression model to calculate adjusted LHRs. The predictors with an adjusted LHR ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67 were selected for the CPS. The adjusted LHRs were transformed to their natural logarithm, and rounded to the nearest integer to calculate the score (relative weight) of each predictor. By summing the scores of all risk factors presented by a patient the total predictor score for each patient was obtained. A value of 0 was assigned to missing data.

Score performance: The CPS's performance to differentiate patients with HCV coinfection *vs* those without HCV coinfection (discrimination) was evaluated by the area-under-the-ROC curve (AUROC) with 95% confidence intervals (CI). AUROCs of 0.7-0.79, 0.8–0.89, ≥ 0.9 were respectively considered acceptable, good, and outstanding in terms of discrimination[24]. In addition, diagnostic accuracy (sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, negative predictive value) was calculated at the different cut-offs of the score. Statistical analysis was done using Stata 14 and R 3.4.2 software.

Derivation and performance of the decision rule to guide prioritization of HCV testing

As clinically useful decision threshold (test-threshold in our case), we opted for the CPS cut-off which dichotomizes the HIV patients in a subgroup with probability of

HCV coinfection < 1% and a subgroup with probability ≥ 1% (Figure 1). This latter group could be prioritized for HCV testing, while for those with probability below 1% testing could be postponed if 'testing all' is not feasible or not affordable in the short-term.

We considered the harm/benefit of 'testing and not testing' at patient (access to treatment) and public health level (onward transmission, cost) (Table 1). Generally, due to the introduction of nearly 100% curative, well-tolerated generic DAA treatment options the potential harm of not testing has become much more important in recent years. In addition, HCV coinfected HIV populations in resource-constrained settings might be at higher risk of advanced HCV disease as they have often started ART late or with less optimal regimens. Pondering this, but also the possibility to repeat the risk scoring regularly (as HIV patients are in chronic care follow-up), we opted for a 1% probability threshold for the decision rule (*i.e.*, giving false negatives much more weight than false positives). Logically, this threshold is lower than the WHO recommended threshold range (2%-5%) for HCV testing in the general population[4].

The proportion of missed HCV coinfections, and the number of patients needed to test (NNT) to identify one HCV/HIV coinfection were calculated as measures of performance (clinical usefulness) of the decision rule in the derivation cohort.

Internal validation of the CPS

Finally, in order to correct for over-optimism (over-fitting) caused by the use of the same data set for both the derivation of the score and the evaluation of its predictive ability, we assessed internal validity of the CPS performance with a bootstrapping procedure (0.632+ estimator)[25]. We determined the performance (proportion of missed coinfections) of the CPS and the decision rule derived from each bootstrap sample in the original derivation set. This bootstrap-derived performance provides a more realistic estimate of the CPS performance in similar new patient cohorts.

Development of alternative scores

We explored two reduced models: (1) using only the six clinical and socio-demographic candidate predictors (clinical CPS); and (2) starting from lab-based (ALT, AST, platelets, APRI) and socio-demographic (gender, age) candidate predictors (lab CPS). Both were developed and assessed in the same way as the full CPS. The clinical model was explored with the intention to provide a feasible alternative for HIV programs where ALT, AST and platelet count results are not routinely available. The lab model might be easier to use in large programs equipped with electronic databases which can flag patients to be prioritized for HCV testing.

RESULTS

Description of the HIV derivation cohort

A total of 3,045 ambulatory HIV patients of Sihanouk Hospital Center of Hope were included. Their median age was 43 years (interquartile range - IQR: 36-48), 43% were male patients, and 98% were on antiretroviral therapy (ART) for a duration ranging from 2 mo to 13 years. Most were on nevirapine- (n = 1189) or efavirenz-based (n = 1539) ART. HIV virological failure was rare (3.4%). The cohort counted only few people (n = 31) who reported a history or current engagement in sex work, being homosexual, or past or current injecting drug use.

In this cohort, 230 patients tested positive for HCV antibodies, two had a borderline result. Of these 232, 106 had a detectable HCV-RNA, our outcome of interest. None of the coinfected reported past/current sex work, being MSM, or injecting drug use. Distribution of the candidate predictors in the cohort and the missing values are further specified in Table 2.

Prediction score for HCV/HIV coinfection

In Table 3, we list the 11 candidate predictors, all in dichotomous format, as taken forward in the score building. We report the unadjusted associations (crude positive and negative likelihood ratios) between the candidate predictors and having a HCV coinfection. After univariable analysis, two potential predictors (poor CD4 recovery on ART, gender) were dropped as the crude LHRs were not ≥ 2 or ≤ 0.5. From the remaining candidate predictors, seven with adjusted LHR ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67 were retained in the final multivariable score model. The adjusted LHRs are shown in the last two columns. Among the retained predictors, three rely on laboratory testing results

Table 1 Harm and benefit of hepatitis C virus testing and not testing

Harm of testing (false positives)	Benefit of testing	Harm of not testing (false negatives)	Benefit of not testing
Low, but existing:	High (for some):	High (for some):	Important in some contexts:
Cost of tests, human resources (lab & counseling)	If diagnosed positive: good treatment available (high cure rate, few side effects, short /life-saving for cirrhotic patients/ but treatment often not urgent)	Denial of live-saving, highly efficacious and affordable treatment	Cost-saving in resource-constrained environment with many competing interests
Stress related to waiting for results	Impact on further transmission (but less weight in HCV populations with low risk profile)		
Budget allocated to HCV testing not available for other health priorities			
Divert resources /timely access from those most in need (in case of testing all)			

HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

(platelet count, AST, APRI).

The relative weight (further called score) of the retained predictors is detailed in Table 4. Only APRI (whether ≥ 0.45 or < 0.45) contributed in both directions, and none of the predictors weighed more than + 1 or -1. The total score for each individual patient can range from -2 to + 6.

The distribution of the total individual scores in the HIV cohort, by coinfection status, and probability of HCV coinfection by each final score is presented in Figure 2. None of the patients in the derivation cohort had a score above 5. The majority (n = 2,219, 70%) had -2 or -1 as score. The probability of HCV coinfection ranged from 0.6% when the score was -2, to 75% for those with the highest score. A score ≥ 0 seems to fit best as test-threshold by dichotomizing in a large sub-group with predictive probability of HCV coinfection < 1% *vs* a smaller group with probability ≥ 1%.

Performance of the full CPS and derived decision rule for targeted HCV testing

The CPS yielded an AUROC of 0.84 (95%CI: 0.80-0.89), indicating good discrimination between HCV/HIV coinfection and HIV mono-infection. Diagnostic accuracy for different cut-offs of the risk score is detailed in Table 5.

The score ≥ 0, identified above as meeting our pre-defined criteria of clinically useful threshold to guide prioritization of HCV testing, had a negative predictive value (NPV) of 99.2% (95%CI: 98.8%-99.6%) or differently put, the probability of HCV coinfection among those with score < 0 was 0.8%.

Applying this test-threshold, only 30% (n = 926) of the HIV patients would have been prioritized for HCV testing. In this subgroup, 90 HCV coinfections (85%) would have been diagnosed decreasing the number needed to test (NNT) from 29 to 10. Sixteen HCV coinfections would have been missed, but none of these missed HCV diagnoses had advanced fibrosis (*i.e.*, ≥ 9.5 kPa as measured by transient elastography). In line with international guidelines, triple HBV/HCV/HIV coinfections should also be prioritized for testing and treatment. In this derivation cohort, they were rare (n = 2), but not missed by the prioritization rule.

Adjusting for over-optimism (over-fitting), the bootstrap 0.632+ estimate of proportion of missed HCV coinfections was 18%, compared to 15% in the original derivation set.

Development of alternative scores (clinical CPS, lab CPS)

In the alternative 'clinical' model, five predictors (age ≥ 50 years, diabetes mellitus, partner/household member with liver disease, generalized pruritus, fatigue/myalgia-arthralgia/anorexia-weight loss) were retained in the final model, each with a relative weight of +1 point. Gender was dropped after univariable analysis. The AUROC was 0.69 (95%CI: 0.64-0.74), indicative of poor discrimination of HCV/HIV coinfection and HIV mono-infection. Figure 3 further illustrates the poor discrimination of the clinical score, which moreover did not allow to identify a sub-group with predicted HCV infection probability below 1%.

Table 2 Characteristics of the derivation cohort, including the candidate predictors

Characteristics	Missing values	*n* = 3045	Candidate predictor
HIV patients with HCV coinfection, *n* (%)	0	106 (3.5)	
Male, *n* (%)	0	1,307 (42.9)	√
Age, yr, median (IQR)	0	42.5 (36.3-48.1)	√
Key populations[1], *n* (%)	0	31 (0.1)	
Receiving ART, *n* (%)	0	2,972 (97.6)	
On NNRTI-based ART, *n* (%)		2,728 (91.8)	
On PI-based ART, *n* (%)		232 (7.8)	
Other, *n* (%)		12 (0.4)	
Duration on ART, years, median (IQR)	0	6.9 (4.4-9.1)	
HIV viral load < 50 copies/mL, *n* (%)	368	2,517 (96.6)	
CD4, cells/μL, median (IQR)	11	464 (339-609)	
Poor CD4 recovery on ART[2], *n* (%)	13	117 (4.0)	√
ALT, IU/L, median (IQR)	0	28 (20-43)	√
AST, IU/L, median (IQR)	0	26 (21-36)	√
Platelets, × 10^9 cells/L, median (IQR)	0	266 (221-312)	√
APRI, median (IQR)	0	0.29 (0.21-0.41)	√
Fatigue, myalgia/arthralgia, or anorexia/weight loss, *n* (%)	0	301 (9.9)	√
Diffuse pruritus, *n* (%)	0	120 (3.9)	√
Diabetes mellitus, *n* (%)	6	113 (3.7)	√
Hepatitis B surface antigen positive, *n* (%)	0	311 (10.2)	
Partner or household member with liver disease, *n* (%)	10	185 (6.1)	√

[1]homosexual, history or current injecting drug user, or history or currently engaged in sex work.
[2]CD4 below200 after 3 years or more on ART.
ART: Antiretroviral therapy; NNRTI: Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor; PI: Protease inhibitor; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; APRI: AST-to-platelet ratio index; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

For the primarily laboratory test based model, four predictors were retained in the final model (age ≥ 50 years: + 1 point, APRI ≥ 0.45: + 1, APRI < 0.45: - 1, platelets < 200 10^9/L: + 1, AST < 40 IU/L: -1). Gender and ALT were dropped. The AUROC of the lab CPS showed good discrimination of HCV/HIV coinfection and HIV mono-infection, and was 0.83 (95%CI: 0.79-0.87). The best-fit cut-off for the test-threshold of ≥ 1% predicted probability was a lab CPS score ≥ 0. Applying this cut-off, 22 HCV coinfections would have been missed, including two with advanced fibrosis. The NNT was 9.5, as 800 persons would have been prioritized for testing, to identify 84 coinfections.

DISCUSSION

We developed (and internally validated) a clinical prediction score to risk-stratify, primarily heterosexually-infected HIV patients for HCV coinfection, for use as first step in the identification of HIV patients to be prioritized for HCV testing when resources are insufficient to test all.

The risk score uses elements from history taking, physical examination and laboratory test results which are readily available or easily obtainable in most HIV programs, and are a combination of age, an exposure-related factor (partner/household member with liver disease) and variables related to severity of liver disease. Its overall performance in the derivation cohort in terms of discriminating HCV/HIV coinfected and HIV mono-infected was good (AUROC 0.84, 95%CI: 0.80-0.89), and we

Table 3 Crude and adjusted likelihood ratios of the candidate predictors for hepatitis C virus coinfection

Predictor variables after dichotomization	Number of HIV patients	Outcome events, *n* (%)	Crude likelihood ratios (LHR)		Adjusted likelihood ratios (aLHR)	
			Positive LHR	Negative LHR	Positive aLHR	Negative aLHR
Male gender	1307	45 (3.4)	0.99	1.01	-	-
Age ≥ 50 years	601	45 (7.5)	2.55	0.71	**2.18**	0.72
Platelets < 200 × 10^9 cells/L	442	49 (11.1)	3.46	0.62	**1.69**	0.82
AST ≥ 30 IU/L	1190	88 (7.4)	2.21	0.28	1.48	**0.53**
ALT ≥ 40 IU/L	887	69 (7.8)	2.33	0.49	-	-
APRI ≥ 0.45	633	78 (12.3)	3.88	0.33	**2.42**	**0.48**
Having diabetes	113	13 (11.5)	3.76	0.90	**2.14**	0.94
Presenting fatigue OR myalgia/arthralgia OR anorexia/weight loss	301	21 (7.0)	2.11	0.88	-	-
Generalized pruritus	120	10 (8.3)	2.61	0.94	**2.04**	0.95
Having a partner OR household member with liver disease	185	10 (10.3)	3.21	0.87	**3.62**	0.85
Poor CD4 recovery on ART	117	5 (4.3)	1.34	0.99	-	-

In **bold** the adjusted likelihood ratios ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67. AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; APRI: AST-to-platelet ratio index; ART: Antiretroviral therapy; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

Table 4 Predictors and their weight in the clinical prediction score

Predictor	Score
Age ≥ 50 yr	+1
Having diabetes mellitus	+1
Having a partner and/or household member with liver disease	+1
Presenting generalized pruritus	+1
Platelets < 200 × 10^9 cells/L	+1
APRI ≥ 0.45	+1
APRI < 0.45	-1
AST < 30 IU/L	-1
Possible range of the score	- 2 to + 6

APRI: AST-to-platelet ratio index; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase.

were able to derive a clinically useful decision rule for HCV testing prioritization along our pre-set requirements (test-threshold at ≥ 1% predicted probability of HCV coinfection, and substantially decrease the number needed to test (NNT)). In our study population, not testing those with predicted probability < 1% would have decreased the NNT from 29 to 10, while missing 15% of the HCV/HIV coinfections, and thus outperforming birth cohort testing[7]. If externally validated, our score and decision rule may thus be a practical way forward for countries not able or not opting to fully implement the WHO recommendation to test all HIV patients for hepatitis C[4]. Resource-constrained countries carry the largest burden of HCV/HIV coinfection.

With this paper, we do not intend to advocate in a general manner for targeted HCV testing in all HIV populations. We agree with the WHO guidelines that HIV populations are a convenient population sub-group to be targeted as a whole, as they often have a higher HCV prevalence than the general population, and are easy to reach [4,26]. 'Testing all repeatedly for HCV, accompanied by appropriate preventive

Table 5 Diagnostic accuracy at different cut-offs of the clinical prediction score

Cut-off	HIV patients, *n* (%)	Sensitivity, % (95%CI)	Specificity, % (95%CI)	PPV, % (95%CI)	NPV, % (95%CI)
Score ≥ -1	1871 (61.4)	93.4 (86.9-97.3)	39.7 (37.9-41.5)	5.3 (4.3-6.4)	99.4 (98.8-99.8)
Score ≥ 0	**926 (30.0)**	**84.9 (76.6-91.1)**	**71.6 (69.9-73.2)**	**9.7 (7.9-11.8)**	**99.2 (98.8-99.6)**
Score ≥ 1	670 (22.0)	74.5 (65.1-82.5)	79.9 (78.4-81.3)	11.8 (9.5-14.5)	98.9 (98.4-99.2)
Score ≥ 2	325 (10.7)	59.4 (49.5-68.9)	91.1 (90.0-92.1)	19.4 (15.2-24.1)	98.4 (97.9-98.9)
Score ≥ 3	103 (3.4)	33.0 (24.2-42.8)	97.7 (97.1-98.2)	34 (24.9-44.0)	97.6 (97.0-98.1)
Score ≥ 4	18 (0.6)	10.4 (5.3-17.8)	99.8 (99.5-99.9)	61.1 (35.7-82.7)	96.9 (96.2-97.5)
Score ≥ 5	4 (0.1)	2.8 (0.6-8.1)	99.97 (99.8-100)	75 (19.4-99.4)	96.6 (95.9-97.2)

In **bold** the diagnostic accuracy results (number of HIV patients, sensitivity, specificity, PPV, and NPV) for the cut-off at score ≥ 0. This is the cut-off best fitting as threshold-to-test. PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

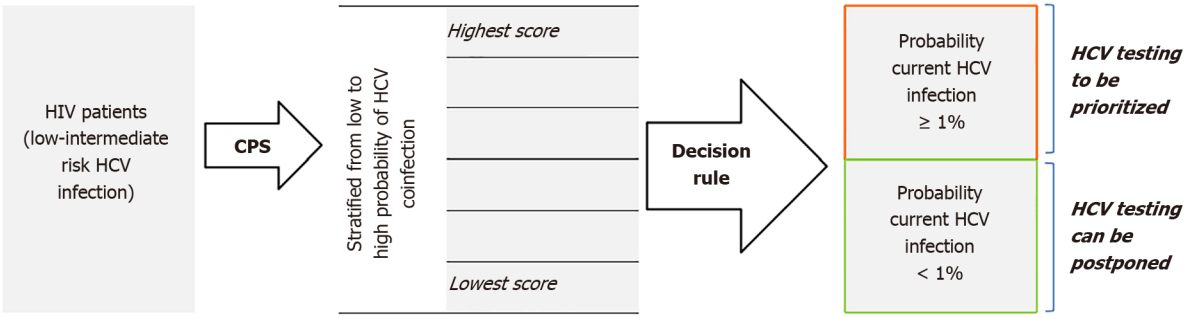
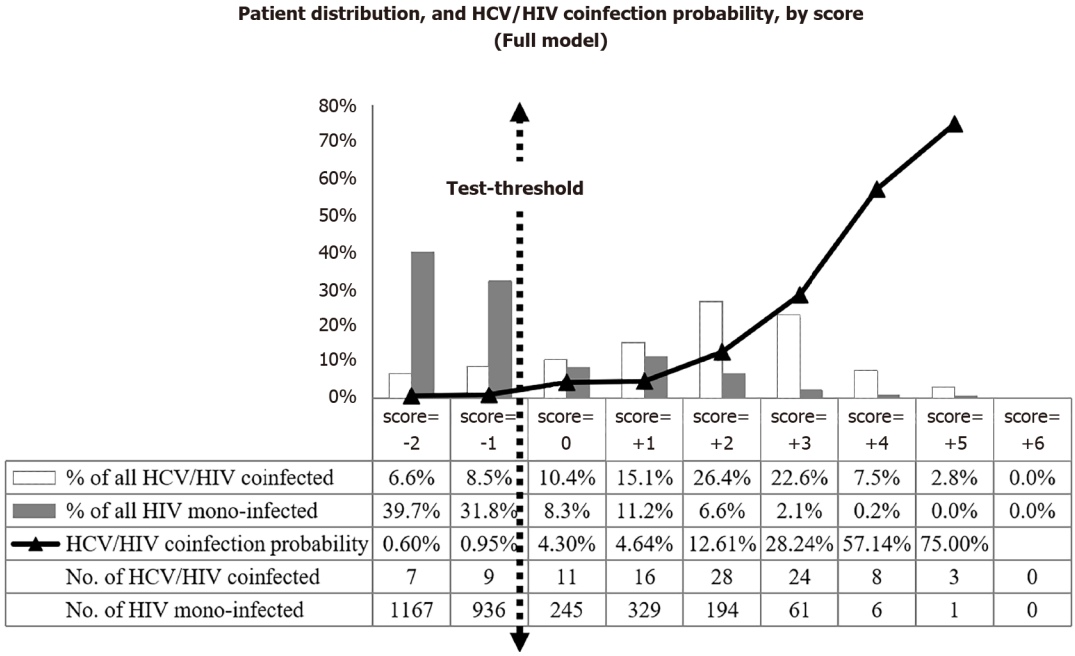


Figure 1 Threshold for the decision rule for targeted hepatitis C virus testing. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; CPS: Clinical prediction score.

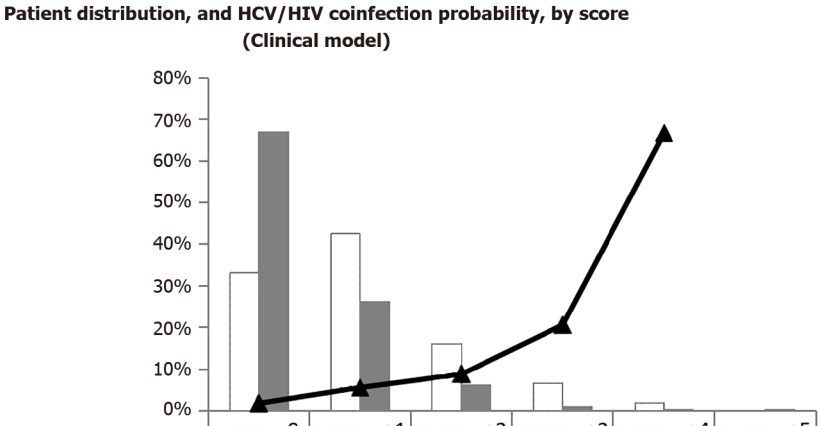
counselling' should be aimed for whenever feasible as part of a comprehensive package of care for people living with HIV (including timely initiation of ART and treatment of comorbidities as HCV), especially as nearly 100% curative HCV treatment options are now available. However, lack of resources, and low in-country HCV coinfection prevalence in large HIV cohorts with little ongoing transmission risk, are valid contextual arguments that countries may use to opt differently[8-10,27]. As also the argument that HIV coinfection leads to faster HCV disease progression (and therefore priority) has become debatable in the early ART era[8-10,27,28], some countries may indeed opt for a more restricted HCV testing approach combined with early initiation of ART. Anticipating this, it seemed to us timely to develop this score for targeted HCV testing.

The study and the resulting risk score have a number of strengths. The study was conducted and reported in accordance with the methodological standards for development of clinical prediction rules, as outlined in the TRIPOD statement and detailed in the S1 TRIPOD checklist[29]. Data collection was done prospectively, and blinded from the HCV diagnostic results. Missing data were rare. The model was built following the Spiegelhalter Knill-Jones (SKJ) approach, a statistical method that combines elements of the Bayes theorem and logistic regression. While combining, it also sidesteps disadvantages of both conventional methods (*i.e.*, the Bayes' assumption of independence of predictors; and the mathematical, user-unfriendly output of logistic regression). SKJ allows and adjusts for dependency between predictors, and provides output in adjusted LHRs which are more easily understood and interpreted by clinicians[22,23,30]. The model we developed is clinically sensible as all predictors retained in the final score are plausibly related to infection risk (older age and having a household member/partner) or severity of liver disease (increased APRI, low platelets, diabetes, generalized pruritus without skin abnormalities)[7,31,32]. This, as well as the fact that the score can be repeated at regular intervals and that initially missed cases can be picked up later, may favor acceptability by clinicians. The score has a good discriminative ability and performed particularly well to identify a large subgroup of HIV patients that can be considered as a very low-risk group for HCV coinfection



	score= -2	score= -1	score= 0	score= +1	score= +2	score= +3	score= +4	score= +5	score= +6
% of all HCV/HIV coinfected	6.6%	8.5%	10.4%	15.1%	26.4%	22.6%	7.5%	2.8%	0.0%
% of all HIV mono-infected	39.7%	31.8%	8.3%	11.2%	6.6%	2.1%	0.2%	0.0%	0.0%
HCV/HIV coinfection probability	0.60%	0.95%	4.30%	4.64%	12.61%	28.24%	57.14%	75.00%	
No. of HCV/HIV coinfected	7	9	11	16	28	24	8	3	0
No. of HIV mono-infected	1167	936	245	329	194	61	6	1	0

Figure 2 Patient distribution by coinfection status, and probability of hepatitis C virus coinfection by score of the full clinical prediction score. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.



	score= 0	score= +1	score= +2	score= +3	score= +4	score= +5
% of all HCV/HIV coinfected	33.0%	42.5%	16.0%	6.6%	1.9%	0.0%
% of all HIV mono-infected	66.9%	26.1%	6.0%	0.9%	0.0%	0.0%
HCV/HIV coinfection probability	1.75%	5.54%	8.76%	20.59%	66.67%	
No. of HCV/HIV coinfected	35	45	17	7	2	0
No. of HIV mono-infected	1965	768	177	27	1	1

Figure 3 Patient distribution by coinfection status, and probability of hepatitis C virus coinfection by score of the clinical prediction score. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

(probability < 1%). From a program perspective, this opens perspectives of substantial optimization of resource utilization for HCV testing.

There are also several limitations. It is a model development study, with internal validation to correct for over-optimism by bootstrapping, but no external validation was done yet. Further validation in different settings will thus be crucial before decisions on generalizability can be taken[33]. Inherent to the score building method used (Spiegelhalter Knill-Jones), continuous variables had to be categorized. This may have led to information loss[34,35]. The SKJ method adjusts for dependency between predictors (confounding), but in a more restricted manner than the conventional logistic regression. Each result (present or absent) of a particular predictor/test is being shrunk to the same degree[30]. Taking into consideration these potential weaknesses, we used our dataset to compare the performance of logistic regression,

CART and SKJ to predict HCV/HIV coinfection. Logistic regression missed less HCV coinfections, but would refer 98% of HIV patients for HCV testing. The SKJ method had the highest area under the ROC curve and missed less coinfections than CART. CART delivered a better positive predictive value[36]. Another potential weakness of the score is its dependence on some lab tests (mainly transaminases). Though we aimed to use information which is readily available or easily obtainable in HIV programs, these lab tests might not be done regularly anymore in some programs. The clinical score (without lab tests) did unfortunately not perform well. On the other hand, the alternative score without clinical variables did perform reasonably well, and can, if validated, be a handy alternative in certain HIV programs. Routine electronic HIV databases containing these variables could flag patients to be prioritized for HCV testing without any need for further data collection by the clinician.

To further improve cost-effectiveness of HCV testing, the potential of the risk score to identify subgroups best to be tested with the classical two-step algorithm (HCV antibody test followed by HCV-RNA testing), or one-step test procedure (HCV-RNA) could also be further explored.

CONCLUSION

We successfully developed and internally validated a practical score, based on readily available clinical data, to risk-stratify HIV patients for HCV coinfection. In our setting, a large cohort of primarily heterosexually-infected Cambodian HIV patients, the score has shown promising potential to substantially reduce the number needed to test (to 30% of the cohort) without compromising access to testing and treatment for HIV patients with advanced HCV disease, especially as this score can be repeated regularly. Confirmation of these promising findings through external validation is required before its use in other low-risk HIV cohorts (*i.e.*, with few MSM or injecting drug users) in settings with limited resources can be considered.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

The advent of direct-acting antivirals has revolutionized hepatitis C (HCV) treatment and has generated interest in the global elimination of hepatitis C as a public health problem. To allow timely scale up of treatment, efficient HCV testing strategies are crucial. By the end of 2017, only about 20% of those living with hepatitis C knew their status, with significantly lower proportions in low and middle income countries (LMIC).

Research motivation

In the absence of funding initiatives dedicated to viral hepatitis, it is expected to remain difficult for LMIC to offer broad access to HCV testing. Depending on local resources and epidemiology, offering targeted HCV screening might be a more feasible option. However, easy-to-use tools to guide such targeted HCV testing, other than prioritization of key populations or older birth cohorts, do not exist.

Research objectives

To develop and internally validate a clinical prediction score for targeted HCV screening combining age and factors linked to liver disease severity, aiming to identify most of the chronic hepatitis C patients in low-risk human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) populations, but especially those in more urgent need of treatment.

Research methods

Score development relied on the Spiegelhalter and Knill-Jones method which was applied on a cross-sectional dataset from a large HIV cohort in Phnom Penh, Cambodia. Predictors independently associated with current HCV infection (HCV RNA detected) with likelihood ratio ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 0.67 were retained in the score. Performance of the score was estimated by the area-under-the-ROC curve and diagnostic accuracy at the different cut-offs. For the decision rule, HCV coinfection probability ≥ 1% was agreed as test-threshold.

Research results

We developed (and internally validated) a clinical prediction score to risk-stratify, primarily heterosexually-infected HIV patients for HCV coinfection, for use as first step in the identification of HIV patients to be prioritized for HCV testing when resources are insufficient to test all. The risk score uses elements from history taking, physical examination and laboratory test results which are readily available or easily obtainable in most HIV programs. In the Cambodian derivation cohort, the score would have enabled identifying 85% of the coinfected while reducing the need for testing by 70%. At the best-fitting threshold-to-screen (score ≥ 0), a negative predictive value of 99.2% was obtained, and no cases with advanced fibrosis were missed.

Research conclusions

The score for targeted HCV screening performed well in the derivation cohort and bears potential to substantially reduce the number needed to test without compromising access to testing and treatment for HIV patients with advanced HCV disease. Confirmation of these promising findings through external validation is required before recommendations on wider use can be made.

Research perspectives

The validity of the score should be tested in other HIV cohorts with low onward risk of transmission, starting from similar HIV cohorts in Cambodia but also in HIV populations in other settings.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors of this paper thank the HIV clinicians, counsellors, laboratory technicians and, data-management team of Sihanouk Hospital Center of Hope (SHCH), ITM, and the Antwerp University Hospital for their contribution to the implementation of this study.

REFERENCES

1 **WHO**. Guidelines for the screening, care and treatment of persons with hepatitis C infection. April 2016. [cited 23 February 2021] Available from: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/205035/1/9789241549615_eng.pdf?ua=1

2 **WHO**. Global health sector strategy on viral hepatitis 2016-2021: towards ending viral hepatitis. 2016 [cited 23 February 2021] Available from: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/246177/1/WHO-HIV-2016.06-eng.pdf?ua=1

3 **WHO**. Global Hepatitis report, 2017. [cited 23 February 2021] Available from: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/255016/1/9789241565455-eng.pdf?ua=1

4 **WHO**. Guidelines on Hepatitis B and C testing. February 2017. [cited 23 February 2021] Available from: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254621/1/9789241549981-eng.pdf?ua=1

5 **Assefa Y**, Hill PS, Ulikpan A, Williams OD. Access to medicines and hepatitis C in Africa: can tiered pricing and voluntary licencing assure universal access, health equity and fairness? *Global Health* 2017; **13**: 73 [PMID: 28903757 DOI: 10.1186/s12992-017-0297-6]

6 **Gore C**, Hicks J, Deelder W. Funding the elimination of viral hepatitis: donors needed. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **2**: 843-845 [PMID: 29100843 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(17)30333-3]

7 **De Weggheleire A**, An S, De Baetselier I, Soeung P, Keath H, So V, Ros S, Teav S, Smekens B, Buyze J, Florence E, van Griensven J, Thai S, Francque S, Lynen L. A cross-sectional study of hepatitis C among people living with HIV in Cambodia: Prevalence, risk factors, and potential for targeted screening. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0183530 [PMID: 28832660 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0183530]

8 **Loarec A**, Carnimeo V, Maman D, Molfino L, Walter K, Nzomukunda Y, Muyindike W, Andrieux-Meyer I, Balkan S, Mwanga-Amumpaire J, Bygrave H. Lowhepatitis C virus prevalence among human immunodeficiency virus+individuals in Sub-Saharan Africa. *J Hepatol* 2017; **66**: S270-S271 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(17)30854-1]

9 **Jaquet A**, Wandeler G, Nouaman M, Ekouevi DK, Tine J, Patassi A, Coffie PA, Tanon A, Seydi M, Attia A, Dabis F. Alcohol use, viral hepatitis and liver fibrosis among HIV-positive persons in West Africa: a cross-sectional study. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2017; **19**: 21424 [PMID: 28362065 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.20.1.21424]

10 **Demir M**, Phiri S, Kaiser R, Chaweza T, Neuhann F, Tweya H, Fätkenheuer G, Steffen HM. HIV/Hepatitis C Virus Co-infection among Adults Beginning Antiretroviral Therapy, Malawi. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2016; **22**: 2018-2020 [PMID: 27767917 DOI: 10.3201/eid2211.160892]

11 **MSF Access Campaign**. Putting HCV and HIV to the test. A product guide for point-of-care CD4 tests and laboratory-based and point-of-care HIV and HCV viral load tests. July 2017. [cited 23 February 2021] Available from: https://www.msf.org/sites/msf.org/files/putting_hiv_and_hcv_to_the_test.pdf

12 **Thursz M**, Fontanet A. HCV transmission in industrialized countries and resource-constrained areas. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 28-35 [PMID: 24080775 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.179]

13 **Rouet F**, Nouhin J, Zheng DP, Roche B, Black A, Prak S, Leoz M, Gaudy-Graffin C, Ferradini L, Mom C, Mam S, Gautier C, Lesage G, Ken S, Phon K, Kerleguer A, Yang C, Killam W, Fujita M, Mean C, Fontenille D, Barin F, Plantier JC, Bedford T, Ramos A, Saphonn V. Massive Iatrogenic Outbreak of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1 in Rural Cambodia, 2014-2015. *Clin Infect Dis* 2018; **66**: 1733-1741 [PMID: 29211835 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cix1071]

14 **Pépin J**, Abou Chakra CN, Pépin E, Nault V, Valiquette L. Evolution of the global burden of viral infections from unsafe medical injections, 2000-2010. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e99677 [PMID: 24911341 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0099677]

15 **Hendriksen JM**, Geersing GJ, Moons KG, de Groot JA. Diagnostic and prognostic prediction models. *J Thromb Haemost* 2013; **11** Suppl 1: 129-141 [PMID: 23809117 DOI: 10.1111/jth.12262]

16 **Lynen L**, An S, Koole O, Thai S, Ros S, De Munter P, Sculier D, Arnould L, Fransen K, Menten J, Boelaert M, Van den Ende J, Colebunders R. An algorithm to optimize viral load testing in HIV-positive patients with suspected first-line antiretroviral therapy failure in Cambodia. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **52**: 40-48 [PMID: 19550349 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181af6705]

17 **Hendriksen JM**, Geersing GJ, Lucassen WA, Erkens PM, Stoffers HE, van Weert HC, Büller HR, Hoes AW, Moons KG. Diagnostic prediction models for suspected pulmonary embolism: systematic review and independent external validation in primary care. *BMJ* 2015; **351**: h4438 [PMID: 26349907 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.h4438]

18 **Moreno L**, Krishnan JA, Duran P, Ferrero F. Development and validation of a clinical prediction rule to distinguish bacterial from viral pneumonia in children. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2006; **41**: 331-337 [PMID: 16493666 DOI: 10.1002/ppul.20364]

19 **Vaughan TS**, Berry KE. Using Monte Carlo Techniques to Demonstrate the Meaning and Implications of Multicollinearity. *J Stat Educ* 2005; **13**: 1

20 **Shmueli G**. To explain or to predict? *Stat Sci* 2010; **25**: 289-310

21 **Peduzzi P**, Concato J, Kemper E, Holford TR, Feinstein AR. A simulation study of the number of events per variable in logistic regression analysis. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1996; **49**: 1373-1379 [PMID: 8970487 DOI: 10.1016/s0895-4356(96)00236-3]

22 **Berkley JA**, Ross A, Mwangi I, Osier FH, Mohammed M, Shebbe M, Lowe BS, Marsh K, Newton CR. Prognostic indicators of early and late death in children admitted to district hospital in Kenya: cohort study. *BMJ* 2003; **326**: 361 [PMID: 12586667 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.326.7385.361]

23 **Stéphan F**, Flahault A, Dieudonné N, Hollande J, Paillard F, Bonnet F. Clinical evaluation of circulating blood volume in critically ill patients--contribution of a clinical scoring system. *Br J Anaesth* 2001; **86**: 754-762 [PMID: 11573580 DOI: 10.1093/bja/86.6.754]

24 **Fan J**, Upadhye S, Worster A. Understanding receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves. *CJEM* 2006; **8**: 19-20 [PMID: 17175625 DOI: 10.1017/s1481803500013336]

25 **Hastie T**, Tibshirani R, Friedman JH. The elements of statistical learning: data mining, inference, and prediction. 2nd ed. Springer; 2009

26 **Platt L**, Easterbrook P, Gower E, McDonald B, Sabin K, McGowan C, Yanny I, Razavi H, Vickerman P. Prevalence and burden of HCV co-infection in people living with HIV: a global systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2016; **16**: 797-808 [PMID: 26922272 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(15)00485-5]

27 **Wandeler G**, Mulenga L, Hobbins M, Joao C, Sinkala E, Hector J, Aly M, Chi BH, Egger M, Vinikoor MJ. Absence of Active Hepatitis C Virus Infection in Human Immunodeficiency Virus Clinics in Zambia and Mozambique. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2016; **3**: ofw049 [PMID: 27047986 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofw049]

28 **Arends JE**, Lieveld FI, Boeijen LL, de Kanter CT, van Erpecum KJ, Salmon D, Hoepelman AI, Asselah T, Ustianowski A. Natural history and treatment of HCV/HIV coinfection: Is it time to change paradigms? *J Hepatol* 2015; **63**: 1254-1262 [PMID: 26186987 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.06.034]

29 **Collins GS**, Reitsma JB, Altman DG, Moons KG. Transparent Reporting of a multivariable prediction model for Individual Prognosis Or Diagnosis (TRIPOD). *Ann Intern Med* 2015; **162**: 735-736 [PMID: 25984857 DOI: 10.7326/L15-5093-2]

30 **Chan SF**, Deeks JJ, Macaskill P, Irwig L. Three methods to construct predictive models using logistic regression and likelihood ratios to facilitate adjustment for pretest probability give similar results. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2008; **61**: 52-63 [PMID: 18083462 DOI: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2007.02.012]

31 **Chou R**, Wasson N. Blood tests to diagnose fibrosis or cirrhosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; **158**: 807-820 [PMID: 23732714 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-158-11-201306040-00005]

32 **Hammerstad SS**, Grock SF, Lee HJ, Hasham A, Sundaram N, Tomer Y. Diabetes and Hepatitis C: A Two-Way Association. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2015; **6**: 134 [PMID: 26441826 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2015.00134]

33 **Justice AC**, Covinsky KE, Berlin JA. Assessing the generalizability of prognostic information. *Ann Intern Med* 1999; **130**: 515-524 [PMID: 10075620 DOI:

10.7326/0003-4819-130-6-199903160-00016]
34 **Altman DG**, Royston P. The cost of dichotomising continuous variables. *BMJ* 2006; **332**: 1080 [PMID: 16675816 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.332.7549.1080]
35 **Collins GS**, Ogundimu EO, Cook JA, Manach YL, Altman DG. Quantifying the impact of different approaches for handling continuous predictors on the performance of a prognostic model. *Stat Med* 2016; **35**: 4124-4135 [PMID: 27193918 DOI: 10.1002/sim.6986]
36 **Buyze J**, Weggheleire A, van Griensven J, Lynen L. Comparison of predictive models for hepatitis C co-infection among HIV patients in Cambodia. *BMC Infect Dis* 2020; **20**: 209 [PMID: 32164581 DOI: 10.1186/s12879-020-4909-z]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1181-1189

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1181

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Elevated liver enzymes portends a higher rate of complication and death in SARS-CoV-2

Emily E Currier, Mohamad Dabaja, Syed-Mohammed Jafri

ORCID number: Emily E Currier 0000-0002-9942-6698; Mohamad Dabaja 0000-0001-5283-9949; Syed-Mohammed Jafri 0000-0001-8108-7408.

Author contributions: Currier EE and Jafri SM designed the research study and performed the research; Currier EE, Jafri SM, and Dabaja M analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; All authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Henry Ford Hospital Institutional Review Board (Approval No. 13949).

Informed consent statement: The Informed consent statement was waived by the Institutional Review Board.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None of the authors have any conflicts of interest to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Emily E Currier, School of Medicine, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI 48201, United States

Mohamad Dabaja, Syed-Mohammed Jafri, Department of Gastroenterology, Henry Ford Hospital, Detroit, MI 48202, United States

Corresponding author: Emily E Currier, BSc, Doctor, School of Medicine, Wayne State University, 540 E. Canfield, Detroit, MI 48201, United States. emily.currier@med.wayne.edu

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2, or coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19), has infected millions worldwide since its discovery in Wuhan, China in December 2019, but little is still known about the disease process. Preliminary research in China notes liver function tests (LFTs) abnormalities are common in COVID-19 patients, suggesting decreased hepatic function, and that abnormalities in LFTs are related to complicated disease course and negative outcomes. However, there has been limited large-scale data assessing COVID-19's association with liver dysfunction and negative outcomes.

AIM

To investigate how COVID-19 affects the liver function and disease course in patients infected with the virus treated at Henry Ford Hospital from March to September 2020.

METHODS

A total of 8028 patients infected with COVID-19 were identified and included in the study at a single academic center. Data from medical charts on laboratory testing including aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), alkaline phosphatase (AP), and bilirubin levels, past history of liver disease, and disease course indicators including hospital admission, intensive care unit (ICU) admission, intubation, and death were recorded and analyzed. Elevated liver enzymes were defined as ALT/AST greater than 60, AP greater than 150, or bilirubin greater than 1.5, super-elevated liver enzymes were defined as ALT/AST greater than 120, AP greater than 300, or bilirubin greater than 3.0.

RESULTS

A total of 8028 COVID-19 patients were identified and included in the study. Data from medical charts on LFTs (namely, AST, ALT, AP, and bilirubin levels), past

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: April 20, 2021
Peer-review started: April 20, 2021
First decision: June 17, 2021
Revised: June 25, 2021
Accepted: August 24, 2021
Article in press: August 24, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Watanabe A
S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Guo X

history of liver disease, and disease course indicators (hospital/ICU admission, intubation, death) were recorded and analyzed. LFTs from 3937 patients were available for interpretation. 45% were found to have elevated or super-elevated LFT. When compared to COVID-19 patients without elevated LFTs, this cohort was found to have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admission, intubation, and death (all $P < 0.001$). 248 (3.1%) had a history of liver disease. Those with elevated and super elevated LFTS had significantly higher odds of having a past history of liver disease ($P < 0.001$).

CONCLUSION

The findings from this study suggest that in patients who have tested positive for COVID-19, those with elevated and super elevated liver enzyme levels have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admittance, intubation and death in comparison to those COVID-19 patients without elevated liver enzyme levels.

Key Words: COVID-19; Hepatology; Liver damage; Complications; Elevated liver function test

Core Tip: This study suggests that in coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19) positive patients, those with elevated and super elevated liver function tests (LFTs) have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, intensive care unit admittance, intubation, and death in comparison to those COVID-19 patients without elevated LFTs (all $P < 0.001$). LFT elevations may serve as an indicator for medical professionals in the treatment of COVID-19 patients and may allow for proactive treatment of those patients at increased risk of complications.

Citation: Currier EE, Dabaja M, Jafri SM. Elevated liver enzymes portends a higher rate of complication and death in SARS-CoV-2. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1181-1189
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1181.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1181

INTRODUCTION

Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), or coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19), was first reported in Wuhan, China in December 2019, and as of March 2020, the World Health Organization declared COVID-19 a global pandemic[1]. While millions of people have been infected and have died from COVID-19 worldwide, still much is unknown about COVID-19's disease process and the systemic effects of the disease[1]. However, preliminary research on COVID-19 shows that the disease may have a significant impact on the gastrointestinal and hepatic systems.

Early studies have shown that gastrointestinal (GI) symptoms are common in COVID-19 patients and symptoms such as nausea, diarrhea, *etc*, are present in approximately 10% of cases[2,3]. It has been noted that liver function test (LFT) abnormalities are common, however, the incidence has ranged widely from preliminary data, from 14.8% to 78%[2-5]. Abnormal LFTs, namely increases in aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, and alkaline phosphatase (AP), have been reported, which indicates decreased hepatic functions[2-11]. Thus, these noted LFT abnormalities in COVID-19 patients suggest that COVID-19 may negatively impact liver function[4-6,8]. Furthermore, three meta-analyses have both shown that patients presenting with abnormal LFTs had a significant association with an increased risk of complication risk course [*i.e.* intensive care unit (ICU) admission, intubation, death][2,8,10]. Little is still known about the impact of pre-existing hepatic conditions on COVID-19 outcomes (*i.e.* cirrhosis, post-liver transplant, *etc*)[4].

The current hypothesis behind COVID-19's involvement of the hepatic system is multifactorial liver damage, secondary to systemic inflammatory response syndrome, hypoxia-reperfusion injury, cytokine-storm induced damage, drug-induced liver damage, sepsis-mediated damage, and/or multiorgan failure[2,4,5,11,12]. However, little is known about the mechanism behind hepatic damage.

The current available research is limited in that almost all of the data was obtained from China, as few studies, especially large-scale studies, outside China have been published[2,3,10]. Furthermore, most of the current research published is limited in the study sample sizes, leading to current meta-analyses receiving data from a large number of hospitals. In these studies patients were held to different clinical cutoffs when advancing medical interventions, which could have negatively impacted the accuracy of the data and determination of the significance of abnormal LFTs and its impact on disease complications. To date, there has been no published large-scale research investigating the relationship between COVID-19 patient's LFTs and their relationship to a complicated disease course in the United States. Additionally, epidemiologic studies of COVID-19's impact have shown that Black and minority populations are disproportionally represented in the number of cases, complications, and deaths due to the virus[13,14]. While this is postulated to be due to increased incidence of comorbidities, increase odds of living in high-density areas, and lack of access to healthcare, more studies with populations that reflect demographics of COVID infection are needed to assess COVID-19's association with liver dysfunction across a diverse population[15].

The significance of this research is to investigate how SARS-CoV-2/COVID-19 affects liver function and disease course in patients infected with the virus treated at Henry Ford Hospital from March to September 2020. As studies have linked liver dysfunction with severe disease and negative disease outcomes, it is important to confirm the preliminary research currently available. If COVID-19 is continued to be linked to liver dysfunction, this information can help clinicians determine the level of care patients need and proactively treat potentially complicated disease processes.

We hypothesize that COVID-19 patients with elevations in LFTs will have higher chances of a complicated and severe disease process.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

With approval from the institutional review board at Henry Ford Health System (HFHS), the study used the medical records of patients treated at HFHS to identify patients who tested positive for COVID-19. Medical records from individuals who had tested positive from the beginning of the pandemic until September 2020 were isolated and included in the study. No individuals were excluded from the study. For this type of study formal consent is not required.

After isolating the patient population, all records of liver enzyme levels (AST, ALT, AP, bilirubin), medical history of liver disease (defined as medical documentation of alcoholic liver disease, toxic liver disease, hepatic failure, hepatitis, inflammatory liver disease, hepatic fibrosis, liver transplant, and other liver diseases- not elsewhere classified), and complicated disease course (designated by a hospital admission, ICU admission, intubation, and death) were recorded. Individuals with a past medical history of liver disease were screened through retrospective chart review and identified by a prior diagnosis of one of the above conditions; details on disease severity, length, *etc* were not recorded. However, those with history of liver disease were separated into another cohort due to the possibility of liver enzyme elevation secondary to liver disease and not the COVID-19 disease process.

Descriptive statistics of demographic variables and hospital-related outcomes are provided. Continuous data are reported as mean ± SD, while categorical data are reported as counts and column percentages [*n* (%)]. Prevalence rates for elevated and super elevated liver enzymes are computed using binary indicator variables. Logistic regression is used to calculate odds ratios and their 95%CIs for the outcomes of interest. Statistical significance is set at $P < 0.05$. All analyses are performed using SAS 9.4 (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, United States).

RESULTS

There is a total of 8028 unique patient medical record numbers used in this descriptive analysis. Table 1 displays the descriptive statistics of these patients. Of the 8028

Table 1 Patient demographics

Variable	Response	All patients (*n* = 8028)
Sex	Female	4638 (58%)
	Male	3389 (42%)
	Unknown	1 (0%)
Race	Black	4268 (53%)
	Other	1219 (15%)
	White	2541 (32%)
Hispanic	No	6921 (86%)
	Unknown	768 (10%)
	Yes	339 (4%)

patients included, 4638 (57%) are female, 3389 (42%) are male, and 1 (0%) is unknown. Additionally, 4268 (53%) are Black, 2541 (32%) are White, and 1219 (15%) are another race; 6921 (86%) are not Hispanic, 339 (4%) are Hispanic, and 768 (10%) are unknown. Patients were classified by Hispanic *vs* non-Hispanic to identify those who are Central or South American/Latino who are considered "White" on this hospital's demographic information but are of Hispanic descent.

Binary indicator variables for history of liver disease, death, hospital admission, ICU admission, and intubation were created. Table 2 displays the counts, percentages, and 95%CIs for these hospital-related outcomes. ICU admission and intubation are recorded for only those patients who were admitted to the hospital, noted by the change of *n*. Of the 8028 patients, 245 (3.1%) had a history of liver disease, 673 (8.4%) died, and 5199 (64.8%) were admitted to the hospital. Of the 5199 admitted to the hospital, 807 (15.5%) were admitted to the ICU, and 637 (12.3%) were intubated.

Table 2 displays the descriptive statistics for elevated liver enzymes. There was a total of 115846 lab values from 3937 patients. When we assessed elevated liver enzymes, we looked at this at the patient level – if they have ever had elevated liver enzymes. Binary indicator variables were created for ever having any elevated liver enzyme, and this was further broken down by specific enzymes (AST, ALT, AP, and bilirubin). Elevated liver enzymes are defined as an AST greater than 60, ALT greater than 60, AP greater than 150, or a bilirubin greater than 1.5.

There are 1722 patients who had elevated liver enzymes, 2114 who never had an elevated liver enzyme, and 101 patients who were indeterminable. Approximately 45% of patients had an elevated liver enzyme level, 34% of patients had an elevated AST, 27% of patients had an elevated ALT, 10% of patients had an elevated AP, and 12% had an elevated bilirubin.

In Table 2, we looked at super elevated liver enzyme levels, which is double the elevated threshold (AST greater than 120, ALT greater than 120, AP greater than 300, or a bilirubin greater than 3). There were 714 patients who had super elevated liver enzymes, 3116 who never had super elevated liver enzymes, and 107 patients who were indeterminable. Approximately 19% of patients had a super elevated enzyme level, 12% with AST, 12% with ALT, 2% with AP, and 3% with bilirubin.

Lastly, Figure 1 displays the logistic regression models examining the effect of elevated and super elevated liver enzymes on each outcome. Presence of elevated liver enzymes and super elevated liver enzymes are associated with increased odds of liver disease, hospital admittance, death, intubation and ICU admittance (all $P < 0.001$).

DISCUSSION

The findings from this study suggest that in patients with a positive COVID-19 test, those who have elevated and super elevated liver enzyme levels have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admittance, intubation and death in comparison to those COVID-19 patients without elevated liver enzyme levels. While little is known about COVID-19's effect on organ systems during infection and recovery, the link between elevated LFTs and poor outcomes is important and suggests that COVID-19 negatively impacts liver function; this is also consistent with

Table 2 Hospital outcomes and elevated liver enzyme prevalence rates

Outcome	Count (%) (95%CI)
	***n* = 8028**
History of liver disease	245 (3.1) (2.7, 3.5)
Death	673 (8.4) (7.8, 9.0)
Hospital admission	5199 (64.8) (63.7, 65.8)
Outcome	Count (%) (95%CI)
	n = 5199
ICU admit	807 (15.5) (14.6, 16.5)
Intubation	637 (12.3) (11.4, 13.2)
Outcome	Count (%) (95%CI)
Any elevated liver enzyme	1722 (44.9) (43.3, 46.5)
Elevated AST	1297 (33.5) (32.0, 35.0)
Elevated ALT	1052 (26.7) (25.4, 28.2)
Elevated AP	392 (10.1) (9.2, 11.1)
Elevated bilirubin	468 (12.0) (11.0, 13.1)
Any super elevated liver enzyme	714 (18.6) (17.4, 19.9)
Super elevated AST	480 (12.4) (11.4, 13.5)
Super elevated ALT	468 (11.9) (10.9, 13.0)
Super elevated AP	94 (2.4) (1.9, 3.0)

ICU: Intensive care unit; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AP: Alkaline phosphatase.

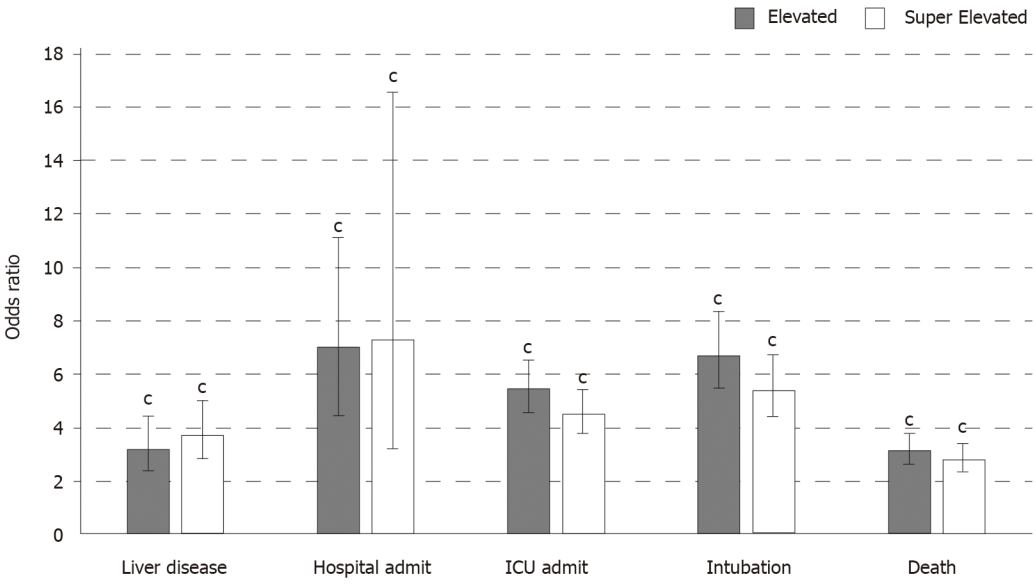


Figure 1 Logistic regression for elevated and super elevated liver enzyme levels with 95%CI. $^{c}P < 0.001$.

early data from other studies[2-11].

Of the 8028 patients identified in this study, LFTs from 3937 patients were available for statistical interpretation. Of this cohort, 45% were found to have elevated or super-elevated LFTs and when compared to COVID-19 patients without elevated LFTs, this cohort was found to have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admission, intubation, and death (all $P < 0.001$). The data suggest that the risk of hospital admission and the necessity for more aggressive medical interventions (*i.e.*

intubation, ICU admission) are more common in those with elevated LFTs. Thus, elevations in LFTs may serve as an indicator for medical professionals in the preventative treatment of complicated COVID-19 patients. By identifying those patients who have poor liver function and are thus linked to a more complicated disease course, providers may be able to monitor, proactively treat patients at increased risk, and mitigate disease complications.

Interestingly, however, this data does not show that elevation in LFTs is linearly correlated with outcomes, as seen by the odds ratio of ICU admission, intubation, and death in patients with super elevated enzyme levels being less than those with elevated enzyme levels (Figure 1). The cause of this relationship is unknown; however, we hypothesize that those with super elevated liver enzymes may have been clinically identified as severe COVID-19 cases earlier and been treated more aggressively. Retrospective research has shown that those with LFT elevations at time of admission were more likely to receive aggressive mediation interventions than those with normal LFTs (58% compared to 31%)[15]. Therefore, this lack of linear relationship may be related to early clinical treatment of patients who present with LFT abnormalities, compared to those who develop elevations throughout their hospital stay or who have moderate elevations.

Little is still known about COVID-19's effect on liver function, however, the findings from this study indicating COVID's negative impact on liver function is consistent with the limited preliminary COVID studies in China on outcomes and predictive markers of disease[16]. As noted in the previous studies, abnormal LFTs are seen as predictive markers of a complicated disease process, thus indicating hepatic dysfunction. A weakness in previously available research is the homogeneity of the population studied, with most research being derived from almost solely Asian and South Asian populations. This study, however, consisted of 53% Black, 32% white, 15% other, and 4% Hispanic persons. Therefore, this cohort is more closely representative of the current demographics affected by COVID-19 in the United States, where Black people are more likely to be infected and die from COVID-19[17,18]. Thus, these findings suggest that the relationship between LFT elevations and disease complications is not limited to race and can be applied to populations outside of the Asian community and countries.

Of the 8028 patients identified in the study, 248 (3.1%) had a history of liver disease. Those with elevated and super elevated LFTs had significantly higher odds of having a past history of liver disease ($P < 0.001$). This is important as previous research on underlying liver disease and COVID-19 infection has been limited due to sparse data on persons with underlying liver disease[19]. This data indicates that LFT abnormalities are consistent with complicated disease process in those who have a history of liver dysfunction, as seen in those without liver disease. While it is unclear if LFT elevations were due to the effects of the COVID-19 disease process or is secondary to their underlying liver disease, we do hypothesize the COVID's negative impact on liver function exacerbates already lowered liver function in these patients, thus increasing their odds for complications.

This study does have several weaknesses. While over 8000 patients were treated for COVID-19 at the hospital, liver enzymes were only available for about half of those included in the study. This discrepancy may be due to a high number of ambulatory patients who were tested for COVID-19, but whose disease process was self-limited and did not require medical intervention beyond diagnoses and supportive care. Furthermore, this research did not investigate the medications patients in the study received and as some medications used to treat COVID-19 have been linked to elevation in LFTs, this may confound some of the elevations seen in this study[20]. Additionally, as the study was retrospective, there were a variable number of lab tests available to analyze for each patient (*i.e.* some had multiple LFTs available while others had a single test). Thus, some patients may have had high LFTs during the disease course, but this was not captured on the available lab results. In research going forward, an area for improvement would be to find consistent lab values to compare and limit the possibility of missed LFT fluctuations. In addition, capturing and assessing LFTs from ambulatory patients not requiring hospitalization.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, abnormal liver biochemistry, namely AST, ALT, AP, and bilirubin, is very common in COVID-19 patients, noted in 45% of our patient population. Abnormal LFTs are closely linked to disease complications and the prognosis for

COVID-19 patients. These findings are consistent with other early research and support that COVID-19 is related to hepatic dysfunction. Importantly, as LFT elevation has been linked to severe disease outcomes, patients with elevations should be monitored closely and treated prophylactically to mitigate disease complications. Going forward, chronic effects of COVID-19 infection of hepatic function will be important to monitor as indicators of acute liver dysfunction is common in COVID-19 patients.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Preliminary research on coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19) shows that the disease may have a significant impact on the gastrointestinal and hepatic systems. Namely, early research shows that liver function test (LFT) abnormalities are common, however, the incidence has ranged widely from preliminary data, from 14.8% to 78%. Furthermore, three meta-analyses have both shown that patients presenting with abnormal LFTs had a significant association with an increased risk of complication risk course [*i.e.* intensive care unit (ICU) admission, intubation, death], but there is currently limited single-site, large scale research on the link between LFT abnormalities and COVID outcomes.

Research motivation

The motivation of this research is to identify a link between LFT abnormalities and COVID-19 outcomes.

Research objectives

The objective of this research was to identify if there was a link between LFT elevation and outcomes in COVID-19 patients. This study did support the hypothesis that those with LFT abnormalities are at increased risk of complicated disease processes and death. Clinically, this is very important as LFT abnormalities may identify patients at risk for disease complications and may lead to early medical intervention.

Research methods

Of 8028 patients infected with COVID-19 were identified and included in the study at a single academic center. Data from medical charts on laboratory testing including aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), alkaline phosphatase (AP), and bilirubin levels, past history of liver disease, and disease course indicators including hospital admission, ICU admission, intubation, and death were recorded and analyzed. Elevated liver enzymes were defined as ALT/AST greater than 60, AP greater than 150, or bilirubin greater than 1.5, super-elevated liver enzymes were defined as ALT/AST greater than 120, AP greater than 300, or bilirubin greater than 3.0.

Research results

Of 8028 COVID-19 patients were identified and included in the study. Data from medical charts on LFTs (namely, AST, ALT, AP, and bilirubin levels), past history of liver disease, and disease course indicators (hospital/ICU admission, intubation, death) were recorded and analyzed. LFTs from 3937 patients were available for interpretation. 45% were found to have elevated or super-elevated LFT. When compared to COVID-19 patients without elevated LFTs, this cohort was found to have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admission, intubation, and death (all $P < 0.001$). 248 (3.1%) had a history of liver disease. Those with elevated and super elevated LFTS had significantly higher odds of having a past history of liver disease ($P < 0.001$).

Research conclusions

The findings from this study suggest that in patients who have tested positive for COVID-19, those with elevated and super elevated liver enzyme levels have significantly higher odds of hospital admittance, ICU admittance, intubation and death in comparison to those COVID-19 patients without elevated liver enzyme levels. While this research is unsure of the cause of this relationship, this research supports that LFT changes could serve as an indicator of COVID-19 outcomes and serve as a metric for evaluating those at risk for severe complications.

Research perspectives

In research going forward, an area for improvement would be to find consistent lab values to compare and limit the possibility of missed LFT fluctuations. In addition, capturing and assessing LFTs from ambulatory patients not requiring hospitalization would increase the validity of the link between LFTs and outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Sun P**, Lu X, Xu C, Sun W, Pan B. Understanding of COVID-19 based on current evidence. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 548-551 [PMID: 32096567 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25722]

2 **Kumar A**, Arora A, Sharma P, Anikhindi SA, Bansal N, Singla V, Khare S, Srivastava A. Gastrointestinal and hepatic manifestations of Corona Virus Disease-19 and their relationship to severe clinical course: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2020; **39**: 268-284 [PMID: 32749643 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-020-01058-3]

3 **Cha MH**, Regueiro M, Sandhu DS. Gastrointestinal and hepatic manifestations of COVID-19: A comprehensive review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2323-2332 [PMID: 32476796 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i19.2323]

4 **Musa S**. Hepatic and gastrointestinal involvement in coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19): What do we know till now? *Arab J Gastroenterol* 2020; **21**: 3-8 [PMID: 32253172 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajg.2020.03.002]

5 **Fan Z**, Chen L, Li J, Cheng X, Yang J, Tian C, Zhang Y, Huang S, Liu Z, Cheng J. Clinical Features of COVID-19-Related Liver Functional Abnormality. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1561-1566 [PMID: 32283325 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.04.002]

6 **Lei F**, Liu YM, Zhou F, Qin JJ, Zhang P, Zhu L, Zhang XJ, Cai J, Lin L, Ouyang S, Wang X, Yang C, Cheng X, Liu W, Li H, Xie J, Wu B, Luo H, Xiao F, Chen J, Tao L, Cheng G, She ZG, Zhou J, Wang H, Lin J, Luo P, Fu S, Ye P, Xiao B, Mao W, Liu L, Yan Y, Chen G, Huang X, Zhang BH, Yuan Y. Longitudinal Association Between Markers of Liver Injury and Mortality in COVID-19 in China. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 389-398 [PMID: 32359177 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31301]

7 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]

8 **Xu L**, Liu J, Lu M, Yang D, Zheng X. Liver injury during highly pathogenic human coronavirus infections. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 998-1004 [PMID: 32170806 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14435]

9 **Wu Y**, Li H, Guo X, Yoshida EM, Mendez-Sanchez N, Levi Sandri GB, Teschke R, Romeiro FG, Shukla A, Qi X. Incidence, risk factors, and prognosis of abnormal liver biochemical tests in COVID-19 patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 621-637 [PMID: 32710250 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10074-6]

10 **Kumar A**, Arora A, Sharma P, Anikhindi SA, Bansal N, Singla V, Khare S, Srivastava A. Clinical Features of COVID-19 and Factors Associated with Severe Clinical Course: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *SSRN* 2020; 3566166 [PMID: 32714109 DOI: 10.2139/ssrn.3566166]

11 **Polakos NK**, Cornejo JC, Murray DA, Wright KO, Treanor JJ, Crispe IN, Topham DJ, Pierce RH. Kupffer cell-dependent hepatitis occurs during influenza infection. *Am J Pathol* 2006; **168**: 1169-78; quiz 1404 [PMID: 16565492 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2006.050875]

12 **Chau TN**, Lee KC, Yao H, Tsang TY, Chow TC, Yeung YC, Choi KW, Tso YK, Lau T, Lai ST, Lai CL. SARS-associated viral hepatitis caused by a novel coronavirus: report of three cases. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 302-310 [PMID: 14767982 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20111]

13 **Abuelgasim E**, Saw LJ, Shirke M, Zeinah M, Harky A. COVID-19: Unique public health issues facing Black, Asian and minority ethnic communities. *Curr Probl Cardiol* 2020; **45**: 100621 [PMID: 32448759 DOI: 10.1016/j.cpcardiol.2020.100621]

14 **Golestaneh L**, Neugarten J, Fisher M, Billett HH, Gil MR, Johns T, Yunes M, Mokrzycki MH, Coco M, Norris KC, Perez HR, Scott S, Kim RS, Bellin E. The association of race and COVID-19 mortality. *EClinicalMedicine* 2020; **25**: 100455 [PMID: 32838233 DOI: 10.1016/j.eclinm.2020.100455]

15 **Gu T**, Mack JA, Salvatore M, Prabhu Sankar S, Valley TS, Singh K, Nallamothu BK, Kheterpal S, Lisabeth L, Fritsche LG, Mukherjee B. Characteristics Associated With Racial/Ethnic Disparities in COVID-19 Outcomes in an Academic Health Care System. *JAMA Netw Open* 2020; **3**: e2025197 [PMID: 33084902 DOI: 10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2020.25197]

16 **Paliogiannis P**, Zinellu A. Bilirubin levels in patients with mild and severe Covid-19: A pooled analysis. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1787-1788 [PMID: 32304343 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14477]

17 **Holmes L Jr**, Enwere M, Williams J, Ogundele B, Chavan P, Piccoli T, Chinacherem C, Comeaux C, Pelaez L, Okundaye O, Stalnaker L, Kalle F, Deepika K, Philipcien G, Poleon M, Ogungbade G, Elmi H, John V, Dabney KW. Black-White Risk Differentials in COVID-19 (SARS-COV2) Transmission, Mortality and Case Fatality in the United States: Translational Epidemiologic Perspective and Challenges. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2020; **17** [PMID: 32560363 DOI: 10.3390/ijerph17124322]

18 **Price-Haywood EG**, Burton J, Fort D, Seoane L. Hospitalization and Mortality among Black Patients and White Patients with Covid-19. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 2534-2543 [PMID: 32459916 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMsa2011686]

19 **Sun J**, Aghemo A, Forner A, Valenti L. COVID-19 and liver disease. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1278-1281 [PMID: 32251539 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14470]

20 **Olry A**, Meunier L, Délire B, Larrey D, Horsmans Y, Le Louët H. Drug-Induced Liver Injury and COVID-19 Infection: The Rules Remain the Same. *Drug Saf* 2020; **43**: 615-617 [PMID: 32514859 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-020-00954-z]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 September 27; 13(9): 1190-1202

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1190

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

META-ANALYSIS

Global prevalence of hepatitis B virus serological markers among healthcare workers: A systematic review and meta-analysis

Gadji Mahamat, Sebastien Kenmoe, Etheline W Akazong, Jean Thierry Ebogo-Belobo, Donatien Serge Mbaga, Arnol Bowo-Ngandji, Joseph Rodrigue Foe-Essomba, Marie Amougou-Atsama, Chavely Gwladys Monamele, Chris Andre Mbongue Mikangue, Ginette Irma Kame-Ngasse, Jeannette Nina Magoudjou-Pekam, Cromwel Zemnou-Tepap, Dowbiss Meta-Djomsi, Martin Maïdadi-Foudi, Sabine Aimee Touangnou-Chamda, Audrey Gaelle Daha-Tchoffo, Abdel Aziz Selly-Ngaloumo, Rachel Audrey Nayang-Mundo, Jacqueline Félicité Yéngué, Jean Bosco Taya-Fokou, Lorraine K M Fokou, Raoul Kenfack-Momo, Dimitri Tchami Ngongang, Efietngab Atembeh Noura, Hervé Raoul Tazokong, Cynthia Paola Demeni Emoh, Cyprien Kengne-Ndé, Jean Joel Bigna, Onana Boyomo, Richard Njouom

ORCID number: Gadji Mahamat 0000-0002-5671-2299; Sebastien Kenmoe 0000-0002-5536-080X; Etheline W Akazong 0000-0001-5389-2768; Jean Thierry Ebogo-Belobo 0000-0002-4057-889X; Donatien Serge Mbaga 0000-0002-9496-0445; Arnol Bowo-Ngandji 0000-0003-4463-1018; Joseph Rodrigue Foe-Essomba 0000-0002-7612-6844; Marie Amougou-Atsama 0000-0001-6662-9045; Chavely Gwladys Monamele 0000-0002-2637-2078; Chris Andre Mbongue Mikangue 0000-0001-9131-6438; Ginette Irma Kame-Ngasse 0000-0003-1410-5156; Jeannette Nina Magoudjou-Pekam 0000-0003-0176-6174; Cromwel Zemnou-Tepap 0000-0001-8405-373X; Dowbiss Meta-Djomsi 0000-0002-8763-9522; Martin Maïdadi-Foudi 0000-0002-6679-1111; Sabine Aimee Touangnou-Chamda 0000-0002-8899-1229; Audrey Gaelle Daha-Tchoffo 0000-0003-4193-4451; Abdel Aziz Selly-Ngaloumo 0000-0002-1248-0166; Rachel Audrey Nayang-Mundo 0000-0002-0479-3840; Jacqueline Félicité Yéngué 0000-0003-0846-9367; Jean Bosco Taya-Fokou 0000-0003-1383-885X; Lorraine K M Fokou 0000-0002-6263-2017; Raoul Kenfack-Momo 0000-

Gadji Mahamat, Donatien Serge Mbaga, Arnol Bowo-Ngandji, Chris Andre Mbongue Mikangue, Sabine Aimee Touangnou-Chamda, Jean Bosco Taya-Fokou, Dimitri Tchami Ngongang, Hervé Raoul Tazokong, Cynthia Paola Demeni Emoh, Onana Boyomo, Department of Microbiology, The University of Yaounde I, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Sebastien Kenmoe, Chavely Gwladys Monamele, Richard Njouom, Virology Department, Centre Pasteur of Cameroon, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Etheline W Akazong, Department of Biochemistry, University of Dschang, Dschang 00237, Cameroon

Jean Thierry Ebogo-Belobo, Ginette Irma Kame-Ngasse, Efietngab Atembeh Noura, Medical Research Centre, Institute of Medical Research and Medicinal Plants Studies, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Joseph Rodrigue Foe-Essomba, Department of Mycobacteriology, Centre Pasteur of Cameroon, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Marie Amougou-Atsama, Dowbiss Meta-Djomsi, Martin Maïdadi-Foudi, Centre de Recherche sur les Maladies Émergentes et Re-Emergentes, Institut de Recherches Médicales et d'Etudes des Plantes Médicinales, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Jeannette Nina Magoudjou-Pekam, Cromwel Zemnou-Tepap, Abdel Aziz Selly-Ngaloumo, Lorraine K M Fokou, Raoul Kenfack-Momo, Department of Biochemistry, The University of Yaounde I, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Audrey Gaelle Daha-Tchoffo, Department of Medical Biochemistry, The University of Yaounde I, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Rachel Audrey Nayang-Mundo, Department of Microbiology, Protestant University of Central Africa, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Jacqueline Félicité Yéngué, Department of Animals Biology and Physiology, The University of

0003-2827-628X; Dimitri Tchami Ngongang 0000-0001-8134-6086; Efietngab Atembeh Noura 0000-0001-6702-3221; Hervé Raoul Tazokong 0000-0003-4332-6791; Cynthia Paola Demeni Emoh 0000-0002-0731-3179; Cyprien Kengne-Ndé 0000-0002-8338-2221; Jean Joel Bigna 0000-0001-8018-6279; Onana Boyomo 0000-0003-4702-7916; Richard Njouom 0000-0003-3112-6370.

Author contributions: Mahamat G, Kenmoe S and Njouom R were responsible for conception and design of the study as well as project administration; Mahamat G, Kenmoe S, Akazong EW, Ebogo-Belobo JT, Mbaga DS, Bowo-Ngandji A, Foe-Essomba JR, Amougou-Atsama M, Monamele CG, Mbongue Mikangue CA, Kame-Ngasse GI, Magoudjou-Pekam JN, Zemnou-Tepap C, Meta-Djomsi D, Maïdadi-Foudi M, Touangnou-Chamda SA, Daha-Tchoffo AG, Selly-Ngaloumo AA, Nayang-Mundo RA, Yéngué JF, Taya-Fokou JB, Fokou LKM, Kenfack-Momo R, Tchami Ngongang D, Atembeh Noura E, Tazokong HR and Demeni Emoh CP were responsible for the data curation and interpretation of results; Kengne-Ndé C and Kenmoe S were responsible for statistical analysis; Mahamat G, Kenmoe S, Bigna JJ, Boyomo O and Njouom R were responsible for the project supervision; Mahamat G and Kenmoe S wrote the original draft; All authors critically reviewed the first draft and approved the final version of the paper for submission, and have read and approve the final manuscript.

Supported by AREF/EDCTP, No. VARIAFRICA-TMA2019PF-2705.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors deny any conflict of interest.

PRISMA 2009 Checklist statement: The authors have read the PRISMA 2009 Checklist, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the PRISMA 2009 Checklist.

Yaounde I, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Cyprien Kengne-Ndé, Evaluation and Research Unit, National AIDS Control Committee, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Jean Joel Bigna, Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Centre Pasteur of Cameroon, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon

Corresponding author: Richard Njouom, PhD, Associate Professor, Virology Department, Centre Pasteur of Cameroon, 451, Rue 2005, Yaoundé 2, Yaoundé 00237, Cameroon.
njouom@pasteur-yaounde.org

Abstract

BACKGROUND

The hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is a global public health concern that affects about 2 billion people and causes 1 million people deaths yearly. HBV is a blood-borne disease and healthcare workers (HCWs) are a high-risk group because of occupational hazard to patients' blood. Different regions of the world show a highly variable proportion of HCWs infected and/or immunized against HBV. Global data on serologic markers of HBV infection and immunization in HCWs are very important to improve strategies for HBV control.

AIM

To determine the worldwide prevalence of HBV serological markers among HCWs.

METHODS

In this systematic review and meta–analyses, we searched PubMed and Excerpta Medica Database (Embase) to identify studies published between 1970 and 2019 on the prevalence of HBV serological markers in HCWs worldwide. We also manually searched for references of relevant articles. Four independent investigators selected studies and included those on the prevalence of each of the HBV serological markers including hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), hepatitis e antigen (HBeAg), immunoglobulin M anti-HBc, and anti-HBs. Methodological quality of eligible studies was assessed and random-effect model meta-analysis resulted in the pooled prevalence of HBV serological markers HBV infection in HCWs. Heterogeneity (I^2) was assessed using the χ^2 test on Cochran's Q statistic and H parameters. Heterogeneity' sources were explored through subgroup and metaregression analyses. This study is registered with PROSPERO, number CRD42019137144.

RESULTS

We reviewed 14059 references, out of which 227 studies corresponding to 448 prevalence data among HCWs (224936 HCWs recruited from 1964 to 2019 in 71 countries) were included in this meta-analysis. The pooled seroprevalences of current HBsAg, current HBeAg, and acute HBV infection among HCWs were 2.3% [95% confidence interval (CI): 1.9-2.7], 0.2% (95%CI: 0.0-1.7), and 5.3% (95%CI: 1.4-11.2), respectively. The pooled seroprevalences of total immunity against HBV and immunity acquired by natural HBV infection in HCWs were 56.6% (95%CI: 48.7-63.4) and 9.2% (95%CI: 6.8-11.8), respectively. HBV infection was more prevalent in HCWs in low-income countries, particularly in Africa. The highest immunization rates against HBV in HCWs were recorded in urban areas and in high-income countries including Europe, the Eastern Mediterranean and the Western Pacific.

CONCLUSION

New strategies are needed to improve awareness, training, screening, vaccination, post-exposure management and treatment of HBV infection in HCWs, and particularly in low-income regions.

Key Words: Healthcare workers; Hepatitis B virus; Seroprevalence; Hepatitis B surface antigen; Hepatitis e antigen

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Cameroon

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: February 24, 2021
Peer-review started: February 24, 2021
First decision: June 15, 2021
Revised: June 29, 2021
Accepted: August 3, 2021
Article in press: August 3, 2021
Published online: September 27, 2021

P-Reviewer: Trevisan A
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Li JH

Core Tip: This study showed that healthcare workers (HCWs) are at an intermediate level (2%-8%) of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection worldwide. The study also shows that globally, about half of HCWs are immune to HBV. Resource-limited areas with the lowest HBV immunization levels also have the highest HBV infection levels. To achieve the goal of HBV eradication by 2030, new strategies are needed to improve awareness, training, screening, vaccination, post-exposure management and treatment of HBV-infected HCWs, and especially in low-income regions.

Citation: Mahamat G, Kenmoe S, Akazong EW, Ebogo-Belobo JT, Mbaga DS, Bowo-Ngandji A, Foe-Essomba JR, Amougou-Atsama M, Monamele CG, Mbongue Mikangue CA, Kame-Ngasse GI, Magoudjou-Pekam JN, Zemnou-Tepap C, Meta-Djomsi D, Maïdadi-Foudi M, Touangnou-Chamda SA, Daha-Tchoffo AG, Selly-Ngaloumo AA, Nayang-Mundo RA, Yéngué JF, Taya-Fokou JB, Fokou LKM, Kenfack-Momo R, Tchami Ngongang D, Atembeh Noura E, Tazokong HR, Demeni Emoh CP, Kengne-Ndé C, Bigna JJ, Boyomo O, Njouom R. Global prevalence of hepatitis B virus serological markers among healthcare workers: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 13(9): 1190-1202
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v13/i9/1190.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v13.i9.1190

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is one of the main causes of liver disease. HBV infection remains asymptomatic in most infected people but also causes acute or chronic infections which can progress to liver failure, fulminant hepatitis, cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma, and death[1-3]. Globally, hepatitis B is a major public health concern, with approximately a third of the world's population infected, including about 360 million chronic infections and 1 million deaths per year[4]. The HBV infection prevalence varies widely across World Health Organization (WHO) regions, with the African and Western Pacific regions bearing the highest burden (6.1% and 6.2% in the general population, respectively)[5,6].

HBV is transmitted parenterally through the blood and other body fluids of infected people. Several HBV transmission pathways have been identified, such as transmissions from mother to child, through unprotected sexual intercourse, during blood transfusions, *via* organ transplants, or through splashes and wounds caused by cuts and pricks of contaminated objects[7]. HBV, being a blood-borne pathogen, represents a significant occupational risk among healthcare workers (HCWs). The frequencies of infection in HCWs are up to 4-times greater than in individuals who do not work in hospitals[8-10]. Among the 35 million HCWs working globally, approximately 3 million each year have occupational exposure to HBV infection, leading to up to 66 thousand HBV infections (261 deaths)[9,11]. The chain of transmission of HBV is thus maintained from patients to HCWs and *vice versa* as well as to HCW relatives [12]. Vaccination against HBV is recommended in most countries for newborns and high-risk individuals, such as HCWs. Vaccination policies targeting HCWs vary widely according to geographic regions, including the absence of a policy, systematic vaccination, confirmation of vaccine protection, and adherence to maintenance of immunity[10,13-16].

According to high heterogeneity across regions regarding HBV routes of transmission, risk factors of infection, interventions for prevention and immunization among HCWs as well as clinical practice, the global epidemiology of HBV infection in HCWs need to be described. Understanding the seroprevalence, immunization rate, and risk factors for HBV infection in HCWs can provide useful information for decision-making and context-specific interventions to curtail the burden of disease of HBV infection. Therefore, the objective of this systematic review with meta-analysis was to determine the seroprevalence and factors associated with HBV infection and rate of HBV immunization in HCWs.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Registration

This review was reported following the preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses (PRISMA) guidelines (Supplementary Table 1)[17]. The protocol for this review was registered in the International Prospective Register of Systematic Reviews (PROSPERO, No. CRD42019137144).

Eligibility criteria

This review included cross-sectional, case-control and cohort (baseline data) studies. Studies in English or French, without geographic restriction, were selected. We included studies using any assay for detecting serological markers of hepatitis B infection. This review considered the following different markers of HBV infection: anti-HBs > 10 IU/mL (total immunity against HBV); anti-HBs (+) and anti-HBc (+) (immunity due to natural infection); hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) (+) and immunoglobulin (Ig) M anti-HBc (+) (acute hepatitis B infection); HBsAg (+) (current HBV infection); and hepatitis e antigen (HBeAg) (+) (current HBV infectivity)[18]. Studies for which the abstract or full text were not available, duplicates, comments, case reports, case series, and studies with less than 10 participants were excluded.

Data sources and search strategy

A search was conducted for articles published from 1970 to 2020 at PubMed and Excerpta Medica Database (Embase). The search terms were related to hepatitis B and HCWs (Supplementary Table 2). To supplement the bibliographic database searches and identify potential additional data sources, we scrutinized the reference list of all relevant articles.

Study selection and data extraction processes

Duplicates identified from the complete list of studies were removed. Titles and abstracts of articles retrieved from electronic literature search were independently screened by four investigators (Mahamat G, Kenmoe S, Ebogo-Belobo JT, and Amougou-Atsama M), and the full texts of those potentially eligible were obtained and further assessed for final inclusion. Data from the included studies was extracted using a Google form by 18 of the study's authors and verified by Kenmoe S. The extracted data were the name of the first author, year of publication, study design, country, country income level, sampling method, timing of data collection, study period, study participant age, male percentage, recruitment setting, HCW category, HBV detection assay, HBV detected markers (HBsAg, HBeAg, anti-HBs, and anti-HBc IgM and IgG), type of sample used for HBV detection, sample size, and number of HBV-positive for each marker. Disagreements observed during study selection and data extraction were resolved by discussion and consensus.

Quality assessment

The tool developed by Hoy and collaborators[19] for cross-sectional studies was used to assess the methodological quality of the included studies (Supplementary Table 3). Discussion and consensus were used to resolve disagreements.

Statistical analysis

The review included HCWs grouped according to WHO guidelines[20]. This classification includes the following as major categories: Health professionals; health associate professionals; personal care workers in health services; health management and support personnel; and other health service providers not classified elsewhere. Prevalence of pooled data was conducted using a random-effects meta-analysis with a Freeman-Tukey double arcsine transformation[21,22]. The I^2 (> 50%), H (> 1) parameters and the Q test P value (< 0.05) were used to indicate significant heterogeneity[21,23]. Subgroup and meta-regression analyses were used to determine sources of heterogeneity. Egger's test (P value < 0.1) and asymmetry of funnel plot were used to indicate publication bias and sensitivity analyses were performed on studies with low risk of bias and cross-sectional studies[24]. R version 3.6.2. statistical software was used to conduct all meta-analyses[25,26].

RESULTS

Study selection

The database search yielded a total of 14059 articles (Figure 1). After removing duplicates, 11575 articles were excluded due to irrelevant titles and abstracts. Of the 1190 articles fully screened 963 were excluded for multiple reasons (Supplementary Table 4). A total of 227 articles met the eligibility criteria. These 227 articles included corresponded to 448 seroprevalence data among HCWs (Supplementary Text 1).

Study characteristics

Most of the prevalence data were at moderate risk of bias (n = 279 prevalence data) (Supplementary Tables 6 and 7). Most of the participants were health professionals. Most prevalence data were reported in high (n = 176) and lower-middle (n = 125) income countries. Most of the prevalence data were from cross-sectional studies (n = 439) with non-probabilistic sampling methods (386), with prospective data collection and analysis (420), and in urban setting (212). The most widely used detection assay was direct ELISA (n = 126) for the detection of HBsAg (n = 292). Almost all the prevalence data reported serological markers of hepatitis in serum (n = 435).

Global seroprevalence of current HBV (HBsAg) infection among HCWs

The seroprevalence of current hepatitis B infection (HBsAg) was assessed in 275 seroprevalence data conducted in 62 countries (Figure 2 and Supplementary Figure 1). The overall seroprevalence of current hepatitis B infections (HBsAg) among HCWs was 2.3% [95% confidence interval (CI): 2.0-2.7].

Global seroprevalence of current HBV (HBeAg) infectivity among HCWs

The seroprevalence of current hepatitis B infectivity (HBeAg) positivity was assessed in three seroprevalence data conducted in three countries (Figure 2 and Supplementary Figure 2). The overall seroprevalence of current hepatitis B infections (HBeAg) among HCWs (HCWs) was 0.2% (95%CI: 0.0-1.7).

Global seroprevalence of acute HBV (IgM anti-HBs + HBsAg) infection among HCWs

The seroprevalence of acute VHB (IgM anti-HBs + HBsAg) infection was assessed in 12 seroprevalence data conducted in seven countries (Figure 2 and Supplementary Figure 3). The overall seroprevalence of acute hepatitis B infection in HCWs was 5.3% (95%CI: 1.4-11.2).

Global seroprevalence of total immunity (anti-HBs > 10 UI/mL) against HBV infection among HCWs

The seroprevalence of hepatitis B immunity (due to natural infection or vaccination) was assessed in 84 seroprevalence data conducted in 29 countries (Figure 2 and Supplementary Figure 4). The overall seroprevalence of total immunity against HBV among HCWs was 56.6% (95%CI: 48.7-63.4).

Global seroprevalence of immunity due to natural HBV infection (anti-HBS + anti-HBc) among HCWs

The seroprevalence of immunity against hepatitis B acquired through natural infection was assessed in 41 studies (57 seroprevalence data) conducted in 22 countries (Figure 2 and Supplementary Figure 5). The overall seroprevalence of immunity to hepatitis B acquired through natural infection among HCWs was 9.2% (95%CI: 6.8-11.8).

Heterogeneity and publication bias

The estimate of these seroprevalence data was associated with substantial heterogeneity current HBV infection (I^2 = 94.1%; 95%CI: 93.6-94.5), current HBV infectivity (I^2 = 92.3%; 95%CI: 80.7-96.9), HBV acute infection (I^2 = 97.9%; 95%CI: 96.9-98.5), total HBV immunity (I^2 = 99.5%; 95%CI: 99.5-99.6), and HBV immunity due to natural infection (I^2 = 96.9%; 95%CI: 96.4-97.3). Egger's test was significant (P < 0.001) for the seroprevalence of current HBV infection (HBsAg) among HCWs, suggesting the presence of publication bias (Table 1). Egger's tests were not significant for the seroprevalence in HCWs of current HBV infection due to HBeAg positivity (P = 0.577), acute HBV infection (P = 0.256), total immunity against hepatitis B (P = 0.509), and immunity due to natural infection (P = 0.853), suggesting the absence of publication bias. Funnel plots confirmed the results of publication bias obtained by Egger's test

Table 1 Summary of meta-analysis results for global seroprevalence of hepatitis B virus serological markers in healthcare workers

	Prevalence % (95%CI)	95% Prediction interval	Studies, *n*	Participants, *n*	[1]*H* (95%CI)	[2]I^2 (95%CI)	*P* value (heterogeneity)	*P* value (Egger test)
Current HBV infection (HBsAg)								
Overall	2.4 (2-2.8)	0-11	275	153326	4.1 (4-4.3)	94.1 (93.6-94.5)	< 0.001	< 0.001
Cross-sectional	2.4 (2-2.9)	0-11.1	271	150516	4.1 (4-4.3)	94.2 (93.7-94.6)	< 0.001	< 0.001
Low risk of bias	1.8 (1.4-2.3)	0-8.2	107	40212	3 (2.8-3.2)	88.8 (87-90.3)	< 0.001	< 0.001
Current HBV infection (HBeAg)								
Overall	0.3 (0-1.7)	0-70.6	3	4408	3.6 (2.3-5.7)	92.3 (80.7-96.9)	< 0.001	0.577
Cross-sectional	0.3 (0-1.7)	0-70.6	3	4408	3.6 (2.3-5.7)	92.3 (80.7-96.9)	< 0.001	0.577
Low risk of bias	0 (0-0.1)	NA-NA	1	3513	NA (NA-NA)	NA (NA-NA)	1	NA
HBV acute infection								
Overall	5.4 (1.4-11.3)	0-37	12	3665	6.1 (5.3-7.1)	97.3 (96.4-98)	< 0.001	0.256
Cross-sectional	5.4 (1.4-11.3)	0-37	12	3665	6.1 (5.3-7.1)	97.3 (96.4-98)	< 0.001	0.256
Low risk of bias	1.9 (0-8.7)	0-48.1	5	1639	6.5 (5.1-8.2)	97.6 (96.2-98.5)	< 0.001	0.824
Immunity against HBV								
Overall	56.6 (49.3-63.7)	2.8-100	84	37622	14 (13.5-14.4)	99.5 (99.5-99.5)	< 0.001	0.763
Cross-sectional	56.3 (48.8-63.7)	2.4-100	80	36311	14.2 (13.8-14.7)	99.5 (99.5-99.5)	< 0.001	0.811
Low risk of bias	65.9 (56.1-75.1)	10.3-100	35	22401	14.7 (14.1-15.4)	99.5 (99.5-99.6)	< 0.001	0.974
Immunity due to natural HBV infection								
Overall	9.2 (6.9-11.8)	0-34.5	57	23002	6.3 (5.9-6.7)	97.4 (97.1-97.8)	< 0.001	0.853
Cross-sectional	9.2 (6.9-11.9)	0-34.6	56	22867	6.3 (5.9-6.7)	97.5 (97.1-97.8)	< 0.001	0.851
Low risk of bias	7 (4-10.8)	0-30.3	20	10408	6.4 (5.7-7.1)	97.6 (97-98)	< 0.001	0.463

[1]*H* is a measure of the extent of heterogeneity, a value of H =1 indicates homogeneity of effects and a value of H > 1 indicates a potential heterogeneity of effects.
[2]I^2 describes the proportion of total variation in study estimates that is due to heterogeneity, a value > 50% indicates presence of heterogeneity.
HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBeAg: Hepatitis e antigen; CI: Confidence interval; NA: Not available.

(Supplementary Figures 6-10).

Subgroup analyses and metaregression

Subgroup analysis of current HBV infection in HCWs showed that seroprevalence was higher in cross-sectional studies, low-income countries, WHO Africa region, health management and support personnel, and personal care workers in health services (Figure 3 and Supplementary Table 8). Subgroup analysis of acute HBV infection in HCWs showed that seroprevalence was higher in non-probabilistic studies, prospective studies, upper-middle-income countries, the WHO South-East Asia region, urban areas and health associate professionals. Subgroup analysis of total

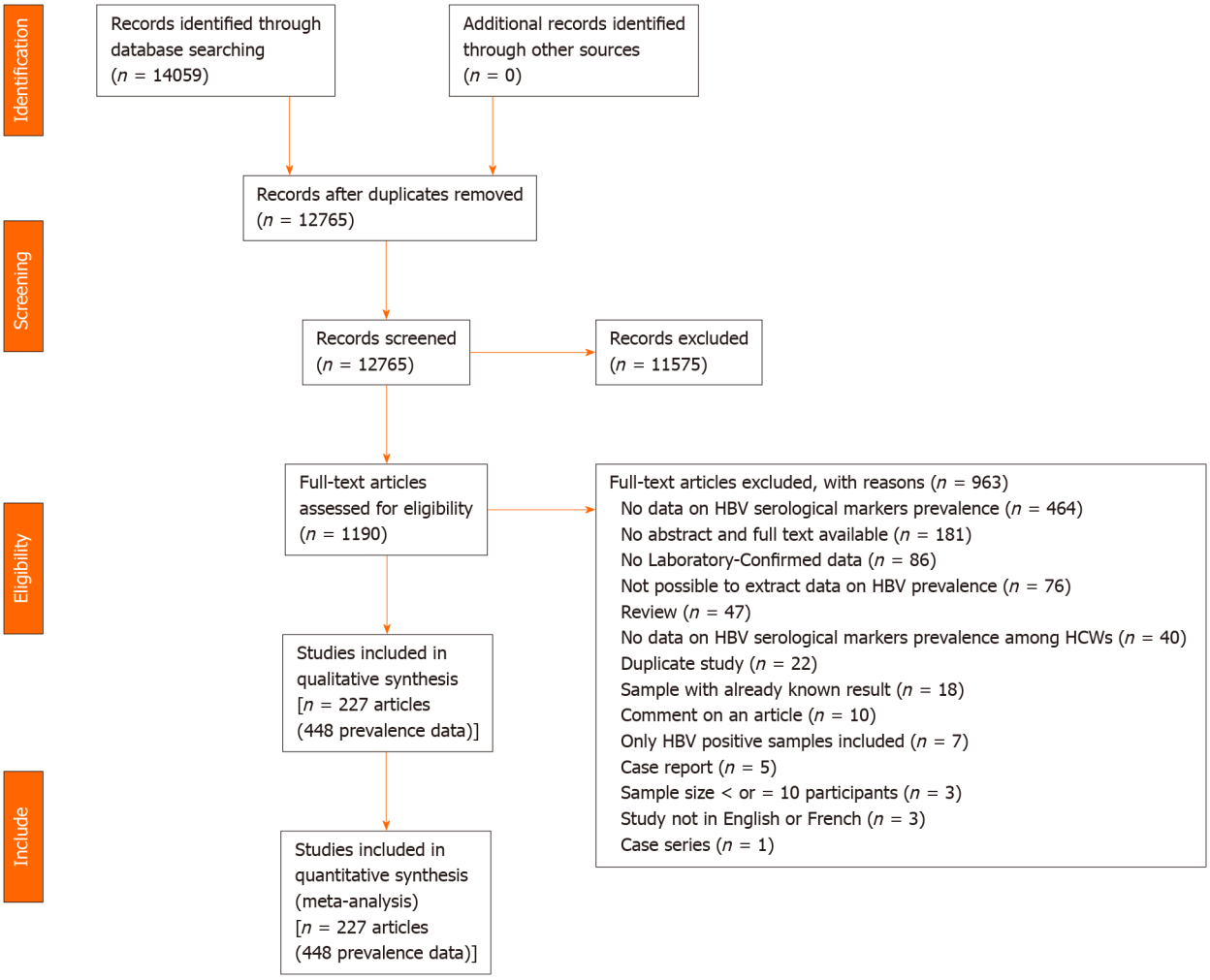


Figure 1 PRISMA flow chart of the included studies.

immunity against HBV in HCWs showed that seroprevalence was higher in retrospective studies, the European, Eastern Mediterranean, and Western Pacific WHO regions, urban areas, and among personal care workers in health services and health associate professionals. Subgroup analysis of immunity against HBV due to natural infection in HCWs showed that the seroprevalence was higher in non-probabilistic studies, retrospective studies, urban areas, and health management and support personnel.

The univariate metaregression allowed the selection of the relevant covariates (Supplementary Table 9). Only the WHO region variable significantly explained the variance observed in estimating the prevalence of current HBV infection and immunity due to natural infection. The variables sampling approach and the HCWs classification significantly explained the variance observed for the estimation of the prevalence of acute HBV infection. No covariates explained the variance observed in the estimate of the prevalence of total immunity to HBV.

DISCUSSION

Our findings showed that the pooled prevalence rates of HBV serological markers among HCWs with current (HBsAg and HBeAg) and acute HBV infections were 2.3%, 0.2% and 5.3, respectively. Our findings also showed that the pooled prevalence rates of total immunity against HBV and immunity due to natural HBV infection were 56.5% and 9.2%, respectively. HBV serological markers varied considerably among categories of HCWs. In the subgroup analysis, the pooled seroprevalence of HBV in HCWs with current infection was highest in low-income countries and particularly in Africa. The pooled seroprevalence of HBV in HCWs with acute infection was higher in upper-middle-income countries, in the South-East Asia and in urban areas. The pooled

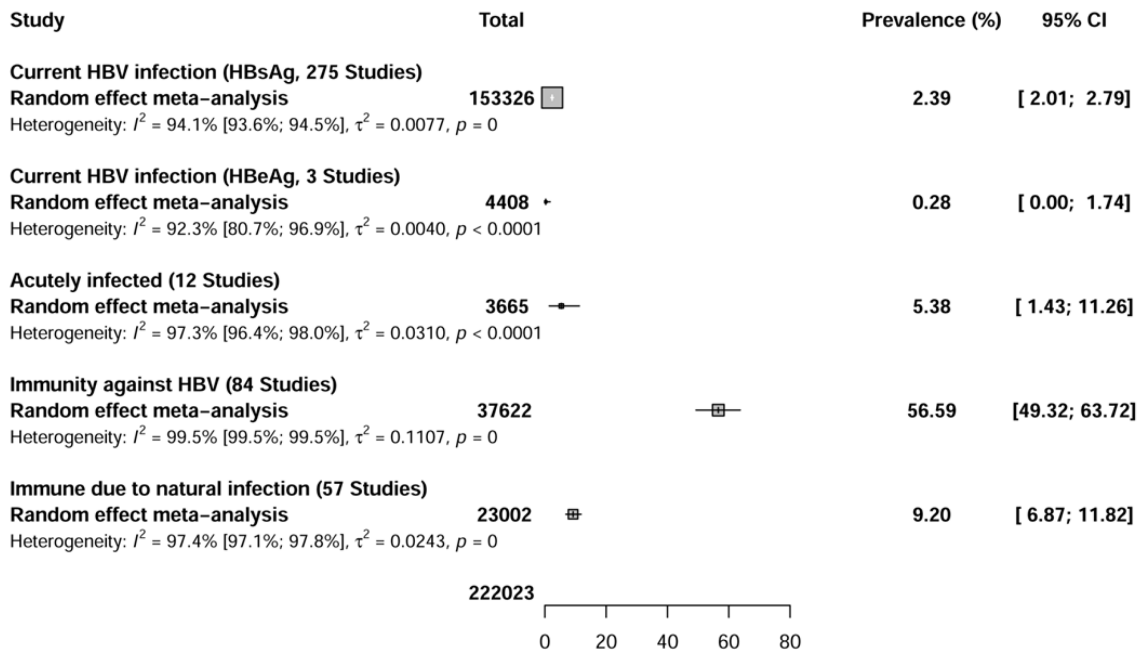


Figure 2 Global seroprevalence of hepatitis B virus serological markers among healthcare workers. CI: Confidence interval; HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

seroprevalence of total immunity against HBV was higher in the Europe, Eastern Mediterranean, Western Pacific, and urban areas. The pooled seroprevalence of immunity against HBV due to natural infection was higher in urban areas.

A previous meta-analysis reported a pooled seroprevalence of current HBV infection (HBsAg) in HCWs of 2.3% in Eastern Mediterranean and Middle Eastern Countries (EMRO) and in the European Union/European Economic regions[27,28]. Our estimated HBV infection seroprevalence, however, presented a strong disparity according to geographic and socioeconomic regions in favor of African regions, South-East Asia and urban areas. These differences may be linked to several factors, including socio-demographic, ethnic, cultural factors, risk factors for transmission, protective factors (heterogeneous vaccination policies, levels of education, availability of preventive measures, and the practice of barrier measures against occupational exposure to blood)[29]. HBV vaccination policies are applied with strong temporal, socio-cultural and economic disparities around the world. Low-resource countries for example are prone to imperfect vaccine policies, including partial coverage of eligible individuals and without any catch-up strategy for adults including HCWs[10,13-16]. This aspect could well explain the high seroprevalence of HBV infections observed in low-income setting in the present review. It is also conceivable that the various detection tests used to search for the serological HBV markers in the present review could be associated with the significant heterogeneity observed. The various occupational categories considered in this review could also be at the origin of the great variability in the observed seroprevalence rates. It has in fact been shown that inexperienced people at the start of training, such as medical students and nurses, were more at risk of occupational contraction of HBV[30]. Nurses who are closer to patients and who are responsible for collecting blood from patients are also at high risk of contracting HBV[31,32]. It should also be noted that dentists and surgeons present a very worrying risk of occupational contamination by HBV, due to their use of sharp objects and procedures that generate aerosols[33,34]. The age and number of years of service (> 5 years) of the health workers have also been associated with a greater risk of contracting HBV infections[35,36]. The number of HCWs per patient as well as the number of hematogenous exposure by HCWs is very variable across the world and could also account for this great heterogeneity observed in the estimates of this review [37]. In resource-limited countries, unlike developed countries, high infection rates are linked to high immunization coverage and the application of the post-exposure prophylaxis policy[38]. The varying dates in countries of immunization policies can also pay dividends. Due to the lack of time restriction in the inclusion criteria for this review, it is highly likely that some participants benefited from universal childhood immunization policies, suggesting different vaccine coverage and hence variable infection rates. In addition, vaccination coverage rates among HCWs vary widely

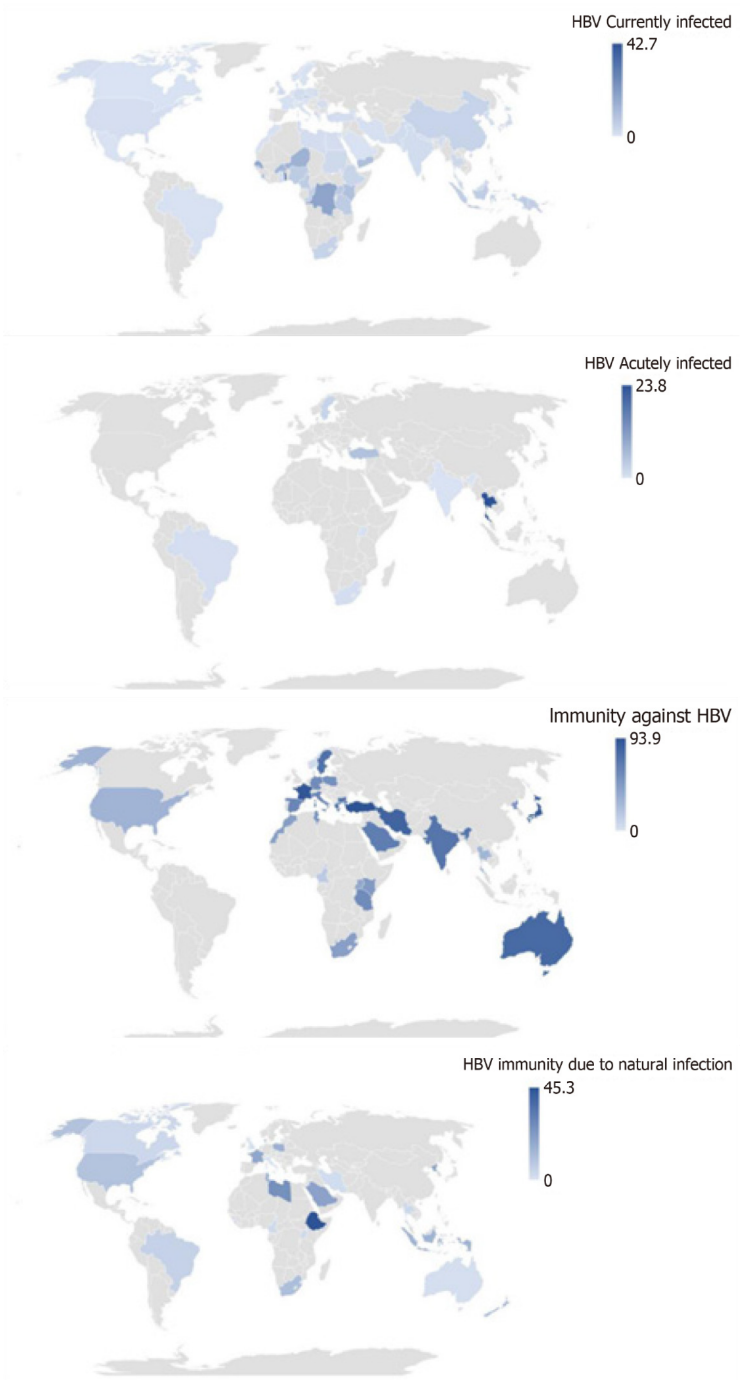


Figure 3 Global seroprevalence of hepatitis B serological markers among healthcare workers.

between countries, ranging from 18% in Africa to 77% in Australia[38]. In this review over half of HCWs had full immunity to HBV and this immunity was highest in urban areas and developed countries, including those in Europe, the Western Pacific, and the Eastern Mediterranean. Recently, a review showed that only a quarter of African HCWs had received the three doses of vaccines recommended for HBV immunization [39]. It is also noted that among this quarter of vaccinated HCWs in Africa, there is still a significant proportion of non-responders who remain at occupational risk of contracting HBV, as reported by other authors[40,41].

Some limitations should be noted for this review. One of the major difficulties of this review was the high variability of the professional categories of HCWs and the difficulty of having an easily applicable definition to group them together in a coherent way. Secondly, we did not consider the contribution of other major risk factors for HBV transmission in assessing the risk of HBV transmission in these HCWs, including sexual behavior or a history of parenteral injections. Also, the prevalence of current HBV infection in this study did not discriminate those with chronic infection

(HBsAg ≥ 6 mo) from those with acute infection. Despite these limitations, one of the strengths of this review lies in the representativeness of all regions of the world. An added value in this review is the concomitant consideration of several serological markers of HBV infection and immunity.

In order to hope to achieve the 2030 goal of eliminating HBV infections, decision-makers should implement training, vaccination and care policies for HCWs who represent a high-risk group of occupational HBV infections. These programs should ideally be subsidized or free to ensure universal access to these measures. Vaccination coverage rates remain low in some regions (Turkey) where the vaccine is free for HCWs[30]. Continuous training of HCWs on the importance of vaccination against HBV, the appropriate use of personal protective equipment, barrier measures against occupational exposure to blood and associated diseases, as well as on proper disposal of sharp objects would be of great benefit in reducing occupational exposure. Training on barrier measures for occupational percutaneous injuries should incorporate safety behaviors, such as the use of puncture-resistant trash cans. In countries with limited resources that bear the heaviest burden of HBV infections, expanded routine immunization programs at birth should also include catch-up vaccinations for high-risk people, such as HCWs. For medical students, to implement systematic vaccination of all HCWs at the start of the professional training or before commencement of duty and verify effective immunization before starting could be more cost effective. For HCWs already in service, an initial phase would be the search for unvaccinated HCWs. For a rational integration of the vaccination program in HCWs, anonymized pre-vaccination anti-HBc screening tests should be carried out beforehand to avoid unnecessary vaccinations. The anti-HBc test should be followed by the HBsAg screening in anti-HBc-positive HCWs. Costly conventional enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) techniques are often unavailable in resource-limited areas, although they bear the heaviest burden of HBV infections[42]. Low cost and easy to use alternative assays with comparable performance to conventional ELISA assays should be made available to resource-limited areas[42-44]. The HCWs eligible to receive the three doses should be those susceptible to HBV infection, negative for the anti-HBc marker. Checks for anti-HBs levels should follow 2 mo to 3 mo after complete vaccination to ensure that the protective titer is achieved (anti-HBs ≥ 10 IU/mL). HCWs not responding to full vaccination should receive additional doses of vaccine. Booster doses could be given periodically (like 10 years if anti-HBs titer is below 10 IU/mL). HBsAg-positive HCWs would benefit from expert guidance for their orientation, rational and appropriate treatment to avoid wastage. Positive HBsAg tests should not disqualify HCWs from their daily practice, although urgent measures should be taken to control their viral load to minimize their risk of transmitting HBV to their patients and to those around them.

CONCLUSION

This systematic review highlights an important burden of HBV infections among HCWs around the world. It also reveals that around half of HCWs are protected against HBV infections worldwide. This protection is mainly attributed to vaccination compared to immunization due to natural infection. The burden of HBV infection is mainly borne by resource-limited countries, particularly Africa, which in parallel also reveals the lowest levels of immunization against HBV.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Hepatitis B infection is a deadly disease that affects and kills more than 1 million people a year. During their work, healthcare workers (HCWs) are exposed to certain direct or indirect risk factors that could lead to hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. Existing data have shown that HBV infection, depending on markers, is widespread and heterogeneously distributed worldwide among HCWs. Therefore, there is a need to quantify the global proportion of HBV serological markers among HCWs.

Research motivation

HCWs are one of the most vulnerable groups to HBV infection during their routine work, which exposes them to a variety of accidents, *e.g.*, needle stick injuries, exposure

to blood and fluids of HBV-infected patients, *etc*. However, these groups are under-diagnosed in many parts of the world, especially in low-income countries. It remains to be seen how the burden of each marker of hepatitis B infection is distributed worldwide in order to guide future research. We therefore sought to quantify the burden of several serological markers of HBV infection in HCWs. This will enable the development of new strategies to better manage HBV infection in HCWs.

Research objectives

In this review, we aimed to quantify the pooled prevalence rates of serological markers of HBV infection among HCWs. We were able to report these prevalence data among HCWs based on world regions, country income levels, and categories of HCWs. Quantifying these prevalence rates in each region of the world is crucial to improving and/or implementing new strategies for managing HBV infection, as well as guiding future research that will contribute to the elimination of HBV by 2030 and the achievement of Sustainable Development Goal 3.3 related to well-being and good health, specifically ending the AIDS epidemic, tuberculosis, malaria and neglected tropical diseases and combating hepatitis, water-borne and other communicable diseases.

Research methods

To synthesize data from the existing literature on the prevalence of HBV serological markers in HCWs, we followed the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis (PRISMA) guideline. We registered the study in Prospero and the search strategy was applied in PubMed and Embase to retrieve observational studies, including cross-sectional, cohort (baseline data) and case-control studies. These studies were selected for eligibility on the Rayyan platform by four investigators (Mahamat G, Kenmoe S, Ebogo-Belobo JT and Amougou-Atsama M) and data extraction was performed by 18 extractors using a Google form questionnaire. The quality of the included studies was assessed by the tool of Hoy *et al*. A random-effects meta-analysis model was used to pool the prevalence of each serological marker in HCWs. Meta-regression and subgroup analyses were used to determine the source of heterogeneity. The statistical software R version 3.6.2. was used to perform all meta-analyses.

Research results

In all, we reported prevalence rates of current infection [hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and hepatitis e antigen], acute infection (anti-HBs immunoglobulin M + HBsAg), full immunity (anti-HBs > 10 IU/mL), and acquired immunity by natural infection (anti-HBS + anti-HBc) among HCWs of 2.3% and 0.2%, 5.3%, 56.6%, and 9.2%, respectively. Low-income countries, particularly African countries, bear the greatest burden of current infection and have low immunization rates. High-income countries and urban areas are more protected from HBV infection. These results suggest that attention should increasingly be focused on low-income countries and in particular African countries where future research should be directed.

Research conclusions

There is a need to improve awareness, training, screening, vaccination, post-test management and treatment of HBV infection worldwide in order to achieve the World Health Organization goal of eliminating hepatitis B infection by 2030.

Research perspectives

Future research should be directed towards low-income countries, including African countries, where the highest burden of current infection with low vaccination coverage among HCWs has been reported.

REFERENCES

1 **Lok AS**, Heathcote EJ, Hoofnagle JH. Management of hepatitis B: 2000--summary of a workshop. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 1828-1853 [PMID: 11375963 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2001.24839]

2 **Lok AS**, McMahon BJ; Practice Guidelines Committee, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 1225-1241 [PMID: 11732013 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.29401]

3 **Seeger C**, Mason WS. Hepatitis B virus biology. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2000; **64**: 51-68 [PMID: 10704474 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.64.1.51-68.2000]

4 **World Health Organization**. Hepatitis B. 2020. [cited 29 June 2021]. In: World Health

Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/hepatitis-b
5 **André F**. Hepatitis B epidemiology in Asia, the Middle East and Africa. *Vaccine* 2000; **18** Suppl 1: S20-S22 [PMID: 10683538 DOI: 10.1016/s0264-410x(99)00456-9]
6 **Lesmana LA**, Leung NW-Y, Mahachai V, Phiet PH, Suh DJ, Yao G, Zhuang H. Hepatitis B: overview of the burden of disease in the Asia-Pacific region. *Liver Int* 2006; **26**: 3-10 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2006.01370.x]
7 **Kammerlander R**, Zimmermann H. Transmission de l'hépatite B. *Soz Präventivmed* 1998; **43**: S105-S107 [DOI: 10.1007/BF02042191]
8 **Byrne EB**. Viral hepatitis: an occupational hazard of medical personnel. Experience of the Yalenew Haven Hospital, 1952 to 1965. *JAMA* 1966; **195**: 362-364 [PMID: 5951893]
9 **Prüss-Ustün A**, Rapiti E, Hutin Y. Estimation of the global burden of disease attributable to contaminated sharps injuries among health-care workers. *Am J Ind Med* 2005; **48**: 482-490 [PMID: 16299710 DOI: 10.1002/ajim.20230]
10 **Schillie S**, Murphy TV, Sawyer M, Ly K, Hughes E, Jiles R, de Perio MA, Reilly M, Byrd K, Ward JW; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). CDC guidance for evaluating health-care personnel for hepatitis B virus protection and for administering postexposure management. *MMWR Recomm Rep* 2013; **62**: 1-19 [PMID: 24352112]
11 **Wicker S**, Cinatl J, Berger A, Doerr HW, Gottschalk R, Rabenau HF. Determination of risk of infection with blood-borne pathogens following a needlestick injury in hospital workers. *Ann Occup Hyg* 2008; **52**: 615-622 [PMID: 18664514 DOI: 10.1093/annhyg/men044]
12 **Lewis JD**, Enfield KB, Sifri CD. Hepatitis B in healthcare workers: Transmission events and guidance for management. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 488-497 [PMID: 25848472 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i3.488]
13 **Noubiap JJN**, Nansseu JRN, Kengne KK, Wonkam A, Wiysonge CS. Low hepatitis B vaccine uptake among surgical residents in Cameroon. *Int Arch Med* 2014; **7**: 11 [PMID: 24629103 DOI: 10.1186/1755-7682-7-11]
14 **De Schryver A**, Claesen B, Meheus A, van Sprundel M, François G. European survey of hepatitis B vaccination policies for healthcare workers. *Eur J Public Health* 2011; **21**: 338-343 [PMID: 20817688 DOI: 10.1093/eurpub/ckq122]
15 **Bonanni P**, Bonaccorsi G. Vaccination against hepatitis B in health care workers. *Vaccine* 2001; **19**: 2389-2394 [PMID: 11257366 DOI: 10.1016/s0264-410x(00)00460-6]
16 **Prüss-Üstün A**, Rapiti E, Hutin YJF. Sharps injuries: global burden of disease from sharps injuries to health-care workers / Annette Prüss-Üstun, Elisabetta Rapiti, Yvan Hutin. [cited 29 June 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/42743
17 **Moher D**, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG; PRISMA Group. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. *PLoS Med* 2009; **6**: e1000097 [PMID: 19621072 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000097]
18 **Song JE**, Kim DY. Diagnosis of hepatitis B. *Ann Transl Med* 2016; **4**: 338 [PMID: 27761442 DOI: 10.21037/atm.2016.09.11]
19 **Hoy D**, Brooks P, Woolf A, Blyth F, March L, Bain C, Baker P, Smith E, Buchbinder R. Assessing risk of bias in prevalence studies: modification of an existing tool and evidence of interrater agreement. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2012; **65**: 934-939 [PMID: 22742910 DOI: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2011.11.014]
20 **World Health Organization**. Classifying health workers: Mapping occupations to the international standard classification. [cited 29 June 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://www.who.int/hrh/statistics/Health_workers_classification.pdf
21 **Cochran WG**. The Combination of Estimates from Different Experiments. *Biometrics* 1954; **10**: 101-129 [DOI: 10.2307/3001666]
22 **Barendregt JJ**, Doi SA, Lee YY, Norman RE, Vos T. Meta-analysis of prevalence. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 2013; **67**: 974-978 [PMID: 23963506 DOI: 10.1136/jech-2013-203104]
23 **Veroniki AA**, Jackson D, Viechtbauer W, Bender R, Bowden J, Knapp G, Kuss O, Higgins JP, Langan D, Salanti G. Methods to estimate the between-study variance and its uncertainty in meta-analysis. *Res Synth Methods* 2016; **7**: 55-79 [PMID: 26332144 DOI: 10.1002/jrsm.1164]
24 **Egger M**, Davey Smith G, Schneider M, Minder C. Bias in meta-analysis detected by a simple, graphical test. *BMJ* 1997; **315**: 629-634 [PMID: 9310563 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.315.7109.629]
25 **R Core Team**. R: A language and environment for statistical computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria. [cited 29 June 2021]. In: R Core Team [Internet]. Available from: https://www.R-project.org/
26 **Schwarzer G**. meta: An R Package for Meta-Analysis. *JOUR* 2007; **7**: 40-45
27 **Babanejad M**, Izadi N, Alavian SM. A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis on the Prevalence of HBsAg in Health Care Workers from Eastern Mediterranean and Middle Eastern Countries. *Int J Prev Med* 2019; **10**: 144 [PMID: 31516685 DOI: 10.4103/ijpvm.IJPVM_111_18]
28 **Tavoschi L**, Mason L, Petriti U, Bunge E, Veldhuijzen I, Duffell E. Hepatitis B and C among healthcare workers and patient groups at increased risk of iatrogenic transmission in the European Union/European Economic Area. *J Hosp Infect* 2019; **102**: 359-368 [PMID: 30885816 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhin.2019.03.004]
29 **Bwogi J**, Braka F, Makumbi I, Mishra V, Bakamutumaho B, Nanyunja M, Opio A, Downing R, Biryahwaho B, Lewis RF. Hepatitis B infection is highly endemic in Uganda: findings from a national serosurvey. *Afr Health Sci* 2009; **9**: 98-108 [PMID: 19652743]

30 **Irmak Z**, Ekinci B, Akgul AF. Hepatitis B and C seropositivity among nursing students at a Turkish university. *Int Nurs Rev* 2010; **57**: 365-369 [PMID: 20796067 DOI: 10.1111/j.1466-7657.2010.00804.x]

31 **Baldo V**, Floreani A, Dal Vecchio L, Cristofoletti M, Carletti M, Majori S, Di Tommaso A, Trivello R. Occupational risk of blood-borne viruses in healthcare workers: a 5-year surveillance program. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 2002; **23**: 325-327 [PMID: 12083236 DOI: 10.1086/502059]

32 **Tarantola A**, Golliot F, Astagneau P, Fleury L, Brücker G, Bouvet E; CCLIN Paris-Nord Blood and Body Fluids (BBF) Exposure Surveillance Taskforce. Occupational blood and body fluids exposures in health care workers: four-year surveillance from the Northern France network. *Am J Infect Control* 2003; **31**: 357-363 [PMID: 14608303 DOI: 10.1016/s0196-6553(03)00040-3]

33 **Prospero E**, Savini S, Annino I. Microbial aerosol contamination of dental healthcare workers' faces and other surfaces in dental practice. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 2003; **24**: 139-141 [PMID: 12602698 DOI: 10.1086/502172]

34 **Ahmad Akhoundi MS**, Momeni N, Norouzi M, Ghalichi L, Shamshiri AR, Alavian SM, Poortahmasebi V, Jazayeri SM. Prevalence of blood-borne viruses among Iranian dentists: Results of a national survey. *Int J Occup Med Environ Health* 2015; **28**: 593-602 [PMID: 26190734 DOI: 10.13075/ijomeh.1896.00324]

35 **Mueller A**, Stoetter L, Kalluvya S, Stich A, Majinge C, Weissbrich B, Kasang C. Prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection among health care workers in a tertiary hospital in Tanzania. *BMC Infect Dis* 2015; **15**: 386 [PMID: 26399765 DOI: 10.1186/s12879-015-1129-z]

36 **Ziraba AK**, Bwogi J, Namale A, Wainaina CW, Mayanja-Kizza H. Sero-prevalence and risk factors for hepatitis B virus infection among health care workers in a tertiary hospital in Uganda. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 191 [PMID: 20587047 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-10-191]

37 devices. *Health Devices* 1999; **28**: 381-408 [PMID: 10533680]

38 **Hutin Y**, Hauri A, Chiarello L, Catlin M, Stilwell B, Ghebrehiwet T, Garner J; Injection Safety Best Practices Development Group. Best infection control practices for intradermal, subcutaneous, and intramuscular needle injections. *Bull World Health Organ* 2003; **81**: 491-500 [PMID: 12973641]

39 **Auta A**, Adewuyi EO, Kureh GT, Onoviran N, Adeloye D. Hepatitis B vaccination coverage among health-care workers in Africa: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Vaccine* 2018; **36**: 4851-4860 [PMID: 29970299 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.06.043]

40 **Halpern SD**, Asch DA, Shaked A, Stock P, Blumberg EA. Inadequate hepatitis B vaccination and post-exposure evaluation among transplant surgeons: prevalence, correlates, and implications. *Ann Surg* 2006; **244**: 305-309 [PMID: 16858195 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000217641.53330.e8]

41 **Smith ER**, Banatvala JE, Tilzey AJ. Hepatitis B vaccine uptake among surgeons at a London teaching hospital: how well are we doing? *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 1996; **78**: 447-449 [PMID: 8881729]

42 **Xiao Y**, Thompson AJ, Howell J. Point-of-Care Tests for Hepatitis B: An Overview. *Cells* 2020; **9** [PMID: 33023265 DOI: 10.3390/cells9102233]

43 **Cooke GS**, Andrieux-Meyer I, Applegate TL, Atun R, Burry JR, Cheinquer H, Dusheiko G, Feld JJ, Gore C, Griswold MG, Hamid S, Hellard ME, Hou J, Howell J, Jia J, Kravchenko N, Lazarus JV, Lemoine M, Lesi OA, Maistat L, McMahon BJ, Razavi H, Roberts T, Simmons B, Sonderup MW, Spearman CW, Taylor BE, Thomas DL, Waked I, Ward JW, Wiktor SZ; Lancet Gastroenterology & Hepatology Commissioners. Accelerating the elimination of viral hepatitis: a Lancet Gastroenterology & Hepatology Commission. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 135-184 [PMID: 30647010 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(18)30270-X]

44 **Peeling RW**, Boeras DI, Marinucci F, Easterbrook P. The future of viral hepatitis testing: innovations in testing technologies and approaches. *BMC Infect Dis* 2017; **17**: 699 [PMID: 29143676 DOI: 10.1186/s12879-017-2775-0]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com